



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

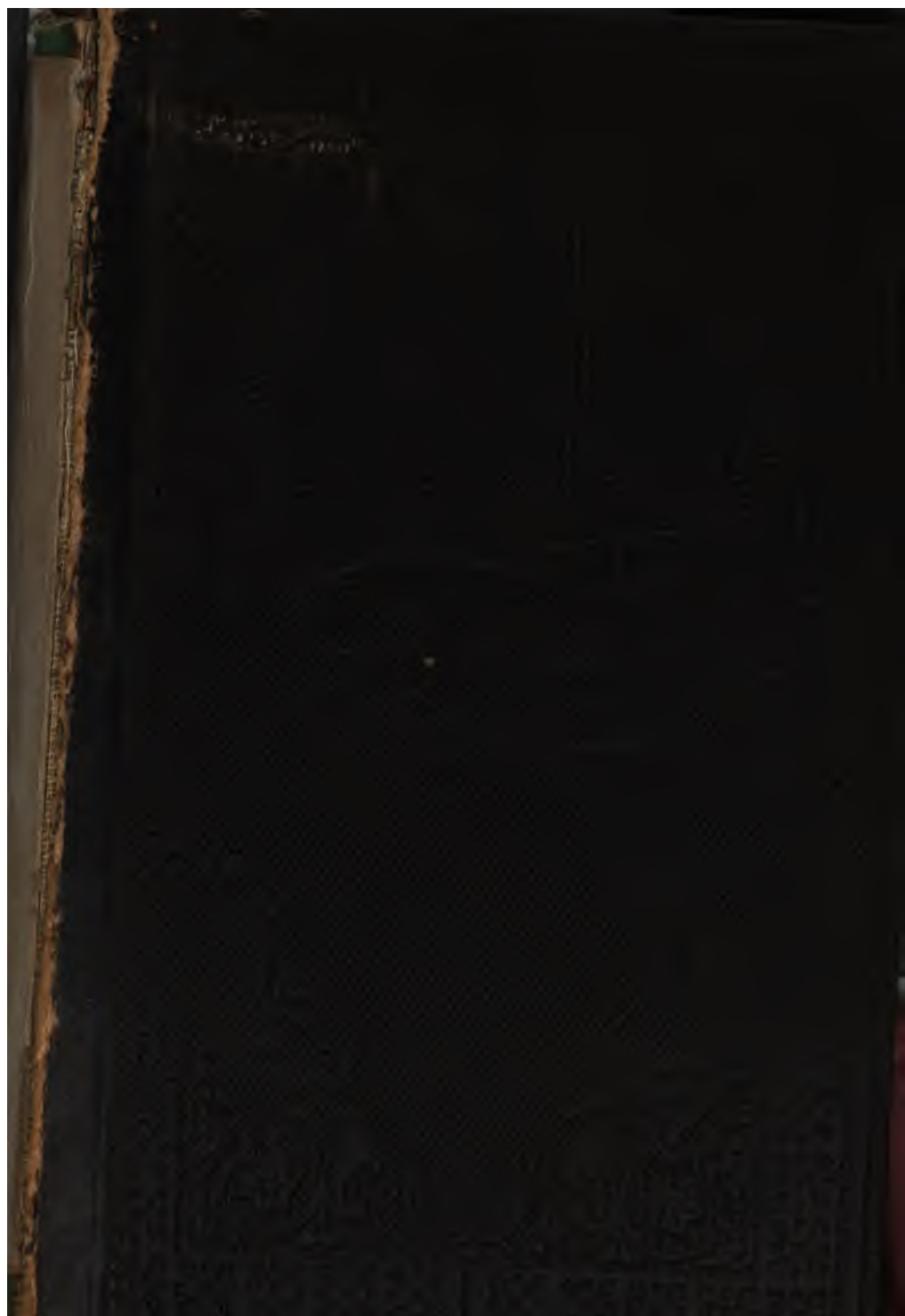
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

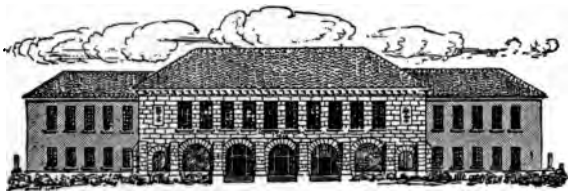
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





**SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY**

**TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION**



**STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES**

DEPARTMENT OF
EDUCATION
RECEIVED

ELAND STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

L. Sohn -

A
NEW METHOD
OF LEARNING THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE:
EMBRACING BOTH THE
Analytic and Synthetic Modes of Instruction;
BEING
A PLAIN AND PRACTICAL WAY OF ACQUIRING THE ART
OF
READING, SPEAKING, AND COMPOSING GERMAN.

BY
W. H. WOODBURY, A. M.,
AUTHOR OF "SHORTER COURSE WITH GERMAN," "ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER,"
"ECLECTIC GERMAN READER," "GERMAN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-GERMAN
READER," "NEW METHOD FOR GERMANS TO LEARN ENGLISH," OR:
"Neue Methode zur Erlernung der englischen Sprache," &c.

Des fremde Sprachen nicht kennt, weiß nichts von seiner eignen.
Goethe.

CHICAGO :
PUBLISHED BY S. C. GRIGGS & CO.,
NEW YORK: IVISON, PHINNEY, BLAKEMAN & CO.

1865.

Just Published.

A KEY TO THE EXERCISES IN WOODBURY'S NEW METHOD
WITH THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

IVISON, PHINNEY & CO.

602772
C

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1855, by
W. H. WOODBURY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the Southern
District of New York.

STEREOTYPED BY
SMITH & McDOUGAL,
82 & 84 Beckman-st.

TO

JAMES N. McELIGOTT, LL.D.

IN WHOM ARE FOUND

HIGH MORAL WORTH, RARE PHILOLOGICAL ATTAINMENTS,

EXTRAORDINARY SUCCESS AS A PRACTICAL EDUCATOR,

AND AN ABLE AND ELOQUENT ADVOCATE OF

THE CAUSE OF GENERAL EDUCATION,

This Volume

IS MOST CORDIALLY DEDICATED

BY HIS FRIEND,

THE AUTHOR.

WOODBURY'S GERMAN SERIE

I. NEW METHOD WITH GERMAN.

523 pp. 12mo.—Price,

II. KEY TO NEW METHOD

80 pp. 12mo.—Price

III. SHORTER COURSE WITH GERMAN

230 pp. 12mo. — Price

IV. KEY TO SHORTER COURSE.

80 pp. 12mo.—Price

V. ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER

250 pp. 12mo.—Price,

VI. ECLECTIC GERMAN READER.

280 pp. 12mo.—Price,

VII. GERMAN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-GERMAN READER

70 pp. 12mo.—Price

VIII. *Woodbury's Neue Methode
zur Erlernung der englischen Sprache.*
Preis

Fasquelle's French Series.

I. FRENCH COURSE.

500 pp. 12mo.—Price

II. KEY TO FRENCH COURSE.

140 pp. 12mo.—Price,

III. COLLOQUIAL FRENCH READER.

260 pp. 12mo.—Price

IV. TÉLÉMAQUE.

390 pp. 12mo.—Price,

V. NAPOLEON

274 pp. 12mo.—Price,

P R E F A C E.

THE German Language is now deservedly ranked among the leading studies in many of our High Schools and Academies. Its treasures in every department of knowledge, in every variety of composition, are certainly among the wonders of literary achievement. Among European tongues it holds a decided superiority of rank; surpassing them all in the abundance of its words, in the richness of its internal resources, and in its wonderful flexibility. Hence the propriety of its place among liberal studies.

But the motives to the study of this language reach far beyond the circles of literary life. Celerity and cheapness of travel, growing out of recent improvements in navigation, have united in producing an easy intercourse between Germany and America. Besides, we have already in our midst an immense and daily augmenting German population. The language of this people is spoken extensively among us, and has hence come to have a high practical value. It is often set down as an indispensable qualification even for a common clerkship.

Such being the character and importance of the German language, various attempts have been made, as was natural, to give greater facility in learning it. Some of these are unquestionably excellent works; executed, according to the plan which they have adopted, in a manner skillful and judicious. But just here, in *plan*, as it seems to the present writer, all of them are more or less lacking; and out of this conviction has arisen the present volume.

The grounds of this conviction may be briefly stated. Years ago, when the author, with something of enthusiasm, resolved, if possible, to master the language, and for that, among other

purposes, resided for some time in Germany, he found his labor not a little abated by the circumstance, that, in no one of the numerous grammars which he had collected about him, was he able to pursue his studies on what he deemed philosophic principles. The methods of the books were in one sense various; but all were plainly divisible into two extremely opposite classes. In one class *theory* held the sway; in the other *practice* was supreme. The one seemed bent upon grounding the pupil in set rules and forms, and anxious chiefly to present and impress the language, as a thing of science, a systematic whole. The other appeared to deal almost exclusively in separate and independent facts; intent only on exhibiting and teaching the German tongue, as a thing of art, a medium of common communication. That such a knowledge of the language, which he had proposed to himself to acquire, could never be obtained by either of these methods exclusively, was perfectly evident. That not only the surest, but even the shortest route to his object, might be found in the due combination of the two, seemed not less obvious. For art has her only just basis in the science that lies underneath; without which she is liable to frequent failure and perpetual uncertainty.

The attempt, then, in this book is to unite and harmonize more fully two things, which, in teaching a language, ought never to be separated: the *theoretical* and the *practical*. The leading feature being announced, we now proceed to specify some details of the plan.

It assumes in the outset, as ever afterward, the position of the careful and considerate *living* teacher; that is, introduces one by one the easier forms and usages of the language, and directs attention to the more obvious differences between the German and the English. It here seeks to avoid the error of frightening the beginner with a formidable array of rules, declensions and conjugations, which he is, as yet, in no wise prepared to entertain.

After a certain amount of progress in these preliminary steps, the pupil is put upon the exercise of composing in German. To this end he is taught to regard every German sentence, given him for translation, as a model on which he is to

build one of his own. He is in no wise trammelled as to the thought ; he is under no necessity of divesting it of some particular English dress, given it by the hand of another ; but is encouraged to take *any* thought which may suggest itself, and, under the guidance of his model sentence and what other light he has received, to put it into a German garb. In this way, he comes gradually to *feel* the difference between the English and the German modes of expression, and thence derives accuracy and readiness in *making* them. Conjointly with this process, and in order to its more complete success, the practice of turning English sentences into German, as well as German into English, is carried on in a series of exercises at once progressive, comprehensive and systematic.

It supplies the learner throughout all these various exercises with the materials necessary to their due performance. Every lesson is headed with the statement and illustration of all new principles involved, an explanation of difficult words and phrases, and a vocabulary alphabetically arranged. Nothing, indeed, is left unsupplied, which the student can not readily obtain for himself.

It does not, however, in regard to grammatical instruction, leave the learner here. For, although it embraces somewhere or other in the previous course, all the leading facts and features of the language, it purposely deals with them rather as *individuals* than as components of a grammatical system. It takes them analytically, not synthetically. But now, having accomplished its purpose in this respect, it invites the attention of the student to a new and more scientific aspect of them. They come before him now, not as *new* things, but in new relations. He has all the advantage of an impressive review, and at the same time gives discipline to his mind, by giving order to its acquisitions.

It furthermore, as is plain, adapts itself to all classes of teachers and learners. Those who insist upon the more purely practical method, who regard every thing beyond as superfluous, if not pernicious, will find the course contained in the first part, all-sufficient, it is believed, to answer their demands. To those, on the other hand, who can tolerate nothing short of

a strictly systematic course, first and last, the second part will it is hoped, be found no unacceptable offering. To those finally, who sympathize with the author in the view that these two methods can and ought to be united in teaching a language the entire work is presented with all the confidence of experienced success.

To render it yet more complete in itself, a carefully selected series of Reading Lessons, from the best German writers, has been added, together with a full vocabulary (pp. 471 and 505)

Throughout the volume, great care has been taken to furnish in every particular, however trivial it might seem, the most reliable instruction. And in this respect, as in others, it is hoped, the work will be found especially acceptable to the large class of students who aim at the acquisition of the language mainly without the aid of a teacher. Indeed, for their purposes, many features in the system will prove peculiarly serviceable.

In the matter of declension and conjugation—in the account of derivatives and compounds—in the tabular views of verbs regular and irregular, simple and compound—in the illustrations of the powers and uses of the prepositions and other particles—in short, in all leading points, the author has sought to present those views only which are now recognized as the best and truest by the highest German authorities. To the labors of BECKER and HEYSE especially is he indebted; though numerous are the works on German grammar, which have been consulted in view of this publication.

Finally, with the sincere desire that this course of study may subserve the purpose of rendering the German language and literature more easy of access, and with a grateful acknowledgment of the friendly aid which has been received from several gentlemen of known ability in linguistic science, the work is respectfully submitted.

NEW YORK, October, 1855.

CONTENTS OF THE LESSONS.

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| LESSON I.—German Alphabet..... | 19 |
| LESSON II.—Sounds of letters.—I. Vowels.—II. Umlauts.— III. Diphthongs.—IV. Consonants.—V. Compound Conso- nants.—VI. Accent. | 20 |
| LESSON III.—Current hand | 22 |
| LESSON IV.—1. Forms of definite article.—2. <i>Seßen</i> present sin- gular. | 23 |
| LESSON V.—Singen and Warten present singular.—1. Root.— 2. Form of Conjugation. | 24 |
| LESSON VI.—Interrogative Conjugation | 26 |
| LESSON VII.—1. Verbs irregular present singular.—2. Gender of Nouns | 27 |
| LESSON VIII.—1. Cases.—2. Declension of Nouns.—3. Nouns of <i>Old</i> decl. ending in <i>e</i> , <i>el</i> , <i>en</i> , <i>er</i> , <i>den</i> , <i>lein</i> .—4. <i>Old</i> decl. with def. Art. Agreement of article with noun.—5. Verbs with dat. and acc. | 29 |
| LESSON IX.—1. Genitive, how rendered.—2. Nouns adding <i>ts</i> in gen. Occasional omission of <i>e</i> in gen. and dat. | 31 |
| LESSON X.—1. Demonstrative pronouns <i>Dieser</i> and <i>Jener</i> .— 2. Often rendered by <i>latter</i> — <i>former</i> .—3. The word <i>one</i> .—4. Decl. of <i>dieser</i> , etc.—5. <i>Sein</i> and <i>Vergeßten</i> pres. sing. | 33 |
| LESSON XI.—1. Dative with prepositions.—2. Dative with verbs of motion.—3. Omission of prep.—4. <i>Of</i> , how expressed in Ger- man.—5. Position of Prep. | 36 |
| LESSON XII.—1. Indef. Art.—2. 3. Poss. Prons.—4. Decl. of indef. Art., etc.—5. <i>e</i> when often dropped.—6. Words in apposition... | 38 |
| LESSON XIII.—1. Interrogative Pronouns.—2. <i>Was</i> für separa- ted.—3. <i>Welcher</i> and <i>was</i> für in exclamations.—4. <i>Welch</i> in ques- tions.—5. <i>Ein</i> rendered by <i>a one</i> .—6. <i>Was</i> for <i>warum</i> . Decl. of <i>wer</i> and <i>was</i> .—7. Gen. of <i>was</i> .—8. <i>Womit</i> , etc. | 41 |
| LESSON XIV.—1. Adjectives used predicatively.—2. Used attri- butively.—3. <i>Old</i> decl. of Adjs.—4. Agreement of Adj. with Nouns.—5. Attributive and predicative forms of Adj.—6. Adjs. preceded by <i>etwas</i> , <i>was</i> and <i>nicht</i> .—7. Adjs. referring to noun understood. | 44 |

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| LESSON XV.—1. <i>New</i> decl. of Adjs.—2. Form of <i>New</i> decl. in nom.—3. Final syllable of <i>manſter</i> , etc., sometimes dropped.—4. Adj. placed after noun.—5. Adj. formed from nouns..... | 47 |
| LESSON XVI.—1. <i>Mixed</i> decl. of Adjs.—2. Adjs. following <i>mein</i> , etc.—3. <i>Eigen</i> . Endings of <i>Mixed</i> decl. nom.—4. <i>Ein</i> as numeral.—5. Inflection of <i>ein</i> and <i>fein</i> .—6. <i>Ein</i> preceded by def. art. | 50 |
| LESSON XVII.—1. Connected view of <i>Old</i> , <i>New</i> and <i>Mixed</i> declensions.—2. Words requiring adj. in <i>New</i> decl.—3. Words requiring adj. in <i>Mixed</i> decl..... | 51 |
| LESSON XVIII.—1. Indefinite pronouns.—2. 3. <i>Jedermann</i> .—4. <i>Jemand</i> .—5. <i>Niemand</i> .—6. <i>Nicht</i> with <i>Jemand</i> and <i>Etwas</i> .—7. <i>Einer</i> and <i>Keiner</i> | 56 |
| LESSON XIX.—1. 2. Indefinite pronoun <i>man</i> .—3. <i>Gar</i> , and <i>ganz</i> und <i>gar</i> | 59 |
| LESSON XX.—1. Prepositions with dat.—2. Prepositions with acc.—3. Prepositions with dat. and acc.—4. Preps. and def. art. contracted. Examples of <i>an</i> , <i>von</i> , <i>auf</i> , <i>aus</i> and <i>nach</i> | 61 |
| LESSON XXI.—1. Negative conjugation.—2. Position of <i>Nicht</i> .—3. In interrogative sentences.—4. <i>Geraden</i> and <i>Über</i> .—5. 6. <i>Nicht wahr?</i> —7. <i>Nicht</i> with <i>Noch</i> .—8. <i>Auch nicht</i> , <i>auch fein</i> , etc..... | 64 |
| LESSON XXII.—1. <i>New</i> decl. ending in unaccented <i>ar</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>er</i> , <i>el</i> .—2. Nouns not ending in <i>ar</i> , etc.—3. Adj. or Part. used substantively.—5. For determining decl. | 67 |
| LESSON XXIII.—Feminine gender.—1. Decl. of <i>bit</i> , <i>biſe</i> and <i>meine</i> .—2. Decl. of Adjs. in fem. gen. <i>Old</i> decl.—3. <i>New</i> decl.—4. Decl. of Fem. Nouns.—5. 6. Appellations of Females.—7. <i>U</i> , <i>v</i> , <i>u</i> , unlauted before the suffix <i>in</i> | 70 |
| LESSON XXIV.—1. Formation and Gen. of Diminutives.—2. Use of Diminutives.—3. <i>Fräulein</i> and <i>Mädchen</i> .—4. 5. Compound Nouns. Nouns with Nouns.—6. With Preps., etc.—7. With Adjs.—8. Compound Adjs.—9. 10. Nouns separated by hyphen.—11. 12. 13. Gender of Compound Nouns..... | 74 |
| LESSON XXV.—Plan of Composing German.—1. Art., and adj. Prons., <i>Plural</i> . Decl. in all Genders of Plur.—2. Adjs.—3. <i>Old</i> decl.—4. 5. <i>Plural</i> of Nouns of <i>Old</i> decl., <i>Neuter</i> .—6. 7. <i>Masc.</i> —8. <i>Fem.</i> —9. Decl. of Nouns in Plural.—10. <i>haben</i> , <i>sein</i> and <i>leben</i> , pres. plur. | 76 |
| LESSON XXVI.—1. Irreg. Plur. of Nouns.—2. <i>Neuter</i> Nouns.—3. <i>Masc.</i> Nouns.—4. Nouns ending in <i>thum</i> .—5. Plural of <i>Mann</i> .—6. <i>Leute</i> and <i>Volk</i> .—7. <i>Apfel</i> , etc.—8. <i>Mutter</i> and <i>Tochter</i> .—9. <i>Mal</i> , etc.—10. Sing., how used..... | 84 |
| LESSON XXVII.—1. Decl. of Pers. Prons.—2. <i>Second Pers. Sing.</i> —3. <i>Second Pers. Plur.</i> —4. <i>Third Pers. Sing.</i> —5. <i>Third Pers. Plur.</i> | 87 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| • LESSON XXVIII.—1. 2. Gen. of Pers. Prons.—3. Dat. with <i>von</i> .— 4. Pronouns referring to <i>Neuter</i> Appellations of Persons.— 5. Gender of Prons. representing inanimate objects.—6. Adverbs substituted for <i>pron.</i> and <i>prep.</i> —7. Use of <i>cā</i> as gram. subj.— 8. Position of.—9. 10. Various uses of <i>cā</i> .—11. Prons. of differ- ent persons.—12. Pron. repeated.—13. Gen. of a Pers. Pron. be- fore Numerals..... | 91 |
| LESSON XXIX.—1. Reflexive use of Pers. Prons.—2. <i>Sich</i> .—3. 4. 5. <i>Selbst</i> .—6. Reflexive pronouns used as reciprocal.—7. <i>Sich</i> rendered by Pers. Pron.—8. Position of Pers. Pron. in inter- rogative sentences.—9. 10. 11. Reflexive Verbs | 95 |
| LESSON XXX.— <i>New decl. plur.</i> —1. Adjs.—2. Nouns.—3. <i>Fem.</i> Nouns.—4. 5. 6. Decl. of <i>Proper Names</i> .—7. <i>Foreign Proper</i> <i>Names</i> .—8. <i>Proper Names of Places and Countries</i> .—9. <i>Connected</i> <i>View</i> of the Art, Demonstr. and Poss. Prons., Adj. and Nouns, in all Decls..... | 100 |
| LESSON XXXI.—Irreg. decl. of Nouns.—1. Nouns inflected ac- cording to <i>New decl.</i> —2. Mixed decl. of Adjs. in plur.—3. <i>ſtē</i> and <i>ſtēre</i> .—4. <i>Der Schmerz</i> .—5. Nouns taking <i>Old decl.</i> in <i>ſing.</i> , and <i>New</i> in <i>plur.</i> —6. Decl. of <i>Bauer</i> and <i>Mage</i> .—7. <i>Zeit</i> and <i>Stück</i> .—8. <i>ſec.</i> —9. <i>Mixed decl.</i> of Adj..... | 106 |
| LESSON XXXII.—Comparison of Adjs.—1. Comparative.—2. Su- perlative.—3. When unlaute.—4. Irregular.—5. How declin- ed.—6. Superlative after <i>am</i> .—7. Superlative combined with <i>ſſer</i> .—8. Comparative by means of <i>Mehr</i> , <i>Weniger</i> , etc.—9. Par- ticiples, how declined.—10. <i>Je-beſſer</i> and <i>je-je</i> .—11. Position of subject and verb | 109 |
| LESSON XXXIII.—1. Adjs. used substantively.—2. As abstract Nouns.—3. <i>Beſt</i> .—4. Comparative of <i>Raſe</i> .—5. Formation of Adjs. from <i>Proper Names of Countries and Cities</i> .—6. From <i>Pro-</i> <i>per Names of Persons</i> .—7. Denoting a sect..... | 113 |
| LESSON XXXIV.—1. <i>ſittl</i> and <i>ſauter</i> , omission of inflectional endings.—2. Several Adjs. qualifying the same noun.—3. In nom. and acc. Neut.—4. Adj. denoting a language.—5. Form of the <i>New decl.</i> —6. Sentences used adjectively.—7. Adjs. used adverbially.—8. 9. Adverbs.—10. Comparative of <i>ſiel</i> , etc.... | 117 |
| LESSON XXXV.—1. Absolute Poss. Prons.—2. 3. Used substan- tively.—4. <i>Meineſgleichen</i> , etc.—5. <i>Gleichen</i> | 121 |
| LESSON XXXVI.—1. Conjugation of <i>ſaben</i> .—2. <i>Idioms</i> with <i>ſaben</i> .—3. <i>Position</i> of the main verb in <i>compound tenses</i> .— 4. Verb with two objects connected by a conj.—5. Two or more nouns in <i>ſing.</i> —6. With collective nouns.—7. With words as titles, in <i>ſing.</i> | 125 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| LESSON LX.—1. Prepositions with gen.—2. Längs and Troß.—3. Entlang.—4. Halb, halben or halber, ungeachtet and wegen.—5. Um willen.—6. Halben, etc., in compounds.—7. Anstatt.—8. Wegen preceded by von | 220 |
| LESSON LXI.—1. Adjs. with gen.—2. With acc.—3. Voll.—4. Freß.—5. Schußbig.—6. Werth.—7. Gen. used in denoting relation of magnitude.—8. Used adverbially.—9. Denoting possessor.—10. Gen. of Pers. prons. used partitively.—11. Gen. used partitively.—12. As predicate after the verb Sein | 224 |
| LESSON LXII.—1. Reflexive Verbs with gen.—2. Impersonal Verbs with gen.—3. Transitive Verbs with gen.—4. Verbs followed by prepositions.—5. Verbs with gen. and acc.—6. Achten and Warten.—7. Fahren.—8. Geben.—9. Laßen, Speiten and Walten | 228 |
| LESSON LXIII.—1. Adjs. with dat.—2. Dat. substituted for a poss. pron.—3. Occasional use of the first and second persons of prons. in dat.—4. Dat. with bei, von and zu | 234 |
| LESSON LXIV.—1. Verbs with dat.—2. Verbs governing dat. or acc.—3. Können | 237 |
| LESSON LXV.—Indefinite Numerals.—1. Ander.—2. Beide.—3. Dreiß.—4. Etwas.—5. So etwas.—6. Jegend.—7. 8. 9. Viel and Wenig.—10. Superlative of Viel.—11. Alle, all.—12. Plur. of All | 241 |
| LESSON LXVI.—Prepositions construed with dat.—1. Auf.—2. Außer.—3. Bei.—4. Entgegen.—5. Gegenüber.—6. Mit.—7. Mit compounded with verbs.—8. Nach.—9. Nach after its object.—10. Ob.—11. Ob.—12. Von.—13. Zu.—14. Zu preceded by auf or nach.—15. The dat. with zu in connection with Verben.—16. Idioms with zu and nach | 245 |
| LESSON LXVII.—Prepositions with acc.—1. Durch.—2. Für.—3. Gegen.—4. Ohne.—5. Um.—6. Um in compounds.—7. Acc. with Um rendered by our nom. | 249 |
| LESSON LXVIII.—Prepositions governing dat. and acc.—1. An.—2. Idioms with an.—3. Auf.—4. In.—5. Ueber.—6. Unter.—7. Vor | 251 |
| LESSON LXIX.—Adverbs and Conjunctions.—1. Aber.—2. Also.—3. Als.—4. Also.—5. Auch.—6. Bald.—7. Bis.—8. Da.—9. Daß.—10. Denn.—11. Doch.—12. Eben.—13. Ehe.—14. Erst.—15. Etwas.—16. Gar.—17. Gern.—18. Gleich.—19. Immer.—20. Ja.—21. Je.—22. Kein.—23. Nach.—24. Nun.—25. Nur.—26. Schon.—27. So.—28. Sonst.—29. Und.—30. Vielleicht.—31. Wie.—32. Wie wie.—33. Wie after an adjective in the comparative.—34. Wohl.—35. Wohl denoting a supposition or probability | 254 |
| LESSON LXX.—1. Modes of Address, Herr, Frau and Gräulein before Proper names.—2. Before words denoting relationship... | 260 |

INDEX TO THE LESSONS.*

| LESSONS. | LESSONS. |
|--|--|
| Über, sondern,.....21. 4. 69. 1. | Also,.....69. 4 |
| Abbreviations,.....70. | Am, with the superlative, ...32. 6 |
| Acc., 8. 1. With preps., 20. 2. | An, 68. 1. Idioms with,....68. 2. |
| Acc. or dat. with preps., 20. 3. | Anders, der andere, . ....65. 1. |
| With verbs, 61. 2. Acc. or | Anders,.....65. 1.6. |
| gen. with adj., 61. 2. 3. With | Anstatt, before infinitive, ....49. 5. |
| verbs, .....62. 5. | Anstatt or statt, .....60. 7. |
| Achten and warten,.....62. 6. | Apposition, rule for,.....12. 6. |
| Adja., 14. Attrib., 14. 2. Old decl., | Arts, decl. of, 8. 4. 12. 4. Fem., |
| 14. 3. Agreement, 14. 4. Pre- | 23. 1. Plur., 25. 1. Contract- |
| ceded by etwas, &c., 14. 6. | ed with preps., 20. 4. Use |
| Referring to noun under- | of, 42. Omission of,.....48. |
| stood, 14. 7. New decl., 15. 1. | Attributive adjective,.....14. 1. |
| Denoting material, 15. 5. | Auch, 69. 5. Auch nicht, auch fein, |
| Mixed decl., 16. 1. Connected | &c., after a negation; ....21. 8 |
| view, 17. Old decl. plur., 25. 3. | Auf,.....68. 3. |
| New decl. plur., 30. 1. Mixed | Aus,.....66. 1. |
| decl. plur., 31. 9. Comparison | Außer, .....66. 2. |
| of, 32. Compar., 32. 1. Su- | Auxiliary verbs, 45. 46. Use of |
| perl., 32. 2. Irregul. comp., | the auxiliaries haben and sein, 48. |
| 32. 4. Superlative after am, | Bald,.....69. 6. |
| 32. 6. Superl. suffixed to all, | Bestimmen, .....29. 10. |
| 32. 7. Comp. by adverbs, | Behalten, .....62. 1. oba. |
| 32. 8. Used substantively, | Bei, .....66. 3. |
| 33. 1. Abstract, 33. 2. Formed | Beide,.....65. 2. |
| from countries, &c., 33. 5. | Beides,.....65. 3. |
| From persons, 33. 6. Denot- | Bis,.....69. 7. |
| ing sect, 33. 7. Omission of | (Cardinal numbers,.....§ 44.) |
| infl. endings, 34. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. | Cases, .....8. 60. 61. 62. 68. 64. |
| Used adverbially, 34. 7. Re- | Chen, diminutives in, 24. 1. Re- |
| quiring gen., 61. 1. Acc., | presented by pron. masc. |
| 61. 2. Dat., .....63. 1 | or fem., .....28. 4. |
| Adverbs, pronominal, 28. 6. | Collocation of words, .....58. |
| Formation of adverbs, 34. 8. | Comparison of adjs., 32. Compa. |
| 9. 52. 5. 6. Nouns used as, 61. 8. | and sups., decl. of, 32. 5. Ir- |
| Außer, .....69. 2. | reg. forms of, .....32. 4 |
| Über, prefixed to superlatives, 32. 7. | Composing German, plan of, 25. |
| Als, 69. 3. Omission after so, 69. 3. | Compound adjectives,.....24. 8 |
| note. | Compound nouns, formation |
| Als mit,.....69. 32. | of, 24. 4. Gender of, ....24. 11 |

* See Contents of Lessons, p. ix; also General Index, p. 518.

| LESSONS. | LESSON |
|---|---|
| Compound verbs, separable, 51. | Einer, 18. 1 |
| Inseparable, 51. | Ein Paar, 59. 1 |
| Conditional mood, 56. | En, suffix, forming adjectives, 15. 1 |
| Conjugation of verbs, reg., 37. | Entgegen, 66. 4 |
| Irreg., 47. | Entlang, 60. 1 |
| Conjunctions, examples illustrating the use of, 69. | Erl, 69. 14 |
| Connected view of article, &c., 30. 9. | Es, peculiar use of, 23. 7. 8. 9. 10 |
| Consonants, classification and pronunciation of, 2. IV. V. | Es sei denn, 69. 10 |
| Da, 52. 1. 69. 8. Compounded with other words, 52. 2. | Etwa, 69. 15 |
| Dafür (nichts dafür können), 45. 6. | Etwas, 65. 4 |
| Das, peculiar use of, 44. 7. | Fehlen, 57. 1 |
| Du, 69. 9. | Femin. nouns, indeclinable in sing., 23. 4 |
| Dat., after certain preps., 20. 1. | Frau, Fräulein, 70. 1. 2 |
| With adjs., 63. 1. Substituted for poss. pron., 63. 2. | Froh, 61. 4 |
| Peculiar use of 63. 3. With verbs, 64. | Für, 67. 2 |
| Declension, of the arts., 8. 4. | Future tenses, how formed, 37. 10 |
| 12. 4. 23. 1. 25. 1. Of nouns, 8. 2. Old form, 8. 3. 25. 9. | Observations on the use of, 38. 4 |
| New form, 22. 30. 2. Of adjs., 14. 15. 16. 23. 2. 3. 25. 2. 3. 30. 1. Of pers. prons., 27. 1. Cf. comps. and superls., 32. 5. Of absolute poss. prons., 35. Of adj., art., noun, demonstr. and poss. prons., 30. 9. | Ganz und gar, 19. 3 |
| Demonstrative pronouns, .. 10. 44. | Gar, 19. 3. 69. 16 |
| Denn, 69. 10. | Ge, prefixed to the perfect part, 37. 2. Inserted between the prefix and the radical in compound verbs separable, 51. 3. Excluded from the perfect part. of compound verbs inseparable, 51. 1 |
| Der, determinative, when absolute, its form in the gen. plur., 41. 3. Relative, 39. | Geten, impersonally used, 57. 4 |
| Derjenige, 41. 1. | Gegen, 67. 3 |
| Derfelbe, 41. 4. | Gegenüber, 66. 5 |
| Deßhalb, 53. 6. | Gen., with preps., 60. With adjs., 61. Used adverbially, 61. 8. With reflexive verbs, 62. 1. After the impersonal es gefüßt, &c., 62. 2. With transitive verbs, 62. 3 |
| Deßto, 32. 10. | Genug, 53. 7. |
| Determinative pronouns, ... 41. | Geru, 69. 17. |
| Dieser and jener distinguished, 10. 1. | Gleich, 69. 18. |
| Dieses, dies, peculiar use of, ... 44. 7. | haben, conjugation of, 36. 1. |
| D. minutives, 24. 1. 2. Gend. of prons. referring to, 28. 4. | Idioms with, 36. 2. When and how used as an auxiliary, 48. 1. 2. |
| Diphthongs, sounds of, 2. III. | halb, halben or halber, 60. 4 |
| Doch, 69. 11. | halben, wegen and um—wissen with the gen. of pers. prons., 60. 6. |
| Durch, 67. 1. | haus, nach or zu, 43. 2 |
| Dürfen, remarks on, 45. 4. | heißen, 49. 1. 2. |
| Eben, 69. 12. Before demonstr. or determinative, 44. 8. | her and hin, 52. 2. 3. |
| Ehe, 69. 13. | herr, 70. 1. 2. |
| Eigen, 16. 3. | hin, 52. 2. 3. |
| | holen lassen, 49. 6. |
| | immer, 69. 19 |

| LESSONS. | LESSONS. |
|---|--|
| Imper. mood, past part. in place of, 50. 3. Observations on the several uses of, . . . 50. 5 | plur., 26. New decl. plur., 30. 2. Fem. plur., 30. 3. Proper names, decl. of, 30. 4. Foreign proper names, 30. 7. 8. Irreg. decl. of nouns, 31. (Numbers, § 44. § 45.) |
| Imperfect, how formed, 37. 7. 8. | Num., 69. 24. |
| Observations on the use of, 38. 2. | Nur, 69. 25. |
| Impersonal verbs, 57. | Ob., 66. 10. |
| Im, 68. 4. | Obje., 67. 4. Followed by the infinitive, 49. 5. |
| Indefinite numerals, 65. | (Ordinal numbers, § 46.) |
| Indefinite pronouns, 18. | Paradigm of <i>haben</i> , 36. 1. Of <i>lieben</i> , 37. Of <i>sein</i> , 46. 1. Of <i>werden</i> , 46. 3. Of a passive verb, 58. 1. |
| Indefinite pronoun <i>man</i> , . . 19. 1. 2. | Participles, how formed, 37. 1. 2. Declined like adjs., 37. 4. Past part. for the imper., 50. 3. Future part. . . 50. 4. |
| Indicative mood, for imper., 38. 1. c. | Particles, 51. 54 |
| Infinitive mood, use of, in place of past part., 45. 13. Without <i>zu</i> , 49. 1. As a neuter noun, 49. 4. Active form used passively, 49. 6. Answering after <i>bleiben</i> , <i>gehen</i> , &c., to our present part., . . 49. 1. | Passive verb, mode of forming, 58. 2. Paradigm of, 58. 1. Other methods expressing passivity, 19. 1. 29. 10. |
| Interrogative conjugation, . . 6. 1. | Perfect tense, how formed, 37. 9. Observat. on the use of, 38. 3. |
| Interrogative pronouns, . . . 13. | Pers. prons., decl. of, 27. 1. Second pers. sing., 27. 2. Second pers. plur., 27. 3. Third pers. sing. 27. 4. Third pers. plur. 27. 5. Observations on the use of pers. prons., 28. Used as reflexives, 29. 1. Construed with <i>haben</i> , <i>werden</i> and <i>sein</i> — <i>wissen</i> , 60. 6 |
| <i>Irrend</i> , 65. 6. | Pluperf., how formed, 37. 9 |
| Irregular verbs, 47. | Plurals, of art. and adj. prons., 25. 1. Of adjs., 25. 2. Old decl., 25. 3. Nouns of old decl., neut., 25. 4. 5. Masc., 25. 6. 7. Fem., 25. 8. Irreg. plur. of nouns, 26. New decl. plur., of adjs., 30. 1. Of nouns, 30. 2. 3. |
| <i>Ja</i> , 69. 20. | Poss. prons., 12. 2. When absolute, 35. |
| <i>Ja</i> , 69. 21. Before comparative, 32. 10. | Prefixes of verbs, compound sep., 51. Insep. 51. 1. Sep. and insep., 54. 2 |
| <i>Jeuer</i> and <i>dießer</i> , distinguished, 10. 1. | Preps., position of, 11. 5. With dat., 20. 1. With acc., 20. 2. With dat. or acc., 20. 3. With |
| <i>Jein</i> , 69. 22. | |
| <i>Jeiner</i> , 18. 7. | |
| <i>Jeines</i> von <i>beiden</i> , 65. 2. | |
| <i>Jeinen</i> , remarks on, 45. 5. | |
| <i>Jeines</i> , 60. 2. | |
| <i>Jeissen</i> , remark on, 45. 11. | |
| <i>Jein</i> , diminutives in, 24. 1. Represented by a pron. masc. or fem., 28. 4. | |
| <i>Man</i> , its use, 19. 1. 2. | |
| <i>Mit</i> , 66. 6. | |
| <i>Mit</i> , with verbs, 66. 7. | |
| Mixed declension of adjectives, 16. | |
| <i>Negen</i> , remarks on, 45. 7. | |
| Moods, indicative, 37. Infinitive, 49. Subjunctive, 55. Conditional, 56. Imperative, 50. 5. | |
| <i>Müssen</i> , remark on, 45. 8. | |
| <i>Nach</i> , 65. 8. | |
| <i>Nach</i> , following the word it governs, 66. 9. 16. | |
| Negative conjugation, 21. | |
| <i>Nicht wahr?</i> 21. 5. | |
| <i>Nach</i> , 69. 23. | |
| Nouns, decl. of, 8. 2. Old form of, 8. 4. New form of, 22. Old decl. plur., 25. 9. Irreg. | |

| LESSONS. | LESSONS. |
|--|--|
| gen., 60. Examples of the use of, 66. 67. 68. | Im, acc. with, 67. 7. |
| Prouns, poss., 12. 2. Absolute poss., 35. Interrog., 13. Indef., 18. Pers., 27. 28. Reflex. and recip., 29. Rel., 39. 40. Determin., 41. Demoust., 44. | Im—wollen, 60. 5. |
| Proper names, decl. of, 30. 4. Of countries, &c., 30. 8. | Imbin, with fennen, 43. 6. |
| Quantity, weight, &c., nouns denoting, 59. 3. | Umlauts, sounds of, 2. 11. |
| Redt haben, 36. 2. | Und, 69. 29. |
| Reciprocal pronouns, 29. 6. | Unrecht haben, 36. 2. |
| Reflexive pronouns, 29. 1. | Unter, 68. 6. |
| Reflexive verbs, 29. 9. Equivalent to intransitives or passives, 29. 10. | Unter vier Augen, 68. 6. |
| Reibe, 46. 2. | Verbs, reflex., 29. 9. 10. Aux., 45. Irreg., 47. Compound, sep., 51. Insep., 54. Impera., 57. Passive, 58. |
| Relat. prons., 39. 40. Never omitted, 40. 7. | Viel, when declined, 65. 7. 8. 9. |
| Schen, 69. 26. | Vielmehr, 69. 30. |
| Schuld sein, 46. 2. | Voll, 61. 3. |
| Schuldig, 61. 5. | Von, 66. 12. With the dative, instead of the genitive, . . . 11. 4. |
| Sein, paradigm of, 46. 1. When and how used as auxiliary, 48. | Vor, 68. 7. |
| Seit, 66. 11. | Vowels, classification and pronunciation of, 2. 1. |
| Selbst or selber, 29. 3. 4. | Was, interrog., 13. Rel., . . . 40. |
| Selbst, before a noun, 29. 5. | Was, for warum, 13. 6. |
| Se, 69. 27. | Was für ein, 13. |
| Es Etwas, 65. 5. | Wegen, 60. 4. 6. |
| Selber, 41. 5. | Welcher, interrog., 13. Rel., . . 39. |
| Sollen, remarks on, 45. 9. As imper., 50. 5. <i>obs.</i> | Wenig, when declined, . . . 65. 7. 8. 9. |
| Some, 59. 4. | Wer, interrog., 13. Rel., . . . 40. |
| Sonst, 69. 28. | Werden, paradigm of, 46. 3. As an independent verb, 46. 4. |
| Spaciren gehen, fahren, &c., . . 49. 2. | With the dat., 46. 4. <i>obs.</i> |
| Subjunctive mood, observations on the several uses of, 55. | Werb, 61. 6. |
| Tenses, use of, present, 38. 1. Imperfect, 38. 2. Perfect, 38. 3. Futures, 38. 4. | Wie, 69. 31. 33. Wie viel, . . . 65. 7. |
| Tropf, 60. 2. | Wie befinden Sie sich?, 29. 10. |
| Ueber, 68. 5. | Wissen, before an infinitive, 49. 7. |
| Uhr, 65. 7. | Wie, compounded with other words, 52. |
| Um, 67. 5. | Wohl, 69. 34. |
| Um, in compounds, 67. 6. | Wohl, denoting doubt, supposition, &c., 69. 35. |
| | Wollen, remarks on, 45. 10. |
| | Zu, 66. 13. Between the parts of a compound verb, 51. 3. |
| | Zu, 66. 13. <i>id.</i> 15. 16. |
| | Zufolge, 60. 2. |
| | Zu Grunde gehen, richten, . . . 43. 6. |
| | Zu Hause, 43. 2. |

WOODBURY'S NEW METHOD

LESSON I.

Lektion I.

THE LETTERS.

GERMAN ALPHABET.

Deutsches Alphabet.

| German. | English Pronunciation. | Examples. |
|--------------|------------------------|-----------|
| A a | a äh | Alt. |
| B b | b bay | Beten. |
| C c | c tsay | Ceder. |
| D d | d day | Dehnen. |
| E e | e e (as in prey) | Eben. |
| F f | f eff | Fett. |
| G g | g gay | Geben. |
| H h | h hah | Hahn. |
| I* i | i i (as in pique) | Ihnen. |
| J* j | j yote | Jota. |
| K k | k kah | Kahl. |
| L l | l ell | Elle. |
| M m | m emm | Empor'. |
| N n | n enn | Ende. |
| O o | o oh | Ohr. |
| P p | p pay | Peter. |
| Q q | q koo | Qual. |
| R r | r err (as in error) | Erst. |
| S s (21. S.) | s ess | Essen. |
| T t | t tay | Thee. |
| U u- | u o (as in do) | Ufer. |
| V v | v fow (as in fowl) | Volk. |
| W w | w vay | Wejen. |
| X x | x ix | Xir. |
| Y y | y ipsilon | System'. |
| Z z | z tset | Zettel. |

* S before a consonant answers to I, as in In; before a vowel it answers to Y, as in Jahr.

COMPOUND CONSONANTS.

ch, *ch* = tsay-läh; ck, *ck* = tsay-käh; sch, *sch* = es-tsay-häh, *ss*
ff = es-es; st, *st* = es-tay; sz, *ß* = es-tsct; tz, *tß* = tay-tsct.

LESSON II.

Lecçon II.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. *Vowels.*

1. A, *a* sounds like *a* in ah, *marl*: Ahn, Saal, Flatt.
2. E, *e* sounds like *e* in tete, *very*: Ernst, Herr, Herr.
3. I, *i* sounds like *i* in pique, *ill*: Ihr, Bild, Kind.
4. O, *o* sounds like *o*, *oo*, in no, *door*: Obr, Mont, Boot.
5. U, *u* sounds like *o*, *oo*, in do, *moor*: Ubr, Hund, Hier.
6. Y, *y* sounds like *i* in Ihr, Bild, Joy, Etyr, Eyrup.

A vowel when doubled, or followed by *b* in the same syllable, is thereby lengthened; preceding a double consonant it is shortened.

Words in this and the following lessons, unless otherwise noted, take the primary accent on the first syllable.

II. *Umlauts.*

The Umlauts are produced by a union of *e* with *a*, *o*, *u*, respectively, as in Achre or Ähre, Del or Æl, ueter or üter. Except when they are capitals, however, the *e* is more commonly expressed by two dots; thus, ä, ö, ü, (instead of ae, ee, ue).

1. Ae, *ä* sounds nearly like *e* in Apfel, Gärtner, spät.
2. Öe, *ö* sounds as heard in Del, Pöbel, Göthe.
3. Ue, *ü* sounds as heard in Uefel, Müller, Eüd.

For *ö* and *ü* we have in English no corresponding sounds. Del and Eüd, for example, might be understood if pronounced *oil* and *seed*; but this is by no means the correct pronunciation. The French *eu* in *peur*, answers most nearly, perhaps, to *ö*; and *u* in the word *vu* to *ü*.

III. *Diphthongs.*

1. Ai, *ai* (or *ay*) sounds like *ay* in aye: Hai, Mai.
2. Au, *au* sounds like *ou* in flour: Haus, Maus.
3. Ei, *ei* (or *ey*) sounds like *i* in die: Bein, Pein.
4. Eu, *eu* sounds nearly like *oi* in oil: Eule, Heu.
5. Äu, *äu* sounds nearly like *eu* in: Käufer, Neugeln.

IV. *Consonants.*

1. B, t, f, b, t, l, m, n, p, q, r, d, ph, ff and st sound like **b, d, f, h, k, l, n, n, p, q, x, ck, ph, ss** and **st**.
2. C, c before e (or ä), i and y in the same syllable sounds like **ç (ts)**; otherwise like **t**: Ceder, civil', Copal'.
3. G, g at the beginning of a syllable sounds like **g** in *gun*. After n, in the same syllable, it sounds like our **g** hard in like position: Angst, Rang, gar. Otherwise its sound usually approaches that of **ch**: Tag, regnen, Magd.
4. H, h in the midst or at the end of a syllable is silent, but serves to lengthen its vowel: Mehr, Lohn, Trun, Muth.
5. J, j sounds like **y** consonant: Jahr, Jude, Januar, Jubel.
6. R, r is uttered with a trill or vibration of the tongue, and with greater stress than our **r**: Rohr, Brod.
7. S, s at the beginning of a syllable followed by a vowel, has a sound between that of **z** and **s**: Sohn, find. Otherwise it sounds like **s**: Gas, was. At the end of a word s, instead of f, is employed.
8. T, t sounds like **t** in *test*: Text, Art. Where in English **t** sounds like **sh**, t has the sound of **ç (ts)**: Station, station.
9. V, v sounds like **f** in *fit*: Vetter. In foreign words v sounds like **w**: Venez'ig, Versai'les.
10. W, w has a sound between that of **w** and **v**: Welt, Wasser. After a consonant, in the same syllable, it sounds like **w**: Schwer, zwei.
11. Z, z sounds like **ts**: Zahl, zahm, Zinn, Pelz, Zimmer.

V. *Compound Consonants.*

1. Ch, ch in primitive words, followed by s, sounds like **k**: Tach's, Nach's. Otherwise ch has its guttural sound: Tuch nach, hoch.* In foreign words ch retains its original sound: Chor, charmant'.

* To aid in producing this sound take, for experiment, the above word hoch: pronounce ho precisely like our word ho! observing only to give as full and distinct a *breathing* at the close as at the beginning; thus, *hoh*—hoch. When not preceded by a, e, or u, however, a slight hissing sound of s or sh naturally attaches to the ch; ich, reich, reich.

2. *sch*, *sch* sounds like *sh*: *Schnur*, *Schild*, *Schiller*, *Schule*.
3. *ß* (though compounded of *f* and *z*) sounds like *ff*, and occurs only at the end of a syllable: *Fuß*, *naß*, *häßlich*.
4. *tß* (compounded of *t* and *z*) sounds like *z* and like *ß*, is used only at the end of a syllable: *Platz*, *stutzen*, *nützlich*.

VI. Accent.

1. In words compounded with a separable particle (§ 90 and 91), as also, with the prefix *un*, the primary accent is on the first syllable: *ab'fallen*, *ab'gefallen*, *un'gefällig*, *Un'fall*.
2. *Er* final, and also *ir* (*or* *ter*), in verbs ending in *iren* (*or* *teren*), take the accent: *Schreiberei'*, *poli'ren*, *risi'ren*.
3. Foreign words that have dropped the original endings, usually take the accent on the last syllable: *a. Admiral'*, *Contralt'*. Those that have taken German endings are generally accented on the penult: *b. Französ'isch*, *Apothe'ker*. Those that remain unchanged in form, often retain the original accent: *c. Colle'gium*, *Ministe'rium*.
4. Nearly all words, except those above noted, are accented on the radical or primitive syllable, thus corresponding to our words of Anglo-Saxon origin: *Wind'mühle*, *Freund'schaft*, *übermach'en*, *unterneh'men*, *versteh'en*, *le'ben*. *Leben'dig* is one of the very few exceptions to this latter rule.

In German as in English, the accent is often varied for the sake of contrast or emphasis: *Er ist nicht be'tehrt*, sondern *ver'tehrt*, he is not con'verted, but per'verted.

EXERCISE 1

Aufgabe 1.

Vowels, Unlauta, Diphthongs.

(a) *Alter*, *Mal*, *Mhle*. (e) *Erbe*, *stehen*, *mehr*, *Meer*, *nett*. (i, y) *Ich*, *Styl*, *Symbol'*. (o) *Dhr*, *Loos*, *bort*. (u) *Unter*, *Ruym*. (ai, ei) *Main*, *mein*. (au) *Faust*. (äu, eu) *Häute*, *Freund*, *heute*. (ä, e) *Aehren*, *Feder*, *Essel*. (ö) *Defen*, *hören*. (ü) *Über*, *Mühle*.

EXERCISE 2.

Aufgabe 2.

Consonants and Double Consonants.

(c) *Cadet'*, *Cäsar*, *Liber*, *Classe*, *Section'*. (g) *Gabel*, *gehen*, *Gift*, *Gondel*, *ruhig*, *Ring*. (i) *Ja*. (r) *Reif*, *rar*. (f, s) *Süß*, *Reis*. (t) *Titel*, *Ration'*. (v) *Vase*, *von*. (w) *Wort*, *Wind*, *Schwert*. (z) *Zink*, *Zeit*. (ch) *Flach*, *wachsen*, *Chaos*, *Licht*, *Chaussee'*. (sch) *Schaft*, *Fisch*. (ff) *Reiß*, *messen*. (ß, z) *Kloß*, *kurz*.

Lesson III. Section III.

a b c d e f g h i j
 k l m n o p q r s t
 u v w x y z
 a b c d e f g h i j k l m n
 o p q r s t u v w x y z
 a b c d e f g h i j k l m n
 o p q r s t u v w x y z

Exercise 3. Aufgabe 3.

Almuth Lueger Luiza Dallas
Fregat Siefta Götta Guerin
Jenny Jacob's Paul Dyring
Margal Maurer Ciz, Pfaffe
Quinn's Kieffer Piffalar Tack
Wflam Wblam Ximano Yffilanti
im Zpfokla. Aa, Ca, Ua. A. C. U.
Da Trifnet ist das Mausefau jufftes Glück

LESSON IV.

Section IV.

FORMS OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. In German the definite article has, in the nominative singular, a distinct form for each gender:

Masculine, der, the; *feminine*, die, the; *neuter*, das, the.

2 *haben*, TO HAVE, IN THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR.

Affirmatively.

Interrogatively.

1st. *prs.* ich habe, I have;

habe ich? have I?

2d. *prs.* Sie haben, you have;

haben Sie? have you?

3d. *prs.* er hat, he has;

hat er? has he?

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Haben Sie das Leder?

Have you the leather?

Nein, ich habe das Brod.

No, I have the bread.

Hat der Glaser das Glas?

Has the glazier the glass?

Ja, er hat das Glas und das Gold.

Yes, he has the glass and the gold.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Das Brod, the bread;

Das, the { see 1);

Der, the {

Er, he;

Es, it;

Das Glas, the glass;

Das Gold, the gold;

haben, to have (see 2);

Ich, I;

Sa, yes;

Das Leder, the leather.

Nein, no;

Oder, or;

Der Sattler, the saddler;

Der Schmied, the smith;

Sie, you;

Das Silber, the silver;

Und, and;

Was, what;

Wer, who.

EXERCISE 4.

Aufgabe 4.

1. Was haben Sie? *
2. Ich habe Brod.*
3. Was hat der Sattler?
4. Er hat das Glas.
5. Was habe ich?
6. Sie haben Gold.
7. Haben Sie das Glas?
8. Nein, ich habe das Leder.
9. Hat er das Silber?
10. Nein, er hat das Gold.
11. Habe ich das Brod?
12. Ja, Sie haben es.
13. Wer hat das Leder?
14. Der Sattler hat es.
15. Wer hat das Silber?
16. Der Schmied hat es.
17. Hat der Sattler das Glas oder das Gold?
18. Er hat das Gold und das Silber.

* For use of capitals in writing German, see p. 267, note. Writing in the German character (L. III.) will soon render it familiar, and at the same time be well adapted to fix in the memory the forms and meanings of the words.

EXERCISE 5.

Aufgabe 5.

1. Have you the bread? 2. Yes, I have it. 3. Has he the glass? 4. No, he has the bread. 5. Who has the bread? 6. I have it. 7. Have I the glass or the gold? 8. You have the glass and the gold. 9. Has the saddler the bread or the leather? 10. He has the bread and the leather. 11. What has the smith? 12. He has the gold and the glass. 13. What has the saddler? 14. He has the gold. 15. Who has the silver? 16. I have it. 17. Have you the gold? 18. No, the saddler has it.

LESSON V.

Section V.

Singen AND Warten IN THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR.

| | |
|--|------------------------|
| 1st. <i>prs.</i> ich sing-e, I sing; | ich wart-e, I wait; |
| 2d. <i>prs.</i> Sie sing-en, you sing; | Sie wart-en, you wait; |
| 3d. <i>prs.</i> er sing-t, he sings; | er wart-et, he waits. |

1. Thus the present tense singular is indicated by *e* for the first person, *en* for the second, and *t* (or *et**) for the third: that part preceding these endings being the root.

2. For the three forms common in English, the German has but one: thus, ich singe, I sing, I do sing, I am singing.

3. Like singen and warten are conjugated in the same tense and number, unless otherwise designated, the verbs in this and subsequent exercises.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Der Mann singt das Lied. | The man is singing the song. |
| Ich höre was Sie sagen. | I hear what you are saying. |
| Das Kind spielt und singt. | The child is playing and singing. |
| Sie hören was ich sage. | You hear what I say. |
| Ich kaufe das Papier. | I am buying the paper. |
| Der Müller trinkt Kaffee und Thee. | The miller drinks coffee and tea. |

* When the root ends in *b* or *t*, the 3d. person adds *e* to the *t*; thus, wart-et, instead of wart-t; *e* is also often added or omitted according to the choice of different writers.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Das Buch, the book; | Der Müller, the miller; |
| Der Fisch, the fish; | Sagen, to say; |
| Fliegen, (see 3.) to fly; | Schreiben, to write; |
| Das Fleisch, the meat; | Der Schüler, the scholar; |
| Der Fleischer, the butcher; | Der Schwan, the swan; |
| Hören, to hear; | Schwimmen, to swim; |
| Kaufen, to buy; | Singen, to sing; |
| Der Koch, the cook; | Trinken, to drink; |
| Das Korn, the grain; | Warten, to wait; |
| Das Mehl, the flour; | Das Wasser, the water. |

EXERCISE 6.

Aufgabe 6.

1. Der Schüler kauft das Buch. 2. Der Müller kauft das Korn.
3. Wer kauft das Brod? 4. Der Koch kauft das Brod und das
Fleisch. 5. Ich höre was Sie sagen. 6. Ich trinke Wasser. 7. Der
Fisch schwimmt, der Schwan fliegt. 8. Der Schüler schreibt was
er hört. 9. Er hört was Sie sagen und was ich sage. 10. Ich
höre was der Müller sagt. 11. Wer wartet? 12. Ich warte.
13. Was sagt der Schmied? 14. Wer singt? 15. Der Fleischer
singt und trinkt. 16. Wer kauft das Fleisch? 17. Der Müller
oder der Schmied kauft es. 18. Sie kaufen Brod, er kauft Fleisch,
und ich kaufe Mehl.

EXERCISE 7.

Aufgabe 7.

1. The miller is writing. 2. Who is buying the meat? 3.
The cook is buying it. 4. I hear what you say. 5. The miller
buys the grain and the cook buys the flour. 6. The butcher
is singing. 7. Who is singing? 8. Who sings? 9. The cook
is singing. 10. The saddler is buying the book. 11. Who
buys bread? 12. The miller is drinking water. 13. The fish
swims, the swan flies and swims. 14. The butcher buys flour,
you buy meat, and I buy bread. 15. Who hears what I say?
16. I hear what you say. 17. You hear what he says. 18.
Who is buying meat? 19. The saddler or the smith is buy
ing it.

LESSON VI.

Lection VI.

INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

1. German verbs in the present and imperfect, when used interrogatively, precede the subject, like *have* and *be* in English :

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Was haben Sie ? | What have you ? |
| Was sagen Sie ? | What do you say ? (What say you) |
| Wo ist er ? | Where is he ? |
| Wo wohnt er ? | Where does he live ? (Where lives he ?) |

2. PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *Wissen**Affirmatively.*

| |
|------------------------|
| ich weiß, I know ; |
| Sie wissen, you know ; |
| er weiß, he knows ; |

Interrogatively.

| |
|----------------------------|
| weiß ich ? do I know ? |
| wissen Sie ? do you know ? |
| weiß er ? does he know ? |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Wissen Sie was ich sehe ? | Do you know what I see ? |
| Weiß der Mann wo Sie wohnen ? | Does the man know where you live ? |
| Dort steht der Jäger ; verstehen Sie was er sagt ? | Yonder stands the hunter, do you understand what he says ? |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Bäcker, the baker ;
 Der Bauer, the peasant ;
 Besen, see p. 474.
 Das Eisen, the iron ;
 Das Geld, the money ;
 Der Goldschmied, the goldsmith ;
 Hämmern, to hammer ;
 Heulen, to howl ;
 Der Hund, the dog ;
 Der Jäger, the hunter ;

Das Öl (or Del, L. 2. II. 2.) the oil,
 Das Papier, the paper ;
 Das Pult, the desk ;
 Das Salz, the salt ;
 Verkaufen, to sell (L. 2. VI. 4) ;
 Verstehen, to understand ;
 Wann, when ;
 Warum, why ;
 Wo, where ;
 Der Wolf, the wolf.

EXERCISE 8.

Aufgabe 8.

1. Was haben Sie ? 2. Was kaufen Sie ? 3. Hat der Koch das Papier ? 4. Kauft der Koch das Brod ? 5. Was hat der Bäcker, und was kauft er ? 6. Was kauft der Bäcker, und was verkauft er ? 7. Warum verkauft der Goldschmied das Silber ? 8. Kauft der Koch das Del und das Salz ? 9. Wann und wo singt der Bauer ? 10. Was singt der Jäger ? 11. Kauft der Schüler das Pult ? 12. Versteht der Bauer was ich sage ? 13. Warum hämmert der Schmied das Eisen ? 14. Hat der Sattler das Eisen ? 15.

Warum heißt der Hund? 16. Warum heult der Wolf? 17. Weiß der Schüler warum ich warte? 18. Dort steht der Bauer, verstehen Sie was er sagt?

EXERCISE 9.

Aufgabe 9.

1. What has the baker? 2. What does the baker buy? 3. What does the baker sell? 4. Is the dog barking? 5. Why is he barking? 6. Where does he stand, and what does he understand? 7. Why is the goldsmith waiting? 8. Does the peasant buy the grain? 9. When does the smith hammer the iron? 10. Where does the scholar sell the desk? 11. Does the goldsmith hammer the gold? 12. Where does the cook buy the salt? 13. Does the saddler sell the oil? 14. Is the wolf howling? 15. Why is he howling? 16. When and where does the hunter sing? 17. Is the baker or the peasant waiting? 18. Does the peasant know what the baker says?

LESSON VII.

Lesson VII.

VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PRESENT SINGULAR INDICATIVE.

1. In the third person singular of several verbs, the root vowel *e* is changed to *i* or *ie*, while in that of some others *a*, *o* and *u*, take the Umlaut (L. 47. 6. and § 78, p. 346):

| | | | |
|-------------------------|------------|----------------------|----------|
| ich breche, | I break; | ich sehe, | I see; |
| Sie brechen, | you break; | Sie sehen, | you see; |
| er bricht (not brecht), | he breaks; | er sieht (not seht), | he sees. |

GENDER OF NOUNS.

2. In German some names of inanimate objects are called masculine, and some feminine;* while some names of animate objects are called neuter:

*Masculine.**Feminine.**Neuter.*

Der Winter, the winter; Die Tinte, the ink; Das Kind, the child.

* This is true of nearly all languages. Many words, however, though denoting the same objects, are regarded in different languages as being of different genders. Thus, for *brig*, the French, *bric* is masculine, while the German, *Brigg* is feminine. For *head*, the German *Kopf*, is masculine, the French, *tête* is feminine, and the Latin, *caput* is neuter.

Beispiele.

| | |
|---|--|
| liest das Kind das Buch? | Does the child read the book? |
| Was sagt der Lehrer? | What does the teacher say? |
| Das Kind hat das Brod. | The child has the bread. |
| Wer kauft das Pferd? | Who is buying the horse? |
| Der Donner rollt, der Regen fällt. | The thunder rolls, the rain falls. |
| Verkauft der Bauer das Kalb und das Lamm? | Does the peasant sell the calf and the lamb? |

EXAMPLES.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Bröchen, to break; (L. 47. 6.) | Lesen, to read; (L. 47. 6.) |
| Donnern, to thunder; | Noch, nor; |
| Entweder, either; | Der Pfeffer, the pepper; |
| Der Essig, the vinegar; | Das Schaaf, or Schaaß, the sheep; |
| Fallen, to fall; (L. 47. 6.) | Der Schnee, the snow; |
| Der Kaffee, the coffee; | Schneiden, to cut; |
| Das Kalb, the calf; | Der Senf, the mustard; |
| Der Kaufmann, the merchant; | Der Thee, the tea; |
| Lachen, to laugh; | Weber, neither; |
| Das Lamm, the lamb; | Wie, how; |
| Der Lehrer, the teacher; | Der Zucker, the sugar. |

EXERCISE 10.

Aufgabe 10.

1. Warum brechen Sie das Brod? 2. Lesen Sie das Buch! 3. Kauft der Fleischer das Schaaf oder das Lamm? 4. Er kauft weder das Schaaf noch das Lamm, er kauft das Kalb. 5. Trinkt der Kaufmann entweder Kaffee oder Thee? 6. Was kauft der Koch? 7. Er kauft Essig, Pfeffer, Senf und Zucker. 8. Wann fällt der Schnee? 9. Warum trinken Sie Wasser? 10. Warum trinkt der Kaufmann Bier? 11. Verstehen Sie was der Lehrer sagt? 12. Hören Sie was das Kind sagt? 13. Wer verkauft Kaffee, Thee und Zucker? 14. Warum kauft der Jäger Brod? 15. Verstehen Sie was der Fleischer liest? 16. Warum lacht der Schüler? 17. Das Kind schneidet das Papier. 18. Es donnert.

EXERCISE 11.

Aufgabe 11.

1. Is the teacher reading? 2. What is he reading? 3. Is the cook breaking the bread? 4. No, he is cutting it. 5. Why does the butcher buy the calf, the sheep and the lamb? 6. What does the child sing? 7. Is the hunter drinking tea or coffee? 8. Why is the cook buying mustard, pepper, sugar and vinegar? 9. Do you know when the snow falls? 10. Why are you laughing? 11. Do you know how the child sings

12. Does the child know how you read? 13. Does the child break the bread? 14. The scholar understands what you say. 15. Do you know why I am laughing? 16. Does it thunder? 17. What are you buying, bread or flour? 13. I am buying neither bread nor flour.



LESSON VIII

Lection VIII.

CASES.

1. There are in German four cases; namely, the
NOMINATIVE, which answers to our nominative; the
GENITIVE, which answers mainly to our possessive; the
DATIVE, for which we have no exact equivalent; and the
ACCUSATIVE, which answers to the English objective.

The dative denotes the object for or in relation to which an action is performed, and is usually rendered by our objective governed by a preposition.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

2. Nouns have two forms of declension, called the *old* and the *new*.

3. Nouns of the *old* declension that end in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *den* and *lein*, form the genitive by adding *s*; the dative and accusative remaining like the nominative.

4. OLD DECLENSION OF NOUNS, MASCULINE AND NEUTER, WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| N. der Maler, the painter; | das Eisen, the iron; |
| G. des Malers, the painter's; | des Eisens, of the iron (L. 9); |
| D. dem Maler, to the painter; | dem Eisen, to or for the iron; |
| A. den Maler, the painter. | das Eisen, the iron. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Haben Sie des Malers Buch? | Have you the painter's book? |
| Nein, ich habe des Schülers Buch. | No, I have the scholar's book. |
| Das Leder gehört dem Sattler. | The eather belongs to the saddler |

The article agrees with its noun in gender, case and number.

30 VERBS CONSTRUED WITH THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

VERBS WITH THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

5 When the dative and accusative are both governed by the same verb, the *dative* comes *first*; except that the *accusative*, if it be a personal pronoun, precedes the dative.

| | |
|--|--|
| Der Freund verspricht dem Sattler das Geld. | The friend promises (to) the saddler the money. |
| Warum giebt er es dem Schneider? | Why does he give it to the tailor? |
| Er macht dem Lehrer ein Pult. | He is making (for) the teacher desk. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Das Werk lobt den Meister. | The work praises the master. |
| Das Kind hat des Schülers Bleistift. | The child has the scholar's pencil. |
| Wer schickt dem Bäcker den Ring? | Who sends the baker the ring? |
| Warum tadeln Sie den Schüler? | Why do you blame the scholar? |
| Gehört das Tuch dem Weber? | Does the cloth belong to the weaver? |
| Verkauft er es dem Schneider? | Does he sell it to the tailor? |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Der Ball, the ball; | Der Mann, the man; |
| Der Bleistift, the pencil; | Das Pferd, the horse; |
| Der Brief, the letter; | Der Reis, the rice; |
| Der Bruder, the brother; | Der Ring, the ring; |
| Der Deckel, the cover; | Schicken, to send; |
| Geben, to give; (L. 47. 6.) | Der Stahl, the steel; |
| Gehö'ren, to belong (L. 2. VI. 4); | Der Stock, the cane; |
| Der Glaser, the glazier; | Der Stuhl, the chair; |
| Der Hut, the hat; | Der Tisch, the table; |
| Der Kellner, the waiter; | Der Weizen, the wheat. |

EXERCISE 12.

Aufgabe 12.

1. Das Kind giebt dem Schüler den Ball. 2. Wer verkauft der Glaser den Deckel, den Stuhl und das Eisen? 3. Der Deckel gehört dem Glaser, der Ring gehört dem Schüler, und der Bleistift gehört dem Kellner. 4. Des Bäckers Bruder kauft den Hut, den Stock den Stuhl und den Tisch. 5. Lesen Sie des Jägers Brief? 6. Nein, ich gebe dem Jäger den Brief. 7. Verkauft der Mann den Reis und den Weizen? 8. Er verkauft dem Bauer den Reis und schickt dem Müller den Weizen. 9. Warum hämmert der Schmied das Eisen und den Stahl? 10. Gehört das Geld dem Bauer oder dem Fleischer? 11. Es gehört dem Bauer, und das Pferd gehö

dem Fleischer. 12. Was sagt das Kind dem Sattler? 13. Warum schickt der Bauer dem Müller den Weizen? 14. Der Müller schickt dem Bauer das Mehl, und der Bauer verkauft es dem Kellner. 15. Wer verkauft dem Schüler den Bleistift und das Papier?

EXERCISE 13.

Aufgabe 13.

1. Who sells the saddler the iron and the steel? 2. Has the glazier's brother the waiter's letter? 3. No, the waiter has the letter. 4. The child has the scholar's pencil and ring. 5. The cover belongs to the glazier, the hat belongs to the scholar. 6. The man sells the hunter the horse and the dog. 7. The child gives the scholar the paper and the pencil. 8. What does the peasant send to the miller? 9. Who sends the miller the grain and the money? 10. The peasant sells the miller the wheat, and the miller sends the waiter the flour. 11. The rice belongs to the waiter, the wheat belongs to the peasant, the table belongs to the teacher, and the chair belongs to the scholar. 12. Who hammers the steel and the iron? 13. Why does the cook buy the tea, the coffee, the oil, the pepper, the salt and the vinegar? 14. Does the cane belong to the saddler or to the tailor? 15. Is the smith buying the iron or the steel?

LESSON IX.

Lection IX.

GENITIVE RENDERED BY THE OBJECTIVE.

1. The genitive more commonly follows its governing noun, and may be rendered either by our possessive, or by the objective governed by *of*:

Haben Sie das Buch des Schülers? Have you the book of the scholar? Have you the scholar's book?

NOUNS ADDING *es* IN THE GENITIVE.

2. Nouns of the old declension, not ending in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *chen* and *lein*, add *es* in the genitive and *e* in the dative; the accusative remaining like the nominative (compare L. 8. 3.):

Wer hat des Koches Brod? Who has the cook's bread?
Was verkaufen Sie dem Koch? What do you sell to the cook?

Jemand verkauft dem Schmiede den Stahl und das Eisen. Somebody is selling the smith the steel and the iron.

Der Schmied giebt dem Kinde das Geld und das Brod. The smith gives the child the money and the bread.

3. Note, however, that nouns of this class sometimes drop the e of the genitive, and, occasionally, that of the dative (§ 13. 3. p. 274):

Auf des Vogts (Vogtes) Befehl.

At the bailiff's command.

Wer hat des Kaufmanns Pferd?

Who has the merchant's horse?

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Der Fischer verkauft dem Koche den Aal und den Lachs. The fisherman sells the cook the eel and the salmon.

Wer hat den Bogen, den Pfeil, und den Stoch des Kindes? Who has the bow, the arrow and the cane of the child?

Wer giebt dem Pferde das Heu? Who gives the horse the hay?

Das Kind giebt dem Schaafe das Heu. The child gives the sheep the hay.

Der Bruder des Kindes verkauft dem Manne den Ring und den Stoch. The brother of the child sells the man the ring and the cane.

Gehört dieses Brett dem Kaufmanne oder dem Schmiede? Does this board belong to the merchant or to the smith?

Nein, es gehört dem Zimmermanne. No, it belongs to the carpenter.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Aal, the eel;
Der Baum, the tree;
Der Bogen, the bow;
Das Brett, the board;
Das Faß, the cask, barrel;
Der Fischer, the fisherman;
Das Garn, the yarn;
Das Gras, the grass;
Das Heu, the hay;
Das Huhn, the fowl;
Der Kalk, the lime;

Der Kaufmann, the merchant;
Der Küfer, the cooper;
Das Kupfer, the copper;
Der Pfeil, the arrow;
Der Sattel, the saddle;
Der Sohn, the son;
Der Spaten, the spade;
Spielen, to play;
Versprechen (L. 7.) to promise
Der Wald, the forest;
Das Zinn, the tin.

EXERCISE 14.

Aufgabe 14.

1. Verspricht der Fischer dem Koche den Aal? 2. Sehen Sie de Wald? 3. Verkauft der Bauer dem Küfer den Baum? 4. Ist und der Küfer verkauft dem Müller das Faß. 5. Gehört der Boge dem Manne? 6. Der Bogen gehört dem Manne, und der Pfeil ge

hört dem Kinde. 7. Wer verkauft dem Schmiede das Zinn und das Kupfer? 8. Schickt der Sattler dem Manne den Sattel? 9. Wer verkauft dem Kaufmann das Garn, das Heu und den Kalf? 10. Gehört das Brett dem Bruder des Schmiedes? 11. Wer schickt dem Schmiede den Spaten? 12. Gehört das Gras dem Schmiede? 13. Verkauft der Koch dem Kinde das Huhn? 14. Nein, das Kind verkauft es dem Koche. 15. Der Kaufmann hat das Eisen des Schmiedes und das Silber des Goldschmiedes. 16. Das Kino spielt und der Schwan fliegt.

EXERCISE 15.

Aufgabe 15

1. Who sells the merchant the tin and the copper? 2. The copper belongs to the merchant, he sells it to the smith. 3. Who sells the cook the eel and the fowl? 4. Who promises the child the bow and the arrow? 5. Does the peasant sell the merchant the forest? 6. No, he sells the cooper the tree. 7. The peasant has the spade of the fisherman. 8. Who sells the man the lime, the cask and the board? 9. The brother of the cook sends the smith the bread, the meat and the flour. 10. The brother of the miller has the horse and the saddle of the smith. 11. The child gives the horse and the sheep the hay. 12. Does the cooper or the miller buy the yarn of the peasant? 13. The brother of the merchant buys it. 14. Who sells the smith the iron and the steel? 15. Who sells the goldsmith the silver? 16. Who is playing, and what is flying?

LESSON X.

Lection X.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS Dieser AND Jener.

1. Dieser (*this*), refers to the nearer, and jener (*that*), to the more remote of two objects. When not contrasted with jener, however, dieser may often be rendered by *that*:

Dieser Kaffee ist besser als jener.

This coffee is better than *that*.

Dieses Brod ist besser als jenes.

This bread is better than *that*.

Wie alt ist dieses Pferd?

How old is *that* horse?

2. Dieser may often be rendered by *the latter* and jener by *the former* :

Ich kenne den Kaufmann und den Arzt; I know the merchant and the physician;
dieser ist reich, jener ist arm. the *latter* is rich, the *former* is poor.

3. For the word *one* after a pronoun or adjective no corresponding word is employed in German :

Dieser Tisch gehört dem Schüler und jener dem Lehrer. This table belongs to the scholar and that (one) to the teacher.
Der ist alt, dieser ist neu. That one is old, this one is new.

4. DECLENSION OF Dieser COMPARED WITH ARTICLE Der.

| Masc. | Neut. | (Lesson VIII.) |
|-------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| N. dieſ-er, | dieſ-eſ, this; | (N. der, daſ). |
| G. dieſ-eſ, | dieſ-eſ, of this; | (G. deſ, deſ). |
| D. dieſ-em, | dieſ-em, to or for this; | (D. dem, dem). |
| A. dieſ-en, | dieſ-eſ, this; | (A. den, daſ). |

Like dieſer are declined the following indefinite numerals and adjective pronouns, which, like the definite article, have a distinct form for each gender (the characteristic of the *nominative* masculine being *r*, and that of the neuter *s*) :

| Masc. | Neut. | Masc. | Neut. |
|-------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------|-------|
| aller, alleſ, all (§ 53. 3.); | | jener, jeneſ, that; | |
| einiger, einigeſ, ſome; | | mancher, mancheſ, many a; | |
| etlicher, etlicheſ, ſome; | | ſolcher, ſolcheſ, ſuch; | |
| jeder, jedeſ, every; | | welcher, welcheſ, which, what. | |

5. Sein AND Vergeſſen IN THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| ich bin, I am; | ich vergeſſe, I forget; |
| Sie ſind, you are; | Sie vergeſſen, you forget; |
| er iſt, he iſ. | er vergiſt, he forgets. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Dieſer Mann iſt reich, jener iſt arm. This man iſ rich, that one iſ poor.
Der Frühling und auch der Herbit hat The ſpring and alſo the autumn ha
ſeine Freuden, dieſer bringt Früchte, its pleaſures, the latter bring
jener Blumen. fruits, the former flower.

Dieser Mann ist ein Maler.
Ich bin arm, aber ich bin zufrieden.
Ich lese diesen Brief.

That man is a painter.
I am poor, but I am contented.
I am reading (L. V. 2.) this letter.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Alle, all (see decl. dieser);
Arm, poor;
Dieser, this (see 1.);
Der Gärtner, the gardener;
Der Gaul, the horse, nag;
Groß, large;
Gut, good;
Hart, hard;
Das Haus, the house;
Jeder, every;
Jener, that;
Das Kind, the child;

Mancher, many a;
Nicht, not;
Reich, rich;
Sein, to be (infinitive L. X. 5);
Der Schneider, the tailor;
Schön, beautiful;
Solcher, such;
Der Vater, the father;
Wahr, true;
Welcher, which, what;
Wissen, to know (p. 358.)

EXERCISE 16.

Aufgabe 16.

1. Dieser Müller ist der Sohn jenes Bauers. 2. Jener Bauer ist der Vater dieses Bauers. 3. Jener Gaul gehört jenem Müller. 4. Sehen Sie diesen Garten und jenes Haus? 5. Aller Stahl ist hart. 6. Nicht alles Eisen ist gut. 7. Hat jeder Schmied solchen Stahl und solches Eisen? 8. Nicht jeder Hund ist groß. 9. Mancher Mann ist arm. 10. Kaufen Sie diesen Ring oder jenen? 11. Warum kaufen Sie jenen Ring und nicht diesen? 12. Welschem Schneider schicken Sie dieses Tuch? 13. Welches Tuch schicken Sie diesem Schneider? 14. Was dieser Mann sagt ist wahr. 15. Lieft der Lehrer diesen Brief oder jenen? 16. Nicht jeder Mann ist reich, nicht jedes Buch ist gut. 17. Wissen Sie was dieser Gärtner verspricht diesem Kinde? 18. Solcher Stahl ist nicht gut. 19. Ist solches Papier schön? 20. Welschem Sattler verkauft dieser Mann dieses Leder? 21. Was vergift er?

EXERCISE 17.

Aufgabe 17.

1. Which paper has this scholar? 2. He has the paper of that child. 3. Which pencil has this child? 4. It has the pencil of that scholar. 5. To which teacher does this man send the book? 6. Which steel and which iron does this smith buy? 7. Is every house large and good? 8. Is every horse beautiful? 9. What tree is large? 10. What tree do you see? 11. Has

every miller such wheat and such flour? 12. Is not many a man rich? 13. Is all iron hard? 14. Is all steel hard and good? 15. Does this garden belong to this gardener, or to that miller? 16. Is the father of this scholar reading the book of the smith? 17. Which tailor is poor, this one or that one? 18. Who is rich? 19. Who is singing? (L. V. 2.) 20. That child says you have the ball, is it true? 21. That tree is large and beautiful. 22. That tree is falling.

LESSON XI.

Lektion XI.

DATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

1. The dative is often preceded by prepositions, and the answers to our objective :

Er kommt aus dem Hause.

He is coming *out of* the house.

Der Mann ist in dem Hause.

The man is *in* the house.

Das Kind spielt mit dem Hunde.

The child is playing *with* the dog.

Der Baum steht vor dem Hause.

The tree stands *before* the house.

DATIVE WITH VERBS OF MOTION.

2. After verbs denoting direction *toward*, *zu* must be placed before the name of a *person*, and *nach*, before the name of *place* or *country*; *zu* and *nach* being both rendered by *to* :

Er geht zu dem Amtmann (§ 13. 3).

He goes *to* the magistrate.

Er geht nach dem Dorfe.

He goes *to* the village.

3. Where in English the preposition may be omitted, it not usually employed in German :

Ich schicke dem Lehrer das Buch.

{ I send the teacher the book.

Er giebt dem Schneider das Geld.

{ I send the book *to* the teacher.

{ He gives the tailor the money.

{ He gives the money *to* the tailor.

Ich schicke das Kind zu dem Lehrer.

I send the child *to* the teacher.

Das Kind geht zu dem Schneider.

The child goes *to* the tailor.

4. *Of*, when denoting relation (instead of possession L. 9. 1. must be expressed in German by a corresponding preposition

Ich spreche von dem Gärtner,

I am speaking *of* the gardener.

(*not* ich spreche des Gärtners).

(Compare Lesson 9. 1.)

POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

5. Prepositions precede the words which they govern, and can not, as in English, stand at the end of a sentence :

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Mit welchem Bleistift | With what pencil is | What pencil is he writing |
| Schreibt er ? | he writing ? | ing with ? |
| In welchem Hause ist er ? | In which house is he ? | Which house is he in ? |
| Wissen Sie von welchem | Do you know of which | Do you know which |
| Buche er spricht ? | book he speaks ? | book he speaks of ? |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Der Schmied geht zu dem Glaser. | The smith goes to the glazier. |
| Was schickt er dem Glaser ? | What does he send the glazier ? |
| Wer hat das Buch des Lehrers ? | Who has the book of the teacher ? |
| Was sagen Sie von dem Lehrer ? | What do you say of the teacher ? |
| Wissen Sie in welchem Hause der Glaser wohnt ? | Do you know which house the glazier lives in ? |
| Loben Sie den Sohn des Müllers ? | Do you praise the miller's son ? |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Der Adler, the eagle; | Gehen, to go; |
| Als, than, as; | Der Honig, the honey; |
| Der Amboss, the anvil; | Kommen, to come; |
| Der Anker, the anchor; | Das Licht, the candle; |
| Der Apfel, the apple; | Mehr, more; |
| Arbei'ten, to work; | Mit, with; |
| Der Arbeiter, the laborer; | Nach, to, after; |
| Der Arm, the arm; | Sprechen, to speak; (L. VII.) |
| Der Arzt, the physician; | Sehr, very; |
| Das Auge, the eye; | Von, of, from; |
| Aus, out of; | Zu, to (see 2.). |

EXERCISE 18.

Aufgabe 18.

1. Kommt der Jäger aus dem Hause, oder geht er nach dem Hause ? 2. Wer schreibt mehr als der Arzt ? 3. Wann gehen Sie nach dem Walde ? 4. Was sagt der Bauer von diesem Lichte ? 5. Wann geht das Kind zu dem Arbeiter und wann nach dem Dorfe ? 6. Das Kind geht weder zu dem Arbeiter noch nach dem Walde. 7. Zu welchem Arzte geht der Glaser ? 8. Warum fällt der Apfel von dem Baume ? 9. Wissen Sie von welchem Amboss der Schmied spricht ? 10. Was sagt der Glaser von dem Anker ? 11. Arbeitet

der Schüler mit dem Bauer? 12. Der Arbeiter arbeitet mit dem Bauer. 13. Das Auge des Adlers ist schön. 14. Was sagen Sie von dem Honig? 15. Der Arm dieses Schmiedes ist groß. 16. Der Bruder dieses Bauers ist arm. 17. Mit welchem Bleistifte schreibt der Lehrer? 18. Wissen Sie mit welchem Bleistifte er schreibt?

EXERCISE 19.

Aufgabe 19.

1. Are you writing the letter with the pencil of the scholar? 2. What does the child say of the honey? 3. Has this laborer more grain than flour, and more copper than gold? 4. Do you know what pencil the man is writing with? 5. Yes, I know which one he is writing with. 6. Why is the hunter coming out of the forest, and why is the child coming out of the house? 7. When does the laborer go to the forest? 8. When do you go to the teacher? 9. What does he say of the eagle? 10. Is the eye of the eagle large? 11. Does the apple fall from the tree? 12. The miller is coming from the house of the goldsmith, and the child is going to the house of the miller. 13. Do you see that anchor? 14. With which smith does the miller work? 15. The arm of the smith is large. 16. The brother of the baker is poor. 17. Which forest is the physician going to? 18. He is going neither to this one, nor to that one (L. X. 3.).



LESSON XII.

Lection XII.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. The form of the indefinite article is less varied than that of the definite; having for its accusative masculine only, a characteristic ending:

Nom. masculine, ein, a; *Nom. neuter*, ein, a.

Acc. masculine, ein-en, a; *Acc. neuter*, ein, a.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

2. The possessive pronouns constitute in German a distinct class of words, answering in signification to the *possessive* case of our *personal* pronouns. Like the article, they are subject to inflection, and agree in gender, number and case with their nouns :

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich habe mein Papier und meinen Ball. | I have my paper and my ball. |
| Hat Ihr Freund das Buch meines Vaters oder Ihres Onkels? | Has your friend the book of my cousin, or of your uncle? |
| Schneiden Sie Ihr Brod mit meinem Messer? | Are you cutting your bread with my knife? |

3. The indefinite article and the possessive pronouns (unlike *dieser*, L. X. 4.) add by inflection, except in the nom. and acc. neuter, another syllable to the form of the nominative :

| | |
|--|---|
| Der Sohn unser-es Nachbars ist ein Freund dieses Jägers. | The son of our neighbor is a friend of this hunter. |
|--|---|

4. DECLENSION OF INDEF. ARTICLE COMPARED WITH DEFINITE

| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | (Lesson VIII. 3.) |
|--------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| N. ein, | ein, a ; | (N. der, das.) |
| G. ein-es, | ein-es, of a ; | (G. des, des.) |
| D. ein-em, | ein-em, to or for a ; | (D. dem, dem.) |
| A. ein-en, | ein, a ; | (A. den, das.) |

Like the indefinite article *ein*, are declined :

| | | | |
|-------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|
| mein, my ; | sein, his, its ; | unser, our ; | ihr, their ; |
| dein, thy ; | ihr, her ; | euer, your ; | kein, no. |

5. When a word which ends in *el*, *en*, *er*, takes an additional syllable beginning with *t*, one *t* is often dropped :

unf-er~~t~~, for unf-er-es ; unf-er~~t~~m, for unf-er-em ; etc.

WORDS IN APPPOSITION.

6. Words in apposition must agree in case (§ 133) :

| | |
|---|---|
| Unser Nachbar, der Sattler, hat das Pferd seines Freundes, des Gerbers. | Our neighbor, the saddler, has the horse of his friend, the tanner. |
|---|---|

Er geht mit seinem Vetter, dem Maler, Ha is going with his cousin, the
nach Paris. painter, to Paris.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ihr Freund hat Ihren Brief und Ihr | Your friend has sent your letter |
| Buch Ihrem Bruder geschickt. | and your book to your brother. |
| Was hat sein Freund in seinem Koffer? | What has his friend in his trunk? |
| Ich habe kein Eisen und keinen Stahl. | I have no iron and no steel. |
| Mein Tisch steht in meinem Zimmer. | My table is standing in my room. |
| Der Baum steht zwischen unserm Hause | The tree stands between our house |
| und Ihrem Garten. | and your garden. |
| Das Kind hat sein Messer und seinen | The child has its knife and its ball |
| Ball in seinem Hute. | in its hat. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|---|
| An, at; | Liegen, to lie; |
| Auf, on; | Mein (<i>masc. or neut.</i>), my; |
| Denn (conjunction), for; | Der Ofen, the stove; |
| Ehe (adverb), ere, before; | Sein (<i>masc. or neut.</i>), his, its; |
| Ein (<i>masc. or neut.</i>), a, an; | Sitzen, to sit; |
| Das Feuer, the fire; | Stehen, to stand; |
| Der Freund, the friend; | Ueber, over; |
| Der Hammer, the hammer; | Unser (<i>masc. or neut.</i>), our; |
| Hinter, behind; | Unter, under, among; |
| Ihr (<i>masc. or neut.</i>), your; | Vor (preposition), before; |
| In, in, into; | Das Zimmer, the room; |
| Kein (<i>m. or n.</i>), not any, no; | Zwischen, between. |

EXERCISE 20.

Aufgabe 20.

1. Mein Bruder hat ein Pult, einen Tisch und einen Stuhl in seinem Zimmer. 2. Er sitzt an seinem Pulte, und sein Bleistift liegt auf dem Tische. 3. Haben Sie ein Feuer in Ihrem Zimmer? 4. Nein, denn ich habe keinen Ofen in meinem Zimmer. 5. Der Schmied hat seinen Hammer und sein Eisen. 6. Es ist der Freund seines Nachbarn, des Sattlers. 7. Unser Freund hat unsern Hund. 8. Ist der Sohn unsres Nachbarn in unserm Garten? 9. Stehen Sie vor Ihrem Hause ehe Sie singen? 10. Steht der Baum zwischen Ihrem Garten und unserm Hause? 11. Mein Buch liegt unter Ihrem Pulte. 12. Das Zimmer des Glasers ist über dem Zimmer des Goldschmiedes. 13. Steht der Hund hinter Ihrem Pulte? 14. Hat das Kind sein Buch und seinen Bleistift? 15. Lesen Sie

in Ihrem oder in meinem Buche? 16. Dieser Mann ist arm, er hat weder Gold noch Brod

EXERCISE 21.

Aufgabe 21.

1. Is your friend sitting at his table? 2. No, he is sitting at my table. 3. Why have you a stove in your room? 4. I have no stove in my room. 5. Does your book lie under your table? 6. No, it lies on my desk. 7. Is your friend in his garden? 8. No, he is in our house. 9. Your hammer is lying between the stove and the table. 10. The scholar's room is over the room of his father. 11. Have you no fire in your room? 12. I have no fire in my room, for I have no stove. 13. Is the friend of your teacher sitting behind your desk? 14. No, he is standing before his house; he writes before he reads. 15. Our friend, the miller, has our horse and our dog in his garden. 16. The son of the peasant has your anvil and your iron.

LESSON XIII.

Section XIII.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The interrogative pronouns are

| | |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| Wer, who; | welcher, which, what; |
| Was, what; | was für, (§ 66.) what kind of |

In this connection, für may precede any of the cases :

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Was für ein Mann ist er? | What kind of a man is he? |
| Mit was für Tinte schreiben Sie? | With what kind of ink do you write? |
| In was für einem Hause wohnen Sie? | In what kind of a house do you live? |

2. Between was and für other words are sometimes introduced :

| | |
|---|---|
| Was hat er denn für Wunder vor uns sein Augen gethan?—O. | What (kind of) miracles, then, has he performed before our eyes! |
|---|---|

3. Welcher and was für are often employed in exclamations, in which use welcher usually drops the last syllable :

| | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| Welch ein Held! | What a hero! |
|-----------------|--------------|

Was hat unser Herz für eine seltsame Astronomi'e gelernt! What a singular astronomy has our heart learned!

4. The form *welch* is, also, employed in questions, when the succeeding word is under special emphasis:

Welch Schicksal aber wird das Eure sein? What fate though will yours be! (be yours!)

5. When not followed by a noun or an adjective, *ein* is rendered *a one*, and declined like *dieser* (L. X. 4.):

Was für ein Vogel ist der Adler, und was für einer ist der Fäbicht? What kind of a bird is the eagle, and what kind of a one is the hawk!

6. *Was* is sometimes used in the sense of *warum*:

Was hältst Du meinen aufgehobenen Arm? Why (what) holdest thou my up-lifted arm?

DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS *Wer* AND *Was*.

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------|
| N. wer? | who? | was? | what? |
| G. wessen? | whose? | wesß? | of what? |
| D. wem? | to or for whom? | (dative wanting.) | |
| A. wen? | whom? | was? | what? |

7. The genitive of *was* seldom occurs except in compounds:

Weshwegen hat er es gethan? On account of what (why) has he done it?

8. Instead of *was*, construed with prepositions, the adverb *wo* (*where*) combined with them, is employed:

Womit (not mit was) schreibt er? With what (wherewith) is he writing?

Wovon (not von was) spricht er? Of what (whereof) does he speak

Worin (§ 103. 2.) hat er gefehlt? In what (wherein) has he failed!

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Wissen Sie was für ein Thier das Flußpferd ist, und in was für einem Lande es lebt? Do you know what kind of an animal the hippopotamus is, and in what kind of a country it lives!

In wessen Hause wohnen Sie? In whose house do you live?

Wovon spricht der Maurer? What is the mason speaking of?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Das Becken, the basin; | Machen, to make, do; |
| Der Eisbär, the white bear: | Das Messer, the knife; |
| Faul, idle, lazy, indolent; | Der Schuh, the shoe; |
| Der Koffer, the trunk; | Der Schuhmacher, the shoemaker; |
| Der Korb, the basket; | Der Strauß, the ostrich; |
| Das Krokodil, the crocodile; | Der Tiger, the tiger; |
| Das Land, the country; | Der Unterschied, the difference; |
| Leben, to live; | Der Vogel, the bird, fowl; |
| Lieben, to love; | Wohnen, to reside, live; |
| Loben, to praise; | Wovon, see 8. |

EXERCISE 22.

Aufgabe 22.

1. Wer lobt den Schüler, und wen lobt der Schüler? 2. Wessen Buch lesen Sie? 3. Wem schreiben Sie einen Brief? 4. Wissen Sie wessen Messer der Schuhmacher hat? 5. Was für ein Messer hat er? 6. Was für ein Mann hat mein Messer? 7. Mit wessen Bleistift schreiben Sie den Brief? 8. Mit was für einem Bleistifte und auf was für Papier schreibt der Lehrer? 9. In was für einem Lande lebt der Eisbär? 10. In was für einem lebt der Tiger? 11. In welchem Lande lebt der Eisbär? 12. Wissen Sie in welchem Lande das Krokodil lebt? 13. Was lesen Sie? 14. Was für einen Schuh macht der Schuhmacher? 15. Wem schickt der Schneider das Becken? 16. In wessen Hause wohnen Sie? 17. Was für ein Vogel ist der Strauß? 18. Wissen Sie den Unterschied zwischen "Leben" und "Wohnen?" 19. Liebt das Kind den Mann? 20. Wessen Korb hat der Schuhmacher? 21. Wissen Sie was für einen Koffer ich habe? 22. Von wem spreche ich, und wovon sprechen Sie? 23. Ich spreche von dem Müller; er ist faul.

EXERCISE 23.

Aufgabe 23.

1. Whose horse has the tailor? 2. With whose pencil are you writing? 3. To whom does the saddler send the money? 4. To which merchant does this anchor belong? 5. What kind of an animal is the white bear? 6. In what kind of a country does he live? 7. In what kind of a house does the shoemaker live? 8. Do you know what kind of a bird the ostrich is? 9. In what kind of a country does the tiger live? 10. What are you doing with my knife? 11. Why is the child laughing?

12. Whom does the shoemaker praise? 13. Is he making a shoe? 14. Who is making the captain a trunk? 15. In what kind of a country does the crocodile live? 16. On whose table is my book lying? 17. Whom does the child love? 18. To whom is the child going? 19. To whom does the peasant send the basket? 20. Of whom are you speaking? 21. Of what am I speaking? 22. Whose basin has the cook? 23. Is our neighbor not idle?

LESSON XIV.

Section XIV.

ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives when used *predicatively*,* undergo no change of form; thus,

Masc. Der Stahl ist gut.

The steel is good.

Neut. Das Eisen ist gut.

The iron is good.

ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

2. Adjectives, when used *attributively*,* are subject to three modes of inflection, called the *old*, the *new* and the *mixed* declensions.

3. Adjectives, when not immediately preceded by *dieſer*, *ein*, or some other word of that class (L. X. 4. and L. XII. 4.) are inflected according to the

OLD DECLENSION.

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> | | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| N. gut-er, | gut-eſ, | good; | (N. dieſ-er, | dieſ-eſ.) |
| G. gut-eſ (en), | gut-eſ (en), | of good; | (G. dieſ-eſ | dieſ-eſ.) |
| D. gut-em, | gut-em, | to or for good; | (D. dieſ-em, | dieſ-em.) |
| A. gut-en, | gut-eſ, | good. | (A. dieſ-en, | dieſ-eſ.) |

* The terms predicative and attributive, which in grammar have a strictly conventional sense, should, by the pupil of German especially, be fully understood. Thus in the sentence, *Hard-er Stahl iſt gut*, *hard* is regarded as a known attribute of the steel, while *good* is that which is predicated or affirmed of it. Hence *hard* is *attributive*, and *good* *predicative*.

ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATIVE FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE. 45

4. The adjective, like the article, must agree with its noun.

5. The genitive of the old form is now seldom used ; that of the new being preferred :

Die Farbe guten (instead of gutes) The color of good gold is yellow.
Goldes ist gelb.

ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATIVE FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Attributive.

Predicative.

| | | | | |
|-------------|-------|-----|-----------|-----------------------|
| Hart-er | Stahl | ist | nützlich. | Hard steel is useful. |
| Hart-es | Eisen | ist | nützlich. | Hard iron is useful. |
| Nützlich-er | Stahl | ist | hart. | Useful steel is hard. |
| Nützlich-es | Eisen | ist | hart. | Useful iron is hard. |

6. Adjectives preceded by etwas, was and nichts, and used substantively, are of the old declension, and written with a capital initial :

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Haben Sie etwas Neues. | Have you any thing new? |
| Sie sprechen von etwas Neuem. | You speak of something new? |
| Er sagt nichts Schlechtes. | He says nothing bad. |

7. An adjective, when referring to a noun understood, has the same ending as when the noun is expressed :

Er hat feines Tuch, ich habe grobes. He has fine cloth, I have coarse.
Harter Stahl ist gut, weicher ist schlecht. Hard steel is good, soft is bad.

Give the gender of the nouns in the following examples, as indicated by the adjective. State also which adjectives are *attributive*, and which *predicative*.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|---|
| Weicher Stahl ist nicht gut. | Soft steel is not good. |
| Gutes Blei ist weich. | Good lead is soft. |
| Hat der Bauer guten Weizen und gutes Obst? | Has the peasant good wheat and good fruit? |
| Wer hat feines Tuch und feinen Sammet? | Who has fine cloth and fine velvet? |
| Guter Senf ist gelb, gutes Salz ist weiß. | Good mustard is yellow, good salt is white. |
| Er spricht mit bitterm Spöhe. | He speaks with bitter scorn. |
| Er ruft in bitterm Schmerze.—A. | He cries (or calls) in bitter sorrow |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Angenehm, pleasant; | Der Mantel, the cloak; |
| Blau, blue; | Der Rock, the coat; |
| Das Blei, the lead; | Rot, red; |
| Fein, fine; | Schwarz, black; |
| Gelb, yellow; | Trocken, dry; |
| Grau, gray; | Das Tuch, the cloth; |
| Grob, coarse; | Der Vetter, the cousin; |
| Grün, green; | Warm, warm; |
| Immer, always; | Weiß, white; |
| Jetzt, now; | Das Wetter, the weather. |

EXERCISE 24.

Aufgabe 24.

1. Ist Ihr Tuch fein oder grob? 2. Ich habe grobes Tuch, und der Schneider hat feines Tuch. 3. Dieser Rock ist von feinem Tuche, jener ist von grobem. 4. Der Stahl ist hart, das Blei ist weich. 5. Harter Stahl ist gut, weiches Blei ist gut. 6. Guter Stahl ist hart, gutes Blei ist weich. 7. Gutes Gold ist gelb, guter Stahl ist weiß. 8. Der Goldschmied hat weißen Stahl und gelbes Gold. 9. Das Wetter ist jetzt warm. 10. Warmes Wetter ist angenehm. 11. Angenehmes Wetter ist nicht immer warm. 12. Von was für Tuch macht der Schneider den Mantel? 13. Er macht den Mantel von blauem und den Rock von grünem Tuche. 14. Was für Wetter ist angenehm? 15. Kaltes, trockenes Wetter ist angenehm. 16. Das Leder des Sattlers ist gelb, das Leder des Schuhmachers ist schwarz. 17. Der Sattler hat gelbes Leder, und der Schuhmacher hat schwarzes. 18. Haben Sie weißes oder blaues Papier? 19. Ich habe blaues und mein Vetter hat weißes. 20. Hat der Schneider graues oder rothes Tuch? 21. Er hat weder graues noch rothes, er hat grünes, blaues, schwarzes und braunes.

EXERCISE 25.

Aufgabe 25.

1. The weather is warm. 2. Warm weather is pleasant. 3. What kind of weather is always pleasant? 4. Dry weather is pleasant. 5. Is your cloth coarse? 6. I have coarse cloth, and my cousin has fine cloth. 7. The cloth of the tailor is blue, the leather of the saddler is yellow. 8. The tailor has blue cloth, and the saddler has yellow leather. 9. Is the saddler's coat of blue, of green, or of black cloth? 10. His coat is of

black cloth, and his cloak is of gray cloth. 11. Hard lead is not good, good lead is not hard. 12. Is the cloth of the tailor blue, brown, green, red, or black? 13. The tailor has black, blue, green, gray and red cloth. 14. This paper is white, and that is blue. 15. My cousin has blue paper, and his friend has white. 16. This tailor is making a coat from coarse gray cloth. 17. That smith has good steel and good iron. 18. The iron of our friend, the smith, is very good. 19. With whose good pencil are you writing your friend a letter? 20. From whose blue cloth is the tailor making his coat?

LESSON XV.

Section XV.

NEW DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives, when following *dieſer*, or any word of that class,* and referring to the same noun, are of the

NEW DECLENSION.

*Masculine.**Neuter.*

| | | | | |
|------------|--------|---------|--------|---------------------|
| N. dieſ-er | gute; | dieſ-eſ | gute; | this good. |
| G. dieſ-eſ | guten; | dieſ-eſ | guten; | of this good. |
| D. dieſ-em | guten; | dieſ-em | guten; | to or for the good. |
| A. dieſ-en | guten; | dieſ-eſ | gute; | this good. |

2. FORM OF THE NEW DECLENSION IN THE NOMINATIVE.

*Attributive.**Predicative.*

| | | | | | |
|--------|---------|-------|-----|----------|--------------------------------|
| Alle | gut-e | Stahl | iſt | hart. | All good steel is hard. |
| Alleſ | gut-e | Eiſen | iſt | hart. | All good iron is hard. |
| Der | hart-e | Stahl | iſt | gut. | The hard steel is good. |
| Daſ | hart-e | Eiſen | iſt | gut. | The hard iron is good. |
| Dieſer | ſchön-e | Vogel | iſt | weiß. | This beautiful bird is white. |
| Dieſeſ | ſchön-e | Luſt | iſt | weiß. | This beautiful cloth is white. |
| Jeder | gut-e | Mann | iſt | ehrlich. | Every good man is honest. |

* Namely: *aller*, *der*, *einiger*, *einiſcher*, *jeder*, *jener*, *mancher*, *ſolcher* and *welcher*, (L. X. 4. § 31. § 32).

*Attributive.**Predicative.*

| | | | | | |
|---------|-----------|------|-----|----------|-----------------------------|
| Sebes | gut-e | Kind | ist | ehrlich. | Every good child is honest. |
| Zener | ehrlich-e | Mann | ist | gut. | That honest man is good. |
| Jenes | ehrlich-e | Kind | ist | gut. | That honest child is good. |
| Mancher | gut-e | Mann | ist | arm. | Many a good man is poor. |
| Manches | gut-e | Kind | ist | arm. | Many a good child is poor. |
| Welcher | stolze | Mann | ist | gut? | What proud man is good? |
| Welches | stolze | Kind | ist | gut? | What proud child is good? |

3. The final syllable of *mancher*, *solcher* and *welcher*, which by its characteristic ending, denotes the gender of the noun, is sometimes dropped; in which case the adjective that follows is inflected according to the old declension (L. XIV. 2.):

Manch gut-er *Mann* *instead of* *Mancher* gut-e *Mann*.
Solch grob-es *Kind* *instead of* *Solches* grob-e *Kind*.

4. The adjective with the article is often, for the sake of special emphasis, placed after the noun:

Das Bündniß, das verderbliche. The ruinous treaty (the treaty, the ruinous).

5. Adjectives denoting the material of which a thing is made, are formed from nouns by suffixing *e*, *en*, *ern*. In such case *a*, *o* and *u* often take the Umlaut:

| | | |
|----------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| ledern, | leathern | from Leder, leather; |
| golden, | golden, gold (made of gold) | from Gold, gold; |
| hölzern, | wooden | from Holz, wood; |
| gläsern, | glass (made of glass) | from Glas, glass. |

Hat der Koch den hölzernen oder den steinernen Tisch? Has the cook the wooden or the stone table?

Der Schüler hat das silberne Tintenfaß und ich das gläserne. The scholar has the silver inkstand, and I the glass one.

*Beispiele.**EXAMPLES.*

| | |
|--|---|
| Alles gute Schreibpapier ist glatt. | All good writing-paper is smooth. |
| Haben Sie das rothe Siegelwax? | Have you the red sealing-wax? |
| Gehört dieses alte Pferd dem alten Fleischer? | Does this old horse belong to the old butcher? |
| Jeder wirklich gute und nützliche Mensch ist fleißig. | Every really good and useful man (human being) is diligent. |
| Sehen Sie das glänzende Eis und den weißen Schnee auf jenem hohen Berge? | Do you see the glittering ice and the white snow on yonder high mountain? |

Der junge Mann schreibt dem alten Lehrer einen Brief. The young man is writing the old teacher a letter.
 Verzweiflung ist der einzige ächte Atheismus.—A. Despair is the only genuine atheism.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Aber, but; | Der Meißel, the chisel; |
| Alt, old; | Der Mensch, the man, human being; |
| Artig, polite, agreeable; | Neu, new; |
| Braun, brown; | Scharf, sharp; |
| Dumm, stupid; | Stolz, proud; |
| Fleißig, diligent, industrious; | Der Tischler, the cabinet-maker; |
| Genug, enough; | Unzufrieden, discontented, dissatisfied; |
| Jung, young; | Vielleicht, perhaps; |
| Lang, long; | Zufrieden, contented. |
| Der Lehrling, the apprentice; | |
| Der Maurer, the mason; | |

EXERCISE 26.

Aufgabe 26.

1. Ich habe das feine Tuch und der Schneider hat das grobe Tuch.
 2. Dieser Rock ist von dem feinen Tuche, jener ist von dem groben.
 3. Der harte Stahl ist gut, das weiche Blei ist gut. 4. Dieser junge Maurer kauft jenes junge Pferd. 5. Jenes junge Pferd gehört dem jungen Maurer. 6. Schreiben Sie den langen Brief mit dem alten Bleistifte des armen Lehrlings? 7. Gehört dieser scharfe Meißel dem fleißigen Tischler? 8. Ist jeder reiche Mann zufrieden? 9. Ist nicht jeder zufriedene Mann reich genug? 10. Welcher fleißige Mann ist unzufrieden? 11. Schreibt jener arme Schüler mit dem neuen Bleistifte? 12. Mancher stolze Mensch ist dumm, aber vielleicht nicht jeder. (L. X. 3.) 13. Ist alles trockene Wetter angenehm? 14. Welches gute Leder hat der alte Sattler, das gelbe, das grüne, das blaue; oder das schwarze? 15. Verkauft der artige Kaufmann das weiße Papier, oder das blaue? 16. Ist aller gute Stahl hart, und alles gute Blei weiß? 17. In welchem kalten Lande lebt der Eisbär? 18. Ist nicht jeder faule Schüler unzufrieden, oder wissen Sie nicht?

EXERCISE 27.

Aufgabe 27.

1. This warm weather is very pleasant. 2. Is that young cabinet-maker the good friend of the old mason? 3. Is every

proud man stupid? 4. Is not every industrious man contented? 5. Is not that indolent apprentice very discontented? 6. Is the new chisel of the young cabinet-maker sharp? 7. Who has the sharp chisel of the poor glazier? 8. This polite scholar is writing the old teacher the long letter. 9. Has every contented man money enough? 10. Has this friend, the old glazier, the green, the blue, or the red glass? 11. Is the new cloak of the old mason of the fine cloth, or of the coarse? 12. Is the new cloth of the saddler gray, green, black, or blue? 13. The old saddler has the blue, the gray, the green and the black cloth, and the tailor has the red, the white, and the yellow. 14. Do you understand what that poor old man says? 15. With what old pencil is he writing that long letter? 16. Does any body know in which new house the rich miller lives? 17. Why does the poor peasant buy the fine cloth? 18. The new cloak of the old baker is very good.



LESSON XVI.

Section XVI.

MIXED DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives, when following *mein*, or a word of that class,* and referring to the same noun, are of the

MIXED DECLENSION.

*Masc.**Neut.*

| | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| N. <i>mein</i> | <i>gut-er</i> , | <i>mein</i> | <i>gut-es</i> , | my good; |
| G. <i>meines</i> | <i>gut-en</i> , | <i>meines</i> | <i>gut-en</i> , | of my good; |
| D. <i>meinem</i> | <i>gut-en</i> , | <i>meinem</i> | <i>gut-en</i> , | to or for my good; |
| A. <i>meinen</i> | <i>gut-en</i> , | <i>mein</i> | <i>gut-es</i> , | my good. |

2. As *mein*, *dein*, etc., have the same form for each gender (i. e. in nom. masc. and neut.) the adjective following them takes the characteristic ending (L. X. 4.), thus indicating the gender of its noun:

* Namely: *dein*, *etn*, *sein*, *ihr*, *unser*, *euer* and *kein*; (L. XII 4. § 32 § 33).

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Ein alt-er Mann, an old man. | Ein alt-es Pferd, an old horse. |
| Mein neu-er Tisch, my new table. | Sein neu-es Buch, his new book. |
| Ihr eigen-er Hut, your own hat. | Unser eigen-es Haus, our own house. |

3. *Eigen*, as denoting possession, often requires with "own," in translation, both a preposition and a pronoun, and sometimes only the latter :

| | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Haben Sie ein eigenes Zimmer ? | Have you a room <i>of your own</i> ? |
| Ich habe kein eigenes Geld. | I have no money <i>of my own</i> . |
| Hat er nichts Eigenes ? | Has he nothing <i>of his own</i> ? |
| Ich schrieb es mit eigener Hand. | I wrote it with <i>my own</i> hand. |
| Er schrieb es mit eigener Hand. | He wrote it with <i>his own</i> hand. |

ENDINGS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION NOMINATIVE.

Attributive.

Predicative.

| | | | | | |
|-------|------------|--------|-----|----------|------------------------------|
| Ein | gut-er | Mann | ist | ehrlich. | A good man is honest. |
| Ein | gut-es | Kind | ist | ehrlich. | A good child is honest. |
| Sein | ehrlich-er | Freund | ist | gut. | His honest friend is good. |
| Sein | ehrlich-es | Kind | ist | gut. | His honest child is good. |
| Mein | schön-er | Vogel | ist | weiß. | My beautiful bird is white. |
| Mein | schön-es | Tuch | ist | weiß. | My beautiful cloth is white. |
| Ihr | alt-er | Baum | ist | groß. | Your old tree is large. |
| Ihr | alt-es | Haus | ist | groß. | Your old house is large. |
| Unser | groß-er | Baum | ist | alt. | Our large tree is old. |
| Unser | groß-es | Haus | ist | alt. | Our large house is old. |
| Kein | gut-er | Mann | ist | träge. | No good man is idle. |
| Kein | gut-es | Kind | ist | träge. | No good child is idle. |

4. *Ein* is also a numeral answering to *one*, and is then pronounced with a stronger emphasis, and often written with a capital initial :

Ich habe nur Ein Buch, und er hat drei. I have but one book, and he has three.

Er lernt mehr in Einem Tage als ich. He learns more in one day than I in two. (do L. 38. 7.)

5. *Ein* and *kein*, when not followed by an adjective or a noun, are inflected according to the old declension (L. XIV. 3.). In the nom. and acc. neut. the *e* of the final syllable is often omitted :

Sie haben zwei Pferde, ich habe eines. You have two horses, I have one, (or *eins*), und er hat keines (or *keins*). and he has none.

Ich habe zwei Tische, einer ist neu, der andere alt. I have two tables, one is new and the other is old.
 Einer liebt oft was ein Anderer haßt. One often loves what another hates.

6. Ein is frequently preceded by the definite article and then follows the new declension :

Der Eine ist zu groß, der Andere ist zu klein. (The) one is too large, the other is too small.
 Ich habe weder das Eine noch das Andere. I have neither the one nor the other.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Mein neuer Leuchter steht auf meinem neuen Tische. My new candlestick is standing on my new table.
 Ich habe ein gutes Buch und einen guten Bleistift. I have a good book and a good pencil.
 Ich habe Einen, und mein Bruder hat drei. I have one and my brother has three.
 Das ganze Weltall ist ein uferloses Meer.—W. The whole universe is a shoreless sea.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Auch, also, too; | Nützlich, useful; |
| Ehrlich, honest; | Reif, ripe; |
| Hübsch, pretty, handsome; | Das Schiff, the ship; |
| Je, ever; | Stark, strong; |
| Das Kameel, the camel; | Das Thier, the animal; |
| Der Kapitän, the captain; | Todt, dead; |
| Klein, small, little; | Treu, faithful; |
| Der Schmied, the tinman; | Wachsam, watchful; |
| Der Löffel, the spoon; | Der Wagen, the carriage; |
| Noch, yet, still; | Wirklich, really. |

EXERCISE 28.

Aufgabe 28.

1. Sie haben Ihr feines Tuch, und der Schneider hat sein grobes Tuch. 2. Mein alter Freund hat ein hübsches Pferd und einen alten Wagen. 3. Das Kameel ist ein großes, starkes und sehr nützliches Thier. 4. Der treue, wachsame Hund unseres guten Freundes ist todt. 5. Ist unser alter Freund noch in unserm neuen Garten? 6. Ihr alter Freund ist in seinem schönen, alten Garten. 7. Haben Sie einen guten, reifen Apfel? 8. Ich habe keinen reifen Apfel.

9. Wem verkauft der Kaufmann sein großes neues Schiff? 10. Er verkauft es seinem alten Freunde, dem Kapitän. 11. Hat mein junger Vetter mein blaues, mein gelbes, oder mein weißes Papier? 12. Er hat Ihr weißes, und sein guter Freund hat Ihr blaues. 13. Ist kein kaltes Wetter angenehm? 14. Schreiben Sie mit meinem alten Bleistifte oder mit Ihrem neuen? 15. Was für ein Thier ist Ihr alter Hund? 16. Was für ein neues Schiff kauft der Kapitän, ein großes oder ein kleines? 17. Ist ein wirklich ehrlicher, guter Mann je faul? 18. Ist ein fauler Mann je wirklich zufrieden? 19. Der Klempner hat Ihr altes Messer und auch Ihren alten Löffel.

EXERCISE 29.

Aufgabe 29.

1. Our old friend is still in our new house. 2. Your young friend has our old horse, and also our old carriage. 3. What kind of black cloth has our old friend, the merchant? 4. He has no black cloth, but he has his good blue cloth. 5. Does the camel live in a warm or in a cold country? 6. Is the camel a large, strong and useful animal? 7. Has your good friend a faithful, watchful dog? 8. Has our old friend, the captain, a new ship, or an old one? 9. Have you a large tree in your new garden? 10. I am writing with your new pencil; have you my old one? 11. Is a faithful, watchful dog a useful animal? 12. Is an indolent scholar faithful, honest and useful? 13. Has the son of the old peasant a ripe apple? 14. The captain is selling the merchant his beautiful new ship. 15. Are you buying a young horse, or an old one? 16. I am buying a young horse, and my old friend is selling an old one. 17. Has the scholar my white paper or your blue? 18. He has my blue paper and your new pencil. 19. Has the child a small spoon?

LESSON XVII.

Lektion XVII.

1. CONNECTED VIEW OF THE OLD, NEW AND MIXED DECLENSIONS.

Masculine.

| OLD DECLENSION. | NEW DECLENSION. | MIXED DECLENSION. | (L. XIV. 3.) |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| N. gut-er; | der gut-e; | mein gut-er; | (dief-er.) |
| G. gut-es (en); | des gut-en; | meines gut-en; | (dief-es.) |
| D. gut-em; | dem gut-en; | meinem gut-en; | (dief-em.) |
| A. gut-en; | den gut-en; | meinen gut-en; | (dief-en.) |

Neuter.

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|------------|
| N. gut-es; | das gut-e; | mein gut-es; | (dief-es.) |
| G. gut-es (en); | des gut-en; | meines gut-en; | (dief-es.) |
| D. gut-em; | dem gut-en; | meinem gut-en; | (dief-em.) |
| A. gut-es; | das gut-e; | mein gut-es; | (dief-es.) |

2. WORDS REQUIRING THE ADJECTIVE IN THE NEW DECLENSION.

| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| aller, alles; | einiger, einiges; | jener, jenes; | welder, welches. | | | | |
| der, das; | etlicher, etliches; | mancher, manches; | (L. 15.) | | | | |
| dieser, dieses; | jeder, jedes; | jolcher, jolches; | | | | | |

3. WORDS REQUIRING THE ADJECTIVE IN THE MIXED DECLENSION.

kein, ein, euer, ihr, kein, mein, sein, unfer. (L. 16.)

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Der junge Maler ist ein geschickter Künstler. | The young painter is a skillful artist. |
| Dieser geschickte Künstler ist ein guter Freund. | This skillful artist is a good friend. |
| Der alte Sattler deckt den Koffer mit neuem Leder. | The old saddler covers the trunk with new leather. |
| Er deckt den Tisch mit einem grünen Tuche. | He covers the table with a green cloth. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Böse, cross, ill-natured;
Eisern, iron (adjective);
Das Gefäß, the vessel;
Gläsern, glass (adjective);
Glatt, smooth;
Hassen, to hate;
Häßlich, ugly, ill-formed;
Hölzern, wooden;
Der Kessel, the kettle;
Der Knopf, the button, knob.
Der Knecht, the servant, slave;

Der Krug, the pitcher;
Kupfern, copper (adjective);
Messingen, brass (adjective);
Der Nagel, the nail;
Das Pulver, the powder;
Das Schloß, the lock;
Das Schreibpapier, the writing-
paper.
Sehen, to see (lesen, L. 7.);
Der Verräther, the traitor.

EXERCISE 30.

Aufgabe 30.

1. Ich habe Ihr feines Tuch und den großen Knopf des Kaufmannes. 2. Deckt der alte Sattler den alten Tisch mit grünem oder mit blauem Tuche? 3. Er deckt den Tisch mit diesem groben grünen Tuche. 4. Unser junger Freund hat unser junges Pferd. 5. Der junge Mann verkauft das häßliche Pferd. 6. Hat der böse Schmied einen großen Nagel, oder den kupfernen Kessel des Kaufmannes? 7. Er hat kein gutes Eisen, aber er hat guten Stahl und gutes Kupfer. 8. Jener alte Mann ist mein alter Nachbar. 9. Wem gehört dieses neue Schloß? 10. Ich habe kein neues Schloß. 11. Haben Sie weißes Papier oder blaues? 12. Ich habe das weiße Papier meines Bruders, und er hat mein blaues Papier. 13. Alles gute Schreibpapier ist glatt, aber nicht alles glatte Papier ist gut. 14. Hast nicht jeder gute Mensch einen Verräther? 15. Das Faß ist ein hölzernes Gefäß. 16. Der Kessel ist ein eisernes, kupfernes, oder messingenes Gefäß. 17. Wo ist der gläserne Krug? 18. Der Knecht hat einen Krug, aber nicht einen gläsernen. 19. Ich habe gutes Pulver, aber kein gutes Blei.

EXERCISE 31.

Aufgabe 31.

1. The ill-natured tailor has his fine cloth and the pretty button of his good friend. 2. Is all smooth writing-paper good? 3. Is not all good writing-paper smooth? 4. To whom does this coarse powder belong? 5. The hunter has fine powder, but he has no coarse. 6. The iron kettle of the servant is large, his copper kettle is small. 7. Do you know where my glass

pitcher is? 9. I see your glass pitcher on your new table. 10. Does not every honest man hate a traitor? 11. This agreeable child has a wooden horse and a large iron ring. 12. Have you a brass nail or an iron one? 13. A cask is a large wooden vessel; a kettle is an iron, a copper, or a brass one. 14. I have my white paper and the white paper of the scholar. 15. The young saddler is covering the old trunk with black leather. 16. Does the ugly man cover his table with the blue cloth, or with the green? 17. He covers his old table with a red cloth. 18. Which new book have you? 19. I have no new book. 20. I have white paper and he has yellow.



LESSON XVIII.

Leçon XVIII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. The words *jedermann*, *jemand*, *man*, *niemand*, *nichts* and *etwas* or *was*, are *indefinite pronouns*.

2. *Jedermann* is declined like a *noun* of the old declension; *jemand* and *niemand* may be declined in the same way, or like an *adjective* of the old declension (§ 59). *Man*, *nichts* and *etwas* are indeclinable:

Sie sprechen von etwas Neuem.
Ich spreche von nichts.

You speak of something new.
I do not speak of any thing.

3. *Jedermann* answers in signification to *every body*:
Jedermann hat seine schwache Seite. Every body has his weak side.

4. *Jemand* answers to any body, somebody, and *etwas* to any thing, something:

Sehen Sie Jemand?

Do you see any body (or somebody)?

Ja, ich sehe Jemand.

Yes, I see somebody.

Hören Sie nicht Etwas?

Do you not hear something?

Ja, ich höre etwas, or was.

Yes, I hear something.

5. *Niemand* answers to *nobody*, *not any body*; and *nichts* to *nothing*, *not any thing*:

Niemand lobt mich, und ich lobe Niemanden.

Nobody praises me, and I do not praise any body.

Schicken Sie Ihrem Bruder nichts? Do you not send your brother any thing.

6. The negative particle, *nicht*, is used with *jemand* and *etwas* only in interrogative sentences; hence for the twofold forms of expression in English, there is but one in German.

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ich sehe Niemanden. | { I do not see any body. |
| | { <i>Literally</i> : I see nobody. |
| Er kauft nichts. | { He does not buy any thing, |
| | { <i>Literally</i> : He buys nothing. |

7. *Einer*, (*one*), and *keiner*, (*no one, nobody*), are also called indefinite pronouns:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Zu rein ist nicht Einer im Reich.—I. | Not one in the kingdom is too pure. |
| Keiner wußte den Namen. | No one knew the name. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich höre Jemanden, aber ich sehe Niemanden. | I hear somebody, but I do not see any body. |
| Kaufen Sie nicht etwas? | Do you not buy something? |
| Nein, ich kaufe Nichts. | No, I do not buy any thing. |
| Haben Sie etwas Schönes? | Have you any thing beautiful? |
| Ich habe etwas Schönes. | I have something beautiful. |
| Jedermann haßt und verachtet einen Verräther. | Every body hates and despises a traitor. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Besuchen, to visit; | Das Kleid, the dress, garment; |
| Der Bohrer, the auger; | Das Lied, the song; |
| Der Buchhändler, the bookseller; | Der Mais, the maize, Indian corn |
| Eigennützig, selfish; | Nichts, nothing, not any thing, |
| Etwas, something, any thing; | Niemand, nobody, not anybody. |
| Der Führer, the guide, leader; | Rauchen, to smoke; |
| Der Hobel, the plane; | Der Schuhmacher, the shoemaker; |
| Jedermann, every body; | Der Tabak, the tobacco; |
| Jemand, any body, somebody; | Der Teller, the plate; |
| Der Käse, the cheese; | Der Ueberschuh, the overshoe. |

EXERCISE 32.

Aufgabe 32.

1. Warum lobt Jedermann diesen Schüler? 2. Jedermann ist eigennützig. 3. Hat Jemand meinen Ueberschuh? 4. Der Schuhmacher macht Jemandem einen Ueberschuh. 5. Niemand lobt den

Buchhändler, und der Buchhändler lóht Niemanden. 6. Jemand schickt dem Knechte einen neuen Hobel und einen neuen Bohrer. 7. Schicken Sie dem Schneider den Knopf? 8. Niemand schickt dem Schneider den Knopf und das Kleid. 9. Besuchen Sie Jemanden? 10. Ich besuche Jemanden, aber mein Freund besucht Niemanden. 11. Kaufen Sie nicht etwas? 12. Ich kaufe nichts, aber mein Bruder kauft etwas. 13. Kauft er etwas Schönes? 14. Er kauft etwas Nüßliches, aber nichts Schönes. 15. Raucht Jemand hier Tabak? 16. Nein, Niemand raucht. 17. Jemand hat den Teller, den Krug und den Käse unseres Führers. 18. Jemand singt, hören Sie das Lied? 19. Hassen Sie Jemanden? 20. Nein, ich hasse Niemanden. 21. Kauft Jemand den Honig, den Mais und den Kessel?

EXERCISE 33.

Aufgabe 33.

1. Somebody is visiting our old guide. 2. Does any body hate the bookseller? 3. No, and the bookseller does not hate any body. 4. To whom does the peasant send the honey, the maize and the cheese? 5. He does not send any body the maize, but he sells somebody the honey. 6. Why does every body praise this child? 7. Is every body very selfish? 8. Has not somebody my plane? 9. No, nobody has your plane, but somebody has the auger of the servant. 10. Is any body smoking? 11. Is somebody singing a song? 12. Somebody has my pitcher and my plate. 13. Do you not send somebody the money? 14. No, I do not send any body (I send nobody; see 6) the money. 15. Does any body send the tailor the dress and the button? 16. The tailor sends somebody the dress. 17. Has the cook any body's kettle? 18. Yes, he has one. (L. 16. 5) 19. I have somebody's nail. 20. Have you any body's tobacco? 21. Is any body every body's friend?

LESSON XIX.

Lectiön XIX.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN *Man*.

1. The pronoun *man* (like the French *on*) indicates persons in a general and indefinite manner :

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Man</i> darf nicht zu viel schlafen. | { <i>One</i> should not sleep too much; <i>or</i> { <i>People</i> should not sleep too much. |
| Was trinkt man in Grönland? | { What do <i>they</i> drink in Greenland? { What does <i>one</i> drink in Greenland? |
| <i>Man</i> ißt selten zu wenig. | { <i>People</i> seldom eat too little; <i>or</i> { <i>One</i> seldom eats too little. |
| <i>Man</i> haßt einen Tyrannen. | { <i>One</i> hates a tyrant; <i>or</i> { A tyrant is hated. |
| <i>Man</i> schmeichelt ihr zu sehr. | { <i>People</i> flatter her too much; <i>or</i> { She is too much flattered. |

2. *Man* is used only i. the nominative; the oblique cases being supplied by other words :

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Man</i> ißt um sein Leben zu erhalten. | <i>One</i> eats in order to preserve <i>one's</i> (his) life. |
| Er will einen nie hören. | He will never listen to <i>one</i> . |
| <i>Man</i> soll seinen Nächsten wie sich selbst lieben. | <i>One</i> should love <i>one's</i> (his) neighbor as <i>one's self</i> (himself). |

3. *Gar* (as also the more emphatic *ganz und gar*), *before a negative*, answers to *at all*, *after a negative* :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Er hat gar nichts. | He has nothing <i>at all</i> . (at all nothing). |
| Es ist gar nicht kalt. | It is not <i>at all</i> cold. (at all not cold). |
| Sch weiß ganz und gar nichts davon. | I know nothing <i>at all</i> of it (thereof). |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Was man nicht versteht, besitzt man nicht.—G. | What <i>one</i> does not understand, <i>one</i> does not possess. |
| Es ist zuweilen hohe Weisheit zu vergessen was man weiß.—G. | It is sometimes great wisdom to forget what <i>one</i> knows. |
| Weiß man wer diese blut'ge That verübte? | Is it known who committed this bloody deed? |
| Mit der Zeit und mit der Geduld lernt man Alles. | With (the) time and with (the) patience <i>one</i> learns every thing. |
| Um glücklich zu sein bedarf man nur Zufriedenheit. | In order to be happy <i>one</i> needs only contentment. |

Man glaubt es gar nicht welch eintöniges Wesen man wird, wenn man sich immer in dem Zirkel seiner Lieblingsbegriffe herumdreht.—R.

One can not at all imagine what monotonous being *one* becomes if *one* constantly remains (turn one's self) in the circle of *one's* favorite notions.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Besitz'en, to possess;
Fangen, to catch (§ 78);
Finden, to find;
Fürchten, to fear,
Gewöhnlich, generally.
Glauben, to believe;
Der Krieg, the war;
Leicht, easily, readily;
Der Marmor, the marble;
Man, (see 1.) one;
Nur, only, but;

Das Rußland, (the) Russia;
Der Seehund, the seal;
Sehr, very, very much;
Selten, seldom;
Viel, much;
Während, while;
Wahrscheinlich, probable;
Der Walfsisch, the whale;
Wenig, little, few;
Wünschen, to wish;
Zuverlässig, reliable.

EXERCISE 34.

Aufgabe 34.

1. Wo findet man den Marmor? 2. Was sagt man von dem Kriege in Rußland? 3. Man hört viel von dem Kriege, aber nichts Zuverlässiges. 4. Man lobt gewöhnlich was man liebt. 5. Man besitzt nicht was man nicht versteht. 6. Man ist selten unzufrieden während man arbeitet. 7. Man findet jetzt mehr Gold als Silber. 8. Das Wetter ist gar nicht kalt. 9. Er hat gar kein Geld, und ich habe nur sehr wenig. 10. Wo fängt man den Walfsisch und den Seehund? 11. In was für einem Lande findet man den Wolf? 12. Was er Ihrem Freunde sagt ist gar nicht wahrscheinlich. 13. Man glaubt leicht was man wünscht oder fürchtet. 14. Auf was für Papier schreiben Sie den Brief? 15. Ich habe gar kein Papier, ich schreibe keinen Brief.

EXERCISE 35.

Aufgabe 35.

1. Is one not generally contented while one is working? 2. In what country is the black marble found? 3. Is nothing reliable heard from the war in Russia? 4. In what kind of water is the whale found? 5. Is the seal caught easily? 6. My friend has no money at all, and I have but very little. 7. What is said is not at all probable, but he believes it, for he wishes

it. 3. Does one believe easily what one fears? 9. What is said of the war? 10. Much is said of the war, but it is not believed. 11. Our old neighbor is seen very seldom. 12. Whose pencil has the child? 13. It has no pencil at all, it has my new knife. 14. What kind of a book is the scholar reading? 15. He is reading no book at all, he is reading a letter.



LESSON XX.

Section XX.

1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Aus, out, out of; außer, without, out of; bei, by, with; binnen, within; entgegen, against, toward; gegenüber, over against, opposite; gemäß, conformable; mit, with; nach, to, toward; nächst, next to; nebst, beside, including; ob, over, on, on account of; sammt, together with; seit, since; von, of, from; zu, to, at, by, in; zuwider, against, contrary to. These prepositions all govern the dative only.

2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Durch, through, by, by means of; für, for, instead of; gegen, toward, about; ohne, without, beside; wider, without; um, around, near, at, for; wider, against, in opposition to. These prepositions all govern the accusative only.

3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

An, at, in, on, by, to; auf, upon, in, at, up, toward; hinter, behind, after, back; in, in, into, to; neben, by, near, beside; über, over, above, at, about; unter, under, below, among; vor, before, ago; zwischen, between, among. These prepositions govern the *dative*, when used with verbs of *rest*, or with those indicating motion *within* specified limits; and the *accusative*, when motion or tendency *toward* any place or object is indicated:

Er läuft in dem Garten.
Er läuft in den Garten.

He is running in the garden.
He is running into the garden.

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Er läuft auf dem Eise. | He is running <i>on</i> the ice. |
| Er läuft auf das Eis. | He is running <i>on</i> ("onto") the ice. |
| Er ist in dem Hause. | He is <i>in</i> the house. |
| Er geht in das Haus. | He goes <i>into</i> the house. |

4. Prepositions are frequently contracted with the definite article into one word :

| | | | |
|---------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Am | (for an dem). | Er sitzt am Tische. | He sits <i>at</i> the table. |
| Ans | (for an das). | Er geht ans Fenster. | He goes <i>to</i> the window. |
| Aufs | (for auf das). | Er legt es aufs Brett. | He lays it <i>on</i> the board. |
| Beim | (for bei dem). | Er ist beim Bruder. | He is <i>with</i> the brother. |
| Durchs | (for durch das). | Er geht durchs Feld. | He goes <i>through</i> the field. |
| Fürs | (for für das). | Es ist fürs Kind. | It is <i>for</i> the child. |
| Hinterm | (for hinter dem). | Er steht hinterm Zaune. | He stands <i>behind</i> the fence. |
| Im | (for in dem). | Er ist im Hause. | He is <i>in</i> the house. |
| Ins | (for in das). | Er geht ins Haus. | He goes <i>into</i> the house. |
| Vom | (for von dem). | Er kommt vom Markte. | He comes <i>from</i> the market. |
| Zum | (for zu dem). | Er geht zum Freunde. | He goes <i>to</i> the friend. |
| Zur | (for zu der; feminine gender, L. 23.) | | |

EXAMPLES OF *an*, *von*, *auf*, *aus* AND *nach*.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Er denkt an seinen Freund. | He thinks <i>of</i> (<i>about</i>) his friend. |
| Er spricht von seinem Freunde. | He speaks <i>of</i> his friend. |
| Er ist stolz auf seinen Reichtum. | He is proud <i>of</i> his wealth. |
| Was wurde aus dem Schüler? | What became <i>of</i> the scholar? |
| Das Wasser schmeckt nach Eisen. | The water tastes <i>of</i> iron. |
| Er ist ein Engländer von Geburt. | He is an Englishman <i>by</i> birth. |
| Aller Segen kommt von oben. | Every blessing comes <i>from</i> above. |
| Er ist fast verzehrt von der Hitze. | He is almost consumed <i>with</i> the heat. |
| Er lebt von Brod und Wein. | He lives <i>on</i> bread and wine. |
| Er ist groß von Person'. (§ 107) | He is tall <i>in</i> stature. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Einer steht an dem Fenster, und der Andere geht an das Fenster. | One is standing at the window, and the other is going to the window. |
| Der alte Mann und sein alter Freund gehen in das alte Haus. | The old man and his old friend are going into the old house. |
| Fliegt der Vogel in das Zimmer oder in dem Zimmer? | Is the bird flying into the room or in the room. |
| Da um legt der Kellner das Holz neben den Ofen? | Why does the waiter lay the wood beside the stove? |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Das Band, the ribbon; | Legen, to place, lay. |
| Das Bett, the bed; | Neben, beside; |
| Der Bettler, the beggar; | Oft, often; |
| Das Bindewort, the conjunction; | Ohne, without; |
| Durch, through; | Rostig, rusty; |
| Das Fenster, the window; | Springen, to spring; |
| Für, for (preposition); | Um, around, near; |
| Gegen, toward, to, about; | Unhöflich, impolite; |
| Der Graben, the ditch; | Das Verhältnißwort, the prepositio |
| Der Keller, the cellar; | Wider, against. |

EXERCISE 36.

Aufgabe 36.

1. Der Mann steht an dem Fenster, und das Kind geht an das Fenster. 2. Er sitzt auf dem Stuhle und legt sein Buch auf das Bett. 3. Das Kind ist hinter dem Ofen; der Hund geht hinter den Ofen. 4. Das Papier liegt neben dem Buche; der Schüler legt den Bleistift neben das Buch. 5. Das Haus steht über dem Keller; das Pferd springt über den Graben. 6. Der junge Mann steht unter dem Baume; sein Freund geht unter den Baum. 7. Der Kaufmann steht vor dem Hause; der alte Sattler kommt vor das Haus. 8. Der Baum steht zwischen dem Hause und dem Garten; der Mann geht zwischen das Haus und den Garten. 9. Der kleine Vogel fliegt in das Zimmer; fliegt er auch in dem Zimmer? 10. Der Jäger geht durch den Wald und um das Feld; er hat ein rothes Band um seinen Hut. 11. Er ist unhöflich gegen unsern Nachbar. 12. Was sagt er wider Ihren Vetter? 13. Gehen Sie ohne Ihren Stod? 14. Ich habe nichts für den Schüler, denn er ist nicht mein Freund. 15. Was ist der Unterschied zwischen "denn" und "für?" 16. Denn ist ein Bindewort, für ein Verhältnißwort.

EXERCISE 37.

Aufgabe 37.

1. Who is standing at that window? 2. Before which large table is the scholar sitting? 3. Is the old beggar coming before our house? 4. The dog is going behind the house; the garden lies behind the house. 5. Your new pencil is lying beside my new book; why does the scholar lay his paper beside my new book? 6. The child is playing between the house and the garden; the horse is going between the tree and the house.

7. The man is in the house, and his brother is going into the house. 8. The dog springs over the ditch; the room of the tailor is over the room of the shoemaker. 9. The horse is standing under the tree; the dog is going under the tree; the child is going to the window. 10. Who says any thing against the miller? 11. Why does the bird fly around the field and the forest? 12. What kind of paper do you buy for the scholar? 13. I do not buy any paper at all, for I have no money. 14. Do you know the difference between a conjunction and a preposition? 15. The saddler is going through the forest; does he go without his cane? 16. Is the scholar impolite to our friend?



LESSON XXI.

Section XXI.

NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

1. All verbs, in the present and imperfect, in negative sentences, are employed, like *to have* and *to be*, in English, without an auxiliary :

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Er ist nicht hier. | He is not here. |
| Er wohnt nicht hier. | He does not live here. (He lives not here.) |
| Er hat es nicht. | He has it not. |
| Er kauft es nicht. | He does not buy it. (He buys it not.) |

POSITION OF Nicht.

2. In simple sentences *nicht* follows the object of the verb to which it refers. When, however, that which is in one clause denied, is in another affirmed of a different object, *nicht* *precedes* the object :

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich habe den Hut nicht. | I have not the hat (the hat not) |
| Er lobt seinen Sohn nicht. | He does not praise his son. |
| Ich habe den guten Bleistift, aber nicht das Papier. | I have the good pencil, but not the paper. |
| Ich habe nicht den Bleistift, sondern das Papier. | I have not the pencil, but the paper. |

3. In interrogative sentences, *nicht* frequently precedes the object of the verb :

Haben Sie nicht den Bleistift? Have you not the pencil?

4. *Sondern* occurs only after a *negative*, of which it introduces the opposite; while

Aber is less strongly adversative; often merely marking something additional, and may follow either an affirmation or negation :

| | |
|--|--|
| Er ist nicht reich sondern arm. | He is not rich but poor. |
| Er ist nicht reich aber stolz. | He is not rich but proud. |
| Er ist freigebig aber nicht reich. | He is generous but not rich. |
| Er ist nicht nur reich sondern auch freigebig. | He is not only rich but also generous. |
| Das Messer ist nicht scharf sondern stumpf. | The knife is not sharp but dull. |

5. *Nicht wahr?* not true? (is it not true? like the French *n'est-ce pas?*) answers to our various interrogative phrases after an assertion :

| | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|--------------------------------|
| Sie kennen ihn, | } nicht wahr? | You know him, do you not? |
| Er ist Ihr Bruder, | | He is your brother, is he not? |
| Sie wird gehen, | | She will go, will she not? |
| Er hat es gehabt, | | He has had it, has n't he? |
| Wir können hören, | | We can hear, can we not? |
| Sie sind reich, | | They are rich, are they not? |
| Sie sind nicht reich, | | They are not rich, are they? |

6. *Nicht wahr* sometimes *precedes* the assertion; and, occasionally, the latter word is not expressed :

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Nicht wahr, er ist sehr reich? | He is very rich, is he not? |
| Sie kennen den Mann, nicht? | You know the man, do you not? |
| Er ist noch hier, nicht? | He is still here, is he not? |

7. *Nicht*, when used with *noch* (*yet*), should *follow* it; as should also, *kein*, *immer*, and other words similarly employed :

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| Er ist noch nicht hier. | He is not yet here. | (He is yet not here.) |
| Er war noch nie krank. | He was never yet sick. | (He was yet never sick.) |
| Hat er noch kein Buch? | Has he no book yet? | (Has he yet no book?) |

8 *Auch nicht*, *auch kein*, etc., after a negation, are often best

rendered by *neither nor*; *not either*, or some similar word or phrase, not strictly literal :

| | | |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Ich singe nicht, er singt | I do not sing; neither | (I do not sing: he too |
| auch nicht. | does he sing. | does not sing.) |
| Er ist nicht reich; auch ist | He is not rich, neither | (He is not rich, he is |
| er nicht arm. | (nor) is he poor. | also not poor.) |
| Sie haben kein Geld, ich | You have no money, (You have no money, | |
| auch nicht. | nor I either. | I also not.) |
| Er ist nie zufrieden, ich | He is never contented; (He is never contented; | |
| auch nicht. | neither am I. | I also (am) not.) |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Warum besuchen Sie uns nicht öfter? | Why do you not visit us oftener? |
| Wissen Sie nicht warum er weint? | Do you not know why he is weeping? |
| Ich kenne den Maler nicht, mein Bruder kennt ihn auch nicht. | I do not know the painter, neither does my brother know him. |
| Haben Sie nicht mein Papier und meinen Bleistift? | Have you not my paper and my pencil? |
| Ich habe den Bleistift, aber nicht das Papier. | I have the pencil, but not the paper. |
| Das Wetter ist nicht trocken sondern feucht. | The weather is not dry, but moist. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Brausen, to roar; | Morgen, to-morrow; |
| Aufmerksam, attentive; | Nachlässig, negligent; |
| Das Dorf, the village; | Nie, never; |
| Englisch, English; | Der Norweger, the Norwegian; |
| Der Fluß, the river; | Sondern, but; |
| Französisch, French; | Stumpf, dull; |
| Freigebig, generous; | Der Taucher, the diver; |
| Heute, to-day; | Der Verbrecher, the criminal; |
| Interessant, interesting; | Der Wind, the wind; |
| Langweilig, tedious; | Stittern, to tremble; |
| Lehrreich, instructive; | Buweißen, sometimes. |

EXERCISE 38.

Aufgabe 38.

1. Hören Sie nicht wie der Wind braust? 2. Ich sehe wie das Kind zittert. 3. Ist nicht jedes lehrreiche Buch interessant? 4. Ist nicht manches lehrreiche Buch langweilig? 5. Welchen Unterschied finden Sie zwischen "Nicht jedes lehrreiche Buch ist interessant," und "Jedes lehrreiche Buch ist nicht interessant?" 6. Dieser Verbrecher

spricht französisch, nicht wahr? 7. Der geschickte Taucher bringt ihn aus dem Flusse. 8. Aber, wer spricht kein englisch, und wer spricht kein französisch? 9. Mein Messer ist nicht neu, sondern alt. 10. Es ist neu, aber nicht scharf. 11. Es ist nicht scharf, sondern stumpf. 12. Warum loben Sie jenen Schüler nicht? 13. Ich lobe jenen, aber nicht diesen. 14. Ist er nicht zuweilen sehr nachlässig? 15. Nein, er ist nie nachlässig, sondern immer aufmerksam. 16. Gehen Sie nicht heute nach dem Dorfe? 17. Ja, ich gehe jetzt, und mein Bruder geht morgen. 18. Warum sprechen Sie nicht englisch?

EXERCISE 39.

Aufgabe 39.

1. Have not you my book? 2. No, I have not the book. 3. This child is not industrious, but idle. 4. Not this child, but that one is attentive. 5. You speak French, do you not? 6. I speak English, but not French. 7. Why do you not write to-day? 8. I write French, but I do not write English. 9. You do not find this book tedious, do you? 10. I do not find it very interesting. 11. Is every instructive book tedious? 12. Do you never go to the village with your brother? 13. My brother is going to-day, and I am going to-morrow. 14. Is that scholar sometimes very idle and very negligent? 15. This new knife and the new chisel are not sharp, but dull and rusty. 16. Our old neighbor, the old Norwegian, is not only a very rich, but also a very generous man. 17. Your new book is not interesting, neither is it instructive. 18. My new book is not only instructive, but also interesting.

LESSON XXI.

Section XXII.

NOUNS OF THE NEW DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the *new* declension ending in unaccented *ar*, *e*, *er*, *el*, form all their oblique cases by adding *n* (for fem. sing., however, see L. XXIII. 4):

| | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| N. der Ungar, | der Neffe, | der Vater, |
| G. des Ungar-n, | des Neffe-n, | des Vater-n, |
| D. dem Ungar-n, | dem Neffe-n, | dem Vater-n, |
| A. den Ungar-n, | den Neffe-n, | den Vater-n. |

2. Nouns of this declension *not* ending in *ar*, etc., as above, form the oblique cases by adding *en*:

| | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| N. der Graf, | der Soldat, | der Held, |
| G. des Graf-en, | des Soldat-en, | des Held-en, |
| D. dem Graf-en, | dem Soldat-en, | dem Held-en, |
| A. den Graf-en, | den Soldat-en, | den Held-en. |

3. When an adjective or a participle is used substantively, it still follows the declension of its original word :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Dieser Deutsche ist ein Gesand'ter. | This German is an ambassador. |
| Dieser Gesand'te ist ein Deutscher. | This ambassador is a German. |

4. To the new declension belong most names of males ending in *e*, many names of nations, as also various foreign nouns (§ 18):

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Der Löwe, the lion; | Der Ochs (or, Ochse), the ox; |
| Der Hase, the hare; | Der Advocat, the advocate; |
| Der Baiar, the Bavarian; | Der Ungar, the Hungarian. |

5. To ascertain to which of the two declensions a noun belongs, the pupil has only to observe the endings of the genitive, as given in the vocabularies; *es* (or *é*) denoting the *old* declension, and *n* (or *en*) the *new*; thus,

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Der Affe, -n, the ape; | Der Käse, -s, the cheese; |
| Der Wolf, -es, the wolf; | Der Bär, -en, the bear; |
| Der Held, -en, the hero; | Der Feind, -es, the enemy; |
| Der Ruf, -es, the call; | Der Graf, -en, the count; |
| Der Baiar, -n, the Bavarian; | Der Oestreicher, -s, the Austrian. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|---|
| Warum ist der Franzose der Freund des Engländers und des Türken? | Why is the Frenchman the friend of the Englishman and the Turk? |
| Ist der Oestreicher der Feind des Russen oder des Franzosen? | Is the Austrian the enemy of the Russian or of the Frenchman? |
| Was für ein Landesmann ist der König von Griechenland? | What countryman is the king of Greece? |
| Der Sklave liebt seine Sklaverei nicht. | The slave does not love his slavery. |
| Der Ungar liebt den Oestreicher nicht; der Pole auch nicht. | The Hungarian does not love the Austrian; neither does the Pole. |
| Der Ungar liebt den Oestreicher nicht, den Russen auch nicht. | The Hungarian does not love the Austrian, nor the Russian either. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Der Amerika'ner, -s, the American; | Das Leben, -s, the life |
| Anstreng'end, toilsome; | Der Matro'se, -n, the sailor; |
| Der Baier, -n, the Bavarian; | Der Nefse, -n, the nephew; |
| Deutsch, German (adj.); | Der Oheim, -s, the uncle; |
| Der Engländer, -s, the Englishman; | Der Oestreicher, -s, the Austrian; |
| Der Feind, -es, the enemy; | Der Pole, -n, the Pole; |
| Der Franzo'se, -n, the Frenchman; | Der Russe, -n, the Russian; |
| Führen, to lead; | Der Soldat, -en, the soldier; |
| Das Griechenland, -s, (the) Greece; | Der Türke, -n, the Turk; |
| Der Italie'ner, -s, the Italian; | Der Ungar, -n, the Hungarian; |
| Der Knabe, -n, the boy; | unsicher, insecure; |
| Der König, -es, the king; | Unterdrücken, to oppress. |

EXERCISE 40.

Aufgabe 40.

1. Der Matrose führt ein unsicheres und anstrengendes Leben.
2. Das Leben eines Matrosen ist anstrengend und unsicher.
3. Der Nefse des alten Soldaten hat einen Brief von seinem Oheime.
4. Der alte Soldat schreibt seinem Nefsen, dem jungen Soldaten, einen Brief.
5. Der Knabe lobt nicht den Soldaten, sondern den Matrosen.
6. Ist der König von Griechenland ein Deutscher?
7. Ist der Deutsche der Freund des Italieners?
8. Ist der Franzose der Freund des Deutschen?
9. Warum haßt der Türke den Russen?
10. Der Russe unterdrückt den Türken und den Polen.
11. Warum unterdrückt der Oestreicher den Italiener, den Ungarn und den Polen?
12. Wen unterdrückt der Amerikaner?
13. Wen unterdrückt der Engländer?
14. Wer haßt den Engländer und den Amerikaner?
15. Haßt der Russe den Engländer, den Franzosen, den Ungarn, den Polen und den Türken?

EXERCISE 41.

Aufgabe 41.

1. Why is the Pole the enemy of the Austrian?
2. Is the Hungarian the friend of the Pole, or is he his enemy?
3. The Pole is the friend of the Hungarian, and the enemy of the Austrian and of the Russian.
4. Is the king of Greece a Bavarian?
5. Is the soldier the nephew of the sailor?
6. No, the sailor is the nephew of the soldier.
7. Does the Englishman hate the American?
8. The Englishman does not hate the American.
9. Who oppresses the Italian, the Hungarian and the

Pole? 10. Is this old sailor a Russian, a Turk, an Italian, or a Frenchman? 11. That old soldier is the uncle of this boy. 12. Who leads a toilsome and insecure life? 13. Is this German a soldier, or a sailor? is this sailor a German or a Russian? 14. The boy is writing his uncle, the old soldier, a letter. 15. The Hungarian is the neighbor of the Austrian, of the Pole, of the Russian and of the Turk.

LESSON XXIII.

Section XXIII.

FEMININE GENDER.

1. DECLENSION OF *Die*, *Diese* AND *Meine*.*Feminine.*

| | | | |
|----|---------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| N | die, the; | dieſ-e, this; | mein-e, my; |
| G. | der, of the; | dieſ-er, of this; | mein-er, of my; |
| D. | der, to or for the; | dieſ-er, to or for this; | mein-er, to or for my; |
| A. | die, the; | dieſ-e, this; | mein-e, my. |

The article, definite and indefinite, as also, the adjective pronouns (which in the other genders have different endings, and are differently declined), here all end in *e*, and are inflected alike; namely,

dieſ-e, die, all-e, einig-e, etlich-e, jed-e, manch-e, ſold-e, welch-e;
as also,
mein-e, ein-e, dein-e, euer-e, ihr-e, ſein-e, unſer-e, fein-e, (compare L. X. 4. and L. XII. 4).

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN THE FEMININE GENDER.

2. Feminine adjectives, unless they follow *die*, *eine*, or some word of the above list, and refer to the same noun, are of the

OLD DECLENSION.

| | | |
|----|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| N | gut-e, good; | (dieſ-e, mein-e, ein-e.) |
| G. | gut-er, of good; | (dieſ-er, mein-er, ein-er.) |
| D. | gut-er, to or for good; | (dieſ-er, mein-er, ein-er.) |
| A. | gut-e, good; | (dieſ-e, mein-e, ein-e.) |

3. Feminine adjectives, when they follow *diese, die, manche, meine*, or any word of that list, and refer to the same noun, are of the

NEW DECLENSION.

| | |
|--|---|
| N. <i>die gute</i> , the good ; | <i>meine gute</i> , my good ; |
| G. <i>der guten</i> , of the good ; | <i>meiner guten</i> , of my good , |
| D. <i>der guten</i> , to, for the good ; | <i>meiner guten</i> , to, for my good ; |
| A. <i>die gute</i> , the good ; | <i>meine gute</i> , my good. |

Obs. As *dieſ-e*, *mein-e*, etc. (*feminine*), equally denote the gender of the noun, the *mixed* declension, in the feminine, is *not* required; hence we have here but *two* declensions of the adjective, the *old* and the *new*.

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS.

4. Feminine nouns, except proper names, are, in the singular, indeclinable : *

| | |
|---|--|
| Ich habe die Feder meiner Mutter. | I have the pen of my mother. |
| Er iſt der Sohn dieſer alten Dame. | He is the ſon of that old lady. |
| Vollkommenes Glück iſt nicht der Menſchheit Loos.—W. | Perfect (prosperity) happiness is not the lot of mankind. |
| Schwärmerei iſt Krankheit der Seele. —W. | Fanaticism is ſickneſs (disease) of the ſoul. |

5. Appellations of females are formed from thoſe of males by means of the ſuffix in (*or inn*) :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| der Schneider, the tailor ; | die Schneiderin, the tailoreſs ; |
| der Freund, the friend ; | die Freundin, the (female) friend ; |
| der Engländer, the Engliſhman ; | die Engländerin, the Engliſhwoman |
| der Schüler, the ſcholar ; | die Schülerin, the female ſcholar ; |
| der Gema'h, the conſort (huſband) ; | die Gema'hlin, the conſort (wife) ; |
| der Löwe, the lion ; | die Löwin, the lioness. |

6. Appellations of women, formed from titles of men, may

* It may be obſerved, however, that in poetry and certain phraſes the endings of the new declenſion (in which the feminine noun was formerly declined) are ſtill ſometimes found in the genitive and dative :
Es iſt ſeiner Frauen Schweſter. It is his wife's ſiſter.
Es iſt beſſer arm mit Ehren, denn It is better (to be) poor with honor,
reich mit Schanden. than rich with diſgrace.

signify either the wife of an officer, or a female who holds an office herself:

der Präsident', the president;

die Präsidentin, the female president, or the president's wife.

7. The vowels *a, o, u*, usually take the Umlaut; *i. e.* are changed to *ä, ö, ü*, before the suffix in:

der Schwager, the brother-in-law; die Schwägerin, the sister-in-law;

der Koch, the cook; die Köchin, the (female) cook.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Ich habe die neue Feder meiner Mutter. I have the new pen of my mother.
Du siehst der Mutter Aug' in Thränen.—S. Thou seest the mother's eye in tears.

Finden Sie diese Sprache schwer? Do you find this language hard?
Die Freundin unserer Schwester ist unsere Lehrerin. The friend of our sister is our teacher.

Ihre kleine Cousine ist eine aufmerksame Schülerin. Your little cousin is an attentive scholar.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Die Aprikose, —, the apricot (see 4.); | Die Melone, —, the melon; |
| Die Blume, —, the flower; | Die Milch, —, the milk; |
| Die Butter, —, the butter; | Die Mutter, —, the mother; |
| Die Dame, —, the lady; | Die Rose, —, the pink; |
| Die Engländerin, —, the Englishwoman; | Der Schwager, —, the brother-in-law; |
| Die Feder, —, the pen; | Die Schwester, —, the sister; |
| Die Kette, —, the chain; | Die Tinte, —, the ink; |
| Die Kirche, —, the church; | Die Tochter, —, the daughter; |
| Die Kirsche, —, the cherry; | Die Uhr, —, the watch. |

EXERCISE 42.

Aufgabe 42.

1. Haben Sie schwarze Tinte, oder blaue? 2. Ich habe blaue, und meine Schwester hat schwarze. 3. Wer hat meine neue Feder und meine gute Tinte? 4. Ihre junge Freundin hat Ihre neue Feder, aber ich weiß nicht, wo die Tinte ist. 5. Wessen neue Feder hat diese Schülerin? 6. Die Schülerin hat keine neue Feder, sondern eine alte. 7. Warum schreiben Sie mit blauer Tinte? 8. Ich schreibe nicht mit blauer Tinte; ich schreibe mit meiner schwarzen

Übte. 9. Wer kauft die Milch, die Butter, die Melone, die Kirsche und die Aprikose? 10. Die Köchin kauft die Milch, die Butter und die Melone, und die alte Dame kauft die Aprikose. 11. Die Rose ist eine schöne Blume. 12. Wer schickt der Tochter jener alten Dame eine Rose? 13. Was für eine Rose schickt die Schülerin der Lehrerin, eine weiße oder eine rothe? 14. Wem schickt die Lehrerin die weiße Rose? 15. Was für eine Blume ist die Nelke? 16. Der Schwager und die Schwägerin dieser Engländerin sind in jener alten Kirche. 17. Hat meine junge Freundin meine Uhr und meine Kette? 18. Ihre Freundin hat die Uhr, aber nicht die Kette. 19. Unsere Mutter ist unsere Lehrerin

EXERCISE 43.

Aufgabe 43.

1. Are you writing with my new pen? 2. No, I am writing with the new pen of my sister. 3. Has the sister-in-law of your friend a new watch? 4. Whose watch and chain has your mother? 5. My mother has my watch, and my sister has my chain and my pen. 6. The sister of your teacher is our teacher. 7. In which church is the daughter of our old friend? 8. What kind of a flower have you, a rose, or a pink? 9. I have a beautiful pink, and my sister has a rose. 10. This milk is good, but the butter is not good. 11. Have you a ripe melon and a ripe apricot? 12. I have a ripe apricot and a ripe cherry, but I have no ripe melon. 13. What kind of ink has your sister, black or blue? 14. With what kind of a pen, and what kind of ink is your mother writing? 15. Has your friend a white rose, or a red one? 16. Is the pink a beautiful flower? 17. Is not every flower beautiful? 18. You have my watch, your chain, the pen of our teacher and the ink of the scholar. 19. Is your mother your teacher? 20. No, the daughter of that old lady is our teacher.

LESSON XXIV.

Lektion XXIV.

FORMATION AND GENDER OF DIMINUTIVES.

1. The syllables *chen* and *lein*,* suffixed to nouns, give rise to a large class of words, called diminutives. These diminutives are always of the neuter gender, and their radical vowel, if capable of it, takes the Umlaut :

Das Lamm the lamb; das Lämmchen, the lambkin (little lamb)
 Der Sohn, the son; das Söhnchen, the (dear) little son;
 Der Fluß, the river; das Flüßchen, the rivulet (little river);
 Der Hügel, the hill; das Hügelchen, the hillock (little hill);
 Die Blume, the flower; das Blümchen, (or Blümlein) the floweret.

2. The diminutives are also used as terms of endearment, or to indicate familiarity; and are often employed where in English no idea of diminutiveness would be expressed :

“Denn Brüderchen und Schwesterchen For brother dear and sister dear
 die kommen oft zu mir.” (they) often come to me.
 Das Vögelchen (or Vöglein) singt ein The little bird sings a gladsome
 frohes Liedchen. (little) song.

3. The words *Fräulein* and *Mädchen* though regularly formed, as diminutives, have lost their strictly diminutive signification. *Fräulein* signifies a young (unmarried) lady; and also serves as a title of address: answering to *Miss*. *Mädchen* is rendered by *girl*, or maiden; *Magd*, from which it is derived, being now employed chiefly in the signification of servant :

Fräulein N. ist eine Freundin dieses Miss N. is a friend of this girl.
 Mädchens.

Sobald das Mädchen Abschied nahm, As soon as the maiden took leave,
 u. s. w.—G. etc.

Dieses Mädchen spielt mit seinem Brü- This girl is playing with her little
 derchen. brother.

* Other forms, chiefly provincial or vulgar, and confined mostly to conversation, which sometimes perplex the learner, are *el*, *li*, *elchen*; as “Mäbel,” for Mädchen; “Büchelchen,” for Büchlein; “Rößli,” for Rößlein; etc.

FORMATION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

NOUNS WITH NOUNS.

4 In German two or more nouns are often united in one word, where the English equivalents are joined by a hyphen, or several separate words are used :

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Zugthier, | draught-animal, | (Zug, draught; Thier, beast.) |
| Lastthier, | beast of burden; | (Last, burden; Thier, beast.) |
| Schadenfreude, | malicious pleasure; | (Schaden, injury; Freude, joy.) |
| Pressfreiheit, | freedom of the press; | (Freiheit, freedom; Presse, press.) |
| Ruhmbegierde, | ambition, thirst of fame; | (Ruhm, fame; Begierde, desire.) |
| Ordnungsliebe, | love of order; | (Ordnung, order; Liebe, love.) |
| Schuhmacher, | shoemaker; | (Schuh, shoe; Maker, maker.) |
| Handwerk, | avocation; trade; | (Hand, hand; Werk, work.) |
| Schuhmacherhandwerk, | shoemaker's trade or calling. | |

5. The first noun is sometimes put in the plural :

| | |
|---------------|--|
| Kleiderkranz, | clothes-press; (Kleider, clothes; Kranz, case, press.) |
| Bücherkranz, | book-case; (Bücher, books.) |
| Wörterbuch, | dictionary; (Wörter, words; Buch, book.) |

NOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS, PRONOUNS, VERBS, ETC.

6. Compound nouns are also formed by uniting several parts of speech :

| | | |
|------------------------|---|--|
| Ausweg, | egress; | (aus, out of; Weg, way.) |
| Fürwort, | pronoun; | (Für, for; Wort, word.) |
| Mitschüler, | fellow-scholar; | (mit, with; Schüler, scholar.) |
| Schreibpapier, | writing-paper; | (schreiben, to write; Papier, paper.) |
| Kaufmann, | merchant; | (kaufen, to buy; Mann, man.) |
| Störenfried, | agitator; | (stören, to disturb; Friede, peace.) |
| Springinsfeld, | romp; fly-about; | (springen, spring; in, into; Feld, field.) |
| Taugenichts, | good-for-nothing; | (taugen, to be fit for; nichts, nothing.) |
| Vergissmein- nicht, | the forget-me-not; (vergessen, to forget; mein (L. 28. 2.), and nicht, not.) | |

NOUNS WITH ADJECTIVES.

7. Nouns are sometimes formed by uniting adjectives (undeclined) with nouns :

| | |
|----------------|--|
| der Sauerklee, | the sheep's sorrel; (sauer, sour; Klee, clover.) |
| der Krummstab, | the crozier; (krumm, crooked; Stab, staff.) |
| das Weißbrod, | the white bread; (weiß, white; Brod, bread.) |

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

8. Compound adjectives are formed by uniting two adjectives, or a noun and an adjective :

| | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Dunkelgrün, | dark green; | (dunkel, dark; grün, green.) |
| Rabenschwarz, | black as a raven; | (Rabe, raven; schwarz, black.) |
| Lebensfätt, | tired of life; | (Leben, life; fätt, satiated.) |
| Waffenfähig, | capable of bearing arms; | (Waffen, arms; fähig, capable.) |
| Wunderfchön, | extremely beautiful; | (Wunder, miracle; schön, beautiful.) |

9. Nouns, instead of being written as one word, are sometimes separated by a hyphen :

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| So ftarf als Gottes Sünden-Haß | As strong as God's hatred of sin, is |
| Ist seine Sünden-Liebe.—§. | his love for sinners. |

10. The latter member of a compound may refer to words preceding those with which it is united ; the first word being followed by a hyphen :

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Der Stiefel- und Schuhmacher. | The boot and shoemaker. |
| Trost- und Hülfesbedürftig. | Needing consolation and help. |

GENDER OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

11. The first word of the compound takes the accent, while the latter usually determines the gender :

| | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| Ein Blumengarten, | A flower-garden. |
| Eine Gartenblume, | A garden-flower. |

12. Proper names of places, formed by suffixing the masculine noun *Berg*, or the feminine *Burg*, to other words, are, like all proper names of places, neuter :

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Das stark besetzte Magdeburg. | The strongly-fortified Magdeburg. |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

13. The word *Muth* is masculine ; the words *Demuth*, *Großmuth*, *Langmuth*, *Sanftmuth*, *Schweremuth* are feminine. *Theil* is masculine ; *Gegentheil*, *Hintertheil* and *Vordertheil* are neuter. *Schre* is feminine ; *Abtheil* is masculine.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Dieses kleine Mädchen hat einen silbernen Fingerhut. | This little girl has a silver thimble. |
|--|--|

| | |
|--|--|
| Wer ist jenes Fräulein? | Who is that young lady? |
| Es ist Fräulein N. | It is Miss N. |
| Die Gesichtsbildung ist der Spiegel der Seele. | The expression of the countenance is the mirror of the soul. |
| Der Buchbinder war mein Mitschüler. | The bookbinder was my fellow-scholar. |
| Staub sollst du essen dein Lebenlang. (Gen. iii. 14.) | Dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life. |
| Der Buchhändler verkauft gutes Schreib- und Briefpapier. | The book-dealer (seller) sells good writing and letter-paper. |
| Man nennt diese Blume das Vergißmeinnicht. | This flower is called the forget-me-not. |
| Ewigklar und spiegelrein und eben fließt das zephyrreichte Leben.—S. | Ever clear and pure as a mirror flows life light as zephyr (<i>literally</i> zephyr-light life) |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Bei, by, with; | Die Nacht, —, the night; |
| Der Berg, —es, the mountain; | Die Nachtigall, —, the nightingale; |
| Der Buchbinder, —s, the bookbinder; | Das Obst, —es, the fruit; |
| Das Feld, —es, the field; | Der Obstdgarten, —s, the orchard; |
| Fräulein, (see 3.) | Der Raubvogel, —s, the bird of prey; |
| Das Fürwort, —es, the pronoun; | Die Schildwache, —, the sentinel; |
| Das Jahr, —es, the year; | Der Sommer, —s, the summer; |
| Die Jahreszeit, —, the season of the year; | Der Sumpf, —es, the swamp; |
| Der Kranich, —es, the crane; | Der Sumpfvogel, —s, the wader, mo-rass-bird; |
| Das Lastthier, —es, the beast of burden; | Der Tag, —es, the day; |
| Die Lerche, —, the lark; | Die Zeit, —, the time; |
| Mädchen, (see 3.) | Das Zugthier, —es, the draught-animal. |

EXERCISE 44.

Aufgabe 44.

1. Was für Papier kaufen Sie, Schreibpapier oder Briefpapier?
2. Haben Sie einen schönen Blumengarten?
3. Ist die Rose eine Gartenblume, oder eine Feldblume?
4. Haben Sie viel reifes Obst in Ihrem Obstdgarten?
5. Haben Sie einen Apfelbaum, einen Kirschbaum, oder einen Aprikosenbaum? (Haben Sie einen Apfel-, einen Kirsch-, oder einen Aprikosenbaum? see 10.)
6. Was für einen Waldbaum hat der Uhrmacher in seinem Garten?
7. Haben Sie nicht Zeit auf den Berg zu gehen?
8. Dieses Hündchen ist nur ein Jahr alt.
9. Der Sommer ist eine sehr angenehme Jahreszeit.
10. Wer ist dieses Mädchen?
11. Es ist Fräulein N., eine gute

Freundin meiner Schwester. 12. Meine Schwester ist eine Mitschülerin dieses Fräuleins. 13. Die Schildwache ist der Bruder des Buchbinders. 14. Das Kameel ist ein Lastthier, und der Ochs ist ein Zugthier. 15. Was ist ein Hürwort? 16. Der Adler ist ein Raubvogel, der Schwan ist ein Schwimmvogel und der Kranich ist ein Sumpfvogel. 17. Die Nachtigall ist ein Singvogel, was für ein Vogel ist die Lerche? 18. Wann singt die Lerche, und wann singt die Nachtigall? 19. Diese singt bei Nacht, und jene bei Tag. (L. X. 2.)

EXERCISE 45.

Aufgabe 45.

1. What kind of a word is this? 2. It is a pronoun. 3. Have you an apple-tree, or a cherry-tree in your garden? 4. Have you no fruit-tree in your flower-garden? 5. I have no fruit-tree in my flower-garden, but I have a rose and a pink in my orchard. 6. Has the bookbinder a large forest-tree in his new garden? 7. He has no forest-tree, but he has a very beautiful apple-tree. 8. Is the eagle a bird of prey? 9. What kind of a bird is the crane, and where does he live? 10. Is the horse a draught-animal, or a beast of burden? 11. Is the summer a very pleasant season of the year? 12. Has that little girl good letter-paper? 13. The girl has good writing-paper, but no letter-paper. 14. Is Miss L. the sister of this little girl? 15. Do you know what kind of a bird the swan is? 16. Why do you not write your sister a letter? 17. I have not time to write, I am going with the watchmaker to the village. 18. This beautiful little apple-tree is only a year old, how old is that one? 19. My fellow-scholar has a new watch-chain, a sharp pen-knife, an old writing-desk, and a good writing-book.

LESSON XXV.

Lesson XXV.

PLAN OF COMPOSING GERMAN.

Hitherto the attention of the learner has been mainly directed to such forms and rules of declension and construction as were necessary to the translation of the several EXERCISES. He may now proceed to the more advanced work of *composing* sentences in German. Having clearly before him the *thought* which he proposes to express, let him endeavor, in accordance with the rules and examples previously studied, to give it a proper German dress. In this process, under the constant guidance of his *model* sentences in German, he will readily acquire the habit of *thinking* in that language, and so avoid the common and natural error of turning English modes of thought and expression into merely literal German.

Moreover, when favored with peculiar opportunities for speaking the language, the pupil might here introduce into the proposed sentences one or more of the additional tenses; or, change to some other tense any verb found in the regular Exercises (See Lessons XXXVI., XXXVII., XXXVIII.). Thus, for example, in Exercise 46., 1, for the *present* tense; as in,

“Diese Goldschmiede haben goldene, silberne und stählerne Ringe,”

the pupil may be required to substitute the *imperfect*; as,

Diese Goldschmiede hatten goldene, silberne und stählerne Ringe;

or, the *perfect*; as,

Diese Goldschmiede haben goldene, silberne und stählerne Ringe gehabt,

or, the *pluperfect*; as,

Diese Goldschmiede hatten goldene, silberne und stählerne Ringe gehabt,

or, the *first future*; as,

Diese Goldschmiede werden goldene, silberne und stählerne Ringe haben

For an additional stock of words, with further statement and exemplification of the plan, see page 449.

It has been deemed better to *refer* this class of learners, as above, than to sacrifice the progressive plan of the work, by introducing those Lessons at an earlier period.

ARTICLE AND ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, PLURAL.

1. In the plural number the article and adjective pronouns, as also *mehrere*, end in *e*; namely,

dieſe-*e*, *die*, *all*-*e*, *einig*-*e*, *etlich*-*e*, *jen*-*e*, *manch*-*e*, *mehrere*-*e*, *ſold*-*e*, *welch*-*e* (L. X. 4); as also,

mein-*e*, *ein*-*e*, *dein*-*e*, *ihr*-*e*, *jein*-*e*, *unſer*-*e* and *kein*-*e* (L. XII. 4) and have all the same form of

DECLENSION IN ALL GENDERS OF THE PLURAL.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| N. <i>dieſe</i> - <i>e</i> , these; | <i>mein</i> - <i>e</i> , my; |
| G. <i>dieſer</i> , of these; | <i>mein-er</i> , of my; |
| D. <i>dieſen</i> , to or for these; | <i>mein-en</i> , to or for my; |
| A. <i>dieſe</i> - <i>e</i> , these; | <i>mein</i> - <i>e</i> , my. |

ADJECTIVES.

2. Adjectives of all genders in the plural end in *e*, and have but *two* forms of declension, the *old* and the *new* (L. XXX. 1).

3. Adjectives, unless they follow *dieſe*, *meine*, or some word of that class (see 1), and refer to the same noun, are of the

OLD DECLENSION.

PLURAL, ALL GENDERS.

PLURAL, ALL GENDERS.

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| N. <i>gut</i> - <i>e</i> , good; | (<i>dieſe</i> - <i>e</i> .) |
| G. <i>gut-er</i> , of good; | (<i>dieſer</i> - <i>e</i> .) |
| D. <i>gut-en</i> , to or for good; | (<i>dieſen</i> - <i>e</i> .) |
| A. <i>gut</i> - <i>e</i> , good; | (<i>dieſe</i> - <i>e</i> .) |

Compare rule and declension L. XIV. 3, singular number.

PLURAL OF NOUNS OF THE OLD DECLENSION.

Neuter.

4. *Neuter* nouns *ending* in the nominative singular in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *ſten* and *lein*, have the same form in the nominative plural:

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Das Mittel</i> , the means; | <i>die Mittel</i> , the means; |
| <i>Das Gebäu'be</i> , the building | <i>die Gebäu'be</i> , the buildings; |
| <i>Das Bauer</i> , the cage; | <i>die Bauer</i> , the cages. |

5. *Neuter* nouns *not* ending in the nominative singular in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *eten* and *lein*, form their nominative plural by adding *e*:

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Das Jahr, the year; | die Jahre, the years; |
| Das Gebot, the commandment; | die Gebote, the commandments; |
| Das Pult, the desk; | die Pulte, the desks. |

Masculine.

6. *Masculine* nouns *ending* in the nominative singular in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, have the same form in the nominative plural:

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Der Sattler, the saddler; | die Sattler, the saddlers; |
| Der Koffer, the trunk; | die Koffer, the trunks; |
| Der Brunnen, the well; | die Brunnen, the wells. |

7. *Masculine* nouns *not* ending in the nominative singular in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, form the nominative plural by adding *e*, and taking the Umlaut, if capable of it:

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| Der Kamm, the comb; | die Kämme, the combs; |
| Der Strom, the stream; | die Ströme, the streams; |
| Der Hut, the hat; | die Hüte, the hats; |
| Der Baum, the tree; | die Bäume, the trees. |

Feminine.

8. *Feminine* nouns *ending* in the nominative singular in *funst* and *niß*, as also those in list page 276, form the plural by adding *e* and taking the Umlaut, if capable of it:

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Die Wüdnis, the wilderness; | die Wüdnisse, the wildernesses; |
| Die Hand, the hand; | die Hände, the hands; |
| Die Frucht, the fruit; | die Früchte, the fruits. |

NOTE.—Most feminine nouns belong to the new declension (L. XXX. 3).

DECLENSION OF NOUNS IN THE PLURAL.

9. Nouns whose nominative plural ends in *en*, have all cases in this number alike; those of other terminations have the genitive and accusative like the nominative, and add *n* in the dative:

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| N. die Degen; | die Hobel; | die Stühle; | die Hände; |
| G. der Degen; | der Hobel; | der Stühle; | der Hände; |
| D. den Degen; | den Hobeln; | den Stühlen; | den Händen; |
| A. die Degen; | die Hobel; | die Stühle; | die Hände. |

10. Haben Sein AND THE REGULAR VERB Loben IN THE PLURAL.

Present Tense.

mir haben, we have; wir sind, we are; wir lob-en, we praise;
 ihr habt, you have; ihr seid, you are; ihr lob-t, you praise;
 sie haben, they have; sie sind, they are; sie lob-en, they praise.

Thus regular verbs form the first and third persons in the present plural, by adding to the root en, and to the second person t (or et. See L. V. 1.)

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Die Tischler haben gute Stöbel.

The cabinet-makers have good planes.

Die Messer der Köche sind scharf.

The knives of the cooks are sharp.

Wer verkauft' den Köchen die Gänse und die Würste?

Who sells the cooks the geese and the sausages?

Die Fenster in den Zimmern der Schüler sind zu klein.

The windows in the rooms of the scholars are too small.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Art, -, pl. Arten, the ax;
 Das Bein, -es, -s, pl. -, the leg;
 Der Besen, -es, pl. -, the broom;
 Der Dieb, -es, pl. -, the thief;
 Der Einwohner, -s, pl. -, the inhabitant;
 Der Esel, -s, pl. -, the ass, donkey;
 Der Finger, -s, pl. -, the finger;
 Der Fuß, -es, pl. Füße, the foot;
 Die Hand, -, pl. Hände, the hand;
 Der Holzhauer, -s, pl. -, the woodcutter;
 Der Kaiser, -s, pl. -, the emperor;
 Der Kopf, -es, pl. Köpfe, the head;

Der Kragen, -s, (§ 13. 4. b.) the collar;
 Das Maulthier, -es, -s, pl. -, the mule;
 Das Ohr, -es, -s, pl. -, the ear;
 Der Palast, -es, pl. Paläste, the palace;
 Der Stiel, -es, pl. -, the handle;
 Unterrichten, to instruct;
 Uebernehmen, to undertake;
 Verfertigen, to make;
 Der Zahn, -es, pl. Zähne, the tooth,
 Zwei (see § 44), two.

EXERCISE 46.

Aufgabe 46.

1. Diese Goldschmiede haben goldene, silberne und stählerne Ringe.
2. Die Söhne jener Schmiede sind die Freunde dieser Müller.
3. Die Lehrer unterrichten die Schüler.
4. Die Wölfe haben große Zähne und kleine Füße.
5. Die Fleischer kaufen die Schaafe.
- 6.

Die Hutmacher verfertigen und verkaufen die Hüte. 7. Die Diebe haben lange Finger. 8. Wem schreiben die Schüler so viele Briefe? 9. Diese Stühle und Pulte gehören unsern Lehrern. 10. Die Knöpfe und Krägen an diesen Röcken sind zu groß. 11. Wem gehören diese Tische, Stühle und Pulte? 12. Diese Fische haben kleine Köpfe. 13. Die Paläste der Könige und der Kaiser sind sehr schön. 14. Die Stiele dieser Bejen sind zu lang. 15. Die Einwohner dieses Dorfes sind sehr arm. 16. Warum übernehmen Ihre Freunde so viel? 17. Was für Bäume sind diese? 18. Wie viele Hobel haben diese Tischler? 19. Der Bauer hat zwei Wagen, vier Pferde und acht und neunzig Schafe. 20. Die Holzhauer haben scharfe Äxte und harte Hände. 21. Der Esel und das Maulthier haben große Ohren und kleine Beine.

EXERCISE 47.

Aufgabe 47.

1. Have you good axes? 2. I have good axes, good planes and good chisels. 3. Do these tables, chairs and desks belong to the scholars? 4. The desks belong to the scholars, and the chairs belong to the teachers. 5. The fingers of the thieves are long. 6. Wolves have white teeth, and mules have long ears. 7. These brooms have long handles. 8. Emperors and kings have beautiful palaces. 9. Have all camels large soft feet? 10. The inhabitants of this village are wood-cutters. 11. The hands of the hatters are often black. 12. These fish have large heads. 13. These scholars are buying coats, hats, rings and canes. 14. The smiths make knives, axes and chisels. 15. Do these teachers instruct all those scholars? 16. Those tailors are making coats, these girls are making collars. 17. Which horses and which carriages do the physicians buy? 18. These shoemakers and those tailors have small rooms, and the cabinet-makers have large ones. 19. The sons of those smiths are industrious scholars. 20. These two scholars have three tables and six chairs. 21. Those goldsmiths have gold rings, and these have silver ones.

LESSON XXVI.

L'ection XXVI.

IRREGULAR PLURAL OF NOUNS.

1. As exceptions to Rules 4 and 5, Lesson, XXV., are the *neuter* nouns, das Floß, the raft; das Kloster, the convent; and das Rohr, the reed, all of which take, in the plural, the Umlaut; as, die Flüße, die Klöster, die Röhre. Das Boot, the boat, has either the regular form die Boote, or Böte.

2. There are also several *neuter* nouns which contain *two* variations from Rule 5, Lesson XXV., in that they add in the plural er, and take the Umlaut, if capable of it; as, das Dorf, the village, plural, die Dörf-er; das Lied, the song, plural, die Lieder, etc.; see § 13. 5. *Exceptions, b.*

3. A few *masculine* nouns contain *one* exception to Rule 7, Lesson XXV.; namely, they add er, instead of e; as, der Dorn, the thorn, plural, die Dörn-er, etc.; § 13. 6. *Exceptions, a.*

4. All nouns ending in thum, whether *neuter* or *masculine*, form their plural by adding er, and taking the Umlaut:

Das Bisthum, the bishopric; plural, die Bisthümer.

Der Irrthum, the error; plural, die Irrthümer, etc.

5. The plural of Mann in several compound words is Leute instead of Männer:

Der Bergmann, the miner;

die Bergleute, the miners;

Der Kaufmann, the merchant;

die Kaufleute, the merchants;

Der Zimmermann, the carpenter;

die Zimmerleute, the carpenters.

Give in this manner the plural of Amtmann, Arbeitsmann, Edelmann, Landmann, Landsmann, Spielmann.

6. Leute and Volk are both rendered by *people*; the latter in the most extended, the former in a limited sense. The plural of Volk is usually equivalent to *nations*:

Diese Leute sind Deutsche.

These people are Germans.

Die Deutschen sind ein fleißiges Volk.

The Germans are an industrious people.

Die Regie' rung ist reich, aber das Volk ist arm.

The government is rich, but the people are (is) poor.

Die verschied'nen Völker Europas.

The various nations of Europe.

7. Several *masculine* nouns form an exception to Rule 6, Lesson XXV., in that they take the Umlaut; as plural, *Äpfel*, instead of *Apfel*; *Hämmel*, instead of *Hammel*. For entire list see § 13. 4. *Exceptions*.

8. The feminine nouns *Mutter* and *Tochter* form their plural by taking the Umlaut:

Gute Mütter unterrichten ihre Töchter. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

9. The masculine nouns *Nal*, *Arm*, etc. § 13. 6. *Exceptions, b.* omit the Umlaut; thus forming an exception to Rule 7, Lesson XXV.

10. In German the *singular* is employed to denote some objects, which require in English the *plural* form (§ 15):

| | |
|--|--|
| Die Schere ist rostig, die Nistruhe ist blank. | The shears are rusty, the snuffers are bright. |
| Er kaufte eine Brille und eine Zange. | He bought a pair of spectacles and a pair of tongs. |
| Ich habe zwei Scheren und drei Zangen. | I have two pairs of shears and three pairs of tongs. |
| Seine Lunge ist stark und gesund. | His lungs are strong and sound. |
| Die Asche ist noch heiß. | The ashes are still hot. |
| Der Hafer ist schon reif. | The oats are already ripe. |
| Er wußte Dir keinen Dank dafür. | He gave you no thanks for it. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Diese Landleute sind meine Landleute. | These peasants (country-people) are my countrymen. |
| Diese Äpfel sind noch nicht reif. | These apples are not yet ripe. |
| Sene Vögel haben frumme Schnäbel. | Those birds have crooked beaks. |
| Meine Brüder kaufen Nägel. | My brothers are buying nails. |
| Die Kinder singen schöne Lieder. | The children sing beautiful songs. |
| Der Koch kauft Hühner und Eier. | The cook buys fowls and eggs. |
| Die Blattern sind eine gefährliche Krankheit. | The small-pox is a dangerous disease. |
| Fühllos wie das Eisen war das Herz in ihrer Brust.—S. | Unfeeling as the iron was the heart in their breast. |
| Das irdische Geschlecht' murrst ohne Grund; die Götter sind gerecht'. — W. | The terrestrial race murmurs without cause; the gods are just. |

EXERCISE 50.

Aufgabe 50.

1. Hast du deine Handschuhe? 2. Nein, mein Bruder hat sie. 3. Wo sind deine Freunde? 4. Sie sind in ihren Zimmern. 5. Sind Ihre Stühle in Ihrem Zimmer? 6. Ja, sie sind in meinem Zimmer. 7. Habt ihr eure Fingerhüte? 8. Nein, eure Freunde haben sie. 9. Eure Freunde loben euch. 10. Seid ihr reich? 11. Wer lobt den Schüler? 12. Warum lächelt seine Mutter und lachen ihre Kinder? 13. Wer lobt die Schülerin? 14. Die Lehrerin ist freundlich gegen das Kind. 15. Wer lobt die Kinder? 16. Ihre Freunde loben sie. 17. Der Arzt lobt Sie. 18. Was schickt die Lehrerin ihrer Mutter? 19. Sie schickt ihr einen Schleier und einen Fächer. 20. Was versprechen Sie mir? 21. Ich verspreche Ihnen nichts. 22. Was versprechen Sie Ihren Schülern? 23. Ich verspreche ihnen nichts. 24. Was schicken Sie dem Gerber? 25. Ich schicke ihm das Geld. 26. Wer kauft die Gänse und die Kühe? 27. Die Gerber kaufen sie. 28. Sind die Wege trocken und gut? 29. Nein, sie sind naß und schlecht. 30. Sind die Bänke schon fertig? 31. Wem gehören diese Leuchter? 32. Singen die Töchter Ihrer Nachbarin? 33. Kommt Ihr Freund aus dem Regimente?

EXERCISE 51.

Aufgabe 51.

1. Have you my gloves? 2. No, your friends have them. 3. Do you see your mother? 4. No, I do not see her. 5. Do your brothers know where the candlesticks are? 6. Yes, they know where they are. 7. Has the scholar her books and her pencils? 8. Yes, she has them in her desk. 9. Are your benches too high? 10. Yes, they are too high. 11. What do you promise your scholars? 12. I do not promise them any thing. 13. Do your brothers promise you any thing? 14. Yes, they promise me something. 15. What does the scholar send her teacher? 16. She sends her a veil. 17. Are your fans too small? 18. No, they are too large. 19. Do the tanners buy the cows? 20. No, the butchers buy them. 21. Are the scholars friendly toward the children? 22. Yes, they are playing with them. 23. Have you the knives? 24. Yes, I have them. 25. Are they on your table? 26. No, they are

on my desk. 27. Are your friends reading? 28. No, they are writing. 29. What are they writing? 30. They are writing letters. 31. Are you writing your father a letter? 32. Yes, I am writing him a letter.



LESSON XXVIII.

Section XXVIII.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The genitive of the personal pronouns does not (like that of nouns, L. IX. 1) indicate possession, but simply answers to our objective with (and sometimes without) a preposition:

Es sind unser vier.

There are four *of us* (of us four).

Vergiß' meiner nicht.

Forget *me* not.

Das ist deiner unwürdig.

That is unworthy *of thee* (of thee unworthy).

2. The genitive of the first and second persons sing. of the *personal* pronouns, is often contracted to the form of the nominative *masculine* and *neuter* of the *possessive*. The genitives of the other pronouns are sometimes similarly abbreviated:

Ich denke dein (-er) wenn der Sonne I think *of thee* when the glimmer

Schimmer vom Meere strahlt.—G. of the sun beams from the sea.

Vergiß' mein (for meiner) nicht.

Forget me not (see 1).

Gedenke sein (for seiner).

Remember (think of) *him*.

3. The dative with *von* is employed in rendering our possessive with *of* when used partitively:

Er ist ein Freund von mir.

He is a friend *of mine* (of me).

Sie sind Verwandte von uns.

They are relatives *of ours* (of us).

4. Pronouns referring to neuter appellations of persons, generally follow the natural, rather than the grammatical, gender (§ 6, 2):

Sein Söhnchen ist krank, ich fürchte er His little son is sick; I fear *he* will
(or es) wird sterben. *die*.

Das Mädchen hat ihr (sein) Buch. The girl has *her* book.

5. Pronouns representing inanimate objects must be of the same gender as the nouns to which they refer; hence our neuter

pronoun must often be expressed in German by the masculine, or feminine :

| | |
|--|--|
| Der Hut ist schön, aber er ist klein. | The hat is fine, but <i>it</i> is small. |
| Die Mütze ist schön, aber sie ist klein. | The cap is fine, but <i>it</i> is small. |
| Ich habe den Hut nicht, sie hat ihn. | I have not the hat, she has <i>it</i> . |
| Sie hat die Mütze nicht, er hat sie. | She has not the cap, he has <i>it</i> . |

6. In German a pronominal adverb (applied to things) answers to a preposition and a pronoun, as commonly employed in English :

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich habe einen Ofen, aber kein Feuer darin (not in ihm). | I have a stove, but no fire <i>in it</i> (therein). |
| Er schneidet seinen Apfel und gibt mir ein Stück davon (not von ihm). | He cuts his apple and gives me a part <i>of it</i> (thereof). |
| Er hat ihre Feder und schreibt damit. | He has her pen and writes <i>with it</i> (therewith). |

7. The neuter pronoun, *es*, employed as a grammatical subject, may represent nouns of all genders, and in both numbers. The verb, however, must agree in number with the *noun*, while in English it agrees with the *pronoun* :

| | |
|---|---|
| Wer ist <i>es</i> ? | Who is <i>it</i> ? |
| <i>Es</i> ist ein Fremder. | <i>It</i> is a stranger. |
| <i>Es</i> sind unsere alten Freunde welche wir sehen. | <i>It</i> is (are) our old friends that we see. |
| Sind <i>es</i> Sterne? | <i>Is it</i> stars! (are they stars!) |

8. When the logical subject is itself a personal pronoun, *es* follows the verb; this being exactly the reverse of the English construction :

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich bin <i>es</i> . <i>It</i> is <i>I</i> . | Er ist <i>es</i> . <i>It</i> is <i>he</i> . |
| Sind Sie <i>es</i> ? <i>Is it</i> you? | Siebt ihr <i>es</i> ? <i>Is it</i> you? |
| Sind sie <i>es</i> ? <i>Is it</i> they? | Wir sind <i>es</i> . <i>It</i> is <i>we</i> . |

9. *Es* before a verb followed by its subject, frequently answers to *there*, but is often used for the sake of emphasis, where in our language a like construction is not admissible :

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Es</i> ist niemand im (L. 20. 4) Hause. | <i>There</i> is nobody in the house. |
| <i>Es</i> sind drei Bücher da. | <i>There</i> are three books there. |
| <i>Es</i> geht ein stiller Engel. | <i>There</i> moves a quiet angel. |
| <i>Es</i> halltet der Donner so laut (instead of der Donner halltet so laut). | <i>There</i> resounds the thunder so loud (The thunder resounds so loud). |
| <i>Es</i> leuchtet die Sonne über Böf' und Gute (die Sonne leuchtet, &c.).—G. | The sun shines upon (the) bad and (the) good. |

10. *Es* sometimes refers to a previously expressed noun, or adjective, and may be rendered *one* or *so*; *es* is likewise sometimes so used as not to require translation :

Er ist Schmied, aber ich bin *es* nicht. He is (a) smith, but I am not *one*.
 Wir sind nicht alle gleich und können *es* nicht sein.—*Es*. We are not all alike and can not be *so*.
 Ich weiß *es* daß er geht. I know (it) that he is going.

11. When pronouns of several different persons are the subjects of a plural verb, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second to the third; often, however, the plural of the pronoun is employed after others which are in the singular :

Du und der Knabe sahen *es*. You and the boy saw it.
 Ich weiß nicht was du und ich sahen. I do not know what you and I saw.
 Du und ich wir sahen *es*. You and I (we) saw it.

12. For the sake of additional emphasis, a pronoun is sometimes repeated, or placed after its noun in apposition with it :

So vieler Schweden edles Blut, *es* The noble blood of so many Swedes
 ist um Gold und Silber nicht ge- (it) has not flowed for gold and
 flossen.—*Es*. silver.
 Und die Tugend sie ist kein leerer And virtue (it) is no empty sound.
 Schall.—*Es*.

13. The genitive of the personal pronouns, when referring to individuals, is often used before numerals (like the French *en*), in which position it seldom requires translation :

Er hat drei Brüder und ich Il a trois frères, et moi He has three brothers,
 habe ihrer nur Einen. je n'en ai qu'un. and I have only one.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Es ist nicht alles Gold was glänzt. Not all is gold that glitters (see 10).
Es widerfährt' Manchem mehr Ehre, There happens to many a one more
 als er verdient' honor than he deserves.
 Wir haben deiner gewar'tet (see 1). We have waited for thee.
 Ich blieb meiner nicht mehr mächtig. I remained no longer master of
 myself.
 Darunter leidet seine Eigenliebe. Hisself-love suffers by this (thereby).
 Er ist ein Verwandter von uns. He is a relative of ours.
 Es sind unser drei, und ihrer fünf. There are three of us, and five of
 them.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich habe den Ball nicht, Sie haben ihn. | I have not the ball, you have it. |
| Er hat meine Feder und schreibt damit. | He has my pen and is writing with it. |
| Es scheuet das böse Gewissen Licht und Tag.—G. | The guilty conscience shuns light and day. |
| Wer klopft? Ich bin es. | Who is rapping? It is I. |
| Sind Sie es? Ja, wir sind es. | Is it you? Yes, it is we. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Die Baumwolle, —, pl. —, the cotton; | Der Kamm, —es, pl. Kämme, comb |
| Die Brücke, —, pl. —en, the bridge; | Die Nadel, —, pl. —n, the needle; |
| Damit, with it; | Nähen, to sew; |
| Darauf, on it; | Die Seide, —, pl. —n, the silk; |
| Darin, in it; | Das Seil, —es, pl. —e, the rope; |
| Dort, yonder; | Der Seiler, —s, pl. —, the ropemaker; |
| Der Drescher, —s, pl. —, the thrasher; | Die Stelle, —, pl. —n, place, situation, |
| Der Färber, —s, pl. —, the dyer; | Der Weber, —s, pl. —, the weaver; |
| Der Flach's, —es, pl. —, the flax; | Die Wolle, —, pl. —, the wool; |
| Der Hanf, —es, pl. —, the hemp; | Der Zöllner, —s, pl. —, toll-gatherer. |

EXERCISE 52.

Aufgabe 52.

1. Kauft der Seiler den Hanf? 2. Ja, er kauft ihn. 3. Ist dieser Flach nicht gut? 4. Nein, er ist nicht gut. 5. Kauft der Seiler die Wolle? 6. Nein, der Weber kauft sie. 7. Kauft der Weber die Baumwolle? 8. Nein, der Drescher kauft sie. 9. Wer kauft das Seil? 10. Der Matrose kauft es. 11. Hat das Mädchen die Nadel? 12. Ja, sie hat die Nadel und näht damit. 13. Wo ist mein Kamm? 14. Er liegt auf Ihrem Tische. 15. Ich habe einen guten Ofen in meinem Zimmer, aber es ist kein Feuer darin. 16. Kauft das Mädchen die Seide? 17. Nein, sie kauft sie nicht. 18. Sehen Sie den Zöllner dort auf der Brücke? 19. Nein, ich sehe ihn nicht, steht er darauf? 20. Der Weber ist fleißig, aber sein Nachbar, der Färber, ist es nicht. 21. Sprechen Sie mit den Schülern? 22. Ja, ich spreche mit ihnen. 23. Schreiben Sie mit den Bleistiften? 24. Ja, ich schreibe damit. 25. Hat Ihr Bruder eine angenehme Stelle?

EXERCISE 53.

Aufgabe 53.

1. Who sells the cotton? 2. The weaver buys it, but he does not sell it. 3. Have the children their ball? 4. No, the girls have it. 5. You often play with the children, and your

brother often teaches them. 6. I am not playing with them now, I am teaching them. 7. Are the scholars writing with our pencils? 8. Yes, they are writing with them. 9. Who buys the wool? 10. The weaver buys it. 11. Does he buy the hemp? 12. No, the ropemaker buys it. 13. Does the dyer buy the flax? 14. No, our friend, the merchant, buys it for the weaver. 15. What is lying on the table yonder? 16. The needle and the silk are lying on it. 17. What have the toll gatherers in their trunks? 18. They have their money and their clothes in them. 19. Are the girls sewing with the needles? 20. Yes, they are sewing with them. 21. Whom do you see on the bridge? 22. I do not see any body on it. 23. Does the sailor buy the rope? 24. No, the merchant buys it. 25. Has the thrasher the cotton?

LESSON XXIX.

Lesson XXIX.

REFLEXIVE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are often used reflexively; answering to our compound personal pronouns in the objective case:

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Ich lobe mich. | I praise <i>myself</i> . |
| Du lobst dich. | Thou praisest <i>thyself</i> . |
| Ihr lobt euch. | You praise <i>yourselves</i> . |
| Ich gedente meiner. | I think of <i>myself</i> . |
| Du denkst deiner. | Thou thinkest of <i>thyself</i> . |
| Ich versprech' mir nichts. | I do not promise <i>myself</i> any thing. |
| Was verspricht' ihr euch? | What do you promise <i>yourselves</i> ? |

2. There is in the third person a pronoun (*sich*) which is used only reflexively. It is indeclinable, and occurs only in the dative and accusative; answering to all our compound personal pronouns of the third person:

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| Der Mann lobt sich. | The man praises <i>himself</i> . |
| Die Frau lobt sich. | The woman praises <i>herself</i> . |
| Das Kind lobt sich. | The child praises <i>itself</i> . |

| | |
|---|--|
| Es können sich nur Wenige regie'ren, den Verstand' verständ'lig gebrau'- chen.—G. | There can but few govern <i>themselves</i> , (can) use the un-derstanding understandingly. |
| Er verspricht' sich etwas. | He promises <i>himself</i> something. |
| Man schmeichelt sich oft. | One often flatters <i>one's self</i> . |
| Die Kinder versprech'en sich etwas. | The children promise <i>themselves</i> something. |
| Ich denke dein, wenn sich des Mondes Glitter in Quellen malt.—G. | I think of thee when the moon's glitter paints <i>itself</i> in fountains. |

3. When our compound personal pronouns are used merely to give emphasis (and not reflexively) they should be rendered by *selbst*, or *selber*, *after* the word which it is intended to emphasize:

| | |
|--|---|
| Er belohnte den Lehrling <i>selbst</i> . | He rewarded the apprentice <i>himself</i> . |
| Er <i>selbst</i> belohnte den Lehrling. | He <i>himself</i> rewarded the apprentice. |
| Sie <i>selbst</i> besuchte die Kranke. | She <i>herself</i> visited the patient |
| Sie ging zu der Kranken <i>selbst</i> . | She went to the patient <i>herself</i> . |

4. *Selbst* often follows the reflexive pronouns, and may be rendered *own*, or entirely omitted in translation;

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Sie lobt sich <i>selbst</i> . | She praises her (<i>own</i>) self. |
| Wir loben uns <i>selbst</i> . | We praise our (<i>own</i>) selves. |
| Wer kennt sich <i>selbst</i> ?—G. | Who knows himself? (<i>one's self</i>) |

5. *Selbst* before a noun answers to the adverb *even*:

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Selbst</i> seine Feinde achten ihn. | Even his enemies esteem him. |
| <i>Selbst</i> seine Freunde halten ihn für schuldig. | Even his friends consider him (hold him for) guilty. |

6. The reflexive pronouns, of all persons, in the plural, are frequently employed, where the signification is sufficiently obvious, instead of the reciprocal pronoun *einander*:

| | |
|--|---|
| Wir loben uns. (<i>instead of</i>) | We praise <i>us</i> (i. e. <i>each other</i>). |
| Wir loben <i>einander</i> . | We praise <i>one another</i> . |
| Vor eurer Mutter Aug' zerstört' e u ch. —G. | Before your mother's eye destroy <i>each other</i> . |
| Wir werden u n d wiedersehen.—G. | We shall see <i>each other</i> again. |
| Die Tyrannen reich'en si ch die Hände. —G. | The tyrants extend to <i>each other</i> their hands (i. e. are forming a league). |

7. *Sich*, after a preposition, is often best rendered by a personal pronoun :

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Große Seelen halten <i>sich</i> an den Him- | Great souls hold firmly to Heaven, |
| mel fest und lassen die Erde unter | and let the earth roll on beneath |
| <i>sich</i> fortrollen.—D. | them (selves). |
| Sie hatte kein Geld bei <i>sich</i> . | She had no money with her. |
| Hat er seine Uhr bei <i>sich</i> ? | Has he his watch with him? |

8 In interrogative sentences, the personal pronoun, in the dative or accusative, is often placed between the verb and its subject (when the subject is a noun) :

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Loben <i>ihn</i> seine Freunde? | <i>instead of</i> | Loben seine Freunde <i>ihn</i> ? |
| Was sagt <i>ihm</i> der Lehrer? | “ | Was sagt der Lehrer <i>ihm</i> ? |
| Wie befin’det <i>sich</i> Ihr Freund? | “ | Wie befin’det Ihr Freund <i>sich</i> ? |

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

9. The number of verbs that are used exclusively as reflexive, is much larger in German than in English :

| | |
|---|--|
| Sie bege’ben <i>sich</i> in die Flucht. | They betake themselves to flight. |
| Er behilft’ <i>sich</i> mit Lügen. | He resorts to falsehoods. |
| Der Feind bemäch’tigte <i>sich</i> der Stadt. | The enemy took possession (possessed himself) of the city. |
| Er befinnt’ <i>sich</i> zu lange. | He bethinks himself too long. |
| Er bestrebt’ <i>sich</i> es zu thun. | He tries (exerts himself) to do it. |
| Warum’ erei’fert ihr euch? | Why are you becoming angry? |
| Es erei’gnet <i>sich</i> selten. | It seldom happens. |
| Er erho’lt <i>sich</i> langsam. | He recovers (himself) slowly. |
| Er verkäl’tet <i>sich</i> sehr leicht. | He takes cold very easily. |
| Nach wem erkun’digt er <i>sich</i> ? | After whom does he inquire? |
| Er getraut’ <i>sich</i> nicht zu sprechen. | He does not dare (venture) to speak. |
| Sie schämen <i>sich</i> ihres eigenen Betra’gens. | They are ashamed (shame themselves) of their own conduct. |
| Sie sehnen <i>sich</i> nach Ruhe. | They long for quiet. |
| Warum’ widerse’hen Sie <i>sich</i> allen meinen Plänen? | Why do you oppose (yourself to) all my plans? |
| Unterse’hst’ du dich mir das zu sagen? | Do you venture (presume so far as) to tell me that? |

10. Many verbs are used reflexively whose equivalents in English are employed intransitively or passively :

| | |
|--|--|
| Die Sold’ten sammelten <i>sich</i> um ihren Füh’rer. | The soldiers assembled (themselves) around their leader. |
|--|--|

| | |
|--|--|
| Das Wetter heilt sich auf. | The weather is clearing (itself) up. |
| Wir hielten uns in Berlin' auf. | We stopped (ourselves) in Berlin. |
| Die Erde dreht sich an ihrer Achse. | The earth turns (itself) on its axis. |
| Der Himmel bedeckt' sich mit schwarzen Wolken. | The sky is being covered (covers itself) with black clouds. |
| Das Volk empört' sich gegen die Regierung. | The people rebel against the government. |
| Ich freue mich daß er geht. | I rejoice (myself) that he is going. |
| Sie haben sich entschloß'en zu kommen. | They have determined (themselves) to come. |
| Wie befin'ben Sie sich? | How do you do! (find yourself!) |
| Ich befin'be mich sehr wohl. | I am (find myself) very well. |
| Es findet sich oft eine Gelegenheit. | An opportunity is often found. |
| Das läßt sich leicht denken. | That is (may be) easily imagined. |
| Verän'bert sich nicht Alles in der Welt? | Does not every thing change (itself) in the world? |
| —G. | |
| Ein üppig lastervolles Leben büßt sich in Mangel und Erniedrigung allein'. | A luxurious vicious life repents (itself) alone in want and degradation. |
| —G. | |
| Der Jüngling ist aus Willkühr sonderbar und freut sich; der Mann ist es unabseh'lich und ärgert sich.—R. | The youth is singular, by choice, and is delighted; the man is so unintentionally, and is mortified. |

11. Some transitive verbs in taking the reflexive form, undergo a change of signification (§ 86 6) :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Er schickt sich in die Umstände. | He adapts himself to circumstances. |
| Es schickt sich nicht so zu handeln. | It is not proper to act thus. |
| Er versteht' sich auf Musik'. | He is a judge of music. |
| Ich verlasse mich auf sie. | I depend upon them. |
| Es versteht' sich daß es wahr ist. | Of course (i. e. evidently) it is 'true. |
| Das versteht' sich von selbst. | That is a matter of course. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Die Hand am Schwerte, schauen sie sich drohend an.— | The hand on the sword, they gaze threateningly at each other. |
| So widersprech'en die Ora'kel sich.—G. | So do the oracles contradict each other. |
| Es verber'gen sich noch Viele in diesen Mauern.— | Many still conceal themselves within these walls. |
| Ich freue mich, daß Sie nicht gehen. | I am glad that you do not go. |
| Versteh' Sie sich auf Tuch? | Are you a judge of cloth? |
| Er brach in die bittersten Vorwürfe gegen sich selber aus.—R.—G. | He broke out in (into) the bitterest reproaches against himself. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|---|
| Die Achse, -, pl. -n, the axis; Achten, to esteem; Bei, in, with; Bescheiden, modest; Betragen, to behave; | Die Frau, -, pl. -en, the woman; Gut, (<i>adv.</i>) well; Schlagen, to strike, to beat; Schmeicheln, to flatter; Selbst, see 4. 5; Sich, see 2; Tadeln, to blame; |
| Der Diener, -s, pl. -, the servant; Drehen, to turn; Einan'der, each other; | Der Wundarzt, -s, pl. -ärzte, the surgeon. |
| Die Erde, -, pl. -n, the earth; Erfälten, to take cold; | |

EXERCISE 54.

Aufgabe 54.

1. Warum lobst du dich? 2. Ich lobe mich nicht. 3. Wer lobt sich? 4. Jener Redner lobt sich. 5. Warum tadelst ihr euch? 6. Wir tadeln uns nicht. 7. Jene Frau lobt sich. 8. Diese Kinder schlagen sich. 9. Warum schlagen sie sich? 10. Jene Schüler hassen einander. 11. Warum schmeicheln Sie sich? 12. Ich schmeichle mich nicht. 13. Gehen Sie zu dem Wundarzte selbst, oder zu seinem Bruder? 14. Gehen Sie selbst zu dem Wundarzte, oder schicken Sie Ihren Diener? 15. Selbst die Feinde dieses Mannes achten und loben ihn. 16. Ein bescheidener Mann lobt sich selbst nicht. 17. Man erkältet sich leicht bei solchem Wetter. 18. Diese Kinder betragen sich nicht gut. 19. Wie oft dreht sich die Erde um ihre Achse? 20. Wie erkältet sich Ihr Diener? 21. Er erkältet sich nicht. 22. Betragen sich die Schüler gut? 23. Unsere Schüler betragen sich immer sehr gut. 24. Sie sind nicht Ihr eigener Freund, denn Sie schmeicheln sich. 25. Ein wahrer Freund schmeichelt nie.

EXERCISE 55.

Aufgabe 55.

1. The idle scholar blames himself. 2. Do you praise yourself? 3. Why does not the boy behave himself well? 4. Do you take cold easily? (do you easily take cold?) 5. Do you see yourself? 6. Do you see the surgeon himself? 7. Do you see the surgeon yourself? 8. Really good men flatter themselves sometimes. 9. The earth turns on its axis. 10. Even the enemies of a good man esteem him. 11. In what kind of weather does one take cold easily? 12. Does this

woman blame herself? 13. She blames herself, but her friends do not blame her. 14. Those children strike each other. 15. Do modest men praise themselves? 16. Dost thou blame thyself? 17. I do not blame myself. 18. Does the servant praise himself? 19. No, he blames himself. 20. Do you flatter yourselves? 21. We do not flatter ourselves. 22. Why do you blame each other? 23. Do those men understand each other? 24. They do not hear each other. 25. We visit each other very often.



LESSON XXX.

Section XXX.

NEW DECLENSION PLURAL.

ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives in the plural, when they follow *dieſe*, *keine*, or a word of that class (L. XXV. 1) end, in all their cases, in *en*, and are of the

NEW DECLENSION.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| N. <i>dieſe</i> gut-en (Männer); | <i>keine</i> gut-en (Männer); |
| G. <i>dieſer</i> gut-en (Männer); | <i>keiner</i> gut-en (Männer); |
| D. <i>dieſen</i> gut-en (Männern); | <i>keinen</i> gut-en (Männern); |
| A. <i>dieſe</i> gut-en (Männer): | <i>keine</i> gut-en (Männer*). |

NOUNS.

2. Nouns of the new declension have all cases of the plural ~~and~~ the oblique cases of the singular (L. XXII.), except *Herr*, which takes only *n* in the singular, and *en* in the plural:

| | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| N. <i>die</i> Ungar-n, | <i>die</i> Neffe-n, | <i>die</i> Soldat-en, |
| G. <i>der</i> Ungar-n, | <i>der</i> Neffe-n, | <i>der</i> Soldat-en, |
| D. <i>den</i> Ungar-n, | <i>den</i> Neffe-n, | <i>den</i> Soldat-en, |
| A. <i>die</i> Ungar-n, | <i>die</i> Neffe-n, | <i>die</i> Soldat-en. |

* In what respect is the form *Männer*, an exception to Rule? L. XXV!
See L. XXVI. 8.

FEMININE NOUNS.

3. Feminine nouns, except those ending in *kunft* and *nist*, and those contained in the list page 276, form their plural according to the *new* declension. Those ending in the suffix *in* double the *n* in the plural; as, *Freundin*, *Freundinnen*.

N. die Blume-*n*, die Uhr-*en*, die Schwester-*n*, die Nadel-*n*

G. der Blume-*n*, der Uhr-*en*, der Schwester-*n*, der Nadel-*n*

D. den Blume-*n*, den Uhr-*en*, den Schwester-*n*, den Nadel-*n*

A. die Blume-*n*, die Uhr-*en*, die Schwester-*n*, die Nadel-*n*

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

4. Proper names of persons usually take *s* in the genitive, except feminines ending in *t*, which add *ns* :

Nom. Heinrich, Henry, Gen. Heinrich-*s*, Henry's,

Nom. Göthe, Goethe, Gen. Göthe-*s*, Goethe's,

Nom. Gertrud, Gertrude, Gen. Gertrud-*s*, Gertrude's,

Nom. Charlotte, Charlotte, Gen. Charlotte-*ns*, Charlotte's.

5. Masculine nouns ending in such a letter that euphony will not admit of an additional *s*, add in the genitive *en s* :

Nom. Opitz, Opitz, Gen. Opitz-*ens*, Opitz's,

Nom. Franz, Francis, Gen. Franz-*ens*, Francis'.

6. Masculine nouns whose endings would admit of *s* in the genitive, sometimes (though rarely) add *ns* or *ens*, and *n* or *en* in the dative and accusative :

Kennt ihr Adalbert-*en* (*instead of* Do you know (are you acquainted with) Adalbert?)
Adalbert)?

FOREIGN PROPER NAMES.

7. Foreign proper names, if the final letter admit of it, usually form the genitive by adding *s*, frequently preceded by the apostrophe; those of other terminations generally indicate the case by means of the article; the noun being unchanged :

Er liest Byron's Gedichte.

He is reading Byron's poems.

Die Reden des Demos'thenes sind weltberühmt.

The orations of Demosthenes are world-renowned.

Sieh da! sieh da, Timo'theus, die Kran- See there! see there, Timotheus,
nische des Ibykus.—S. the cranes of Ibycus.

8. Proper names of places and countries form their genitive by adding *s*, if the final letter admit of it, otherwise the case is indicated by the article:

| | |
|---|--|
| Die deutsche Freiheit erhob sich aus Magdeburg's Asche.—S. | The German freedom rose from Magdeburg's ashes. |
| Die Einwohner der Stadt Paris'. (L. LIX. 1.) | The inhabitants of the city (of Paris |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Die Sachsen standen durch einen breiten Zwischenraum von den Schweden ge- trennt'.—S. | The Saxons stood separated by a wide intervening space from the Swedes. |
| Alle Guten, alle Bösen folgen ihrer Rosenkur.—S. | All (the) good, all (the) bad follow her rosy path. |
| Die Dänen sind geschick'te Matro'sen. | The Danes are skillful sailors. |
| Die Türken sind gute Solda'ten. | The Turks are good soldiers. |
| Die Russen und Preußen unterdrück'en die Polen. | The Russians and Prussians op- press the Poles. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Die Biene, —, pl. —n, the bee; | Patrio'tisch, patriotic; |
| Die Birne, —, pl. —n, the pear; | Die Pflaume, —, pl. —n, the plum, |
| Die Cousine, —, pl. —n, the cousin; | Das Porzellan', —s, pl. —e, the porce- lain; |
| Der Däne, —n, pl. —n, the Dane; | Der Preuße, —n, pl. —n, the Prussian; |
| Duftig, fragrant; | Die Rede, —, pl. —n, the oration; |
| Fett, fat; | Die Rose, —, pl. —n, the rose; |
| Friedlich, peaceful; | Schlachten, to slaughter; |
| Die Gabel, —, pl. —n, the fork; | Der Schwede, —n, pl. —n, the Swede; |
| Geschick't, skillful; | Die Tasse, —, pl. —n, the cup; |
| Der Hesse, —n, pl. —n, the Hessian; | Das Volk, —e, pl. Völker, the people; |
| Die Kanzel, —, pl. —n, the pulpit; | Weltberühmt, world-renowned. |
| Der Ochs, —en (or Ochse, —n), pl. —en, the ox; | |

EXERCISE 56.

Aufgabe 56.

1. Die Preußen, Hessen, Baiern und Sachsen sind Deutsche. 2. Die Deutschen sind ein fleißiges, friedliches Volk. 3. Die Franzosen, Polen, Türken und Ungarn sind Feinde der Russen. 4. Die Soldaten kaufen und schlachten die fetten Ochsen. 5. Diese kleinen Knaben haben Birnen, Pflaumen, Kirichen und Aprikosen. 6. Die Schülerinnen gehen zu den Lehrerinnen. 7. Ihre Schülerinnen sind unsere Cousinen. 8. Die patriotischen Reden des Demosthenes

sind weltberühmt. 9. Die neuen Uhren und Ketten unserer Freundinnen sind von Gold. 10. Diese Rosen und Nelken sind schöne Blumen. 11. Die Kanzeln in jenen Kirchen sind zu hoch. 12. Die fleißigen Bienen lieben die duftigen Blumen. 13. Meine Schwestern haben meine neuen Federn. 14. Diese Tassen sind von Porzellan, die Gabeln von Silber. 15. Die Schweden und Dänen sind geschickte Matrosen.

EXERCISE 57.

Aufgabe 57.

1. These Germans are Bavarians, Hessians, Prussians and Saxons. 2. Those boys sell pears, plums and cherries. 3. The cups are of porcelain. 4. The French are a patriotic people. 5. Who buys and slaughters the oxen of the soldiers? 6. Are these sailors Danes, Swedes or Russians? 7. Are the Russians and Turks skillful sailors? 8. Who sells the soldiers the fat oxen? 9. Are these roses and pinks fragrant and beautiful flowers? 10. Are not the pulpits in these new churches high enough? 11. Do the industrious bees love all beautiful flowers? 12. Are the Danes an industrious, peaceful people? 13. Have our cousins our pens and our books? 14. The boys in our schools read the world-renowned orations of Demosthenes. 15. These cups and those forks belong to the nephews of those old sailors.

REMARK.—By means of the appended table the pupil will be enabled to compare at one view the various terminations which have been separately given him in the preceding Lessons. This arrangement will both serve the purpose of a more *general* review, and at the same time be well adapted to fix in the memory the peculiarities of the different declensions. The endings of the adjective, especially, in its various modes of inflection, as well as the words by which those endings are affected, should receive a patient attention.

9. CONNECTED VIEW OF THE ARTICLE, DEMONSTRATIVE
IN ALL

SINGULAR.

| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| N. der, | die, | das, | dieser, | diese, | dieses, | mein, | meine, | mein, |
| G. des, | der, | des, | dieses, | dieser, | dieses, | meines, | meiner, | meines, |
| D. dem, | der, | dem, | diesem, | dieser, | diesem, | meinem, | meiner, | meinem, |
| A. den, | die, | das, | diesen, | diese, | dieses, | meinen, | meine, | mein. |

OLD DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE AND NOUN.

| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| N. guter, | gute, | gutes, | Roffer, | Put, | Jahr, | Mittel, |
| G. gutes (en), | guter, | gutes (en), | Roffers, | Putes, | Jahres, | Mittels, |
| D. gutem, | guter, | gutem, | Roffer, | Put, | Jahre, | Mittel, |
| A. guten, | gute, | gutes, | Roffer, | Put, | Jahr, | Mittel. |

NEW DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE (L. XV.) AND NOUN (L. XXII.).

| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> (L. XXIII. 3. OBS.) | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> |
|---------------|---------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| N. der gute, | die, or meine gute, | das gute, | Baier, | Graf, |
| G. des guten, | der, or meiner guten, | des guten, | Baiern, | Grafen, |
| D. dem guten, | der, or meiner guten, | dem guten, | Baiern, | Grafen, |
| A. den guten, | die, or meine gute, | das gute, | Baiern, | Grafen. |

MIXED DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE (L. XVI. 1, 2).

| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| N. mein guter, | mein gutes, | kein alter, | kein altes, |
| G. meines guten, | meines guten, | keines alten, | keines alten, |
| D. meinem guten, | meinem guten, | keinem alten, | keinem alten, |
| A. meinen guten, | mein gutes, | keinen alten, | kein altes. |

WORDS REQUIRING THE NEW DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|
| aller, | alle, | alles; | jeder, | jede, | jedes; | beine; | seine; |
| der, | die, | das; | jener, | jene, | jenes; | eine; | unsere; |
| dieser, | diese, | dieses; | mancher, | manche, | manches; | eure; | keine; |
| einiger, | einige, | einiges; | solcher, | solche, | solches; | ihre; | (L. 23. 3. OBS.) |
| etlicher, | etliche, | etliches; | welcher, | welche, | welches; | meine. | |

WORDS REQUIRING THE MIXED DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

dein, ein, euer, ihr, mein, sein, unser and fein. (L. XVI. 1. note)

AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVE AND NOUNS,
DECLENSIONS.

PLURAL.

All Genders.

| | | |
|----------------------|-------|-------|
| die; diese; meine; | _____ | _____ |
| der; dieser; meiner; | _____ | _____ |
| den; diesen; meinen; | _____ | _____ |
| die; diese; meine. | _____ | _____ |

OLD DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE AND NOUN.

| <i>All Gen.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| gute; | Koffer; | Hüte; | Jahre; | Mittel; | Bänke; | Bilbnisse; |
| guter; | Koffer; | Hüte; | Jahre; | Mittel; | Bänke; | Bilbnisse; |
| guten; | Koffern; | Hüten; | Jahren; | Mitteln; | Bänken; | Bilbnissen; |
| gute; | Koffer; | Hüte; | Jahre; | Mittel; | Bänke; | Bilbnisse. |

NEW DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE (L. XXX. 1.) AND NOUN.

| <i>All Genders.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|--------------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| die guten; meine guten; | Baiern; | Grafen; | Federn; | Serzen; |
| der guten; meiner guten; | Baiern; | Grafen; | Federn; | Serzen; |
| den guten; meinen guten; | Baiern; | Grafen; | Federn; | Serzen; |
| die guten; meine guten; | Baiern; | Grafen; | Federn; | Serzen. |

MIXED DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

All Genders.

| | | |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| alle gute;* | welche gute; | einige große; |
| aller guten; | welcher guten; | einiger großen; |
| allen guten; | welchen guten; | einigen großen; |
| alle gute; | welche gute; | einige große. |

WORDS REQUIRING THE NEW DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

| | | | | | |
|--------|----------|----------|---------|--------|---------|
| alle;* | einige; | manche; | welche; | eure; | seine; |
| die; | eifrige; | mehrere; | | ihre; | unfere; |
| beste; | jene; | solche; | beine; | meine; | keine. |

* Note, that after *alle*, *einige*, *eifrige*, *manche*, *mehrere* or *mehre*, *solche* and *welche*, the adjective sometimes takes a *mixed* declension (L. XXXI. 9)

LESSON XXXI.

Lecton XXXI.

IRREGULAR DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. The following nouns are inflected according to the *new* declension, (except that they add *s* to *en* of gen. sing.): *der* Buchstabe, the letter; *der* Fels, the rock; *der* Friede, the peace; *der* Funke, the spark; *der* Gedanke, the thought; *der* Glaube, the belief; *der* Haufe, the heap; *der* Name, the name; *der* Same, the seed; *der* Schade, the damage; *der* Wille, the will.

N. *der* Fels; *der* Friede; *der* Name;
 G. *des* Fels-ens; *des* Friede-ns; *des* Name-ns;
 D. *dem* Fels-en; *dem* Friede-n; *dem* Name-n;
 A. *den* Fels-en; *den* Friede-n; *den* Name-n.

2. Some of the above words, however, sometimes take in the nominative singular *en*, and are regularly inflected according to the *old* declension; as, *der* Felsen, *des* Felsens, etc.

3. *Fels* and *Friede* sometimes follow the *old* declension in the singular; as, *der* Fels, *des* Felses, *dem* Felse, *den* Fels.

Da sollst du den Fels schlagen.

Thou shalt smite the rock.—Exodus
 xvii. 5.

4. *Der Schmerz* forms the genitive by adding *ens*; *das Herz* adds *ens* in the genitive and *en* in the dative, and both form their plural according to the *new* declension (L. XXX. 2).

5. The following nouns take the *old* declension in the singular, and the *new* in the plural; namely *masculine*, *der* Ahn, the ancestor; *der* Bauer, the peasant; *der* Dorn, the thorn (§ 15. 3); *der* Glitter, the spangle; *der* Forst, the forest; *der* Gau, the country; *der* Gvater, the god-father; *der* Lorbeer, the laurel; *der* Mast, the mast; *der* Nachbar, the neighbor; *der* Pfau, the peacock; *der* See, the lake; *der* Sporn, the spur; *der* Staat, the state; *der* Stachel, the sting; *der* Strahl, the beam; *der* Strauß, the ostrich (§ 15. 3); *der* Unterthan, the subject; *der* Vetter, the cousin; *der* Zierat or Zierath, the ornament. *Neuter*, *das* Auge, the eye; *das* Bett, the bed; *das* Ende, the end; *das* Hemd, the shirt; *das* Ohr, the ear.

6. DECLENSION OF *Bauer* AND *Auge*.

| <i>Singular (old).</i> | <i>Plural (new).</i> | <i>Singular (old).</i> | <i>Plural (new).</i> |
|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| N. der Bauer, | die Bauer-n, | das Auge, | die Auge-n, |
| G. des Bauer-s, | der Bauer-n, | des Auge-s, | der Auge-n, |
| D. dem Bauer, | den Bauer-n, | dem Auge, | den Auge-n, |
| A. den Bauer, | die Bauer-n, | das Auge, | die Auge-n. |

7. *Bett* and *Hemd* sometimes take the plural forms *Bette* and *Hemder*.

8. *Der See* signifies the *lake*; *die See*, the *ocean*; their form is the same in all cases except the genitive singular. *Sporn* frequently has the plural *Sporen*, instead of *Sporne*.

For further examples of nouns with a mixed declension see § 19.

MIXED DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

9. After *alle*, *einige*, *etliche*, *manche*, *mehrere* or *mehre*, *solche* and *welche* the nominative and accusative of the adjective sometimes follow the *old*, and the other cases the *new* declension, thus forming in the plural also a *mixed* declension:

Er hat einige gute (or guten) Freunde. He has a few good friends.
Durch die Güte einiger guten Freunde. Through the kindness of a few good friends.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Der Name ist ein ungewöhnlicher. | The name is an uncommon one. |
| Ich kenne Niemand dieses Namens. | I know nobody by (of) this name. |
| Gute Fürsten bekommen leicht gute Unterthanen, nicht so leicht diese jene. | Good princes easily obtain good subjects, the latter (do) not so easily (obtain) the former. |
| —R. | |
| Die Polen und Ungarn sind die Nachbarn der Böhmen. | The Poles and Hungarians are the neighbors of the Bohemians. |
| O, eine edle Himmelsgabe ist das Licht des Auges.—S. | O, a precious gift of Heaven is the light of the eye. |
| Wir sind eines Herzens, eines Bluts. | We are of one heart, of one blood. |
| —S. | |
| Vier Augen sehen besser als zwei. | Four eyes are better than two (two heads are better than one). |
| Es ist keine Rose ohne Dornen. | There is no rose without thorns. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Die Barke, -, pl. -n, the bark; | Der Pfau, -es, pl. -en, the peacock; |
| Der Dorn, -es, pl. (§ 15. 3) the thorn; | Rufen, to call (see nennen); |
| Drei (see p. 299.) three; | Der Schmerz, -es or -ens, pl. -en, |
| Dreschen, to thrash; | the pain |
| Der Elefant, -en, pl. -en, elephant; | Der Staat, -es, pl. -en, the state; |
| Erst, first; | Der Stachel, -s, pl. -n, the sting; |
| Der Friede, -ns, pl. -, the peace; | Der Störenfried, L. XXIV. 6; |
| Der Fürst, -en, pl. -en, the prince; | Der Störer, -s, pl. -, the disturber; |
| Das Getreide, -s, pl. -, the grain; | Uebersetz'en, to translate; |
| Last, last; | Der Unterthan, -s, pl. -en, subject; |
| Der Mast, -es, pl. -en, the mast; | Bereinig't, united; |
| Der Name, -ns, pl. -n, the name; | Verursachen, to cause; |
| Nennen, to call; name; | Die Wespe, -, pl. -n, the wasp. |

EXERCISE 58.

Aufgabe 58.

1. Man findet in den Vereinigten Staaten keine Fürsten und keine Unterthanen. 2. Eine Barke hat drei Masten. 3. Die Bauern dreschen ihr Getreide. 4. Ich habe den Wagen meines Nachbarn und die Pferde Ihrer Nachbarn. 5. Es sind keine Rosen ohne Dornen. 6. Meine Vettern haben drei schöne Pfauen. 7. Die Ohren des Elefanten sind groß, seine Augen sind klein. 8. Ich kenne den Mann, aber ich weiß seinen Namen nicht. 9. Kleine Stacheln verursachen oft große Schmerzen. 10. Man nennt einen Störer des Friedens einen Störenfried. 11. Seine Vettern rufen ihn, aber er hört sie nicht. 12. Wissen Sie den Unterschied zwischen "Nennen" und "Rufen"? 13. Wie übersetzt man "Rufen" und wie "Nennen"? 14. Der Lehrer ruft die Kinder in sein Haus und nennt sie aufmerksame Schüler. 15. Die Federn des Straußes sind sehr schön.

EXERCISE 59.

Aufgabe 59.

1. Do you know how many masts a bark has? 2. What is a disturber of the peace called? 3. Why does the teacher call his scholars into the house? 4. The elephant has small eyes and large ears. 5. Ostriches and peacocks have beautiful feathers, and large, ugly feet. 6. How are the words Rufen and Nennen translated? 7. There are many Germans in the United States. 8. Which pupils are idle? 9. All good princes have good subjects, but not all good subjects have good princes. 10. Our old neighbors, the peasants, are thrashing their grain;

they have wheat, oats, rye and barley. 11. Every rose has its thorns. 12. The bees and wasps cause great pain with their sharp stings. 13. Under what name is that old soldier known here? 14. Somebody is calling your cousins. 15. Their teacher calls them good and attentive scholars.

LESSON XXXII.

Section XXXII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

COMPARATIVE.

1. Adjectives, which in the positive end in *e*, form their comparative by adding *r*, those of other terminations by adding *er*:

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| weis, wise; | weis-er, wiser; | mild, mild; | mild-er, milder; |
| fein, fine; | fein-er, finer; | treu, true; | treu-er, truer; |
| eitel, vain; | eit-ler, (L.XII.5.) | süß, sweet; | süß-er, sweeter; |
| stolz, proud; | stolz-er, prouder; | derb, firm; | derb-er, firmer. |

SUPERLATIVE.

2. Adjectives ending in *d*, *t*, *s*, *ß*, *sch*, *t*, *u* or *z*, usually form the superlative by adding *est*; those of other terminations add *st*:

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> | <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| mild, mild; | mild-est, mildest; | frei, free; | frei-est, freest; |
| süß, sweet; | süß-est, sweetest; | laut, loud; | laut-est, loudest; |
| stolz, proud; | stolz-est, proudest; | derb, firm; | derb-st, firmest; |
| lahm, lame; | lahm-st, lamest; | steif, stiff; | steif-st, stiffest. |

3 When the positive is a monosyllable, the root vowels *a*, *e*, *u*, generally assume the Umlaut in the other degrees (for exceptions, however, see §. 36. 5.):

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| alt, old; | ält-er, older; | ält-est, oldest; |
| grob, coarse; | gröb-er, coarser; | gröb-st, coarsest; |
| flug, prudent; | flüg-er, more prudent; | flüg-st, most prudent. |

4. The following are of irregular comparison :

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| groß, large ; | größer, larger ; | größt, largest ; |
| gut, good ; | besser, better ; | best, best ; |
| hoch, high ; | höher, higher ; | höchst, highest ; |
| nahe near | näher, nearer ; | nächst, nearest, next ; |
| viel, much, many ; | mehr, more ; | meist (mehrst), most. |

Hoch, when used attributively drops its c, also in the positive ;
as, ein hoher (not höher) Berg, a high mountain.

5. Adjectives are subject to the same rules of declension in the comparative and superlative, as in the positive (L. XIV. 3. L. XV. 1. and L. XVI. 1) :

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Er ist reicher als ich. | He is richer than I. |
| Er ist ein reicherer Mann als ich. | He is a richer man than I. |
| Er ist der reichste Mann. | He is the richest man. |
| Mein bester Hut ist nicht neu. | My best hat is not new. |
| Der beste Hut ist nicht sehr gut. | The best hat is not very good. |
| Wessen Hut ist der beste ? | Whose hat is the best ? |
| Wessen Buch ist das beste ? | Whose book is the best ? |

6. When the superlative is used predicatively it usually stands in the dative after a m (an dem § 38.) :

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Mein Hut ist am besten. | My hat is the best (i.e. at the best). |
| Mein Buch ist am besten. | My book is the best. |
| Er ist am ältesten von allen. | He is the oldest of all. |
| Sie lesen am besten. | You read the best. |

7. The superlative is often suffixed to the genitive plural of a II :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Dieser Hut ist der allerschönste, or | } This hat is the finest of all. |
| Diese: Hut ist am allerschönsten. | |
| Ein allerliebtestes Kind. | A most charming child. |

8. When two qualities of the same object are compared, the adjective, without change of form, is qualified by some other word :

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Er ist mehr tapfer als klug. | He is more valiant than prudent. |
| Er ist weniger tapfer als klug. | He is less valiant than prudent. |
| Er ist eben so tapfer als klug. | He is just as valiant as prudent. |

9. Participles are subject to the same rules of comparison

and declension as the adjective, except that they do not take the Umlaut; and in the present *ſt*, instead of *e ſt*, is added:

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Ein rührendes Schauspiel. | A more touching spectacle. |
| Das rührendſte Schauspiel. | The most touching spectacle. |

10. *Je—deſto*, or *je—je* (with the comparative) answers to *the—the* in English:

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Je älter: deſto</i> (or <i>je</i>) <i>ehrwürdiger</i> . | The older the more venerable. |
| <i>Je eher</i> der Bote geht, um deſto beſſer für uns. | The ſooner the meſſenger goes the better for us. |
| <i>Je länger je lieber</i> . | The longer the better. |

11. After the latter of theſe words (*—deſto*, or *—je*) the verb precedes its ſubject:

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Je fleißiger wir ſind</i> , deſto ſchneller lernen wir (<i>inſtead of</i> wir lernen). | The more induſtrious we are, the faſter we learn (learn we). |
| <i>Je höher man iſt</i> deſto tiefer kann man fallen. | The higher one is, the deeper one can (can one) fall. |
| <i>Je länger ich mit ihm bekannt bin</i> , deſto lieber wird er mir. | The longer I am acquainted with him, the more dear he becomes to me. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Es iſt nichts als ein bloßer Wahn.—D. | It is nothing (<i>elſe</i>) than a mere illuſion. |
| Er iſt Nichts weniger als mein Freund. | He is nothing <i>leſs</i> than (he is) my friend. |
| Je mehr Gottes- und Menſchenliebe, deſto weniger Selber-Liebe.—R. | The more (one's) love of God and of man, the leſs (one's) ſelf-love. |
| In jedem edlen Herz brennt ein ewiger Durſt nach einem edlern.—R. | In every noble heart burns an eternal thirſt for (after) a nobler. |
| Das frohere Kind iſt überall das beſſere.—R. | The more joyous child is every where the better (one). |
| Es iſt nichts erdärmlicher in der Welt als ein unentſchloſſ'ner Menſch.—G. | There is nothing more pitiable in the world than an undecided man (human being). |
| Der größte Haß iſt wie die größte Tugend und die ſchlimmſten Sünde, ſtill.—R. | The greateſt hatred is like the greateſt virtue and the worſt dog, ſtill. |
| Es iſt mit dem Wiſſen wie mit dem Sehen, je mehr man ſieht, deſto beſſer und angenehmer iſt es. | It is with (the) knowing as with (the) ſeeing, the more one ſees, the better and the more agreeable it is. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Di. Buche, -, pl. -n, the beech; | Der Mond, -es, pl. -e and -en, the moon; |
| Dick, thick; | Die Sonne, -, pl. -n, the sun; |
| Edel, noble; | Der Sperling, -s, pl. -e, the sparrow; |
| Die Eiche, -, pl. -n, the oak; | Der Stamm, -es, pl. Stämme, trunk; |
| Entfernt, remote, distant; | Der Stern, -en, pl. -en, the star; |
| Der Feldherr, -n, pl. -en, the commander-in-chief; | Tapfer, brave, valiant; |
| Gelehrt, learned; | Die Taube, -, pl. -n, the pigeon; |
| Glücklich, fortunate; | Unrein, impure; |
| Flug, prudent; | Verdien'en, to earn; |
| Die Luft, -, pl. Lüfte, the air; | Verschenk'en, to give away. |

EXERCISE 60.

Aufgabe 60.

1. Der Bauer ist reich, aber der Kaufmann ist reicher. 2. Der Kaufmann ist ein reicherer Mann als der Bauer. 3. Ist nicht der Kaufmann der reichste Mann in dieser Stadt? 4. Ich bin reich, mein Vetter ist reicher, und sein Vater ist am reichsten. 5. Ist der reichste Mann am zufriedensten? 6. Ist nicht der fleißigste Mann immer der zufriedenste Mann? 7. In welchem Lande sind das Kammeel und der Elephant nützlicher als das Pferd? 8. Welche Thiere sind am nützlichsten? 9. Welches ist das nützlichere Thier, das Schaf oder das Pferd? 10. Der edelste Mensch ist nicht immer der glücklichste, und der gelehrteste nicht immer der weiseste. 11. Die Erde ist kleiner als die Sonne, und die Sterne sind entfernter als der Mond. 12. Der Stamm des Apfelbaumes ist dick, der Stamm der Buche ist dicker, und der Stamm der Eiche ist am dicksten. 13. Der Apfelbaum hat einen dicken Stamm, die Buche hat einen didern, und die Eiche hat den dicksten. 14. Je mehr er verdient, desto mehr verschenk't er. 15. Ein guter Feldherr ist mehr flug als tapfer. 16. Die Luft in den Städten ist unreiner als die Landluft. 17. Ein Sperling in der Hand ist besser als eine Taube auf dem Dache.

EXERCISE 61.

Aufgabe 61.

1. Are the merchants richer than the peasants? 2. Are the merchants richer men than the peasants? 3. Who is the richest man in this city? 4. Is your house better than the house of your richer neighbor? 5. Which is the more useful tree, the oak or the beech? 6. Is the oak a more useful tree than

the beech? 7. Why is the country air purer than the air in large cities? 8. What flower is more beautiful than the rose? 9. In what countries do we find the most beautiful flowers? 10. Is the most learned man always the wisest, and the richest the most contented? 11. Are not these boys more industrious scholars than those? 12. Is the earth larger than the moon? 13. The more industrious we are the more we know. 14. These people say they have better horses, better sheep, better oxen, better carriages and better dogs than our neighbors. 15. I have the oldest table, the oldest pen, the oldest book, and the oldest chairs in the city. 16. You have older iron, older steel and older axes than the smith. 17. Where or when is a sparrow better than a pigeon?



LESSON XXXIII.

Lesson XXXIII.

ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

1. Adjectives denoting persons are often used substantively, where in English they are followed by a word referring to individuals or objects:

Der Gute bedauert den Bösen.

The good (man) pities the bad (one).

Der Böse haßt oft den Guten.

The bad (man) often hates the good.

Ein Neidischer ist nie glücklich.

An envious (person) is never happy.

Jeder Neidische ist unzufrieden.

Every envious man is discontented.

Eine Schöne ist sehr stolz.

That fair (one) is very proud.

Die Unglückliche weint.

The unfortunate (woman) weeps.

Was willst du, mein Kleiner?

What do you wish, my little fellow?

Der Trauernde weint (L. xxxvii. 1).

The mourner (mourning man) weeps.

2. In the neuter, the adjective is often employed as an abstract noun, and may be preceded as well by the indefinite as the definite article; or it may be used without either:

Das Nützliche ist besser als das Schöne. The useful is better than the beautiful.

Der Weise weiß nicht Alles.

The wise (man) does not know every thing (all).

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Es ist ihm ein Leichtes. | It is an easy thing for him. |
| Vergelt' er nicht Böses mit Bösem | Repay not evil with (for) evil. |
| Es liebt die Welt das Strahlende zu | The world loves to blacken what |
| schwärzen und das Erhabene in den | is bright (the glittering) and drag |
| Staub zu setzen.—S. | into the dust the elevated. |

3. The superlative *Best*, in the sense of an abstract noun, answers to a variety of terms in English which are generally best suggested according to the sentence where it is employed. Thus it may be rendered by *good*; *benefit*; or, by other parts of speech :

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Es ist für das allgemeine Beste. | It is for the general <i>good</i> . |
| Sie sang zum Besten der Armen. | She sang for the <i>benefit</i> of the poor. |
| Er gab uns etwas zum Besten. | He <i>favoured</i> us with something. |
| Geben Sie uns ein Lied zum Besten. | Give us a song for our <i>entertainment</i> . |

With *haben*, and sometimes with *halten*, the same word is used to denote the *advantage* which a person seeks to gain by means of facetious irony, or playful ridicule :

| | |
|--|--|
| Die Naseweise hat Sie zum Besten. | The pert (girl) is rallying you. |
| —E. | |
| Er hat ihn zum Besten. | He is ridiculing (or, "befooling") him. |
| Diese beiden Freunde haben gern einander zum Besten. | These two friends are fond of rallying each other. |
| Der Lügner hält gern Andere zum Besten. | The liar is fond of duping others. |

4. The comparative of *Nähe*, is often used substantively in the signification of *particulars*, *nearer* details :

| | |
|--|---|
| Wissen Sie nicht das Nähere von der Sache? | Do you not know the <i>particulars</i> of the affair? |
| Näheres kann er Ihnen sagen. | (The) <i>nearer details</i> he can communicate you. |

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM PROPER NAMES OF COUNTRIES AND CITIES.

5. Adjectives are formed from names of countries and cities, by means of the suffix *isch*; and those of the former frequently take the Umlaut, if capable of it. In place of an adjective of this ending, however, the name of the city with the suffix *er* is often employed, and is undeclined :

| | |
|---|--|
| Viele Pommern traten in schwedischen Dienst.—S. | Many Pomeranians entered into Swedish service. |
| Die Ursache dieser Veränderung ist in eben diesem Augsburgischen Bekennnisse zu suchen.—S. | The cause of this change is to be sought for in this very Augsburg confession. |
| Die griechische Sprache ist die gebilteste der Welt.—S. | The Greek language is the most cultivated in (of) the world. |
| Er sagte es auf deutsch (L. xxxiv. 4). | He said it in German. |
| Er sagte es im Französischen. | He said it in (the) French. |
| Sieben Jahre nach der Prager Schlacht war alle Religionsübung gegen die Protestant'en im Königreiche aufgehoben.—S. | Seven years after the battle of Prague all religious toleration toward the Protestants in the kingdom was abolished. |

Obs.—Note, that adjectives derived from the names of cities, are written with capital initials; as are also those denoting a language, if preceded by the article and used without a noun.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS.

6. Adjectives are formed from the names of persons by means of the suffix *isch*, and are usually rendered by a noun:

| | |
|--|--|
| Ganz Deutschland seufzte unter Kriegeslast, doch Friede war's im Wallensteinischen Lager.—S. | All Germany sighed under the burden of war, but there was peace in Wallenstein's camp. |
| Die Gebhardischen Truppen lieferten dem Feinde einen Platz nach dem andern aus.—S. | The troops of Gebhard gave up to the enemy one place after another (the) other. |

7. Adjectives denoting a sect, derived from proper names are often written with a small initial:

| | |
|---|--|
| Im neunjährigen Kurfürsten gab man calvinische Lehrer.—S. | To the nine years old elector Calvinist teachers were given. |
| Alles, was die lutherische Kirche erhielt, war Duldung. | All that the Lutheran church obtained was toleration. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Der Starke ist am mächtigsten allein.—S. | The strong man is most powerful alone. |
| Der Sehende begreift den Blinden, aber nicht dieser Jenen.—R. | The seeing (man) comprehends the blind, but the latter does not the former. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Nur das Neue scheint gewöhnlich wichtig.—G. | Only the (that which is) <i>new</i> generally seems important. |
| Nicht alles Schwere ist deswegen ein Labyrinth ohne Leitfaden.—R. | Not every thing <i>difficult</i> is therefore a labyrinth without guide (guiding thread). |
| Reden Sie zu meinem Besten. | Intercede (speak) in my behalf. |
| Sie haben diesen Fremden zum Besten. | They are making (having) <i>this</i> stranger a laughing-stock. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Bedauern, to pity; | Laufen, to run; |
| Beneiden, to envy; | Magdeburger, see 5; |
| Blind, blind; | Neidisch, envious; |
| Der Dom, -es, pl. -e, the cathedral; | Praktisch, practical; |
| Elend, miserable, wretched; | Schnell, fast; |
| Folglich, consequently; | Taub, deaf; |
| Das Gebäude, -s, pl. -, the building; | Thätig, active; |
| Geschwind, quick, rapid; | Der Thor, -en, pl. -en, the fool |
| Die Hausfrau, -, pl. -en, housewife; | Thöricht, foolish; |
| Hülfslos, helpless; | Traurig, sad, sorrowful; |
| Lahm, lame; | Weise, wise. |

EXERCISE 62.

Aufgabe 62.

1. Der ehrliche fleißige Arme ist viel nützlicher und glücklicher, als der faule Reiche. 2. Nicht jeder Arme ist traurig, nicht jeder Reiche ist glücklich. 3. Der Thor beneidet oft den Reichen. 4. Ein Neidischer ist nie zufrieden, und folglich nicht glücklich. 5. Niemand ist elender und thörichter als der Neidische. 6. Das Schöne und Angenehme ist gut, aber das Nützliche und Praktische ist noch besser. 7. Ist jeder Taube unglücklich? 8. Nicht jeder Gelehrte ist ein Weiser, und nicht jeder Weise ist ein Gelehrter. 9. Der Blinde ist noch unglücklicher und hilfloser als der Taube oder der Lahme. 10. Ein Gelehrter ist nicht immer ein thätiger, nützlicher Mann. 11. Eine Gelehrte ist nicht immer eine gute Hausfrau. 12. Was für ein Buch lesen Sie, ein deutsches, ein französisches oder ein englisches? 13. Ich lese ein französisches. 14. Jene Schüler lesen deutsche und englische Bücher. 15. Der Magdeburger (see 5.) Dom ist ein schönes Gebäude. 16. Er ist geschwind in Allem.

EXERCISE 63.

Aufgabe 63.

1. Who is more foolish and more miserable than the envious man? 2. N-body is more foolish than an envious man. 3.

The idle man is not useful, and consequently not happy. 4. Is only the useful man contented? 5. Is the idle man ever really contented and happy? 6. Is the industrious man never sad? 7. Do you learn the practical, or only the agreeable? 8. Why is the idle man unhappy? 9. Is the blind man more helpless than the deaf or the lame one? 10. Who leads a more miserable life than the envious man? 11. The good man pities the poor, but he does not envy the rich. 12. Is the Magdeburg cathedral the largest building in the city? 13. The idle man is not useful, and consequently not good, for only the useful man is really good and wise. 14. These German books are new, those French ones are old. 15. Who is more wretched than the envious man?

LESSON XXXIV.

Section XXXIV.

OMISSION OF INFLECTIONAL ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The adjectives *eitel* and *lauter*, in the signification of *all*, *nothing but*, *mere*, sometimes stand without inflection before nouns :

Es ist *lauter* Eigensinn.

It is *mere* obstinacy.

Wir stolzen Menschenfinder sind *eitel* arme Sünder.—El.

We proud sons of men are *nothing but* poor sinners.

Unter *lauter* guten Dingen ist die Wahl schwer.

Among things that are *all* good the choice is difficult.

2. When several adjectives qualify the same noun, the inflectional endings of all but the last are sometimes dropped, and the omission indicated by a hyphen. In like manner the last syllable of compound adjectives is sometimes omitted :

Die schwarz-roth-goldene Fahne.

The black red golden banner.

Niemand war so freuden- und schlaflos wie er.—H.

Nobody was as joyless and sleepless (joy- and sleepless) as he.

3. In the nominative and accusative neuter, adjectives often omit the inflectional endings :

Des Menschen Leben scheint ein herrlich

The life of man seems a glorious allotment.

Loos.—G.

4. An adjective in denoting a language, when not preceded by the article, as exemplified in the preceding lesson, is also undeclined :

Er sagte es auf englisch.

He said it in English.

5. When the *latter* of two adjectives is employed, conjointly with its noun, to embrace as *one* idea that which the *first* qualifies, it takes the form of the *new* declension :

Denn geend'iget nach langem verberb'igen Streit,^o war die kaiserlose, For, ended, after long ruinous strife, lich n Streit, war die kaiserlose, was the emperorless, the terrible period, and there was a ruler die schreckliche Zeit, und ein Richter ble period, and there was a ruler war wieder auf Erden.—G. (judge) again upon earth.

Obs.—The above rule, though extending to both the gen. and dat., is rarely applied, except in the masc. and neut. of the *latter*. Note, also, that where the adjectives may be joined by *und*, or so separated as equally to refer to the same noun, the *latter* one also takes the *old* form (compare 1, 2. § 34.); thus, Er löscht seinen Durst mit klarem kaltem (n, as euphonic) Wasser; or, mit klarem und kaltem Wasser, as also mit klarem, kaltem Wasser.

6. A clause or sentence is often used adjectively, sometimes requiring to be translated by a relative clause :

Die zu Präpositio'nen ge- The nouns that have (The to prepositions wordenen Substanti'ven. become prepositions. become nouns).

“Die ursprünglich aus all The conjunction als (The originally from und so zusammengesetzte (as) originally compounded Konjunction als hat pounded of all and so compounded conjunction als has immer die Bedeutung always has the signification always, etc.) eines Relati'vds.” fication of a relative.

ADJECTIVES USED ADVERBIALLY.

7. Adjectives in all degrees of comparison, in the form in which they occur as predicate, are employed adverbially :

Er liest schnell ; er spricht langsam. He reads fast ; he speaks slowly.

Der einzelne Mann entflieht am leichtesten.—G. The single man escapes the easiest.

Je mehr Schwäche, je mehr Lüge ; die The more infirmity the more falsehood ; strength goes straight : a Kraft geht gerade : eine Kanonenkugel, die Löcher oder Gruben cannon-ball that has holes or cavities goes crooked. hat, geht frumm.—R.

* Verberblichen Streit ; i. e. contest : here embracing as a *single idea* the conjoint signification of the “*latter adjective*” and “*its noun*.”

Er schreibt gut, sie schreibt besser, He writes well, she writes better,
und Sie schreiben am besten. and you write the best.
Es ist höchst wahrscheinlich. It is (most) highly probable.
Er verrichtete das Geschäft auf's (§ 38. He transacted the business most
1.) gewissenhafteste. conscientiously.

8. Adverbs are produced by adding to the simple form of the superlative the termination *en s* :

Wir wohnen meistens auf dem Lande. We live mostly in the country.
Sie ist höchstens dreißig Jahre alt. She is at most thirty years old

9. Formerly adverbs were distinguished, in the positive degree, from adjectives by a final *e*. This termination is still often used, especially in poetry ; and in the adverb *lange* is always retained :

Keiner möchte da feste stehen, mein ich, No one could stand firmly (there),
wo er fiel.—S. I think, where he fell.
Wie lange wohnte er hier ? How long did he live here ?
Er ist lange nicht so alt wie ich. He is not as old by far as I.
Ich habe ihn lange nicht gesehen. I have not seen him for a long time.

10. The comparative of *viel* is often rendered by *longer*, that of *lange* by *more* ; the superlative *längst* by *a long time*, *long ago* ; the superlative of *jung* by *recently*, *lately* :

Er ist nicht mehr jung. He is no longer young.
Ich wohne länger als zehn Jahre in diesem Hause. I (reside) have resided more than
ten years in this house.
Das wußt' ich längst.—S. That I knew long ago.
Vor dieser Linde saß ich jüngst.—S. Recently I was sitting before that
lime-tree.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Er sagte es auf französisch. He said it in French.
Wir wollen deutsch sprechen. We wish to speak German.
Gefetze sind glatt (sanft) und geschmel- Laws are smooth and flexible,
big, wandelbar wie Laune und Lei- changeable as humor and pas-
denchaft ; Religio'n bindet streng sion ; religion binds firmly and
und ewig.—S. eternally.
Ein unnütz Leben ist ein früher Tod. A useless life is an early death.
—G.
Je schneller sich ein Wandelstern um die Sonne bewegt, desto langsamer dreht er sich um sich.—R. The more rapidly a planet moves
around the sun, the more slowly
it turns on its axis (a'round itself).

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Bleich, pale; | Lang (adverb), long; |
| Deutlich, distinct; | Langsam, slow; |
| Kechen, to fight, p. 348; | Laut, loud; |
| Das Gedächtniß, -es, pl. -e, memory; | Der Rabe, -n, pl. -n, the raven; |
| Gerecht, just; | Reden, to speak; |
| Hager, haggard; | Der Redner, -s, pl. -, the orator; |
| Handeln, to act; | Die Schwalbe, -, pl. -n, swallow |
| Rehren, to sweep; | Ungemein, uncommon; |
| Krank, sick; | Die Zange, -, pl. -n, the tongs. |

EXERCISE 64.

Aufgabe 64.

1. Lernen Sie französisch? 2. Nein, wir lernen deutsch. 3. Wie sagt man im Englischen, "die Schwalbe fliegt schneller als der Rabe?" 4. Welches von diesen Kindern liest am besten, und welches am schlechtesten? 5. Der Diener hat die Zange, wer hat den neuesten Besen? 6. Der Fleißige lernt schnell, der Fauler langsam. 7. Jener Redner spricht besser als er schreibt. 8. Warum lernen Sie langsamer als Ihr Bruder? 9. Er lernt viel leichter als ich, er hat ein besseres Gedächtniß. 10. Sie sprechen laut, aber nicht deutlich. 11. Der Kranke ist heute ungemein bleich und hager. 12. Gute Soldaten fechten tapfer in allen gerechten Kriegen. 13. Er redet weise aber er handelt thöricht. 14. Er ist reicher als sein Nachbar, denn er arbeitet fleißiger als er. 15. Ich verstehe Sie besser als ihn, denn Sie sprechen deutlicher und langsamer. 16. "Neue Besen kehren am besten;" wie sagen Sie das im Englischen? (L. XXXIII. OBS.)

EXERCISE 65.

Aufgabe 65.

1. Does your cousin speak German? 2. No, he speaks only English. 3. Does he learn more slowly than his friend? 4. No, he learns faster, and speaks more distinctly. 5. Do all soldiers fight bravely in all just wars? 6. The old soldier is uncommonly pale and haggard, he is sick, is he not? 7. I do not understand what the teacher says; he speaks very rapidly, and not very distinctly. 8. The idle man acts very foolishly, but not every industrious man acts wisely. 9. That orator speaks much louder than this one, but not so distinctly. 10. Which one of your scholars writes the best, and which writes the worst? 11. Which flies the fastest, the eagle, the raven, or the swallow? 12. Are all your scholars learning German?

13. No, they are learning French. 14. I do not learn rapidly, for my memory is not good. 15. How do you say in German, "He speaks very slowly?" 16. How do you say in German, "A new broom sweeps the cleanest?"

LESSON XXXV.

Lection XXXV.

ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. When the possessive pronouns relate, attributively, to a noun understood, and are not followed by an adjective, they are called absolute possessive pronouns. They are of two forms; as, *mein-er, e, es*, inflected like an adjective of the *old* declension; and *der, die, das mein-ige*, or the shorter form, *der, die, das mein-e*, inflected like an adjective of the *new* declension:

OLD DECLENSION.

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| N. <i>mein-er</i> ; | <i>mein-e</i> ; | <i>mein-es</i> ; mine; |
| G. <i>mein-es</i> ; | <i>mein-er</i> ; | <i>mein-es</i> ; of mine; |
| D. <i>mein-em</i> ; | <i>mein-er</i> ; | <i>mein-em</i> ; to, or for mine; |
| A. <i>mein-en</i> ; | <i>mein-e</i> ; | <i>mein-es</i> ; mine. |

NEW DECLENSION.

| | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| N. <i>der mein-ige</i> ; | <i>die mein-ige</i> ; | <i>das mein-ige</i> ; | mine; |
| G. <i>des mein-igen</i> ; | <i>der mein-igen</i> ; | <i>des mein-igen</i> ; | of mine, |
| D. <i>dem mein-igen</i> ; | <i>der mein-igen</i> ; | <i>dem mein-igen</i> ; | to, for mine, |
| A. <i>den mein-igen</i> ; | <i>die mein-ige</i> ; | <i>das mein-ige</i> ; | mine; or, |
| N. <i>der mein-e</i> ; | <i>die mein-e</i> ; | <i>das mein-e</i> ; | mine; |
| G. <i>des mein-en</i> ; | <i>der mein-en</i> ; | <i>des mein-en</i> ; | of mine; |
| D. <i>dem mein-en</i> ; | <i>der mein-en</i> ; | <i>dem mein-en</i> ; | to, for mine, |
| A. <i>den mein-en</i> ; | <i>die mein-e</i> ; | <i>das mein-e</i> ; | mine. |

ALL GENDERS IN THE PLURAL.

| OLD. | NEW. | NEW. |
|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| N. <i>mein-e</i> ; | <i>die mein-igen</i> | or <i>die mein-en</i> ; mine; |
| G. <i>mein-er</i> ; | <i>der mein-igen</i> | or <i>der mein-en</i> ; of mine; |
| D. <i>mein-en</i> ; | <i>den mein-igen</i> | or <i>den mein-en</i> ; to, for mine; |
| A. <i>mein-e</i> ; | <i>die mein-igen</i> | or <i>die mein-en</i> ; mine. |

EXAMPLES OF THE ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Form of old declension. Forms of new declension.

Mein Hut ist schwarz und Mein Hut ist schwarz, und My hat is black and his
 sein-er ist weiß. der seine (or der seinige) is white.
 ist weiß.

Sein Hut ist schwarz und Sein Hut ist schwarz und His hat is black and
 mein-er ist weiß. der mein-e (or der mein- ige) ist weiß. mine is white.

Mein Buch ist neu und Mein Buch ist neu und das My book is new and his
 sein-es ist alt. sein-e (or das sein-ige) is old.
 ist alt.

Sein Buch ist neu und Sein Buch ist neu und das His book is new and
 mein-es ist alt. mein-e (or mein-ige) ist mine is old.
 alt.

Er geht zu meinem Freund Er geht zu meinem Freunde He is going to my friend
 de und nicht zu dein-em. und nicht zu dem dein-en and not to yours.
 (or dem dein-igen).

2. The absolute possessive pronouns are often used substantively in the neuter singular, to denote property or obligation :
 Ich stehe wieder auf dem Meinigen.— I am standing again upon my own
 ground.

Cardinal, ich habe das Meinige gethan. Cardinal, I have done my duty (I
 have done mine). Do yours.

3. In the plural the absolute possessive pronouns often denote one's family or relatives; they are likewise, where the application is sufficiently obvious, made to refer to dependents; as servants, soldiers, etc. :

Hast du das Schrecklichste, das Letzte Hast thou averted from thy own
 von den Deinen abgewehrt?—S. the most dreadful, the final (fate)!
 Leopold aber befahl den Seinen von But Leopold ordered his (soldiers)
 den Rossen zu steigen.—N. to dismount from their horses.
 Was liegt dem guten Menschen näher What lies nearer (in interest) to the
 als die Seinen?—S. good man than his own (family)!

4. The genitive singular of the possessive pronoun is often compounded with *gleich*, as is also that of the plural *der*. The words thus formed are indeclinable, and refer to nouns of each gender and in either number :

Wer in der Committee ist meines gleichen? Who in the committee is my equal?
 —S.

- Ich habe meinesgleichen nie gehaßt'.—** I never have hated such as you
G. (your peers).
Verord'net ist, daß jeder Angeklagte It is prescribed that every ac-
durch Geschwor'ne von seinesgleichen cused (one) shall be judged by
soß gerich'tet werden.—S. jurors of his peers.
Man muß dergleichen Thaten hinterher One should not afterward view
nicht so beschau'n.—S. the like deeds so critically.
Saufen, Freßsen und dergleichen.—Gal. Drunkenness, revelings, and such
V. 21. like.

5. Gleich, however, often stands apart from the pronoun, and is then written with a capital initial :

- Es wirkt mit Macht der edle Mann** The noble man works, with power,
Jahrhunderte auf seines Gleichs.— for centuries upon those like
G. himself.
Das Beste dabei ist, der Kerl hält Sie The best thing about it is, the fel-
für seines Gleichs.—L. low takes you for his peer.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

- Jedermann liebt die Seinigen und** Every one loves his own family,
schützt das Seinige. and protects his own property.
Dir zieht dein Vaterland, und meines Thy native country attracts thee,
solte mich nicht halten?—L. and mine should not detain me?
Sein Nam' ist Friedland, auch der His name is Friedland, (it is) also
Meinige.—S. mine.
Er schickte es nicht Ihrem Bruder, son- He did not send it to your brother,
dern meine m. but to mine.
Er handelt mit Knöpfen, Nadeln und He deals in buttons, pins, and the
dergleichen. like.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ander, other; | Der Schwamm, -es, pl. Schwämme, |
| Der Baumeister, -s, pl. -, architect; | the sponge; |
| Die Bürste, -, pl. -n, the brush; | Der, das Sofa, -s, pl. -s, the sofa; |
| Die Eigenheit, -, pl. -en, peculiarity; | Der Sonnenschirm, -es, pl. -e, the |
| Der Fehler, -s, pl. -, the fault; | parasol; |
| Die Flöte, -, pl. -n, the flute; | Das Taschentuch, -es, pl. -tücher, the |
| Hier, here; | handkerchief; |
| Die Kreide, -, the chalk; | Das Tintenfaß, -flöß, pl. -fässer, the |
| Der Maler, -s, pl. -, the painter; | inkstand; |
| Der Pinsel, -s, pl. -, the painter's | Verlan'gen, to demand, require; |
| pencil or brush; | Das Weltmeer, -s, pl. -e, the ocean; |
| Der Regenschirm, -es, pl. -e, the um- | Das Wörterbuch, -es, pl. -bücher, the |
| brella; | dictionary. |
| Der Schlüssel, -s, pl. -, the key; | |

EXERCISE 66.

Aufgabe 66.

1. Hat der Maler seinen Pinsel oder den meinigen? 2. Er hat den seinigen und den Ihrigen. 3. Ich habe meinen Regenschirm und den Ihrigen, meine Flöte und die Ihrige, mein Taschentuch und das Ihrige, meine Wörterbücher und die Ihrigen. 4. Der Baumeister hat sein Tintenfaß und das meinige, meine Kreide und die seinige. 5. Liegt der Sonnenschirm auf meinem Sofa oder auf dem Ihrigen? 6. Er liegt auf dem meinigen. 7. Ist Ihr Schlüssel besser als der meinige? 8. Nein, der meinige ist besser als der Ihrige. 9. Der Vater Ihres Lehrers und der Bruder des unsrigen sind krank. 10. Alle Menschen haben ihre Fehler und Eigenheiten; ich habe die meinigen, Sie haben die Ihrigen, und er hat die seinigen. 11. Ich habe hier zwei Tassen, eine gehört Ihrem Freunde, und die andere gehört dem unsrigen. 12. Jedermann liebt die Seinigen und verlangt das Seinige. 13. Das Weltmeer ist zwischen mir und den Meinigen. 14. Meine Mutter hat meinen Schwamm und den ihrigen, meine Bürste und die ihrige.

EXERCISE 67.

Aufgabe 67.

1. Have you my inkstand, or yours? 2. I have mine, and the scholar has his. 3. My keys are new, yours are old. 4. My mother has my cup, and I have hers; she has my handkerchiefs, and I have hers. 5. You have my parasol, and I have yours; yours is new, and mine is old. 6. Your flute is lying on my sofa, and mine is lying on yours. 7. Your chalk is better than ours; your sponge is smaller than ours. 8. Is your umbrella larger than mine? 9. Mine is smaller than yours. 10. The painter has my paint-brush and his, my dictionary and his, my flute and his, my pencils and his. 11. Your friend has his faults and unpleasant peculiarities; but all other men have theirs—you are not without yours. 12. Here is your brush; do you know where mine is? 13. The architect has yours, and I have his, but I do not know where yours is. 14. You are writing with your cousin's pencil, and he is writing with yours, or with mine.

LESSON XXXVI.

Lektion XXXVI.

1. CONJUGATION OF Haben.

INFINITIVE.

Present.

haben, to have.

Perfect.

gehabt haben, to have had.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

habend, having.

Perfect.

gehabt, had.

INDICATIVE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

PRESENT.

ich habe, I have;
 du hast, thou hast;
 er hat, he has;

wir haben, we have;
 ihr habet, you have;
 sie haben, they have.

IMPERFECT.

ich hatte, I had;
 du hattest, thou hadst;
 er hatte, he had;

wir hatten, we had;
 ihr hattet, you had;
 sie hatten, they had.

PERFECT.

ich habe gehabt, I have had; wir haben gehabt, we have had;
 du hast gehabt, thou hast had; ihr habt gehabt, you have had;
 er hat gehabt, he has had; sie haben gehabt, they have had.

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte gehabt, I had had; wir hatten gehabt, we had had;
 du hattest gehabt, thou hadst had; ihr hattet gehabt, you had had;
 er hatte gehabt, he had had; sie hatten gehabt, they had had.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde haben, I shall have; wir werden haben, we shall have;
 du wirst haben, thou wilt have; ihr werdet haben, you will have;
 er wird haben, he will have; sie werden haben, they will, h've.

SECOND FUTURE.

| | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------|--------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|--------------|
| ich werde | } gehabt haben, | I shall | } haben had; | wir werden | } gehabt haben, | we shall | } haben had. |
| du wirst | | thou wilt | | ihr werdet | | you will | |
| er wird | | he will | | sie werden | | they will | |

IMPERATIVE.

habe (tu), have (thou); habet or habt (ihr), have (ye, or you).

2. IDIOMS WITH *haben*.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Du hast gut Lachen. (See p. 446). | You may well laugh. |
| Er hat recht, sie hat unrecht. | He is right, she is wrong. |
| Haben Sie Hunger? ich habe Durst. | Are you hungry? I am thirsty. |
| Er hat gern ein warmes Zimmer. | He likes a warm room. |
| Er hat seine Freunde gern. | He is fond of his friends. |
| Sie haben ihn sehr lieb. | They love him very much. |
| Wir haben große Eile. | We are in great haste. |
| Ich habe ihn in Verdacht'. | I suspect him; or |
| Ich habe Verdacht' auf ihn. | I am suspicious of him. |
| Wir haben das Geld nöthig. | We are in want of the money. |
| Ich werde Acht auf ihn haben. | I will attend to (take care of) him. |
| Was haben Sie? | What ails you? |
| Ich habe Langeweile. | I feel ennui. |
| Was haben Sie dage'gen? | What objection have you? |
| Frau N. hat Trauer. | Mrs. N. is in mourning. |
| Man hat ihn zum Besten. | They are bantering him. |
| Es hat keine Eile. | There is no hurry about it. |

POSITION OF THE MAIN VERB IN COMPOUND TENSES.

3. In compound tenses and independent propositions the infinitive or participle is placed at the end of the sentence. In the second future the auxiliary *haben* (or *sein*) follows the past participle:

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Was hat er gehabt? | What has he had? |
| Er hat Nichts gehabt'. | He has had nothing. (He has nothing had.) |
| Hatten Sie es gehabt'? | Had you had it? (Had you it had?) |
| Ich werde es haben. | I shall have it. (I shall it have.) |
| Sie werden es gewiß gehabt' haben. | You will certainly have had it. (You will it certainly had have.) |

4. When a verb has two objects connected by a conjunction, the last may either precede or follow the verb:

| | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| haben Sie mein Buch gehabt' oder das Ihrige? or | } Have you had my book or yours? |
| haben Sie mein Buch oder das Ihrige gehabt'? | |

The infinitive with *zu*, when depending on another verb, is placed *last*:

| | |
|--|---|
| Er hat nicht Zeit gehabt' einen Brief zu schreiben. | He has not had time to write a letter. |
|--|---|

d. Two or more nouns in the singular, as embracing but one idea, are sometimes made the subject of a singular verb :

Vertraß' und Argwohn lauscht in allen Ecken.—S. Treachery and suspicion lurk (s) in every corner.

Auf blut'ge Schlachten folgt Gesang' und Tanz.—S. Upon (the) bloody battles follow (s) song and dance.

Furcht und Zittern ist mir angekommen.—Pa. 55, 6. Fearfulness and trembling are (is) come upon me.

e. With collective nouns, except those used as numerals, the verb is usually in the singular :

Was sagt das Volk?—S. Why do (does) the people despair?

f. With words in the singular, used as titles of respect, the verb is usually in the plural :

Eure Königl. Hoheit verlassen es nicht heiterer.—S. Your royal Highness leaves (leave) it not more joyful.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Was hatte der Alte nöthig?

What did the old man need?

Wer hatte die Brustnadel?

Who had the breast-pin?

Hatte Ihr Freund sie gehabt?

Had your friend had it?

Wer hat das Löschpapier gehabt?

Who has had the blotting-paper?

Wann werden Sie die Obla'ten und das Preßsack haben?

When shall you have the wafers and stamp?

Ich habe gern einen großen Ofen.

I like a large stove.

Der Glückliche, der Bequ'gliche hat gut Leben.—S.

The fortunate, the comfortable (person) may well talk.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Angel, —, pl. —n, the angle (fishing-tackle);

Bald, soon;

Die Blatter, —, pl. —n, the small-pox;

Die Bohne, —, pl. —n, the bean;

Die Brustnadel, —, pl. —n, breast-pin;

Das Dienstmädchen, —s, pl. —, the servant-girl;

Die Erbse, —, pl. —n, the pea;

Die Gerste, —, the barley;

Gestern, yesterday;

Der Hafer, —s, the oats, L. xxvi 10;

Der Kahn, —s, pl. Kähne, the boat;

Das Löschpapier, —s, pl. —t, the blotting-paper;

Die Masern, —, pl. —, the measles;

Die Obla'te, —, pl. —n, the wafer;

Der Roggen, —s, the rye;

Der Sack, —s, pl. Säcke, the bag;

Das Scharlachfieber, —s, pl. —, the scarlet-fever;

Die Schaufel, —, pl. —n, the shovel

Das Preßsack, —s, pl. —t, the seal; Uebermorgen, day after to-morrow;

Das Vaterland, —s, pl. —t, —länder, the native country;

Der oder die Verwandte, —n, pl. —n, the relative, relation;

Der oder die Waise, —n, —, pl. —n, the orphan.

EXERCISE 68.

Aufgabe 68.

1. Was hatte der Bauer in den großen Säcken? 2. Er hatte Bohnen, Gerste, Hafer und Roggen darin. 3. Wer hat meinen Kahn und meine Angel gehabt? 4. Der alte Fischer hatte sie gestern, und ich habe sie heute gehabt. 5. Wann hatte dieses Kind die Blattern? 6. Es hat die Masern gehabt, aber nicht die Blattern. 7. Haben diese Baijzen keine Verwandten gehabt? 8. Sie haben Verwandten in ihrem Vaterlande gehabt, und werden bald hier Freunde haben. 9. Wann werden Sie die Oblaten, das Petchaft und das Löschpapier haben? 10. Ich werde sie morgen oder übermorgen haben. 11. Jene Kinder haben den Besen und die Schaufel des Dienstmädchens gehabt. 12. Wie lange hatten Sie die Brustnadel gehabt? 13. Ich hatte sie nicht lange gehabt. 14. Haben Sie je das Schwarzlackfieber gehabt? 15. Nein, ich habe es nie gehabt. 16. Habe ich recht oder unrecht? 17. Sie haben unrecht, und er hat recht. 18. Ich habe gern ein warmes Zimmer.

EXERCISE 69.

Aufgabe 69.

1. Had the miller the barley, the oats and the peas? 2. The miller had the wheat and the rye, and the peasant had the oats, the peas and the beans. 3. Have the children had the servant-girl's shovel and broom? 4. How soon shall you have the wafers, the seal and the blotting-paper? 5. I shall have them to-day or to-morrow. 6. These orphans have relatives in their native country, but have had none in this. 7. Did you have my boat and my angle yesterday? 8. No, but I have had them to-day, and shall have them the day after to-morrow. 9. How long will the boy have this hat? 10. He will not have it long. 11. What has the miller had in those large bags? 12. He has had wheat and flour in them. 13. My brother has had the measles. 14. Have you had the scarlet-fever? 15. Has that man had the small-pox? 16. When will the child have a new breast-pin? 17. Who likes a warm room? 18. Who has had my blotting-paper?

LESSON XXXVII.

Section XXXVII.

CONJUGATION OF *Lieben*.

INFINITIVE.

Present.

leben, to love.

Perfect.

geliebt haben, to have loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

liebend, loving.

Perfect.

geliebt, loved.

INDICATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

PRESENT TENSE.

ich liebe, I love;

wir lieben, we love;

du liebst, thou lovest;

ihr liebet, you love;

er liebt, he loves;

sie lieben, they love.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich liebte, I loved;

wir liebten, we loved;

du liebtest, thou lovedst;

ihr liebtet, you loved;

er liebte, he loved;

sie liebten, they loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

ich habe geliebt, I have loved;

wir haben geliebt, we have loved;

du hast geliebt, thou hast lov'd. *ihr habt geliebt*, you have lov'd.

er hat geliebt, he has loved; *sie haben geliebt*, they have lov'd.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich hatte geliebt, I had loved;

wir hatten geliebt, we had loved;

du hättest geliebt, thou hadst lov'd. *ihr hättet geliebt*, you had lov'd.

er hatte geliebt, he had loved; *sie hatten geliebt*, they had lov'd.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde lieben, I shall love;

wir werden lieben, we shall love;

du wirst lieben, thou wilt love; *ihr werdet lieben*, you will love;

er wird lieben, he will love; *sie werden lieben*, they will love.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde } *geliebt* } I shall
du wirst } *haben* } thou wilt
er wird } } he will

} *haben* }
 loved;

wir werden } *geliebt* } we shall
ihr werdet } *haben* } you will
sie werden } } they will

} *haben* }
 loved.

IMPERATIVE.

liebe (du), love (thou); *liebet* or *liebt* (ihr), love (ye or you)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

1 The present participle is formed by suffixing *end* to the root :

hoff-end, hoping; *hör*-end, hearing; *mach*-end, making;
leb-end, living; *lieb*-end, loving; *lob*-end, praising.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

2. The perfect participle is formed by suffixing *t* to the root, and prefixing, to verbs that have the accent in the first syllable, the augment *ge* :

ge-hoff-t, hoped; *ge-hör*-t, heard; *ge-mach*-t, made;
ge-leb-t, lived; *ge-lieb*-t, loved; *ge-lob*-t, praised;
studir-t, studied; *verlauf*-t, sold; *bestraf*-t, punished.

3. Verbs compounded with the particles *be*, *em*, *ent*, etc., (§ 94. and 95.) do not take the *augment ge*; hence those compounded with the *particle ge* have the same form for the perfect participle as the simple verb; thus, *gehört* is the participle of *hören* and *gehören*; *gelobt* of *loben* and *geloben*, etc. :

Er hat mich gehört’.

He has heard me.

Es hat mir gehört’.

It has belonged to me.

INFLECTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

4. Participles are often used as adjectives, and are then subject to the same declension :

Ein geliebt-er Sohn trübt oft seine liebende n Eltern. A loved son often grieves his loving parents.

Wo das Geliebt-e wohnt, da ist unser Herz.—d. Where the loved (object) dwells, there is one’s (our) heart.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

5. The first person singular adds *e*, the second *st*, and the third *t* to the root :

*First Person.**Second Person.**Third Person.*

ich lob-e, I praise; *du lob-st*, thou praisest; *er lob-t*, he praises;
ich studir-e, I study; *du studir-st*, thou studiest; *er studir-t*, he studies.

Plural.

6. The first and third persons add *en*, and the second adds *t* to the root :

wir lob-en, we praise; *ihr lob-t*, you praise; *sie lob-en*, they praise;
wir studir-en, we study; *ihr studir-t*, you study; *sie studir-en*, they study.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

7. The first and third persons singular of the imperfect add *te*, and the second *test* to the root :

ich lob-te, I praised; *du lob-test*, thou praisedst; *er lob-te*, he praised;
ich studir-te, I studied; *du studir-test*, thou studiedst; *er studir-te*, he studied.

Plural.

8. The first and third persons plural of the imperfect add *ten*, and the second *tet*:

wir lob-ten, we praised; *ihr lob-tet*, you praised; *sie lob-ten*, they, etc.
wir studir-ten, we studied; *ihr studir-tet*, you studied; *sie studir-ten*, they, etc.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES.

9. The perfect and pluperfect tenses are formed by combining the perfect participle with the present and imperfect tenses of *haben* (or *sein* L. XLVIII.) :

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Was haben Sie gelernt?</i> | What have you learned? |
| <i>Wem hat der Mann gelobt?</i> | Whom has the man praised? |
| <i>Warum hatte er geweint?</i> | Why had he wept? |

FUTURE TENSES.

10. The first and second futures are formed by combining the present and perfect infinitive with the present indicative of the auxiliary *werden* (L. XLVI.) :

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Was werden Sie kaufen?</i> | What shall you buy? |
| <i>Was wird sie kaufen?</i> | What will she buy? |
| <i>Was wird er gehört haben?</i> | What will he have heard? |

ORTHOGRAPHIC AND EUPHONIC CHANGES.

11. Where the roots end in *d* or *t*, an *e* is inserted between it and the inflectional endings, which begin with *f* or *t*. Thus, also, *e* is sometimes inserted after other final root letters :

Present. bild-*est*; for bild-*st*; wart-*et*, for wart-*t*;
Imperfect. bild-*ete*, for bild-*te*; wart-*ete*, for wart-*te*;
Participle. gebild-*et*, for gebild-*t*; gewart-*et*, for gewart-*t*.
 lobest, lobet, lobete, gelobet, etc., see 2. 5. 6. etc.

12. Verbs whose roots end in *el* or *er* drop the *e* in the first person singular of the present tense, as also the *e* of the termination in the infinitive and present participle :

bettel-*n* for bettel-*en*; zitt-*re* for zitt-*ere*;
 bettel-*nd* for bettel-*end*; zitter-*nd* for zitter-*end*.

13. The imperative adds, in the singular, *e*, and in the plural *t*:
 Sage mir, was denkst du von dem Eid? Tell me, what thinkest thou of the
 See L. IX. 3. oath!
 Braucht euer Ansehn.—*S.* Use your authority.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Schöneres ist nichts in der Welt, als Nothing in the world is more beau-
 Neigung durch Vernunft' und Ge- tiful than inclination guided by
 wissen geleitet.—*G.* reason and conscience.
 Gehen Sie nun, und urtheilen Sie Go now, and in future judge less
 künftighin weniger vorschnell von der rashly (precipitately) of justice
 Gerechtigkeit in Vene'dig.—*S.* in Venice.
 Fromme Ehrfurcht schaffte mir mein My misfortune procured for me
 Unglück, wo ich wandernd kloppte. pious reverence wherever wan-
 —*S.* dering I rapped.
 Ihr habt's gehört'. Recht und Ge- You have heard it. Right and jus-
 rechtigkeit erwartet nicht vom Kai- tice do not expect from the em-
 ser.—*S.* peror.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Die Ankunft, —, the arrival; | Der Künstler, —s, pl. —, the artist; |
| Der Atlas, —sse, pl. —sse, the satin; | Die Landschaft, —, pl. —en, the land- scape; |
| Bedecken, to cover; | Die Nachricht, —, pl. —en, the news; |
| Berühmt, celebrated; | Der Schauspieler, —s, pl. —, the actor |
| Das Bier, —e, pl. —e, the beer; | Die Wolke, pl. —n, the cloud; |
| Der Brauer, —s, pl. —, the brewer; | Zeichnen, to draw, delineate; |
| Färben, to color; | Ziehen, to draw, pull, p. 358. |
| Die Geige, —e, pl. —n, the violin; | |

EXERCISE 70.

Aufgabe 70.

1. Wer kaufte die Pferde und den Wagen des Schauspielers? 2. Niemand hat sie gekauft, er hat sie nicht verkauft. 3. Was hörten Sie gestern in der Stadt? 4. Ich hörte nichts Neues. 5. Was hat der Brauer gekauft? 6. Er hat die Gerste gekauft, und das Bier verkauft. 7. Er wird die Nachricht gehört haben vor Ihrer Ankunft. 8. Der Maler hat mir eine schöne Landschaft gezeichnet. 9. Der alte Spieler hat auf der Geige gespielt, aber die Kinder haben ihn nicht gehört. 10. Wann werden Sie die Nägel aus diesem Brettle ziehen? 11. Die Pferde ziehen den Wagen, der Künstler zeichnet die Pferde. 12. Der Fleischer hat die Ochsen geschlachtet. 13. Die Sonne hat sich mit Wolken bedeckt. 14. Der Färber hatte den Atlas grün gefärbt. 15. Hörten Sie was ich sagte? 16. Einer von uns hörte es, aber die andern hörten es nicht. 17. Wer hat dieses Eisen und diesen Stahl gehämmert? 18. Warum hat man (L. XIX.) uns gelobt? 19. Wen hat man getadelt? 20. Man hat Niemanden getadelt.

EXERCISE 71.

Aufgabe 71.

1. Your friend will have heard this news before my arrival. 2. Has the dyer colored the satin and the silk? 3. He has colored the satin, but not the silk. 4. The old player has bought a new violin. 5. The brewer has sold his beer, what has he bought? 6. Whose oxen has the butcher slaughtered? 7. How has the actor played? 8. From whom have you heard this favorable news? 9. I have heard no favorable news, but I have heard much unfavorable. 10. Has this artist drawn you a landscape? 11. He is drawing a landscape, and the child is drawing a little wagon. 12. Who has been praised? 13. No body has been praised, but somebody has been blamed. 14. The falling snow is white and soft. 15. What have you learned to-day? 16. Have you heard what the scholars said? 17. No, I have not heard it. 18. The peasants have sold their horses and bought oxen. 19. To whom have the horses belonged? 20. I have heard the celebrated Italian singer, whom have you heard?

LESSON XXXVIII.

Lektion XXXVIII.

ON THE USE OF THE TENSES.

PRESENT.

1. The present tense is used :

a. To denote what is transpiring at the time of speaking,
as also stating general truths :

Es reden und träumen die Menschen viel. Men (mankind) speak and dream
von besseren künftigen Tagen.—S. much of better future days.
Wenn euer Gewissen rein ist, so seid If your conscience is clear, (then)
ihr frei.—S. you are free.

PRESENT RENDERED BY THE PERFECT.

b. To indicate a time that an unfinished action has continued,
in which use the verb is frequently accompanied by the adverb
schon, generally not requiring translation ; or by the preposition
seit, which may be rendered by *for*, or entirely omitted. In this
use the German present is rendered by the English perfect :

Er ist herein seit mehreren Stunden. He has been here for (since) several
—S. hours.
Schon in den sechsten Mond liegt er im He has lain (he lies) nearly six
Thurm.—S. months in the tower.

THE PRESENT FOR THE FUTURE.

c. To denote a future action, or to indicate the willingness
or ability of the subject :

Wer weiß, wer morgen über uns be- Who knows who will command us
fehlen?—S. to-morrow?
Ich werde nicht gegen dich, wenn ich's I will not fight against you, if I
vermeiden kann.—S. can avoid it.
Wer beschreibt die Schmerzen eines Who can describe the sorrows of
verkannten, von allen Seiten zurück- a misapprehended, philanthropic
gestoßenen menschenfreundlichen Ver- heart, repelled (thrust back) on
gens?—S. every side?

d. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE FOR THE IMPERATIVE.

Sie schweigt bis man zu ihr aufruft.—S. Be silent till you are summoned.

IMPERFECT.

2. The imperfect corresponds mainly to the same tense in

English, § 138. Frequently, however, it refers to an action performed at an indefinite past time, and is best rendered by the English perfect :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Tapfer ist der Weltbezwinger, | Brave is the conqueror of the world, |
| Tapferer mer sich selbst bezwang.—S. | braver (he) who (has) conquered himself. |
| Wer nennt das Glück noch falsch? mir | Who still calls fortune false! it has |
| war es treu.—S. | been (was) true to me. |

PERFECT.

3. The perfect is used as in English; and also in reference to a period of time fully passed, in which latter use it is rendered by the English imperfect :

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| Ich habe es gestern ge- | I heard it yesterday. | (I have it yesterday |
| hört'. | | heard.) |
| Er hat uns vergan'gene | He visited us last week. | (He has us last week |
| Wochē besucht'. | | visited.) |

FUTURE TENSES.

4. The future tenses, besides answering to the corresponding English ones, often indicate a probability. Thus used the first future is rendered by the *present*, and the second by the *imperfect* or *perfect* with an appropriate adverb :

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Ich höre Jemand kommen; es wird der | I hear somebody coming (come); it |
| Wirth sein.—L. | is probably the host (landlord). |
| Du wirst diese Nachricht schon gehört' | You have doubtless already heard |
| haben. | this news. |

IMPERATIVE.

5. Du and Ihr, as subject of the imperative are usually omitted; other pronouns are expressed :

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Bringe mir deine Bücher. | } Bring me your books. See Lesson XXVII. 2. 3. 5. |
| Bringt mir eure Bücher. | |
| Bringen Sie mir Ihre Bücher. | |

6. Although sentences in which Sie is the subject, have, for both the interrogative and imperative, the same form, yet they are as readily distinguished by the inflections of the voice in speaking, as by the mark of interrogation in writing :

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Vergessen Sie jenen Namen. | Forget that name. |
|----------------------------|-------------------|

Vergeß en Sie jenen Namen?
Glauben Sie nicht was er sagt.
Glauben Sie nicht was er sagt?

Do you forget that name?
Do not believe what he says.
Do you not believe what he says!

7. Where in English an auxiliary stands as the substitute of a previously expressed verb, the Germans either repeat the verb entire, or wholly omit it:

| | |
|---|---|
| Sie kennen ihn, ich nicht; <i>or</i> | You know him, I (do) not; <i>or</i> |
| Sie kennen ihn, ich kenne ihn nicht. | You know him, I do not know him. |
| Er hat das Buch gele'sen, ich nicht; <i>or</i> | He has read the book, I (have) not; <i>or</i> |
| Er hat das Buch gele'sen, ich habe es nicht gele'sen. | He has read the book, I have not read it. |
| Ich sehe ihn nicht, Sie? | I do not see him, (do) you? |
| Ich habe ihn nicht gese'hen, hat er ihn gese'hen? | I have not seen him, has he (seen him)? |
| Er denkt nicht wie ich. | He does not think as I (do). |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Du kennst ihn erst seit heut. Ich aber | You have known him only to-day. |
| lebe schon zehn Jahre unter seinen | But I have lived (already) ten |
| Augen.—S. | years under his eye (eyes). |
| Seit wann bist du so vorsichtig?—L. | How long have you been so provident? |
| Aber lange schon kommt er nicht mehr | But for a long time he has not come |
| die Palmen zu besu'chen, die unser | to visit the palm-trees, that over- |
| Aufgestandenen Grab umschat'ten.— | shadow the tomb of our risen |
| L. | one. |
| Das Licht der Sonne schaut er niemals | The light of the sun he will never |
| wieder.—S. | behold again. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Acht, eight; | Hundert, hundred; |
| Achtzehn, eighteen; | Kennen, to know, p. 350; |
| Der Bote, -n, pl. -n, the messenger; | Das Leiden, -s, pl. -, affliction. |
| Dreißig, thirty; | Mehrere, several; |
| Das Ende, -s, pl. -n, the end; | Seit, since, for; |
| Der Feldwebel, -s, pl. -, sergeant; | Die Sprache, -, pl. -n, language; |
| Fühlen, to feel; | Die Straße, -, pl. -n, the street; |
| Fünfzehn, fifteen; | Der Tröster, -s, pl. -, the comforter. |
| Das Gasthaus, -es, pl. -häuser, hotel; | Die Trösterin, -, pl. -nen, (see L. |
| Der Hauptmann, -es, pl. -männer or | XXIII. 5.); |
| -leute, the captain; | Um, at; |
| Die Hoffnung, -, pl. -en, the hope; | Unwohl, unwell. |

EXERCISE 72.

Aufgabe 72.

1. Wie lange wohnt der Hauptmann in diesem Hause? 2. Er wohnt schon länger als acht Jahre darin. 3. Wie lange ist der Feldwebel in der Stadt? 4. Er ist seit fünfzehn Tagen hier. 5. Ich fühle mich (L. 29. 9.) seit mehreren Tagen sehr unwohl. 6. Um welche Zeit sehen wir Sie morgen? 7. Wir kommen morgen Abend zu Ihnen, wo finden wir Sie? 8. Sie finden uns in dem Gasthaus am Ende dieser Straße. 9. Wie lange kennen Sie den alten Mann? 10. Ich kenne ihn seit dem Jahre achtzehnhundert ein und dreißig. 11. Wen haben Sie gestern besucht? 12. Ich habe gestern Niemanden besucht. 13. Der Bote weiß wo Sie wohnen, ich nicht. 14. Dieser Schüler hat Zeit gehabt seine Aufgabe zu lernen, der andere nicht. 15. Sprechen Sie lauter, ich verstehe Sie nicht. 16. Sprechen Sie diese Sprache besser als Ihr Bruder? 17. Nein, er spricht viel besser als ich. 18. Gehen Sie, schreiben Sie Ihre Aufgabe. 19. O Hoffnung, süße Trösterin im Leiden! (L. XLII. 1. a.)

EXERCISE 73.

Aufgabe 73.

1. How long have your friends been in this city? 2. They have been here for more than eight days. 3. My brothers have visited our friends, I have not. 4. You know those people, we do not. 5. Your brother knows them, does he not? (L. XXI. 5.) 6. How long has this man been in this hotel? 7. He has been several years in it. 8. This child has for several days felt unwell, it is now very sick. 9. Where will we find you to-morrow? 10. You will find me in the new house of our neighbor. 11. At what time do you go to the city? 12. I go to-morrow evening. 13. I have lived since the year eighteen hundred and thirty-eight in this house. 14. Who lives in the large house at the end of the street? 15. I do not know to whom it belongs. 16. How long have you known these people? 17. I have known them for more than fifteen years. 18. You have known them longer than I have.

LESSON XXXIX.

Lesson XXXIX.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The relative pronouns are *welcher, welche, welches, der, die, das*, and the indeclinable (and nearly obsolete) *so* :

Ein Mensch, welcher stiehlt, ist ein Dieb. A man who steals is a thief.

Der Mann, den (or welchen) Sie lieben, ist mein Freund. The man that (whom) you are loving is my friend.

Dies ist das Wort, das zu Jeremi'a geschah' an alle Juden, so in Aegyptenland wohnten.—Jer. xlv. 1. (This is) the word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the Jews that dwell in the land of Egypt.

Man lernt Verschwiegenheit am meisten unter Menschen, die keine haben.—R. One learns discretion (the art of keeping silence) the best among those who have none.

2. DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE *Der*.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> | |
|----|------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>All Genders.</i> |
| N. | <i>der,</i> | <i>die,</i> | <i>das,</i> | <i>die, who, which, that;</i> |
| G. | <i>dessen,</i> | <i>deren,</i> | <i>dessen,</i> | <i>deren, whose, of which, that;</i> |
| D. | <i>dem,</i> | <i>der,</i> | <i>dem,</i> | <i>denen, to or for whom, which;</i> |
| A. | <i>den,</i> | <i>die,</i> | <i>das,</i> | <i>die, whom, which, that.</i> |

The relative *welcher* is declined like the interrogative *welcher* (see list L. X. 4).

3. The genitive of *welcher* is used when the relative is immediately followed by the noun to which it refers; otherwise the genitive of *der* is preferred :

** Schiller, welches großen Schriftstellers Werke die Welt bewundert, war der Liebling des deutschen Volkes.** Schiller, *whose* great writer's works the world admires, was the favorite of the German people.

Der Mann, dessen (not welches) Buch Sie haben, ist ein Deutscher. The man *whose* book you have is a German.

Die Frau, deren (not welcher) Stimme man so bewundert, ist eine Italiänerin. The lady *whose* voice is so admired is an Italian.

4. *Welcher, welche, or welches* is sometimes used in the signification of *some, any*, as a substitute for a previously expressed noun :

Ich habe wieder Geld, brauchen Sie I have (some) money again, do you need some (any)!

Some or any, before nouns, is only rendered in German, when it signifies *a few, a little*, and in this sense it usually answers to *etwiger, etlicher, or etwas*:

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Haben Sie etwas Wein?</i> | <i>Have you any (some) wine?</i> |
| <i>Bringe mir einige Äpfel.</i> | <i>Bring me some (a few) apples.</i> |
| <i>Er will einige Pferde kaufen.</i> | <i>He wishes to buy some (a few) horses.</i> |
| <i>Ich habe einige Stahlfedern, brauchen Sie welche?</i> | <i>I have some (a few) steel pens, do you need some (any)?</i> |
| <i>Ich habe auch welche, aber mein Freund hat keine.</i> | <i>I have some too, but my friend has none.</i> |

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES CONNECTED WITH THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

5. When the members of a sentence are connected by a relative pronoun, the verb is placed *last*; and the auxiliary, when used, follows the main verb;

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Ich lob e den Mann, den I praise the man whom</i> | |
| <i>Sie lob e n.</i> | <i>you praise.</i> |
| <i>Ich lob e den Mann, der I praise the man who I praise the man who</i> | |
| <i>mich lob t.</i> | <i>praises me. me praises.</i> |
| <i>Nicht Alle sind zufried'en, Not all are contented Not all are contented</i> | |
| <i>die reich sind.</i> | <i>who are rich. who rich are.</i> |
| <i>Er hat das Buch, das ich He has the book that I He has the book that I</i> | |
| <i>gehabt' hab e.</i> | <i>have had. had have.</i> |
| <i>Sie wohnen in dem Hause They live in the house They live in the house</i> | |
| <i>in welchem wir wohnen werden.</i> | <i>in which we shall in which we live shall.</i> |

6. Besides the relative pronoun, there are many connecting words which require the same construction (List I. 53.) :

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Er ist heute,</i> | <i>wo</i> | <i>er gestern war.</i> |
| <i>Er war gestern,</i> | <i>wo</i> | <i>er heute ist.</i> |
| <i>Sie sind unzufrieden,</i> | <i>weil</i> | <i>sie arm sind.</i> |
| <i>Sie sind unzufrieden,</i> | <i>obgleich</i> | <i>sie reich sind.</i> |
| <i>Sie hat mehr gesagt</i> | <i>als</i> | <i>er gehört' hat.</i> |
| <i>Er hat weniger gehört',</i> | <i>als</i> | <i>sie gesagt' hat.</i> |
| <i>Sie werden kommen,</i> | <i>wenn</i> | <i>sie Zeit haben.</i> |
| <i>Der Bote wartete,</i> | <i>bis</i> | <i>er es hörte.</i> |

EXAMPLES OF PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Principal Sentence.

Nicht Alle sind zufried'en,
 Diejenigen sind nicht weise,
 Die Leute sind heute hier,
 Sehermann macht sich lächerlich,

Subordinate Sentence.

welche reich sind.
 welche nichts lernen.
 die gestern hier waren.
 der sich selbst lobt.

7. A relative clause, as in English, may be placed between the subject and predicate of the principal sentence, without changing the construction of the latter :

*Subject of the principal Sentence.**Relative Clause.**Predicate of the principal Sentence.*

| | | |
|-------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Nicht Alle, | die reich sind, | sind zufried'en. |
| Nicht Alle, | die zufried'en sind, | sind reich. |
| Diejenigen, | welche nichts lernen, | sind nicht weise. |
| Jedermann, | der sich selbst lobt, | macht sich lächerlich. |
| Die Leute, | die gestern da waren, | sind heute hier. |
| Die Leute, | die heute hier sind, | waren gestern da. |

EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF WORDS EMPLOYED AS INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE.

*Interrogative Sentences.**Relative Sentences*

| | |
|--|--|
| Wer hat das Buch gehabt? | Ich weiß, wer das Buch gehabt hat. |
| Was haben Sie gehört? | Sie wissen, was ich gehört habe. |
| Wann werden Sie gehen? | Ich weiß nicht, wann sie gehen werden. |
| Wo wohnen die Schüler? | Sie wohnen noch, wo sie gewohnt haben. |
| Warum hatte man den Soldat'en be- straft? | Wir hörten nicht, warum man ihn be- straft hatte. |
| Wie hatte der Schüler seine Aufgaben gelernt? | Man sagte uns nicht, wie er sie gelernt hatte. |

*Beispiele.**EXAMPLES.*

| | |
|--|---|
| Es gewährt die Liebe gar oft ein schäd- lich Gut, wenn sie den Willen des Fordernden mehr als sein Glück be- denkt'.—G. | Love very often grants an injurious possession, when it considers the wish rather than the happiness of the asker. |
| Manches Gute schadet uns, weil wir es mißbrauchen. | Many a good thing injures us, be- cause we misuse it. |
| Heilig ist das Gesetz, so dem Künstler Schönheit gebietet'.—R. | Holy is the law that enjoins beauty upon the artist |

Was ist unschuldig, heilig, menschlich, What is innocent, holy, humane,
gut, wenn es der Kampf nicht ist ums good, if the contest for the father-
Vaterland?—S. land is not so?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Der Bedient'e, -n, pl. -n, servant; | Kurz, short; |
| Bestel'len, to order | Der Meister, -s, pl. -, the master; |
| Eng, narrow; | Siegen, to conquer; |
| Erzählen, to tell, relate; | Der Stiefel, -s, pl. -, -n, the boot; |
| Frech, impudent, bold. | Die Übung, -, pl. -en, the exercist, |
| Die Geschich'te, -t, pl. -n, the story; | the practice; |
| Das Geschöpf, -es, pl. -e, creature; | Unwahrscheinlich, improbable; |
| Gesund, healthy; | Verzweifeln, to despair; |
| Die Hofsicht, pl. -en, the respect; | Weil, because; |
| Höchst, extremely; | Zweifeln, to doubt |
| Hoffen, to hope; | |

EXERCISE 74.

Aufgabe 74.

1. Glauben Sie die Geschichte, die der Meister uns erzählt hat?
2. Ich weiß nicht von welcher Sie sprechen, er hat uns mehrere erzählt. 3. Die Stiefel, die er gekauft hat, sind ihm zu eng und zu kurz. 4. Leute, welche zweifeln, verzweifeln; aber die Hoffenden stehen. 5. Was Sie in der Stadt gehört haben, ist höchst unwahrscheinlich. 6. Er wird die Nachricht gehört haben, ehe wir ihn sehen. 7. Hier ist der Wagen, den Ihr Bediente bestellt hat. 8. Der Mann, in dessen Hause wir gewohnt haben, ist sehr frech. 9. Ich habe zwei Äpfel, und er hat deren drei. 10. Die Bleistifte, mit denen Sie schreiben, gehören dem Knaben, dessen Bücher ich habe. 11. Ein gesunder Mensch, der nie fleißig arbeitet, ist, in jeder Hinsicht, ein elendes Geschöpf. 12. Die Frau, deren Sohn Ihren Tisch gemacht hat, ist unsere Nachbarin. 13. Die Schüler, denen diese Federn gehören, lernen nicht viel, weil sie nicht fleißig ihre Übungen lesen. 14. Wissen Sie, wer die Pferde setzt hat, die ich gestern gehabt habe? 15. Ich weiß nicht, welche Pferde Sie gestern gehabt haben. 16. Diese Aufgabe ist die schwerste, die ich gelernt habe.

EXERCISE 75.

Aufgabe 75.

1. Where is the servant that has ordered these horses? 2. I do not know who has ordered them. 3. Are the shoes that the boy has made too narrow? 4. The boots that he has made

are too short. 5. Why do you not believe the story that they told us? 6. I do not believe it because he has told me other stories that are not true. 7. Not every man who is industrious is in every respect a good man. 8. Not all stories are untrue which are improbable. 9. Not all despair who doubt; not all conquer who hope. 10. Is a wise man ever unhappy because he is poor? 11. Is every healthy man discontented who is not industrious? 12. Do you know where the man lives whose house we have bought? 13. I know where he has lived, and I have a friend who knows where he now lives. 14. Have you my pens? 15. Yes, I have three of them. 16. The lady whose books we have had is a sister of the scholars with whose pens we are writing. 17. Do you find these exercises more difficult than the others that you have learned?

LESSON XL.

Section XL.

Wer AND Was AS RELATIVE.

1. *Wer* is used with the force of an antecedent and relative, or may be followed by the demonstrative pronoun *der*, (L. XLIV.) in a succeeding clause:

Wer sich nicht selbst befehlt', bleibt (He) who governs not himself remains always a slave.—G.

Wer nicht hören will, der muß fühlen. He who will not hear must feel.

2. *Wer* sometimes occurs in the signification of *Jemand*:

Ließ auch die ew'ge Pforte wen zurück, Even if the eternal portal should let any one return, he would keep silence.—A. B. S.

3. *Was*, like *what*, is used with the signification of an antecedent and relative; it also stands as a simple relative after a neuter antecedent which does not refer to a previously expressed noun:

Doppelt giebt, wer gleich giebt
Was man wünscht und liebt.—G.

He who gives immediately *what* one wishes and loves, gives twofold.

Was du heute thun kannst, das ver- *Was* thou canst do to-day defer
schie'be nicht auf morgen. not until to-morrow.

Alles, was ich höre, sind Stimmen der Freude und des Dankes.—Geg.
 Alles, was ist und geschieht, gehört zu einem Plan, von dem wir nichts verstehen.
 All that I hear are voices of joy and thankfulness.
 Every thing that exists and occurs belongs to a plan of which we understand nothing.

4. For further illustration of the use of the pronominal adverbs, compare with the following examples, § 103. 1. 2 :

Nicht die Sprache an und für sich ist richtig tüchtig und zierlich, sondern der Geist ist es, der sich darin verkörpert.—G.
 Was hat er Unrecht?
 Not (L. XLII. 1. a.) language in and of itself is correct, forcible and elegant, but it is the spirit that is embodied in it.
 In what (wherein) is he wrong!

5. When the antecedent is a pronoun of the first or second person, the verb agrees with the relative in the *third*; or the personal pronoun is repeated after the relative :

Was kann ich thun, der selber hilflos ist?
 Das wissen wir, die wir die Gemothen jagen.—S.
 What can I do, who myself am (is) helpless?
 That we know, who (we) hunt the chamois.

6. The relative sometimes precedes the word to which it refers, which *latter* is sometimes omitted :

Die es genossen haben, denen ist es theuer.—S.
 Die er gemeßet hat, mögen um ihn weinen.—S.
 Those who have enjoyed it, to them it is dear.
 (They) whom he has aggrandized may weep for him.

7. The relative can not, as sometimes in English, be omitted, but must always be expressed :

Ich schäme mich der Rolle, die ich spielte;
 Es ist der Abend des Lebens, der mir geheimnißvolles Wissen giebt.
 I shame me of the part (—) I played.—Scorr.
 It is the sunset of life (that) gives me mystical lore.

8. In subordinate sentences the copula (auxiliary verb) is frequently omitted :

Den Durst nach seiner Erkenntniß stillt gewiß, der uns mit diesem Durst erschaffen (hat).—K.
 Wenn du das große Spiel der Welt gesehen (hast), so kehrest du reicher zu dir selbst zurück.—S.
 The thirst after a knowledge of himself, He will certainly satisfy who (has) created us with this thirst.
 When thou hast seen the great game of the world (life), thou returnest richer to thyself.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ein fröhliches Volk thut Alles, was es zu thun hat, mit besserem Willen, als ein dummes oder schwermüthiges. —B. | A cheerful people does all that it has to do, with (a) better will than a stupid or a melancholy one. |
| Wer gut ist, findet Gutes im Leben und im Tod. —B. | He who is good finds good (things) in life and in death. |
| Die Widerwärtigkeiten sind für die Seele das, was ein Ungewitter für die Luft ist. | (The) disappointments are to (for) the soul what a thunder-storm is to (for) the air. |
| Wer nicht zuviel len zu viel und zu weich empfindet, der empfindet gewiß immer zu wenig. —R. | He who does not sometimes feel too much and too tenderly certainly always feels too little. |
| Spr, Ihr selbst seid es, die ihr euer eigenes Vaterland bestiehlt. —S | It is you, you yourselves who rob your own fatherland. |
| Gese'gnet sei, der dich erkannt' hat. —Ruth, II. 19. | Blessed be he that did take knowledge of thee. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Begraben, buried; | Die Macht, —, pl. Mächte, power; |
| Bestätigen, to confirm; | Das Sprichwort, —es, pl. —wörter, the adage; |
| Der Bundesgenoss, —en, pl. —en, the confederate, ally; | Suchen, to seek, look for; |
| Darin, in, into it, therein, § 103. 2.; | Der Tand, —es, the trash; |
| Erwar'ten, to expect; | Unrecht, wrong; |
| Gethan', done; | Vorgestern, day before yesterday; |
| Gewinn'en, to gain; p. 350. | Wagen, to venture; |
| Die Grube, —, pl. —n, the pit; | Walten, to act, rule; |
| Kränken, to grieve; | Worin', in what, wherein. |

EXERCISE 76.

Aufgabe 76.

1. Wer zweifelt, verzweifelt; wer hofft, hat gesiegt. —R.
2. Ein altes Sprichwort sagt, "Wer Andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt selber darin." 3. Alles, was man uns vorgestern in der Stadt von dem Kriege erzählte, hat sich bestätigt. 4. Wissen Sie, worin wir unrecht haben? 5. Du, der du so fleißig bist, wirst schnell lernen. 6. Du, die du so fleißig bist, wirst viel lernen. 7. Ihr, die ihr so fleißig seid, werdet viel lernen. 8. Sie, die sie so fleißig sind, werden viel lernen. 9. Wissen Sie, was für ein Buch und was für Papier ich gekauft habe? 10. Man glaubt leicht, was man hofft und wünscht. 11. Sie sind begraben Alle, mit denen ich gewaltet und geliebt habe

see 8).—*S.* 12. Wer nichts wagt, gewinnt nichts. 13. Nicht was er gesagt, sondern was er gethan, hat sie gekränkt. 14. Seine Macht war größer als seine Bundesgenossen erwartet, größer als sie gewünscht hatten. 15. Wer nichts als Geld sucht, steckt Tand.

EXERCISE 77.

Aufgabe 77.

1. Do you know what the children have told me? 2. I have heard all that they have said to you. 3. What has been said and done grieved the old man. 4. All that was told to our friends has been confirmed. 5. We do not know wherein the boys are wrong, do you? (*L. XXXVIII. 7.*) 6. They have learned less than we had wished and expected. 7. Do you know whom the scholars have been looking for? 8. Who steals my purse steals trash. 9. Not all gain who venture; do all venture who gain? 10. The power of the king was greater than he had expected, greater than his allies had wished. 11. What does the adage say of a man who digs others a pit? 12. Do you understand what I have told you, and do you know why I have told it to you? 13. The people I have been visiting are Americans. 14. Did you hear what the boys are speaking of? 15. Do you know whose pen he will write the letter with? 16. I have told you that I have heard.

LESSON XLI.

Section XLI.

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The determinative pronouns are *derjenige*, *dieser*, *nige*, *dasjenige*, (*der*, see 3.) *derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *das selbe* and *solcher*, *solche*, *solches*. *Solcher*, is declined like *dieser* (*L. X. 4.*); *der*, *die*, *dasjenige*; *der*, *die*, *dasselbe*, is declined like *der*, *die*, *das* *meinige*, *L. XXXV.*

2. *Derjenige* refers to something specified in a succeeding part of the sentence, and must be followed by a relative clause; *derjenige* may be rendered by *he*, *the one*, *that*, etc.

Derjenige, welcher nachlässig ist, lernt *He (the one) who is negligent does not learn rapidly.*

| | |
|--|--|
| Diejenige, welche nachlässig ist, lernt nicht schnell. | She (the one) who is negligent does not learn rapidly. |
| Dasjenige ist gut, was nützlich ist. | That is good which is useful. |
| Wir loben diejenigen, die wir lieben. | We praise those whom we love. |
| Diejenigen, die wir lieben, lieben uns. | Those whom we love, love us. |
| Die Bücher, welche (die) ich habe, sind besser als diejenigen, die er hat. | The books which I have are better than those which he has. |

3. For *derjenige* *der* is often substituted, in which signification, when used adjectively, it is inflected like the definite article. When supplying the place of a noun, it has the declension of the *relative der*, except that the genitive plural is *derer* instead of *derer*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Wie traurig ist das Loos derer, deren Freuden und Hoffnungen sich auf dieses Leben beschränken! | How sad is the lot of those whose joys and hopes are limited (limit themselves) to this life! |
| “Der Ruhm dessen (besjenigen), der lügt, dauert nicht lange.” | The glory of him (any one) who lies, does not endure long. |
| Ich bin nicht von denen (denjenigen), die mit Worten tapfer sind.—S. | I am not (one) of those who are valiant with words. |
| Die (diejenigen), die (welche) die Wahrheit nicht lieben, sind nicht gut. | Those who do not love the truth are not good. |
| Ich meine nicht dieses Buch, sondern das, welches das Kind hat. | I do not mean this book, but that (the one) that the child has. |

4. *Der selbe* answers in use and signification to *the same*:

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich habe denselben Mann gese‘hen, den er gese‘hen hat. | I have seen the same man that he has seen. |
| Wir beide lesen dieselben Bücher. | We both read the same books. |

SUBSTITUTION OF *Der selbe* FOR THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

Der selbe is substituted for the personal pronouns:

a. After prepositions when the pronoun refers to animate, or inanimate objects:

| | |
|---|--|
| Er hat meinen Bleistift und schreibt mit demselben (mit ihm). | He has my pencil and is writing with it (with the same). |
| Er schnitt den Apfel und gab mir einen Theil desselben. | He cut the apple and gave me a part of it (of the same). |

b. To avoid ambiguity or the repetition of a pronoun:

| | |
|---|--|
| Diese Leute sind unsere Nachbarn, kennen Sie dieselben? | These people are our neighbors, do you know them (the same)? |
| Er lobt den Knaben, weil derselbe seine Mutter ehrt. | He praises the boy because he (the same), honors his mother. |

Er liebt seinen Bruder, aber nicht die Kinder desselben. He loves his brother, but not *his* (brother's) children.

Er hat die Fehler eines großen Mannes, ohne die Verdienste desselben. He has the errors of a great man without *his* merits (the merits of one).

Sie schrieben ihren Kindern, dieselben müßten gleich abreißen. They wrote to their children that *they* must start immediately.

5. *Solcher* is frequently followed by a relative pronoun, which in this position is rendered by *as* :

Ich lese nur solche Bücher, die lehrreich sind. I read only such books as (which) are instructive.

6. When *solcher* marks similarity, rather than identity, it is followed by *wie* :

Haben Sie solche Tinte wie ich gekauft habe? Have you bought *such* ink as I have?

Ja, ich habe eben solche. Yes, I have just *such*.

Solche Schiffe, wie die, von denen Sie sprechen, sind unsicher. *Such* ships as (those that) you speak of are unsafe.

7. *Solcher* is sometimes omitted (from a sentence) and a personal pronoun introduced after the subject :

Eine Thräne (solche) wie die Unsterblichen sie weinen, trat in sein großes dunkles Auge.—R. A tear *such as* (the) immortals weep, entered his large, dark eye.

8. *Solcher*, when used with the indefinite article, follows it; when, however, the final syllable is dropped (*L. XV. 3.*) *solch-* precedes the article :

Ein solcher Auftrag schreckt mich nicht.—G. *Such* a mandate frightens me not.

Solch ein Wetter ist selten zu solcher Ernte gekommen.—G. *Such* weather has seldom come to *such* a harvest.

9. *Solcher* is sometimes used as a substitute for a demonstrative, or a personal pronoun :

Die Schnelligkeit mit der Solches ausgeführt war, ließ dem Feinde nicht Zeit, es zu verhindern.—S. The rapidity with which *this* (such) was executed, did not leave the foe time to prevent it.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Bist du nur dessen Freund, der glücklich ist? Nicht, den Elend stürzt?—R. Art thou the friend of him only who is happy? Not of him, whom adversity overthrows!

| | |
|---|--|
| Die Cohorten des Civilis schwören am Rhein dem Vespasian in Sy- rien.—S. | The cohorts of Civilis swear alle- giance on the Rhine to Vespasian in Syria. |
| Der Aberglaube ist das Schädlichste, was bei den Menschen einkommen kann. —G. | Superstition is the most injurious (thing) that can visit men. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| ie Armuth, —, the poverty; | Der Lohn, —es, pl. Löhne, reward; |
| Beſiegen, to conquer; | Mächtig, mighty, powerful; |
| Denken, to think, p. 346; | Der Mai, —es, the May; |
| Die Ewigkeit, —, the eternity; | Der März, —es, the March; |
| Die Faulheit, —, the idleness; | Der Markt, —es, pl. Märkte, market; |
| Der Franz, —ens, pl. -en, (the) Francis; | Die Muſik, —, the music; |
| Frei, free; | Das Pavia, —s, (the) Pavia; |
| Der Frühling, —s, pl. —e, the spring; | Das Pfund, —es, pl. —e, the pound; |
| Fünfte, fifth; | Schmücken, to adorn; |
| Der Gehülfe, —n, pl. —n, assistant; | Die Schule, —, pl. —n, the school; |
| Der Himmel, —s, pl. —, the heaven; | Der September, —s, the September; |
| Der Karl, —s, pl. —e, (the) Charles; | Die Stunde, —, pl. —n, the hour; |
| Kosten, to cost; | Die Türkei, —, (the) Turkey; |
| Die Leidenschaft, —, pl. —en, passion; | Die Unſchuld, —, the innocence |

EXERCISE 80.

Aufgabe 80.

1. Die Muſik iſt die Sprache der Leidenschaften.—W. 2. Die Unſchuld hat im Himmel einen Freund.—S. 3. Die Hoffnung iſt der treueſte Tröſter des Menſchen. 4. Die Armuth iſt oft der verdiente Lohn der Faulheit. 5. Der Freie liebt gewöhnlich den Frieden—aber fürchtet nicht den Krieg. 6. Der Bote wartet ſchon über eine halbe Stunde. 7. Es ſind jetzt viele Engländer und Franzoſen in der Türkei. 8. Der Mai iſt ein angenehmerer Monat als der März. 9. Die Kinder ſind in der Schule, der Vater und die Mutter in der Kirche und der Knecht auf dem Markte (L. 42. 1. f.). 10. Ein ſolcher Mann iſt ein zu ſchwacher Gehülfe. 11. Wie viel koſtet dieſer Thee das Pfund? 12. Warum hat er den Hut in der Hand und nicht auf dem Kopfe? 13. Der Kaiſer Karl der Fünfte beſiegte den König Franz den Erſten bei Pavia. 14. Die meiſten Menſchen arbeiten und leiſen genug, aber ſie denken viel zu wenig. 15. Weiſt du wo der Karl iſt? 16. Man machte den tapfern Feldwebel zum Hauptmann. 17. Zwiſſenmal hat jetzt ſchon der Frühling ſein Grab mit Blumen geſchmückt!

EXERCISE 81.

Aufgabe 81.

1. The English and French, who are now in Turkey, are the enemies of the Russians. 2. In what country is the city where the Emperor Charles the Fifth conquered King Francis the First? 3. Who calls music the language of the passions? 4. What sergeant was made a captain? 5. How much does this sugar cost a pound? 6. Did the messenger wait more than half an hour? 7. Why have they sent us so weak an assistant? 8. Hope is often man's only comforter. 9. The friend of innocence is more powerful than all its enemies. 10. Most men think and write too little. 11. Poverty is not always the result of idleness. 12. Why is the rose called the queen of flowers? 13. March is a cold, unpleasant month; is May a more agreeable month than September? 14. The free love peace, but they love liberty still more. 15. Life is short, death is certain, eternity is long, Heaven is just. 16. Why has the boy his hat in his hand?

LESSON XLIII.

Lection XLIII.

OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.

1. The article is omitted:

a. Before the names of the cardinal *points*, when direction toward, or from them is indicated:

Das eine Schiff segelte nach Osten, das andere nach Süden. (The) one ship sailed toward the east, the other toward the south.

b. Before nouns used in a general sense, as the predicate of *sein* or *werden*, and before those standing in apposition after *als*, with a previously or subsequently expressed word:

Der Schmetterling ist Sinnbild der Unsterblichkeit.—u. The butterfly is (the or an) emblem of immortality.

Einer meiner Brüder ist Kaufmann, der andere Arzt. One of my brothers is a merchant, the other a physician.

Als Freund kann ich es nicht raten. As a friend I can not advise it.

Das ist nicht Mode, nicht Sitte bei uns. That is not the fashion, not the custom with us (in our country).

c. In legal reports and instruments, as also in many phrases before *ersterer*, *lehterer*, *folgender* :

Ueberbrin'ger dieses ist ein Freund von mir (L. XXVIII. 3). The bearer of this is a friend of mine.

Beflag'ter behaup'tet daß, &c. The accused maintains that, etc.

U'ntersich'net verpflich'tet sich daß, &c. The undersigned pledges himself that, etc.

d. Before nouns preceded by *zu*, indicating the purpose or manner of an action :

Er reist *zu* Pferde. He travels *on* horseback.

Reisen Sie *zu* Land oder *zu* Wasser? Do you travel by land or by water?

Er saß noch *zu* Tisch. He was still sitting at table.

Die Kinder gehen *zu* Bett. The children are going to bed.

e. When two or more nouns joined by *und* denote a single idea :

Wir sind mit Herz und Seele die seinigen. We are his with heart and soul.

2. The omission of the article, as in English, often gives the noun an adverbial signification ; thus, *er geht nach Hause*, signifies, he is going *home* ; while, *er geht nach dem Hause*, signifies, he is going to *the* (specified) house. This difference is illustrated by the phrases ; to bed, to *the* bed ; at table, at *the* table ; etc. :

Um welche Zeit finden wir Sie *zu* Hause? At what time shall we find you *at home* ? (L. XXXVIII. 1. c.)

Wann gehen Sie *na* ch Hause? When do you go *home* ?

3. When the dative of a noun, used in a general sense, is preceded by a preposition, the article is often omitted ; frequently, however, when the preposition and the article can be contracted into one word, the article is retained :

Er ist ein Mann von Ehre. He is a man of honor.

Schicke sie zur Ruhe. Send her to rest.

Er war außer sich vor Schmerz. He was beside himself with pain.

Er sagte es im Borne. He said it in anger.

4. Before the substantively used infinitive (L. XLIX. 4.), under the government of a preposition, the article is often omitted, as also before the cardinals, *hundert*, *tausend*, etc. :

Mancher Mensch scheint nur an Essen und Trinken zu denken. Many a man seems to think only of eating and drinking.

Sie beschäfftigen sich mit Schreiben. They busy themselves with writing.
Hundert Stimmen riefen ihm nach. A hundred voices called after him.

5. The omission of the article was formerly more common than at present, and many phrases in which it occurs are still used :

Er richtete die Augen gen Himmel. He directed his eyes toward heaven.
Dieser entschlossene Ton machte Eindruck.—S. This determined tone made (an) impression.

6. With *zu*, before the dative without the article are formed many idiomatic phrases; as, *zu Grunde richten* (*lit.*, to direct or turn to the ground or bottom) to ruin; *zu Grunde gehen*, to perish; etc. :

Der russische Feldzug richtete die The Russian campaign ruined the
"Grande Armée" (wie man sie zu "Grand Army" (as it used to be
nennen pflegte) zu Grunde. called).
Bei dem russischen Feldzuge ging die In the Russian campaign the Grand
"Grande Armée" zu Grunde. Army was destroyed.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Wir segelten nach Norden und sie nach Westen. We sailed to the north, and they to the west.
In Deutschland ist es Sitte den Hut abzunehmen, wenn man Freunden begegnet. In Germany it is the custom to take off one's hat when one meets friends.
Mein Bruder ist zu Hause, und ich gehe nach Hause. My brother is at home, and I am going home.
Kunst ist die rechte Hand der Natur. Art is the right hand of Nature.
Diese hat nur Geschöpfe, jene den Menschen gemacht.—S. The latter has made only creatures, the former (has made) man.
Tausend warnende Beispiele sollten uns klug gemacht haben. A thousand warning examples ought to have made us prudent.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ähnlich, similar; | Das Pilsen, —s, (the) Pilsen; |
| Die Asche, —, ashes (L. XXVI. 10); | Die Reise, —, pl. —en, the journey, |
| Blutig, bloody; | Richten, see 6; |
| Die Christenheit, —, Christendom; | Die Schlacht, —, pl. —en, the battle; |
| Folgen, to follow; | Der Süden, —s, the South; |
| Ganz, whole; | Der Tanz, —es, pl. Tänze, the dance; |
| Der Gesang, —es, pl. Gefänge, song; | Trauern, to mourn; |
| Die Gesundheit, —, pl. —en, health; | Verlassen, to leave, p. 350; |
| Der Grund, —es, pl. Gründe, ground; | Wild, wild; |
| Der Norden, —s, the North; | Ziehen, ' , migrate, go, p. 358 |

EXERCISE 82.

Aufgabe 82.

1. In welcher Jahreszeit ziehen die wilden Gänse nach Norden?
 2. Wann ziehen sie nach Süden? 3. Um welche Zeit sind Sie morgen zu Hause? 4. Ich bin morgen den ganzen Tag zu Hause. 5. Warum geht der Knabe nicht nach Hause? 6. Er geht nicht nach Hause, weil er schon zu Hause ist. 7. Reisen zu Fuß sind oft angenehmer als Reisen zu Pferde oder zu Wagen. 8. Wir ziehen frech durch Feindes und Freundes Lande.—S. 9. Die Christenheit trauert in Sack und Asche.—S. 10. Ein Sprichwort sagt, "Übung macht den Meister." 11. Auf blutige Schlachten folgt Gefang und Tanz (L. 36. 5.). 12. Wir verlassen Pilsen noch vor Abend.—S. 13. Der Maler hat bei diesen und ähnlichen Arbeiten seine Gesundheit zu Grunde gerichtet.

EXERCISE 83.

Aufgabe 83.

1. Is your friend still at home? 2. No, but he will soon be at home. 3. At what time do the scholars go home? 4. They are already going home. 5. In what season of the year do the swallows migrate to the north? 6. These and similar labors have destroyed the health of this man. 7. Shall you leave the city before evening? 8. How do you say in German, "Practice makes perfect?" 9. We shall soon have cold weather, the wild geese are flying to the south. 10. The boys waited a whole day. 11. Did you make the journey on foot, or by water? 12. Have you not time to write your friends a letter? 13. At what time shall you be at home? 14. I am now at home, and my brother is coming home. 15. This is one of the hardest exercises we have had.



LESSON XLIV.

Lection XLIV.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Der, die, das, often supply, as demonstrative pronouns, the place of dieser and jener, and when used with nouns,

are distinguished from the article of like form, by a greater emphasis :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Ich lobe den Mann, nicht diesen. | I praise <i>that</i> man, not this one. |
| Ich lobe den Mann, nicht jenen. | I praise <i>this</i> man, not that one. |
| Das Buch habe ich schon gele'sen. | <i>This</i> book I have already read. |
| Wer ist der ?* | Who is <i>that</i> (or <i>this</i>) ? |

2. When the demonstrative *der* is used with a noun, it has the declension of the *definite* article ; used substantively, it follows the inflection of the *relative der* (L. 39. 2.) :

| | |
|---|---|
| Den Männern habe ich das Geld schon geschickt'. | To <i>those</i> men I have already sent the money. |
| Denen habe ich es schon geschickt'. | To <i>those</i> I have already sent it. |
| Jedermann wird euch loben, daß ihr denen (i. e. the rulers) von Nürnberg Gehb' angekündigt habt.—G. | Every body will praise you that you have declared war (send) against <i>those</i> of Nuremberg. |

3. The demonstrative *der* may often be best rendered by a personal pronoun ; its genitive, like that of the *relative der*, always precedes the governing noun :

| | |
|---|---|
| "Läßt euch der (that one) verfol'gen?" | Does <i>he</i> cause you to be pursued ? |
| "Der schadet nicht mehr, ich hab' ihn erschla'gen." | He will do (L. 38. 1. c.) no more harm, I have slain him. |
| Er liebt seinen Bruder, aber nicht dessen Kinder. | He loves his brother, but not his (that's) children. |
| "Wessen Brod du issest, dessen Lied bu singest." | Whose bread thou eatest, his song thou singest. |

4. *Der* is used before the genitive, as the substitute of a noun previously expressed, in which position it is rendered *that* before the objective with *of* ; or, frequently, the English possessive is used and its governing noun is not expressed :

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich habe meinen Ball und den des Knaben. | I have my ball and <i>that</i> of the boy. |
| Er hat seine Feder und die seiner Schwester. | He has his pen and <i>that</i> of his sister.† |

* When thus used, *der* is often made still more significant by a sign or gesture : Das (that at which I point) ist mein Buch, und das (that other one) ist seines, that is my book, and that (*yonder*) is his. *Der* ist es (L. 28. 8.), riefen Hundert Stimmen, der rettete die Königin, *he* is the one, eried (a) hundred voices, *he* rescued the queen.

† Or, I have my ball and the boy's (ball) ; or, he has his pen and his sister's (pen).

Sie haben Ihre Bücher und die Ihrer Brüder. You have your books and *those of* your brothers.

Haben Sie die Feder Ihrer Brüder, oder die der meinigen? Have you the pens of your brothers, or *those of mine*?

5. The genitives *dessen, deren* are often used (like the French *en*), as a substitute for a noun previously expressed, and are sometimes rendered by *some, any*, and sometimes do not require translation (L. 39. 4.) :

Er hat kein Geld mehr, aber ich habe. He has no longer any money, but *he still has some* (of it).

Ich habe keine Bücher, du hast deren I have no books; you have (of them) too many.

6. The old form of the genitive *deß* (for *dessen*, as also *wesß*, for *wessen*) is still retained in several compounds, in the more elevated styles of composition, and in some proverbial phrases :

Er ist deswegen mein Feind. He is therefore my enemy.

„Deß rühme der blut'ge Tyrann' sich nicht.“ Let not the bloody tyrant boast (himself) *of this*.

„Deß das Herz voll ist, deß läuft der Mund über.“ *Of what* the heart is full, *of that* the mouth runs over.

7. The neuter forms of the demonstrative pronouns (*dieses* being often contracted into *dies*), as also *welches* in conjunction with the verb *sein* (like the French *ce*), may refer to nouns of all genders, and in both numbers :

Dies sind unsere Freunde. These (this) are our friends.

Wer ist das? Who is that?

Welches sind die längsten Nächte? Which are the longest nights?

Sind das nicht Ungarn? Are not those Hungarians?

Nein, es sind Böhmern. (L. 28. 7.) No, they are Bohemians.

8. With the demonstrative and determinative pronouns the adverb *eben* is often used :

Er ist eben derselbe. He is the *very* same.

Eben dieses Haus. This *very* (this same) house.

Eben der und kein Anderer hat mich zu euch geschickt'. Just he (he himself) and nobody else has sent me to you.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Das sind die Folgen unglücksel'ger Thaten.—S. | Those are the results of unfortunate deeds. |
| Der Eine hat die, der Andere andere Gaben.—G. | The one has these, the other (has) other gifts. |
| „Dieses Buch ist mir lieb, wer es stiehlt, der ist ein Dieb.“ | This book is dear to me, who steals it (he) is a thief. |
| Wer solch' ein Herz an seinen Busen drückt, der kann für Herd und Hof mit Freuden sechten.—S. | Who presses to his bosom such a heart, can joyfully (with joy) fight for hearth and home |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Der Ärmel, -s, pl. -, the sleeve; | Das Siegel, -s, pl. -, the seal; |
| Die Arbeit, -, pl. -en, the work; | Das Siegellack, -es, pl. -e, the seal- |
| Der Europäer, -s, pl. -, European; | ing-wax; |
| Das Frankfurt, -s, (the) Frankfort; | Spanisch, Spanish; |
| Das Gemälde, -es, pl. -, painting; | Der Stall, -es, pl. Ställe, the stall, |
| Die Jacke, -, pl. -n, the jacket; | stable; |
| Der Kutscher, -s, pl. -, coachman; | Der Stempel, -s, pl. -, the stamp, |
| Der Officier, -s, pl. -e, the officer; | post-mark; |
| Part'ier, see L. 33. 7; | Die Tante, -, pl. -n, the aunt; |
| Der Richter, -s, pl. -, the judge; | Das Unkraut, -es, pl. -kräuter, weed; |
| Sammeln, to collect; | Die Wiese, -, pl. -n, the meadow; |
| Segeln, to sail; | Die Zeitung, -, pl. -en, news paper. |

EXERCISE 84.

Aufgabe 84.

1. Der ist mein Feind, aber dieser ist mein Freund. 2. Der Tisch des Lehrers ist größer als der des Schülers. 3. Schreiben Sie mit meinem Bleistifte, oder mit dem meines Bruders? 4. Ich habe den Ihren und auch den Ihres Bruders. 5. Ich schreibe mit meiner Feder, und er schreibt mit der seines Freundes. 6. Wohnen Sie in den Häusern der Bauern, oder in denen der Kaufleute? 7. Haben Sie die Zeitung Ihrer Tante, oder die der meinigen? 8. Wessen Pferd ist das in Ihrem Stalle, das Ihrige, oder das des Kutschers? 9. Es ist weder das meinige noch das seinige, sondern das des Wärtners. 10. Dies sind die Stiefel des Officiers, und das sind die seines Dieners. 11. Hast du deine Oblaten, oder die deines Bruders? 12. Ich habe mein Siegellack und das des Kaufmanns, (L. 9. 3.) mein Siegel und das des Wärtners. 13. Der Brief hat den Stempel von Frankfurt; und der hat den Pariser Stempel. 14. Hat der Klempner sein Faß, oder das des Arbeiters? 15. Meine

Arbeit ist schwer, die meines Mitschülers ist leicht. 16. Das, was man uns heute von dem Kriege erzählt hat, ist nicht wahr. 17. Man findet mehr Unkräuter auf den Wiesen und Feldern der Amerikaner, als auf denen der Deutschen. 18. Man sagt daß die Schiffe der Amerikaner schneller segeln, als die der Engländer. 19. Das sind Ihre Knöpfe, und dies sind die des Schneiders. 20. Die Ärmel dieser Jacke sind zu lang, die der anderen sind zu kurz. 21. Das sind meine Richter. 22. Er sammelt Gemälde und hat deren schon viele gekauft.

EXERCISE 85.

Aufgabe 85.

1. Have you the teacher's seal, or the physician's? 2. Have you the seal of the teacher, or that of the physician? 3. Does one find more weeds (are more weeds found) in the fields and meadows of the Americans than in those of the Germans? 4. Are those your wafers, or the officer's (those of the officer)? 5. Those are my brother's, and these are the officer's. 6. The servant has the coachman's boots, and the coachman has the servant's. 7. My mother has my vail, and I have my aunt's. 8. The tinman has the laborer's barrel, and the laborer has that of his friend, the cooper. 9. Your work is easier than that of your teacher. 10. The scholar's work is always easier than the teacher's. 11. I have been told that you speak Spanish. 12. Are the sleeves of this jacket longer than those of the other? 13. Whose horses are those in your stable, the officer's or the coachman's? 14. They are neither the officer's nor the coachman's, but the merchant's. 15. I have your ball and that of your brother, your pen and that of my sister, my sealing-wax and that of the scholar, your books and those of your cousin. 16. Are you writing with our pencils, or with those of our scholars? 17. Is your vail larger than your mother's? 18. It is larger than my mother's, but much smaller than my aunt's or my cousin's. 19. What kind of books are these? 20. Those are Spanish books. 21. Has your news paper the post-mark of Frankfort or of Paris?

LESSON XLV.

Section XLV.

THE AUXILIARIES OF MODE

1. Are *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, *lassen*,* and with which the main verb is used without the particle *zu* (except with *können*, as given below; see 6).

2. CONJUGATION OF THE MODE AUXILIARIES.

Present Tense.

| | | | | | | |
|------------|---------|--------|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| ich darf, | kann, | mag, | muß, | soll, | will, | lasse, |
| du darfst, | kannst, | magst, | mußt, | sollst, | willst, | lässest, |
| er darf, | kann, | mag, | muß, | soll, | will, | läßt. |

Imperfect Tense.

| | | | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| ich dürfte, | konnte, | mochte, | mußte, | sollte, | wollte, | ließ, |
| du dürftest, | konntest, | mochtest, | mußtest, | solltest, | wolltest, | ließeſt, |
| er dürfte, | konnte, | mochte, | mußte, | sollte, | wollte, | ließ. |

(§ 83. 2.) (§ 83. 3.) (§ 83. 4.) (§ 83. 5.) (§ 83. 6.) (§ 83. 8.)

3. All the persons of the *plural* are formed as in *regular* verbs.

4. *Dürfen* indicates :

a. A possibility dependent on the will of another :

| | |
|---|--|
| Der Bauer darf nicht fischen. | The peasant <i>can</i> not (legally) fish. |
| Wer des Herrn Joch nicht trägt, darf sich mit seinem Kreuz nicht schmücken. | He who wears not the Lord's yoke <i>must</i> not adorn himself with his cross. |

b. *Dürfen*, in the subjunctive mode, often indicates a logical possibility :

| | |
|---|---|
| Es dürfte jetzt zu spät sein. | It <i>might</i> (may) now be too late. |
| Die Nachwelt dürfte Bedenken tragen dies Urtheil zu unterschreiben. | Posterity <i>might</i> hesitate to subscribe to (approve) this verdict. |

c. *Dürfen* (infinitive; see also *können*, L. 58. 1.) preceded by *zu* often requires no translation in English :

| | |
|---|---|
| Er bat um Erlaubniß sie besuchen zu dürfen. | He asked (for) permission to (be at liberty to) visit them. |
|---|---|

* For complete conjugations of these verbs, see § 83. 2, etc., (except of *lassen*, which is not there because it is not of the *mixed* conjugation § 81). See list of irregular verbs, § 76.

5. *Können* indicates :

a. A possibility dependent on the capabilities of the subject

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Der Vogel kann fliegen. | The bird <i>can</i> fly. |
| Sie können es leicht thun. | You <i>can</i> easily do it. |

b. A logical possibility :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Man kann es schon gethan haben. | It <i>may</i> have been done already. |
| Ich gehe nicht, es könnte regnen. | I am not going, it <i>might</i> rain. |
| Er kann Unrecht haben. | He <i>may</i> be wrong. |

Obs.—*Können* is often used transitively in the sense of to understand, to know by heart :

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Er kann viele hübsche Lieder. | He <i>knows</i> many pretty songs. |
| Sie kann englisch. | She <i>understands</i> English. |
| Er kann von Allem Etwas. | He <i>knows</i> a little of every thing. |

Umhin WITH *Können*.

6. *Umhin* (literally *around thither*) is used only with *können*; and here, as an exception, the particle *zu* is employed with the infinitive which follows :

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich konnte nicht umhin es ihm zu sagen. | I could not <i>avoid</i> ("get round") telling it to him. |
| Ich kann nicht umhin zu lachen. | I can not help laughing. |

Können with *dafür* has likewise an idiomatic use :

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Was kannst du denn dafür? | How can you help it? (<i>lit.</i> , what canst thou therefor?) |
|---------------------------|---|

7. *Mögen* indicates :

a. A possibility dependent on the will of the speaker or the subject, and is frequently used transitively :

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Du magst den Brief lesen. | You <i>may</i> read the letter. |
| Ich mag nicht hier bleiben. | I do not <i>wish</i> to remain here. |
| Ich mag den Wein nicht. | I do not <i>like</i> (wish for) the wine. |
| Sie mögen uns nicht sehen. | They do not <i>wish</i> to see us. |

b. *Mögen* indicates a logical possibility as a concession on the part of the speaker :

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Er mag ein treuer Freund sein. | He <i>may</i> be a true friend. |
| Sie mögen es gethan haben. | They <i>may</i> have done it. |

8. *Müssen* is the equivalent of *must* :

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Wir müssen Alle sterben. | We <i>must</i> all die. |
| Er mußte es thun | He <i>was obliged</i> to do it. |

9. Sollen indicates :

a. A necessity dependent on the will of another, or on moral obligation :

| | |
|--|--|
| Diese Furcht soll endigen; ihr Haupt soll fallen; ich will Friede haben. | This fear <i>shall</i> end; her head <i>shall</i> fall; I will have peace. |
| Ich soll in die Stadt gehen. | I <i>am</i> to go to the city. |
| Kinder sollen lernen. | Children <i>should</i> (shall) learn. |

b. Sollen indicates a logical necessity resting on report, and answers mainly to *it is said, reported, they say*, or to phrases of similar import :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Sie sollen sehr reich sein. | They <i>are said</i> to be very rich. |
| Herzog Johann soll irren im Gebirge. | Duke John <i>is reported</i> to be wandering in the mountains. |

c. Sollen, with another verb expressed or understood, often answers in relative sentences to our infinitive preceded by *to* :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Er weiß nicht was er thun soll. | He does not know what <i>to do</i> . |
| Zeige mir wie ich es machen soll. | Show me how <i>to do</i> it. |
| Was soll ich hier ? | What <i>am</i> I <i>to do</i> here ? |

10. Möllen indicates :

a. A necessity dependent on the will of the subject :

| | |
|--|---|
| Es soll so sein, ich will es so haben. | It shall be so, I <i>will</i> have it so. |
| Sie sollen nicht gehen. | They <i>will</i> not (do not wish to) go. |
| Ich wollte es ihm erklären, aber er wollte mich nicht hören. | I <i>was going</i> to explain it to him, but he <i>would</i> not hear me. |

b. A logical necessity dependent on the assertion of the subject :

| | |
|---|--|
| Er will es selbst gesehen haben. | He <i>pretends</i> to have seen it himself. |
| Sie sollen in der Stadt sein; die Leute wollen sie gesehen haben. | They <i>are said</i> to be in the city; the people <i>will have</i> it that they have seen them. |

11. Lassen signifies *to let, leave, permit, command* ; also, *to get, or order* any thing done :

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Läßt das Feuer ausgehen. | <i>Let</i> the fire go out. |
| Er hat das Buch fallen lassen. | He has <i>dropped</i> (let fall) the book. |
| Er läßt das Fenster offen. | He <i>leaves</i> the window open. |
| Warum lassen Sie ihn gehen ? | Why do you <i>permit</i> him to go ? |

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich lasse mir einen Rock machen. | I am getting a coat made (for me). |
| Ich habe ihm (or für ihn) einen Rock machen lassen. (L. 49. 5.) | I have ordered a coat (to be made) for him. |
| Er ließ das Regiment' anrücken. | He commanded the regiment to advance. |

12. These verbs all have a complete conjugation. Hence where their English equivalents are found, in this respect, defective, other words of like meaning must be supplied :

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich muß heute gehen. | I must go to-day. |
| Er wünschte ihn gehen zu lassen. | He wished to let him go. |
| Ich mußte gestern gehen. | I was obliged to go yesterday. |
| Ich habe nicht gewollt, aber ich habe gehen müssen. | I have not wished to, but I have been obliged to. |
| Er wird gehen können. | He will be able to go. |
| Sie werden spielen wollen. | They will wish to play. |
| Es ist besser arbeiten zu wollen, als arbeiten zu müssen. | It is better to be willing to work, than to be obliged to work. |

13. The perfect and pluperfect of the above auxiliaries (namely, dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen and lassen, § 74), as also of heißen (in the sense of to command), helfen, hören and sehen, when used with other verbs, take the infinitive form, instead of the participle :

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Ich habe ihn kommen heißen. | I have commanded him to come. |
| Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen. | I have helped him work. |
| Ich habe ihn sprechen hören. | I have heard him speak. |
| Ich habe ihn gehen sehen. | I have seen him go. |
| Ich habe nicht gehen können. | I have not been able to go. |
| Sie hat es nicht thun mögen. | She has not wished to do it. |

14. When the infinitive form of the participle, as above, is employed, it is always placed at the end of the sentence ; hence, the inversion usual in relative sentences does not take place :

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Der Mann, welcher hat gehen müssen (not gehen müssen hat). | The man who has been obliged to go. |
| Ich weiß es, daß er wird kommen können. | I know that he will be able to come. |

15. After these auxiliaries the main verb (where the meaning is sufficiently obvious) is often omitted :

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Ich kann nicht mehr. | I can (do) no more. |
| Sie müssen gleich fort. | You must (go) away immediately. |
| Ein Jüngling wollte zur Stadt hinaus. | A youth wished to go (or get) up to the city |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|---|
| 1. Das Gericht läßt den Verbrecher hinaufhängen. | The court <i>causes</i> the criminal to be beheaded. |
| 2. Er läßt seinen Freund im Stich. | He <i>leaves</i> his friend in the lurch. |
| 3. Er hoffte seinen Sohn aus der Gefaß- reißen zu können. | He hoped to <i>be able</i> to wrest his son from the danger. |
| 4. Es dürfte vielleicht wahr sein. | It <i>might</i> perchance be true. |
| 5. Er darf nicht in das Haus. | He <i>ventures</i> not into the house. |
| 6. Was kann ich dafür? | How can I <i>help</i> it? |
| 7. Ich mag es nicht thun. | I do not <i>like</i> to do it. |
| 8. Was will er daß ich thun soll? | What <i>would</i> he have me do? |
| 9. Ich wollte gern dahin gehen. | I <i>would</i> fain go thither. |
| 10. Er will dich gesehen haben. | He <i>insists</i> that he has seen you. |
| 11. Ich möchte frühstücken, Herr Wirth. | I <i>would</i> like to breakfast, landlord. |
| 12. Ich möchte es bezweifeln (§ 83. 11). | I <i>might</i> (am inclined to) doubt it. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Das Beispiel, -es, pl. -e, example; | Mäßig, moderate, temperate; |
| bleiben, to remain, continue; | Mögen, see 7; |
| bringen, to bring (p. 346.); | Müssen, see 8; |
| Daß (conj.), that; | Obgleich, although; |
| Deshalb, therefore; | Die Regel, -, pl. -n, the rule; |
| Dürfen, see 4; | Schwierig, difficult; |
| Essen, to eat (p. 348.); | Schlafen, to sleep (p. 354.); |
| Die Freude, -, pl. -n, joy, pleasure; | Sollen, see 9; |
| Die Geduld, -, the patience; | Die Speise, -, pl. -n, the food; |
| Genießen, to enjoy (p. 350.); | Täglich, daily; |
| Das Gewürz, -es, pl. -e, the spice; | Tanzen, to dance; |
| Die Kanne, -, pl. -n, the can; | Umhin, see 6; |
| Können, see 6; | Wenn, if, when; |
| Lernen, to learn; | Wollen, see 10. |

EXERCISE 86.

Aufgabe 86.

1. Er mag gehen. 2. Diejenigen, welche nichts wissen, sollen etwas lernen. 3. Wer krank ist, darf nicht arbeiten. 4. Wer gesund bleiben will, muß mäßig essen und trinken. 5. Wer gut schlafen will, muß fleißig arbeiten. 6. Wer nicht fleißig und aufmerksam sein will, kann nicht schnell lernen. 7. Wer einen Brief schreiben will, muß Papier, Tinte und Feder haben. 8. Die Freuden der Erde soll man wie Gewürze genießen und nicht wie tägliche Speisen. 9. Können Sie mir sagen wo der Arzt wohnt? 10. Ich will mit Ihnen zu ihm gehen. 11. Werden Sie morgen mit mir nach der Stadt gehen können? 12. Ich werde gehen können, aber ich werde nicht gehen wollen, denn ich werde übermorgen gehen müssen. 13. Die deutsche

Sprache soll sehr schwierig sein, deßhalb muß der Schüler die Regeln und die Beispiele aufmerksam lesen. 14. Wer diese Sprache lernen will, darf nicht faul oder nachlässig sein. 15. Mein Vater hat mich nie tanzen lassen, er hat nie tanzen wollen, und seine Kinder haben nie tanzen dürfen. 16. Wir werden bald sprechen können, wenn wir nur fleißig sein wollen. 17. Was wollte der Kaufmann Ihnen verkaufen? 18. Ich konnte nichts bei ihm finden, was ich kaufen wollte. 19. Ein guter Lehrer muß Geduld haben. 20. Die Kinder wollen Äpfel und Kirschen, aber sie können keine kaufen, denn sie haben kein Geld. 21. Kannst du mir jene große Kanne bringen? 22. Wir können nicht umhin zu lachen, obgleich wir wissen, daß es unrecht ist. 23. Ich kann nichts dafür, daß ich arm bin. 24. Können Sie deutsch, französisch und spanisch?

EXERCISE 87.

Aufgabe 87.

1. I wished to go with my friend, but I could not, for I was obliged to remain at home. 2. He who wishes to be rich or learned must be industrious. 3. Those who will not read can not learn. 4. I wished to buy good horses but could find none. 5. When shall you be able to write a letter to your friends? 6. I shall be able to write one to-day, but I shall not wish to write one. 7. Will your friends be obliged to stay in the house this evening? 8. They will not wish to go out of the house. 9. We have been able to go, but we have not wished to go. 10. Have you been obliged to remain here? 11. We have been at liberty to go, but we have wished to remain. 12. I can not read, for I am unwell. 13. You must be industrious if you wish to be healthy and happy. 14. These men are said to be very rich. 15. What shall I do with this money? 16. You may give it to your poor friends. 17. May I read your new books? 18. You may read them if you can. 19. You may go to your friend if you wish. 20. I do not wish to go to-day, but I shall wish to go to-morrow. 21. Those boys say they can not help laughing. 22. I shall probably be in the city to-morrow, what shall I buy for you? 23. I can not buy any thing, for I have no money. 24. It is said these children understand German and French.

LESSON XLVI.

Lection XLVI.

1. CONJUGATION OF Sein.

| | | INFINITIVE. | |
|--|----------------------------------|--|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | | | <i>Perfect.</i> |
| sein to be. | | | gewesen sein, to have been. |
| | | PARTICIPLES. | |
| <i>Present.</i> | | | <i>Perfect.</i> |
| seind, being. | | | gewesen, been. |
| | | INDICATIVE. | |
| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
| PRESENT TENSE. | | | |
| ich bin, I am; | | wir sind, we are; | |
| du bist, thou art; | | ihr seid, you are; | |
| er ist, he is; | | sie sind, they are. | |
| IMPERFECT TENSE. | | | |
| ich war, I was; | | wir waren, we were; | |
| du warst, thou wast; | | ihr waret, you were; | |
| er war, he was; | | sie waren, they were. | |
| PERFECT TENSE. | | | |
| ich bin gewesen, I have been; | | wir sind gewesen, we have been | |
| du bist gewesen, thou hast been; | | ihr seid gewesen, you have been; | |
| er ist gewesen, he has been; | | sie sind gewesen, they have been. | |
| PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | | |
| ich war gewesen, I had been; | | wir waren gewesen, we had been; | |
| du warst gewesen, thou hadst been; | | ihr waret gewesen, you had been; | |
| er war gewesen, he had been; | | sie waren gewesen, they had been. | |
| FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | | |
| ich werde sein, I shall be; | | wir werden sein, we shall be; | |
| du wirst sein, thou wilt be; | | ihr werdet sein, you will be; | |
| er wird sein, he will be; | | sie werden sein, they will be. | |
| SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | | |
| ich werde } I shall du wirst } thou wilt er wird } he will | gewesen sein haben been | wir werden } ihr werdet } sie werden } | we shall you will they will haben been |
| IMPERATIVE. | | | |
| sei (du), be (thou). | | seid (ihr), be (you). | |

Obs.—As an auxiliary in forming the perfect, pluperfect and second future tense, *sein* (§ 71. 3.) is often rendered by the auxiliary *have* :

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Er ist hier gewesen. | He has been here. |
| Ich war dort geblieben. | I had remained there. |
| Sie wird schon gegangen sein. | She will already have gone. |

2. IDIOMS WITH *sein*.

| | |
|--|--|
| An wem ist die Reihe zu lesen? | Whose turn is it to read? |
| Sie ist an mir. | It is mine. |
| Mir ist sehr kalt; ihm ist zu warm. | I am very cold; he is too warm. |
| Mir ist nicht wohl. | I do not feel well. |
| Was ist dir? | What ails you? |
| Ich weiß nicht wie mir ist. | I don't know what ails me. |
| Sei gutes Muthes. | Be of good cheer. |
| Mir ist nicht wohl zu Muth. | I do not feel well (mentally). |
| Es ist ihm Ernst damit. | He is in earnest about it. |
| Es ist Schade, daß er seinem Gegner nicht gewachsen ist. | It is a pity that he is not equal to his antagonist. |
| Das Pferd ist mir nicht feil. | My horse is not for sale |
| Wem sind diese Kleider? | Whose clothes are these? |
| Sie ist ihm einen Gulden schuldig. | She owes him a florin. |
| Bist du im Stande es zu thun? | Are you able to do it? |
| Ich bin es nicht im Stande. | I am not able to do it, |
| Wer ist Schuld daran, daß er noch nicht angekommen ist? | Whose fault is it, that he has not yet arrived? |
| Du selbst bist Schuld daran. | It is your own fault. |
| Es ist ein solches Gesetz vorhanden. | There is such a law in existence. |
| Es ist ihm darum zu thun. | That is his object. |
| Wovon ist die Rede? | What is being spoken of? |
| Das ist mir recht. | I am satisfied with that. |
| Es ist ihnen lieb. | They are glad of it. |
| Ich bin dir herzlich gut. | I love you heartily. |
| Lassen Sie es gut sein. | That's enough of it, (leave off). |
| Ich weiß wie du bist. | I know you (your ways). |
| Es sei nun, daß, u. s. w. | Supposing now, that, etc. |
| Was sein soll, schickt sich wohl. | Whatever is to be, is proper. |
| Es ist mir so, als ob ich es gehört hätte. | It seems to me as though I had heard it. |
| Ich will des Todes sein, wenn es nicht wahr ist. | I will (wish I may) die if it is not true. |
| Er ist willens sie zu besuchen. | He is inclined (has the will) to visit them. |
| Er ist mein gewesener Freund. | He is my former (has been my) friend. |

3. CONJUGATION OF *Werden*.

INFINITIVE.

Present.

werden, to become,

Perfect.

geworden sein, to have become.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

werend, becoming.

Perfect.

geworden, become.

INDICATIVE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

PRESENT TENSE.

ich werde, I become;

wir werden, we become;

du wirst, thou becomest;

ihr werdet, you become;

er wird, he becomes;

sie werden, they become.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich wurde or warb, I became;

wir wurden, we became;

du wurdest or warbst, thou becamest; ihr wurdet, you became;

er wurde or warb, he became;

sie wurden, they became.

PERFECT TENSE.

ich bin geworden, I have become;

wir sind geworden, we have become.

du bist geworden, thou hast become; ihr seid geworden, you have become;

er ist geworden, he has become;

sie sind geworden, they have become.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich war geworden, I had become;

wir waren geworden, we had become;

du warst geworden, thou hadst become; ihr waret geworden, you had become;

er war geworden, he had become;

sie waren geworden, they had become.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde werden, I shall become;

wir werden werden, we shall become;

du wirst werden, thou wilt become; ihr werdet werden, you will become;

er wird werden, he will become;

sie werden werden, they will become.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

| | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|------------|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| ich werde | } genor- ben sein | I shall | } have become. | wir werden | } genor- ben sein | we shall | } have become. |
| du wirst | | thou wilt | | ihr werdet | | you will | |
| er wird | | he will | | sie werden | | they will | |

| | | | |
|------------|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| wir werden | } genor- ben sein | we shall | } have become. |
| ihr werdet | | you will | |
| sie werden | | they will | |

IMPERATIVE.

werde (du), become (thou).

werdet (ihr), become (you).

EXERCISE 90.

Aufgabe 90.

1. Wer bäckt das Brot? 2. Der Soldat birgt sich vor dem Feinde. 3. Er bläst das Balzhorn. 4. Der Bauer bricht den Hanf und driecht den Weizen. 5. Was empfängt er? 6. Das Gute empfiehlt sich selbst. 7. Der Mann fährt auf dem Wagen. 8. Der Schnee fällt. 9. Der Knabe fängt die Vögel. 10. Der Soldat sichtet. 11. Er sichtet sich einen Hut. 12. Der Ochse frisst Heu und säuft Wasser. 13. Das Kind isst Brod und trinkt Milch. 14. Er gibt mir das neue Buch. 15. Er grüßt sich ein Loch. 16. Er hält das Pferd. 17. Der Hut hängt an dem Nagel. 18. Er läuft und läßt tie anndern auch laufen. 19. Sie liest ihr Buch. 20. Sie mißt (or misst) das Tuch. 21. Er nimmt mein Buch. 22. Warum schilt er? 23. Der Hund schläft, der Knabe schlägt das Pferd. 24. Das Blei schmilzt. 25. Was siehst du? was spricht er? 26. Die Biene sticht, der Dieb stiehlt, der Kranke stirbt. 27. Er trägt schöne Kleider; er trifft immer das Ziel. 28. Warum sichtet er? 29. Das Bier verdirbt. 30. Er vergift was sie spricht. 31. Der Baum wächst. 32. Sie weiß nicht was sie will. 33. Er wirft den Ball. 34. Ich weiß was er mir verspricht.

EXERCISE 91.

Aufgabe 91.

1. I do not know who is throwing the balls. 2. Does he speak German? 3. He does not forget what he reads. 4. The sun is melting the snow. 5. The thief steals the shoes that he wears. 6. The bee stings and dies. 7. The soldier is beating the dog. 8. The bird sleeps on the tree. 9. She scolds because he takes her book. 10. The carpenter is measuring the room. 11. The boy runs and lets the dog run too. 12. Who is holding my horse? 13. Where is the cloak hanging? 14. The man that is braiding hats gives us a book. 15. Who is digging this hole? 16. Why does the soldier sit here? 17. What is this boy eating? 18. What animal eats grass? 19. What does the horse drink? 20. The tree is falling. 21. Who is catching the birds? 22. Does he receive any thing? 23. Who thrashes the wheat and breaks the hemp? 24. Why dost thou conceal thyself? 25. What does he command? 26. Who is riding on your wagon? 27. My friend recommends me to you.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Er pries seine Waare und rietß uns sie zu kaufen. | He praised his goods and advised us to buy them. |
| Deine Brüder fraß das Schwert, wo das Blut in Strömen floß. | The sword devoured thy brothers where the blood flowed in streams. |
| Der Strom schwoll, weil der Schnee schmolz. | The stream swelled because the snow melted. |
| Cæsar schrieb nach Rom: "ich kam, sah und siegte." | Cæsar wrote to Rome: 'I came, saw and conquered.' |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Beißen, to bite; | Reiten, to ride on horseback; |
| Betrü'gen, to deceive; | Scheinen, to appear; |
| Ertrin'ken, to be drowned; | Schließen, to shut, lock; |
| Ergrei'fen, to seize; | Schreien, to cry, shriek; |
| Fliehen, to flee; | Schwellen, to swell; |
| Fließen, to flow; | Sinken, to sink; |
| Gebie'ten, to command; | Steigen, to ascend; |
| Gene'sen, to recover; | Streiten, to quarrel; |
| Gießen, to pour; | Treiben, to drive; |
| Heben, to raise; | Treten, to tread, step |
| Helfen, to bid; | Verlie'ren, to lose; |
| Helfen, to help, assist; | Verschwin'den, to disappear; |
| Kriechen, to creep; | Waschen, to wash; |
| Leiden, to suffer; | Zwingen, to compel, force. |

EXERCISE 92.

Aufgabe 92.

1. Der Hund biß den Dieb. 2. Der Baum brach. 3. Er empfahl mich einem Manne, der mich sehr freundlich empfing. 4. Ich blieb den ganzen Tag. 5. Sie ergriffen seine Hände. 6. Er fiel in das Wasser und ertrank. 7. Sie aßen die Äpfel, die sie stahlen. 8. Wir fuhren durch die Stadt. 9. Sie fingen die Vögel, welche aus den Nestern flogen. 10. Die Soldaten suchten nicht tapfer, sondern flohen. 11. Er gebot uns zu gehen. 12. Er gab mir das Geld und ging. 13. Er genas langsam. 14. Wir genossen gestern sehr wenig. 15. Er gewann mehr als ich verlor. 16. Er goß den Wein in das Glas. 17. Sie gruben einen tiefen Graben. 18. Er hob seinen Stock und hieb nach mir. 19. Er hieß sie kommen, aber sie kamen nicht. 20. Er half uns, obgleich er uns nicht kannte. 21. Wir lasen das Buch, das er uns gab. 22. Das Kind kroch, der Hund lief. 23. Sie lagen auf ihren Betten und litten. 24. Sie

EXERCISE 90.

Aufgabe 90.

1. Wer kauft das Brod? 2. Der Soldat birgt sich vor dem Feinde. 3. Er bläst das Balzhorn. 4. Der Bauer bricht den Hanf und drischt den Weizen. 5. Was empfängt er? 6. Das Gute empfiehlt sich selbst. 7. Der Mann fährt auf dem Wagen. 8. Der Schnee fällt. 9. Der Knabe fängt die Vögel. 10. Der Soldat sicht. 11. Er slicht sich einen Hut. 12. Der Ochse frisst Heu und säuft Wasser. 13. Das Kind isst Brod und trinkt Milch. 14. Er gibt mir das neue Buch. 15. Er gräbt sich ein Loch. 16. Er hält das Pferd. 17. Der Hut hängt an dem Nagel. 18. Er läuft und läßt die andern auch laufen. 19. Sie liest ihr Buch. 20. Sie mißt (or misset) das Tuch. 21. Er nimmt mein Buch. 22. Warum schilt er? 23. Der Hund schläft, der Knabe schlägt das Pferd. 24. Das Blei schmilzt. 25. Was siehst du? was spricht er? 26. Die Biene sticht, der Dieb stiehlt, der Kranke stirbt. 27. Er trägt schöne Kleider; er trifft immer das Ziel. 28. Warum sicht er? 29. Das Bier verdorrt. 30. Er vergift was sie spricht. 31. Der Baum wächst. 32. Sie weiß nicht was sie will. 33. Er wirft den Ball. 34. Ich weiß was er mir verspricht.

EXERCISE 91.

Aufgabe 91.

1. I do not know who is throwing the balls. 2. Does he speak German? 3. He does not forget what he reads. 4. The sun is melting the snow. 5. The thief steals the shoes that he wears. 6. The bee stings and dies. 7. The soldier is beating the dog. 8. The bird sleeps on the tree. 9. She scolds because he takes her book. 10. The carpenter is measuring the room. 11. The boy runs and lets the dog run too. 12. Who is holding my horse? 13. Where is the cloak hanging? 14. The man that is braiding hats gives us a book. 15. Who is digging this hole? 16. Why does the soldier sit hit? 17. What is this boy eating? 18. What animal eats grass? 19. What does the horse drink? 20. The tree is falling. 21. Who is catching the birds? 22. Does he receive any thing? 23. Who thrashes the wheat and breaks the hemp? 24. Why dost thou conceal thyself? 25. What does he command? 26. Who is riding on your wagon? 27. My friend recommends me to you.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Er rief seine Waare und rief uns sie zu kaufen. | He praised his goods and advised us to buy them. |
| Seine Brüder fraß das Schwert, wo das Blut in Strömen floß. | The sword devoured thy brothers where the blood flowed in streams. |
| Der Strom schwoll, weil der Schnee schmolz. | The stream swelled because the snow melted. |
| Cæsar schrieb nach Rom: "ich kam, sah und siegte." | Cæsar wrote to Rome: 'I came, saw and conquered.' |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Beißen, to bite;
 Betrü'gen, to deceive;
 Ertrin'ken, to be drowned;
 Ergrei'fen, to seize;
 Fliehen, to flee;
 Fließen, to flow;
 Gebie'ten, to command;
 Gene'sen, to recover;
 Gießen, to pour;
 Heben, to raise;
 Heißen, to bid;
 Helfen, to help, assist;
 Kriechen, to creep;
 Leiden, to suffer;

Reiten, to ride on horseback;
 Scheinen, to appear;
 Schließen, to shut, lock;
 Schreien, to cry, shriek;
 Schwellen, to swell;
 Sinken, to sink;
 Steigen, to ascend;
 Streiten, to quarrel;
 Treiben, to drive;
 Treten, to tread, step
 Verlie'ren, to lose;
 Verschwinden, to disappear;
 Waschen, to wash;
 Zwingen, to compel, force.

EXERCISE 92.

Aufgabe 92.

1. Der Hund biß den Dieb. 2. Der Baum brach. 3. Er empfahl mich einem Manne, der mich sehr freundlich empfing. 4. Ich blieb den ganzen Tag. 5. Sie ergriffen seine Hände. 6. Er fiel in das Wasser und ertrank. 7. Sie aßen die Äpfel, die sie stahlen. 8. Wir fuhren durch die Stadt. 9. Sie fingen die Vögel, welche aus den Nestern flogen. 10. Die Soldaten suchten nicht tapfer, sondern flohen. 11. Er gebot uns zu gehen. 12. Er gab mir das Geld und ging. 13. Er genas langsam. 14. Wir genossen gestern sehr wenig. 15. Er gewann mehr als ich verlor. 16. Er goß den Wein in das Glas. 17. Sie gruben einen tiefen Graben. 18. Er hob seinen Stock und hieb nach mir. 19. Er hieß sie kommen, aber sie kamen nicht. 20. Er half uns, obgleich er uns nicht kannte. 21. Wir lasen das Buch, das er uns gab. 22. Das Kind kroch, der Hund lief. 23. Sie lagen auf ihren Betten und litten. 24. Sie

nahmen meinen Wagen und fuhren in die Stadt. 25. Er rief den armen Mann. 26. Er saß und schrie den ganzen Tag. 27. Das Kind stand und schrie. 28. Der Schnee schmolz, der Strom schwoll. 29. Sie tranken und jangen; einer schwamm und der andere sank. 30. Sie schlugen ihn, während er schlief. 31. Er rief mich und schalt, weil ich auf seinem Pferde ritt. 32. Sie schien traurig. 33. Er ging hinaus und schloß die Thüre. 34. Er stieg auf den Berg. 35. Sie standen bis sie starben. 36. Er stritt mit ihnen und trieb sie aus dem Felde. 37. Sie traten in das Haus und verschwanden. 38. Er vergaß was er versprach. 39. Er traf das Ziel. 40. Es wuchs schnell. 41. Er wusch den Tisch. 42. Er wußte, daß ich den Speer warf. 43. Er zog sein Schwert und zwang sie zu gehen.

EXERCISE 93.

Aufgabe 93.

1. The trees broke, and the boys fell. 2. The dogs bit the boys that stole the apples. 3. The man to whom you recommended me cheated me. 4. We did not remain long, for they did not receive us kindly. 5. The boy seized my hand. 6. We called him. 7. Did you ride on the wagon? 8. The soldiers ate bread and drank wine, and their horses ate hay and drank water. 9. Our soldiers fought gallantly, and those of our enemy fled. 10. The birds flew out of the cage, but the boys caught them again. 11. We did not remain long. 12. They commanded us to go to the city, but we did not go, for they gave us no money. 13. Did your friends recover? 14. We won less than our friends lost. 15. They poured the wine into the glasses. 16. They saw the horse, and raised their hands. 17. Why were they digging that ditch? 18. He came to us while we were reading the books which you gave us. 19. He struck at them because they drank so much and sang so loud. 20. We crept before we walked. 21. The boys shrieked, and the dogs ran. 22. We took the books that lay on the table. 23. Did you call him a thief? 24. We knew that they lied. 25. We sat around the table and wrote, and they stood around the stove. 26. He rode the horse and drove the oxen. 27. They called them friends. 28. Why did they seem so sad? 29. He scolded me because I slept so long. 30. They threw their spears

and drew their swords. 31. Did you forget what he promised you? 32. Did they hit the mark with the arrow? 33. Who washed the gloves? 34. Did the trees grow rapidly? 35. Did they lock the door? 36. Why did they quarrel with us?

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Ich habe nie ein solches Gefühl empfunden. I have never experienced such a feeling.
 Er hatte einen Kranz für sie gewunden. He had wound a wreath for them.
 Hatte sein Freund nichts von der Sache gewußt? Had his friend known nothing of the affair?
 Man hat den Verbrecher ergriffen. The criminal has been seized.
 Wer hat das Lied gesungen? Who has sung the song?
 Hast du auch wohl bedacht, was du mir rätst?—S. But have you well considered what you advise me?
 Wann haben Sie an Ihren Bruder geschrieben? When have you written to your brother?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Mahlen, to grind;
 Meiden, to avoid;
 Pfeifen, to whistle;
 Preisen, to praise;
 Scheren, to shear;
 Schießen, to shoot;
 Schinden, to flay;
 Schleifen, to sharpen, grind;

Schwören, to swear;
 Spalten, to split;
 Spinnen, to spin;
 Thun, to do;
 Verdrüßigen, to offend;
 Verzeihen, to pardon;
 Weben, to weave;
 Winden, to wind.

EXERCISE 94.

Aufgabe 94.

1. Der Hund hat den Dieb gebissen. 2. Er hat uns betrogen. 3. Hat er Ihnen etwas gegeben? 4. Er hatte an uns gedacht. 5. Hast du den Weizen gedroschen? 6. Er hat uns freundlich empfangen, aber niemand hat uns ihm empfohlen. 7. Was hat er gefunden? 8. Man hat den Dieb ergriffen. 9. Er hat den Apfel gegessen; hat er den Vogel gefangen? 10. Ich habe sie gefunden; sie haben gefochten. 11. Der Hund hat das Fleisch gestreift. 12. Er hat mir nichts gegeben. 13. Was hat er gesehen? 14. Wir haben nichts genossen. 15. Was hat er genommen? 16. Wer hat den Wein in das Glas gegossen? 17. Wer hat dieses Loch gegraben? 18. Er hat das Pferd gehalten. 19. Was hat sie gesungen? 20. Er hat uns gekannt. 21. Sie haben mir ein Buch gegeben und ich habe es gelesen. 22. Die Federn haben auf dem Tische gelegen.

23. Er hat nicht gelogen. 24. Der Müller hat das Getreide gemessen und gemahlen. 25. Er hat uns Diebe genannt, weil wir seine Bücher genommen haben. 26. Warum hat er gepriessen? 27. Sie haben ihre Pferde gepriesen. 28. Er hat sie gerufen. 29. Warum hast du uns gescholten? 30. Er hatte das Schaf geschoren. 31. Er hat den Wolf geschossen und geschunden. 32. Sie hatten zu lange geschlafen. 33. Hast du die Messer geschliffen? 34. Wir haben die Thüren geschlossen. 35. Hat er das Brod geschnitten? 36. Ich hatte geschrieen, und sie hatten geschrien. 37. Sie hat es geschworen. 38. Wir haben ihn gesehen. 39. Hat er das Lied schon gesungen? 40. Er hat eine Stunde gegessen. 41. Er hat das Holz gespalten. 42. Haben sie die Wolle gesponnen? 43. Was sie gesprochen hat, hat ihn gestochen. 44. Der Mann, der da gestanden hatte, hat mein Pferd gestohlen. 45. Sie haben lange genug gestritten, was hat er gethan? 46. Er hat das Ziel getroffen. 47. Hast du nie Wein getrunken? 48. Ich habe vergessen. 49. Was hat er verloren? 50. Es hat ihn verdrossen. 51. Hat er uns verziehen? 52. Er hat das Tuch gewoben und gewaschen; hat er einen Ball geworfen? 53. Nie habe ich sie gemieden. 54. Was hat er gewunden?

EXERCISE 95.

Aufgabe 95.

1. He has beaten the dog that has bitten him. 2. I have often thought of him. 3. Have you recommended this book to us? 4. Have you thrashed the wheat? 5. They have always received us kindly. 6. Who has ground your knife? 7. The boys have eaten the bread and drank the beer. 8. The dogs have eaten the meat and drank the water. 9. They have caught their horses. 10. What have you found? 11. Why have the soldiers fought? 12. I have shot a large bird. 13. Have you seen the books that I have read? 14. Into which glass have you poured the wine? 15. Why have they dug this hole? 16. Who has held my horse? 17. Who has seen us? 18. Have my books lain on your table? 19. Has any body lied? 20. Who has ground the wheat? 21. Have you measured the cloth? 22. Why has he avoided his friends? 23. Why have they called him a thief? 24. Who has taken my pen? 25.

He has called me, but he has not scolded me. 26. Who has sharpened my knife? 27. Have you locked the doors? 28. Who has cut the bread? 29. Had you written him a letter? 30. Have you ever sung this song? 31. Have you sat longer than they have stood? 32. I have spun the wool and he has split the wood. 33. The bees have stung the horse. 34. Has any body stolen any thing? 35. He had not spoken at all. 36. Why have they quarreled? 37. Who has worn the hat? 38. What have you lost? 39. Who has thrown the apples? 40. Why have they drawn their swords? 41. Have you washed the cloth that he has woven? 42. It vexes him that he has lost his money. 43. Have you forgotten what you have promised me? 44. Why have you slept so long? 45. Has any one compelled you to go? 46. Who has whistled? 47. What have they praised? 48. Have you ever known such a man? 49. He has written, and they have spoken.



LESSON XLVIII.

Lection XLVIII.

USE OF THE AUXILIARIES *haben* AND *sein*.

1. *haben* is used as the auxiliary of all transitive, reflexive ^a and impersonal ^b verbs; as also of the verbs of mode ^c and of all objective verbs that govern the genitive ^d and dative ^e, except *begegnen*, *folgen* and *weichen* (see 2.).

2. Intransitive verbs indicating direction from or toward a place or an object, or a change from one condition to another, as also *bleiben*, to remain; *begegnen*, to meet; *folgen*, to follow, and *weichen*, to yield, retreat, are conjugated with the auxiliary *sein* which is here rendered by *have* (§ 71. 5):

Sind sie schon gegang'en?
Der arme Knabe ist gefall'en.

Have they already gone?
The poor boy has fallen.

3. The following verbs, when not expressing direction *from* or *toward* a given place, require the auxiliary *haben*; namely,

a. L. XXIX. 9; b. L. LVII: c. L. XLV; d. L. LXII; e. L. LXIV

eilen, to hasten; fließen, to flow; jagen, to chase, hunt; klettern, to climb; kriechen, to creep, crawl; landen, to land; laufen, to run; quellen, to spring; reisen, to travel; reiten, to ride; rennen, to run; schiffen, to navigate, schwimmen, to swim; segeln, to sail; sinken, to sink; springen, to leap, spring; stoßen, to join; treiben, to drive; wandern, to wander, travel:

Warum' hast du so geeilt?
Hast du nicht heute geritten?
Sie haben nicht viel gereist.

Why have you hastened so!
Have you not ridden to-day?
They have not traveled much.

Some neuter verbs, as liegen, to lie; sitzen, to sit; stehen, to stand, are sometimes used with the auxiliary sein:

Höher war seine Macht nie gestanden. His power never had stood higher

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Ist er denn noch nicht gekommen?
Der Vogel ist weggefliegen.
Sie sind in das Feld gezogen.
Er ist nach Ame'rika gereist.
Er wird schon gegangen sein.
Er war nach der Stadt geeilt.
Warum' sind sie auf das Land geritten?

Has (is) he then not yet come?
The bird has (is) flown away.
They have marched into the field.
He has (is) gone to America.
He will already have (be) gone.
He had hastened to the city.
Why have they ridden into the country.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Begegnen, to meet; | Reifen, to ripen; |
| Eilen, to hasten; | Schleichen, to glide, steal away |
| Entinnen, to escape, p. 346; | Das Schloß, -es, pl. Schlösser, castle |
| Entschlafen, to fall asleep; | Die Schönheit, -, pl. -en, beauty; |
| Der Fels, -es, pl. -en, the rock; | Die Seele, -, pl. -n, the soul; |
| Der Fluß, -es, pl. Flüsse, the river; | Der Stein, -es, pl. -e, the stone; |
| Gelingen, to succeed, p. 348; | Der Strom, -es, pl. Ströme, stream |
| Geschehen, to happen, p. 358; | Der Ton, -es, pl. Töne, the tone; |
| Klettern, to climb; | Die Tugend, -, pl. -en, the virtue; |
| Mißlingen, to fail, p. 352; | Das Unternehm, -en, undertaking |
| Der Plan, -es, pl. Pläne, the plan; | Verschallen, to die away, p. 356 |

EXERCISE 96.

Aufgabe 96.

1. Ist er entschlafen? 2. Nein, er ist uns entronnen. 3. Wie lange ist er gekühen? 4. Sie sind nach der Stadt gefahren. 5. Ist der Mann gefallen? 6. Der Vogel ist geflogen. 7. Ist das

Wasser über das Feld geflossen? 8. Der Plan ist gelungen. 9. Der Knabe ist genesen. 10. Was ist geschehen? 11. Es ist aus der Erde gefroren. 12. Der Hund ist nach dem Walde gelaufen. 13. Das Unternehmen ist mißlungen. 14. Das Wasser ist aus dem Felsen geflossen. 15. Er ist nach der Stadt geritten. 16. Er war in das Haus geschlichen. 17. Er war über den Graben gesprungen. 18. Sie waren aus dem Schlosse getreten. 19. Der letzte Ton war verschollen. 20. Der Baum ist sehr schnell gewachsen. 21. Das Haus wird gefallen sein. 22. Sie werden gekommen sein. 23. Er war auf dem Mast geklettert. 24. Der Knabe ist über den Fluß geschwommen. 25. Einer war uns gefolgt, und der Andere war uns begegnet. 26. Der Schnee ist geschmolzen und die Ströme sind geschwollen. 27. Das Obst ist schnell gereift. 28. Die Jugend ist die Schönheit der Seele. 29. Er war nach der Stadt geeilt.

EXERCISE 97.

Aufgabe 97.

1. Have you remained long enough? 2. Who has gone to the city? 3. Do you know what has happened? 4. The boy has sprung across the ditch. 5. Our plan has not succeeded. 6. The children had hastened into the houses. 7. Has the snow melted? 8. The hunters had climbed upon the trees. 9. Our soldiers had fled, and the enemy had come into our country. 10. He has ridden (on horseback) to the forest, and she has ridden (in a carriage) to the city. 11. The patient has recovered. 12. Has he fallen asleep? 13. How have they escaped us? 14. Our friend has fallen out of the wagon. 15. The young birds have flown out of the nest. 16. The worms have crawled out of the earth. 17. The horse has run out of the stable. 18. The apples had ripened. 19. The water will have flowed into the house. 20. Why have you followed us? 21. Have you met your friends? 22. He may already have gone. 23. Where have they remained so long? 24. The child has crept out of the house.

LESSON XLIX.

Lecſon XLIX.

INFINITIVE WITHOUT *3u*.

1. When the infinitive is preceded by an auxiliary, or by one of the following verbs, the particle *3u* is omitted :

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| bleiben, to remain; | heißen, to command; | lernen, to learn; |
| fahren, to ride; | helfen, to help; | machen, to make; |
| führen, to conduct; | hören, to hear; | nennen, to call, name; |
| fühlen, to feel; | haben, to have; | sehen, to see; |
| finden, to find; | legen, to lay; | thun, to do; |
| gehen, to go; | lehren, to teach; | reiten, to ride. |

The infinitive, when dependent on the above verbs, is frequently best rendered by our present participle :

| | |
|--|--|
| Blieb er sitzen, stehen oder liegen? | Did he remain sitting, standing, or lying? |
| Beiß mich nicht reden, heiße mich schweigen. | Do not bid me speak, bid me be silent. |
| Daß nenne ich schlafen. | That I call sleeping. |
| Ich fühle den Puls schlagen. | I feel the pulse (beat) beating. |
| Ich half ihm arbeiten. | I helped him work. |
| Ich höre ihn kommen. | I hear him coming. |
| Er lehrte mich singen. | He taught me to sing. |
| Ich sah sie laufen. | I saw them running. |
| Ich lerne zeichnen. | I am learning to draw. |
| Er fand mich schlafen. | He found me sleeping. |
| Sie macht mich lachen. | She is making me laugh. |

Obs.—*Beissen*, when used intransitively, often answers to the passive of *to name, call*, or to the noun *name*, with the verb *to be* :

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Er heißt Carl. | He is named (or his name is) Charles. |
| Wie heißt das im Deutschen? | What is that called in German? |
| Heißt das arbeiten? | Do you call that (is that called) working? |

Spaziren WITH *Fahren, Führen, Reiten* AND *Gehen*.

2. *Spaziren* is used chiefly with *fahren, führen, reiten* and *gehen*, and implies *exercise* for the purpose of recreation or pleasure :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Ich gehe spaziren, Sie fahren | I go walking, you ride (in a carriage), |
| spaziren, und er reitet spaziren. | and he rides on horseback. |
| Ich gehe alle Tage spaziren. | I go walking every day. |

Wir machten einen langen Spaziergang. We took (made) a long walk.
 Er reitet oft, aber nie spaziren. He rides often, but never for pleasure.

3. The infinitive (usually without *zu*) often stands as the subject or object of a verb :

Es ist besser Unrecht leiden als Unrecht thun. It is better to suffer wrong than to do wrong.
 Seinen Feinden vergehen ist edel. To forgive one's (his) enemies is noble.

4. The infinitive (commonly preceded by the article or a pronoun) is used as a neuter noun, and answers to the participial noun in English :

Das Lügen schadet dem Lügner am meisten. (The) lying injures the liar the most.
 Das Lesen bei einem schwachen Lichte ist den Augen schädlich. Reading by a feeble light is injurious to the eyes.

5. The infinitive with *zu* follows *anstatt*, *ohne* and *um*. *Um*, denoting mere purpose or design, may be rendered *in order*, or often wholly omitted in translation :

Er spielt anstatt zu lesen. He plays instead of reading.
 Er ist krank ohne es zu wissen. He is sick without knowing it.
 Er liest um zu lernen. He reads (in order) to learn.
 Er war zu schwach um die Arbeit zu vollenden. He was too weak to finish the work.

6. The infinitive active is often used in a passive sense :

Dieses Haus ist zu vermietzen und jenes zu verkaufen. This house is to let, and that one is to be sold (to sell).
 Er läßt das Brod holen. He has the bread brought.
 Er läßt ihn das Brod holen. He has him go for the bread.

7. *Wissen* often has the signification of *to know how*, *to be able*, followed by an infinitive :

Er weiß sich zu helfen. He knows how to help himself.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Du Schwert an meiner Linken, was soll dein heitres Blinken?—Kr. Thou sword upon my left, what means thy cheerful gleaming?
 Sie hatte eine Wanduhr im Hause stehen. She had a clock standing in the house.

| | |
|--|--|
| Es ist keine Zeit zu verlie'ren. | There is no time to lose. |
| Er ist nach Deutschland gereist, um die Sprache zu lernen. | He has gone to Germany (in order) to learn the language. |
| Ich höre dich an, ohne dich zu unterbrech'en. | I listen to you, without interrupting you. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Albern, silly; | Das Holz, -es, pl. Hölzer, the wood |
| Anstatt, instead of; | Lehren, to teach; |
| Beschalten, to keep, retain, p. 350; | Die Lust, -, pl. Luste, inclination; |
| Das Bild, -es, pl. Bilder, the picture, image; | Das Märchen, -s, pl. -, tale, story. |
| fegen, to sweep; | Spazir'en, see 2; |
| Das Gefängniß, -es, pl. -e, prison; | Studi'rn, to study; |
| Gehorh'en, to obey; | Unschuldig, innocent; |
| Gleich, immediately; | Die Ursache, -, pl. -n, the cause; |
| Holen, to fetch, see p. 485. | Vermie'then, to let. |

EXERCISE 98.

Aufgabe 98.

1. Heißen Sie ihn gehen oder bleiben? 2. Einer lehrt mich französisch sprechen, und der andere lernt es lesen. 3. Die Nachtigall wird sich bald hören lassen. 4. Diese Matrosen werden morgen oder übermorgen fischen gehen. 5. Der alte Bauer hat viel guten alten Wein im Keller liegen. 6. Befehlen ist leicht, gehorchen schwer. 7. Ich liebe das Lesen, aber ich hasse das Schreiben. 8. Wir sind keines unhöflichen Betragens herzlich müde. 9. Sie ist ganz unschuldig, welche Ursache hat sie denn traurig zu sein? 10. Ich habe weder Zeit noch Lust sein Singen zu hören. 11. Jeder gute Schüler weiß wann die Reihe an ihm ist zu lesen. 12. Ein so albernés Märchen ist nicht zu glauben. 13. Sie lassen ihren Bedienten ihr Zimmer fegen. 14. Der Richter ließ den Verbrecher ins Gefängniß werfen. 15. Lebe um zu lernen, und lerne um zu leben. 16. Er weiß zu leben und sich das Leben angenehm zu machen. 17. Die Kinder sind spaziren gefahren, und die Schüler sind spaziren geritten. 18. Er ist fischen gegangen, anstatt zu studiren. 19. Holen Sie den Thee? 20. Nein, ich lasse ihn holen. 21. Er läßt mich das Bild noch behalten.

EXERCISE 99.

Aufgabe 99.

1. Who taught you to speak German? 2. I learned to speak it in Germany. 3. This stupid boy remained sitting the whole

evening. 4. The man had a small table standing beside his bed. 5. We shall not have time to see our friends this evening. 6. My mother taught me to sing and my brother teaches me to play. 7. When shall you go a fishing, to-morrow, or day after to-morrow? 8. Why have our friends been to the city without visiting us? 9. They went to their cousins instead of coming to us. 10. I am tired of his singing. 11. They have books enough but not time to read them. 12. These houses are to be let. 13. This man has something to say to your friend. 14. The captain is getting a new coat made. 15. The general caused the innocent soldier to be thrown into prison. 16. This man's conduct is not to be praised. 17. This silly story is not to be believed. 18. Is it not your turn to read? 19. We must go immediately, there is no time to lose. 20. Why does he go for the wood?



LESSON L.

Lektion L.

PARTICIPLES AND IMPERATIVE.

1. Present participles attributively used have the same government as the verbs from which they are derived, and, when the object is expressed, precede it; when predicative, however, their character is simply that of an adjective:

Mein Gold suchender Freund.

My gold-seeking friend.

Der ihn lobende Lehrer.

The teacher who praises him.

Die Aussicht war reizend.

The prospect was charming.

Die Hitze war drückend.

The heat was oppressive.

2 The perfect participle sometimes answers to our present participle; or, like many other words, it may often be varied or omitted in translation, according to the different idioms in the two languages:

Heulend kommt der Sturm geflo'gen.— Howling comes the storm flying
(flown).

Er kam die Straße hergezo'gen.

He came (moving) along the street.

Das Geld ist verlo'ren gegang'en.

The money is (gone) lost.

3. The past participle may be used as the imperative :

Nicht so laut gesprochen.
 Fleißig gearbeitet.

Do not speak so loud.
 Labor diligently.

4. There is a third or future participle formed only from transitive verbs by adding *d* to the infinitive preceded by *zu*; it always has a passive signification, and implies necessity or obligation :

Die zu fürchtende Gefahr'.
 Das zu bauende Haus.

The to-be-feared danger
 The house (which is) to be built.

IMPERATIVE.

5. When the *second* person of the imperative is used, the subject is generally omitted; when, however, the *third* person is used, the subject is expressed :

Karl, bringe mir dein Buch.
 Kinder, geht in das Haus.
 Karl, bringen Sie mir Ihr Buch.
 Schicke er das Pferd morgen.
 So sei es, sagte er.

Charles, bring me your book.
 Children, go into the house.
 Charles, bring me your book.
 Send the horse to-morrow.
 So be it (so let it be), said he.

Obs.—The present indicative of the auxiliary *sein* is often *best* omitted in translation, and the main verb rendered by our imperative (see imperative L. 38.):

Du sollst es thun.
 Der Johann soll kommen.

Do it yourself (you shall do it).
 Let John come (have John come).

6. *Dadurch*, *daß* before a finite verb often answers to *by* before a present participle :

Man schadet euch dadurch, daß man euch zu sehr lobt.
 You are injured *by* being praised too much.

Literally, you are thereby injured, that you are too much praised.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Hat er noch nicht die erwünschte Antwort erhalten?

Has he not yet received the final (determinate) answer?

Setze dich zum wärmenden Feuer.

Seat thyself at the warming fire.

Kein Dorn verletz die eilenden Füße, und keine schleichende Schlange bringe Ferse.

May no thorn wound thy (the) hastening feet, and no secret serpent thy heel.

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Rosen auf den Weg gestreut und des | Let roses on the path be strown, |
| Sarms vergessen.— <i>Sy.</i> | and sorrow be forgot. |
| Das ausgegebene Geld ist noch nicht | The money to be spent has not yet |
| erhal'ten. | been received. |
| Er schadet sich dadurch, daß er zu viel | He injures himself in sleer'ng too |
| schläft. | much. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Der Albrecht, -s, (the) Albert; | Die Knoche, -, pl. -n, the bud; |
| Die Anstalt, -, pl. -en, preparation; | Kühn, bold; |
| Behandeln, to treat; | Der Landmann, -es, pl. -leute, the |
| Beitra'sen, to punish; | peasant, husbandman; |
| Blösen, to bleat; | Der Laut, -es, pl. -e, sound, voice; |
| Brennen, to burn, p. 346. | Niemals, never; |
| Brüllen, to low; | Regie'ren, to govern; |
| Dadurch, by this, thereby; | Schäumen, to foam; |
| Erweck'en, to awaken; | Der Schlag, -es, pl. Schläge, blow; |
| Das Euro'pa, -s, (the) Europe; | Schwanke, to stagger, reel; |
| Die Hast, -, the haste; | Das Vieh, -es, pl. -e, the cattle; |
| Der Huf, -es, pl. -e, the hoof; | Die Welle, -, pl. -n, the wave; |
| Reuhen, to gasp; | Betret'ten, to tread down, p. 356. |

EXERCISE 100.

Aufgabe 100.

1. Der brausende Wind treibt das schwanfende Schiff durch die schäumenden Wellen. 2. "Dort kommt ein Mann in voller Hast gelaufen." 3. Der alte Mann schrieb mit zitternder Hand. 4. Er reitet geschwind, und hält in dem Arm das seufzende Kind. 5. So sei es, spricht Albrecht mit donnerndem Laut. 6. Dieser Mann ist ein zu bestrafender Verbrecher. 7. Der lächelnde Frühling erweckt die schlafenden Blumen. 8. Die krennende Sonne schmelzt den glänzenden Schnee. 9. Ihr Bruder ist ein zu beneidender Mensch. 10. Der kühne Taucher wirft sich in die brausende Fluth. 11. Bringe mir meinen Mantel und meine Handschuhe. 12. Schicken Sie Ihren Berienten zu mir. 13. Ein schlafender Hund fängt keinen Hasen. 14. Und keuchend lag ich, wie ein Sterbender, zertreten unter ihrer Hufe Schlag. 15. Du überntimmst die spanischen Regimenter, machst immer Anstalt und bist niemals fertig, und treiben sie dich gegen mich zu ziehen, so sagst du ja, und bleibst gezeffelt stehn (L. 38. d.).

EXERCISE 101.

Aufgabe 101.

1. The falling snow covers the fallen tree. 2. The horse comes running, the bird comes flying. 3. Give the trembling

old man a coat. 4. My friend is a very learned man. 5. I hear the singing birds and the bleating sheep. 6. The smiling spring brings us beautiful flowers. 7. So be it, said the king smiling. 8. He has the weeping child in his arm. 9. The burning sun drives the lowing cattle into the forest. 10. The foaming wave flies over the trembling ship. 11. The snow melts before the burning sun. 12. A standing tree is more beautiful than a fallen one. 13. The hoping husbandman sees with joy the swelling buds. 14. Do not sing so loud. 15. Who is the most learned man in Europe? 16. These travelers call themselves traveling artists. 17. He governs them by treating them kindly.



LESSON LI.

Section LI.

COMPOUND VERBS SEPARABLE.

1. Any of the following particles may be compounded with a verb; and as they may stand apart from it, they are called separable particles *or* prefixes (§ 89); namely, *a* *f*, from, off, down; *a* *n*, to, at, in, on, toward; *a* *u* *f*, on, up; *a* *u* *s*, out, out of, from; *b* *e* *i*, by, near, with; *d* *a* *o* *r* *d* *a* *r*, there, at; *e* *i* *n*, in, into; *e* *m* *p* *o* *r'*, up, upward, on high; *f* *o* *r* *t*, onward, away, forward; *g* *e* *g* *e* *n*, toward, against; *h* *e* *i* *m*, home, at home; *h* *e* *r*, hither, here; *h* *i* *n*, thither, there, away; *i* *n*, in, within; *m* *i* *t*, with; *n* *a* *c* *h*, after; *n* *i* *e* *d* *e* *r*, down, downward, under; *o* *b*, on, over, on account of; *v* *o* *r*, before, from; *w* *e* *g*, away, off; *z* *u*, to, toward; and *z* *u* *r* *ü* *c*, back, backward (§ 89—91).

2. In compound tenses, formed from the infinitive and an auxiliary, and in subordinate sentences, the particle is placed before the verb :

Er wird bald ankommen.

He will soon arrive.

Wir müssen ausgehen (§ 93).

We must go out.

Obs.—In like manner are used with verbs several nouns sometimes written with a capital and sometimes with a small initial: and adjectives; as, das Concert wird Statt finden (*or* stattfinden), the concert will take place; er wird ihm Troß bieten (*or* troßbieten), he will refuse defiance; er wird ihn tödt[s]lagen, he will kill him.

3. *zu* of the infinitive, when used, and the augment *ge* of the past participle, are placed between the particle and the verb:

| | |
|--|----------------------------|
| Es ist Zeit <i>auszugehen</i> (<i>not zu ausgehen</i>). | It is time to go out. |
| Es ist Unrecht ihn <i>aufzuhalten</i> (<i>not zu aufhalten</i>). | It is wrong to detain him. |
| Er hat mich <i>aufgehalten</i> (<i>not ge-aufhalten</i>). | He has detained me. |
| Sie sind <i>ausgegangen</i> (<i>not ge-ausgegangen</i>). | They have gone out. |

Obs.—Verbs derived from compound nouns or adjectives, follow the conjugation of simple verbs, i. e. take the augment, and *zu* of the infinitive, before the entire word; as, er hat *gefürhstet*, he has breakfasted; es ist *schwer zu handhaben*, it is difficult to manage; es hat *gewetterleuchtet*, it has lightened.

4. In principal sentences and simple tenses the particle is placed at the *end* of the sentence:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Die Gäste <i>kommen eben an</i> . | The guests are just arriving. |
| Warum' <i>gehen Sie aus?</i> | Why are you going out? |
| Er <i>brach die Blume ab</i> . | He broke off the flower. |
| Hielt er den Boten <i>auf?</i> | Did he detain the messenger? |

5. When one of these particles is prefixed to a verb not accented on the first syllable, *zu* of the infinitive follows the prefix, and the augment *ge* is rejected:

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Er ist <i>zu stolz es an-zu-erkennen</i> . | He is too proud to acknowledge it. |
| Er hat <i>es an-erkannt</i> . | He has acknowledged it. |

6. These compounds generally take a signification different from, but often kindred to that of the components used separately:

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Ich <i>stehe meinem Freunde bei</i> . | I assist (stand by) my friend. |
| Ich <i>stehe bei meinem Freunde</i> . | I stand by (near) my friend. |
| Er <i>stellte sich mir vor</i> . | He introduced himself to me. |
| Er <i>stellte sich vor mich</i> . | He placed himself before me. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Kann er den Stein <i>aufheben?</i> | Can he lift up the stone? |
| Er <i>hebt den Stein auf</i> . | He lifts the stone up. |
| Sie sollten ihn <i>nicht aufhalten</i> . | You should not detain him. |
| Er mag <i>nicht einschlafen</i> . | He does not wish to go to sleep. |
| Sie sind es, der mich <i>aufhält</i> . | It is you who detain me. |
| Er ist <i>böse, weil Sie ausgehen</i> . | He is angry because you go out. |
| Sie ist <i>traurig, weil er die Blume abbrach</i> . | She is sad because he broke off the flower. |

| | |
|---|--|
| Die glücklichsten Stunden seines Lebens bringt er unter den Blumen zu.—N. | The happiest hours of his life he spends among the flowers. |
| Der Weise zieht das Nützliche dem Unangenehmen, und das Nothwendige dem Nützlichen vor. | The wise man prefers the useful to the agreeable, and the necessary to the useful. |
| Im Winter ruhet die Erde aus und sammelt neue Kräfte. | In (the) winter the earth reposes and collects new powers. |
| Warum' ist er schon ausgegangen, und warum wünschen Sie auszugehen? | Why has he already gone out and why do you wish to go out? |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Abmatten, to weary; | Einsammeln, to gather; |
| Abgeschrieben, to copy, p. 354; | Eitern, to fester; |
| Absteigen, to descend, p. 356; | Erfüll'en, to fill, fulfill, do; |
| Adelt, genuine; | Die Feldfrucht, —, pl. —früchte, the produce of the field; |
| Anfangen, to begin, p. 348; | Das Gebirge, —s, pl. —, the chain of mountains; |
| Anziehen, to put on, p. 358; | Das Geschwür', —s, pl. —, the ulcer; |
| Aufgehen, to rise, p. 348; | Das Heil, —s, the welfare; |
| Aufschneiden, to cut open, p. 354; | Sanft, soft; |
| Aufspeichern, to store up; | Schaffen, to create, produce; |
| Aufsteigen, to rise, p. 356; | Wegfliegen, to fly away, p. 348; |
| Ausdreschen, to thrash out, 346; | Weggehen, to go away, p. 348; |
| Ausgehen, to go out, p. 348; | Weglaufen, to run away, 350; |
| Aushalten, to sustain, p. 350; | Wegnehmen, to take away, 352. |
| Aussprechen, to pronounce, 356; | |
| Die Belagerung, —, pl. —en, the siege; | |

EXERCISE 102.

Aufgabe 102.

1. Haben Sie Ihre Bücher weggenommen? 2. Ja, ich nahm sie weg als ich ausging. 3. Gehen Ihre Freunde heute aus? 4. Nein, sie sind schon ausgegangen. 5. Schreibt der Knabe den Brief ab? 6. Nein, er hat ihn schon gestern abgeschrieben. 7. Der fleißige Bauer hat seine Feldfrüchte eingesammelt, ausgedroschen und aufgespeichert. 8. Um welche Zeit geht die Sonne auf? 9. Sie ist schon aufgegangen. 10. Der Mond steigt hinter dem Gebirge auf und erfüllt die Erde mit seinem sanften Lichte. 11. Die tadelnde Wahrheit des ächten Freundes ist das Messer des Wundarztes, das ein eiterndes Geschwür aufschneidet; es schafft Schmerzen, aber zum Heile des Leidenden. 12. Der Vogel ist weggeflogen und das Pferd ist weggelaufen. 13. Ich habe meine Handschuhe angezogen, und jetzt ziehe ich meine Ueberschuhe an. 14. Die müden Reiter sind von ihren abgematteten Pferden abgestiegen. 15. Sie sprechen die deutschen Wörter sehr gut aus. 16. Sie halten die Belagerung nicht aus.

EXERCISE 103.

Aufgabe 103.

1. Who has taken away my gloves and your umbrella? 2. Your brother took away your gloves yesterday. 3. At what time do you go out this evening? 4. I shall not go out this evening, I went out this morning. 5. When will your friends go away? 6. They have already gone away. 7. Can you pronounce these words well? 8. I can pronounce them, but not very well. 9. Have you already begun to read German? 10. No, but I shall begin to-morrow, my friend began yesterday. 11. Does he pronounce well? 12. Yes, he pronounces very well. 13. Why don't you take away your table? 14. I have not time to take it away. 15. I am copying letters for my friend who went away yesterday. 16. He understands what you say, but he can not pronounce the German words well.



LESSON LII.

Lection LII.

ADVERBS.

1. The adverbs *da*, there; *dort*, yonder; *hier*, here, and *wo*, where, are used with verbs of rest, or with those indicating action *within* specified limits:

Wer ist da? Hier stehe ich.

Who is there? Here I stand.

Dort spielen die Kinder; wo sind die Eltern?

Yonder the children are playing,
where are the parents?

2. *Her*, *hither*, and *hin*, *thither*, when compounded with other words, as *da*, etc. (§ 91) still retain their distinctive meanings; *her* indicating motion or tendency *toward*, and *hin*, *from* the speaker. As, however, these particles in compounds have no precise equivalents in English, their force is often lost in translating:

Wer ist da, und wer geht dahin?

Who is *there*, and who goes *thither*?

Bleibe hier, er wird bald hierher kommen.

Remain *here*, he will soon come *here* (*hither*).

Wo ist der Amtmann, und wohin geht er?

Where is the magistrate, and *where* (*whither*) is he going?

Direction toward the speaker.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Er sprang heraus'. | He sprang out (hither). |
| Er stieg herauf. | He ascended (hither). |
| Er steigt herab'. | He descends (hither). |
| Er kam herunter. | He came down (hither). |
| Er ruderte zu uns herü'ber. | He rowed across (hither) to us. |

Direction from the speaker.

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Er sprang hinaus'. | He sprang out (thither). |
| Er stieg hinauf. | He ascended (thither). |
| Er steigt hinab'. | He descends (thither). |
| Er ging hinunter. | He went down (thither). |
| Er ruderte zu ihnen hin ü'ber. | He rowed across (thither) to them. |

3. *Her* and *hin* are often separated from *wo*, and placed at the end of the sentence. They are also sometimes used with verbs of rest; *hin*, in the signification of *past, gone*; and *her*, denoting proximity:

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Wo gehen Sie hin? | Whither are you going? |
| Wo kommt er her? | Whence is he coming? |
| Der Sommer ist schon hin. | The summer is already past. |
| Sie standen um ihn her. | They stood round about him. |

4. These compounds after the dative preceded by a preposition, or after the accusative, are usually rendered by a preposition before the objective:

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Er flog zum Fenster hinaus'. | He flew out of the window. |
| Sie kamen die Treppe herunter. | They came down the stairs. |

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

5. Adverbs are formed by the union of nouns with nouns, nouns with pronouns, nouns with adjectives, nouns with prepositions, adverbs with prepositions and prepositions with prepositions:

| | | |
|----------------------|----------------|---|
| Schaarenweise, | in hordes; | (Schaar, horde; Weise, manner). |
| Glücklicherweise, or | } fortunately; | (glücklich, fortunate; Weise, man- ner). |
| Glücklicher Weise, | | |
| Weinerseits, | for my part; | (mein, my; Seite, side). |
| Stromauf, | up stream; | (Strom, stream; auf, up). |
| Woburch, | whereby; | (wo, where; durch, through) |
| Ueberaus, | exceedingly; | (über, above; aus, out of). |

6. Adverbs are formed from various parts of speech by means of the suffixes *lich*, *lings*, *wärts*, & (§ 103—106) :

täglich, daily; blindlings, blindly; aufwärts, upward;
flugs, suddenly; rechts, to the right; links, left (to the left);
morgens, in the morning, abends, in the evening; anders, otherwise.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Der Feldherr sitzt auf dem Pferde und reitet ruhig längs den Reihen der Soldaten hin und her. The general sits upon the horse and rides calmly along the ranks of the soldiers to and fro.
Diese Einwanderer kommen aus Böhmen her. These immigrants come here (hither) from Bohemia.
Das Leben des Menschen schwankt wie ein Rasen, hinüber und herüber. The life of man, like a skiff, wavers (vacillates) to and fro.
Und hinein' mit bedächtigem Schritt ein Löwe tritt.—S. And thither (therein) with considerate step a lion strides.
Ein Thor sucht blindlings Ruhm im Labyrinth der Schande.—S-n. A fool blindly seeks renown in the labyrinth of infamy.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Dahin, thither, there; | Sinauf, up; |
| Feindlich, hostile; | Sinaus, out; |
| Die Gefahr, -, pl. -en, the danger; | Sinü'ber, over, across; |
| Die Gewalt, -, pl. -en, the power; | Der Lauf, -es, pl. Läufe, the course, |
| Her, hither; | Das Meer, -es, pl. -e, the sea; |
| Heran, on, near; | Der Morgen, -s, pl. -, the morning; |
| Herü'ber, over, across; | Die Perle, -, pl. -n, the pearl; |
| Herun'ter, down; | Reisen, to travel; |
| Hierher, hither, here; | Der Sturm, -es, pl. Stürme, storm; |
| Hin, thither, away; | Tauchen, to dive; |
| Hinab, down; | Wohl, well, probably. |

EXERCISE 104.

Aufgabe 104.

1. Wo ist der Zimmermann? 2. Er ist in Deutschland, sein Freund ist auch da. 3. Reisen Sie auch dahin? 4. Entweder reise ich dahin, oder er kommt hierher. 5. Wo gehen unsere Freunde hin? 6. Sie gehen nach dem Dorfe; sollen wir auch dahin gehen? 7. Wir wollen heute hier bleiben und morgen dahin gehen. 8. Wollen Sie den Berg hinauf gehen? 9. Wo kommt ihr her und wo geht ihr hin? 10. Wir kommen aus Schwaben und gehen nach Preußen. 11. "Der Mann muß (L. 45. 15.) hinaus in's feindliche Leben." 12. Wir wissen wohl wo jene fleißigen Arbeiter hingegangen sind.

13. Der Taucher taucht in das Meer hinab, um Perlen heraufzuholen. 14. Bei großen Stürmen sind die Schiffe oft in Gefahr, denn die Wellen schlagen mit Gewalt heran, das Schiff schwankt hinüber und herüber. 15. Des Morgens schreibt er und des Abends liest er. 16. Hinab, hinauf geht unser Lauf.

EXERCISE 105.

Aufgabe 105.

1. Where are you going? 2. I am going to the village, will you go there too? 3. I shall go there the day after to-morrow, but not to-day. 4. The boy sprang down in the water. 5. Our friends are in Greece and we shall also go there. 6. Are your cousins coming here? 7. No, for they are already here. 8. Have you ever traveled from Germany to Russia? 9. The carpenter fell down from the roof. 10. The horse ran down the mountain. 11. The boys went up the street. 12. We must go to the forest, will you go there with us? 13. No, we must remain where we are. 14. I will go up if you will come down. 15. Have you ever been in Russia?

LESSON LIII.

Section LIII.

COLLOCATION OF WORDS.

WORDS REQUIRING THE VERBS AT THE END OF THE SENTENCE.

1. When the subordinate clause is introduced by either of the following words, the verb (as with the relative pronoun *L. 39. 5.*) is placed at the end of the sentence; namely:

Als, when, than; *bevor*, *ehe*, before; *bis*, till; *da*, since; *damit*, in order that; *daß*, that; *falls*, if, in case; *indem*, while, in that; *insofern*, (with *als* implied) in so far; *je* (*L. 32. 11.*) *nachdem*, after that, when; *ob*, whether, if; *seit*, *seitdem*, since; *so*, thus, if; *obungeachtet* or *ungeachtet*, notwithstanding; *während*, while; *wann*, when; *warum*, why; *weil* (*dieweil*) because; *wenn*, if; *wie*, as, when; *wo*, where if.

COMPOUNDS UNDER THE SAME RULE

Are *obgleich*, *obſchon*, *obwohl*, or *ob gleich*, *ob ſchon*, *ob wohl*, *wenn auch*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn ſchon*, ALTHOUGH, EVEN IF; *dafern*, *wofern*, if, in case that; *auf daß*, so that; *als ob* and *als wenn*, as if.

Obs.—*Wenn auch*, *wenn gleich* and *wenn ſchon*, though often rendered *although*, (like *ob wohl*, and the words preceding it) are more strongly concessive than the former, and usually best rendered by *even though*.

WORDS FOLLOWED BY THE CORRELATIVE *ſo*.

2. *Da*, *obgleich*, *obſchon*, *obwohl*, *weil*, *wenn* and *wie* are usually followed by the correlative *ſo* at the head of a succeeding clause :

Da ich einmal hier bin, ſo will ich auch bleiben. Since I am (once) here I will (also) remain.
Weil er mein Freund iſt, ſo muß ich ihm beistehen. Because he is my friend I must assist (stand by) him.
Wenn es Ihnen möglich iſt, ſo kommen Sie. If it is possible (for you, then) come.

THE CORRELATIVE *ſo* FOLLOWED BY *doch* OR *dennoch*.

3. When *obgleich*, or either of the concessive conjunctions, stands at the head of the *first* sentence, the correlative *ſo*, of the next, is usually followed by *doch* or *dennoch* :

Wenn er auch nicht beſſer iſt, ſo iſt er doch nicht ſchlechter. Although he is not better, he is nevertheless not worse.
Ob man es ihm gleich beſah, ſo unterließ er es dennoch. Although it was commanded him, he neglected it nevertheless.
Obgleich er reich iſt, iſt er (or ſo iſt er) doch ein Schnauffer. Although he is rich, he is nevertheless a niggard.
Wenn er ſchon böſe ausſieht, ſo meint er es doch nicht ſo böſe. Even though he seems ill-natured (bad) still he does not intend it so badly.

Obs.—*Wenn*, however, is often omitted and the verb placed *before* its subject :

Iſt es Ihnen möglich, ſo kommen Sie. If it is possible (for you, then) come.

4. *Aber*, *all'in*, *denn*, *entweder*, *oder*, *nämlich*, *ſondern* and *und*, do not change the natural order of the sentence :

Sie iſt nicht ſchön, aber ſie iſt liebenswürdig. She is not beautiful, but she is amiable.

5. When a sentence begins with any other word than its subject, except as already specified, the main verb, or its auxiliary, usually precedes the subject. For the sake of special emphasis, the verb, followed by an adversative clause, may be placed at the head of the sentence :

| | |
|---|--|
| Warum hat er nicht gelesen ? | Why has he not read ? |
| Gelesen hat er, aber nicht laut. | He <i>has</i> read, but not loud. |
| Denn ihn habe ich beleidigt. | For him have I offended. |
| Diesen Mann kenne ich, aber jenen habe ich nie gesehen. | This man I know, but that one I never have seen. |
| Fänger kann ich nicht warten. | Longer I can not wait. |
| Da liegt Ihr Buch. | Here lies your book. |

Obs.—As the same word may be an adverb or a conjunction, it may require the construction of the relative sentence, or the inversion of subject and verb :

| | |
|---|---|
| Da kommt Ihr Freund. | There comes your friend. |
| Da Ihr Freund kommt, so will ich warten. | As your friend is coming I will wait. |
| Damit bin ich zufrieden. | With that I am satisfied. |
| Damit ich nicht zu gehen brauche, geht er selbst. | In order that I may not need to go he goes himself. |

6. Sometimes a causal conjunction in a leading clause is best omitted in translating :

| | |
|--|--|
| Er ist deshalb unzufrieden, weil sein Freund nicht hier ist. | He is (—) discontented because his friend is not here. |
|--|--|

7. Adverbs (*except* genug) precede the adjectives and adverbs which they qualify :

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Es ist schon ziemlich kalt. | It is already pretty cold. |
| Der Hut ist groß genug. | The hat is large enough. |

8. Adverbs follow the verbs that they qualify (in compound tenses the *first* auxiliary); those of time preceding those of place :

| | |
|--|---|
| Er war gestern hier. | He was here yesterday. |
| Sie kommen oft zu uns. | They often come to our house. |
| Er wird morgen hier sein. | He will be here to-morrow. |
| Wir besuchen ihn oft, aber er besucht uns nie. | We often visit him, but he never visits us. |
| Er wird diesen Abend nach der Stadt fahren. | He will drive to the city this afternoon. |

9. Adverbs of time precede the object (except when it is a personal pronoun); while those of manner, referring exclusively to the verb, commonly follow the object :

| | |
|--|---|
| Er machte gestern seine Arbeit sehr schlecht. | He did his work yesterday very badly. |
| Er hat gestern seine Arbeit sehr schlecht gemacht'. | He has done his work (yesterday) very badly. (See L. 38. 3.). |
| Er hat sie heute besser gemacht'. | He has done it better to-day. |
| Er hat mir gestern diese Mittheilung schriftlich gemacht'. | He made this communication to me yesterday in writing. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Es verdrießt' ihn, daß man ihn nicht holen ließ. | He is vexed that he was not sent for. |
| Je mehr man hat, je (or desto) mehr will man haben. | The more one has the more one wants (wishes to have). |
| Man muß sehen, ob er es thun wird. | One must see whether he will do it. |
| In der Tugend allein' findet der Weise Zufriedenheit. | In (the) virtue alone the wise man finds contentment. |
| Nur mit dem Leben werden unsere Leiden aufhören. | Only with life will our sufferings cease. |
| Daß diese Sprache schwieriger als die englische ist, haben Sie wohl schon eingesehen. | That this language is more difficult than the English, you have probably already seen. |
| Nie habe ich sie gemie'den und schließlich werde ich ihnen (L. 63. 3.) ganz entgehen.—S. | Never have I avoided them, and hardly shall I entirely escape them. |
| Dem Friedlichen gewährt man gern den Frieden.—S. | To the peaceful man one willingly accords peace. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Ankommen, to arrive, p. 350 ; | Der Raufen, -s, pl. -, the boat ; |
| Bis, till ; | Der Nebel, -s, pl. -, the mist ; |
| Der Bürger, -s, pl. -, the citizen ; | Ob, whether ; |
| Der Dampf, -es, pl. Dämpfe, steam, exhalation ; | Der Regen, -s, the rain ; |
| Doch, yet, however ; | Seitdem, since ; |
| Der Dunst, -es, pl. Dünste, vapor ; | Träge, idle ; |
| Endlich, at last, finally ; | Unglücklich, unhappy ; |
| Entstehen, to arise, originate ; | Unzählig, innumerable ; |
| Gott, -es, God ; | Verbinden, to unite, p. 346 ; |
| Je-beste, L. 32. 11 ; | Vertheidi'gen, to defend ; |
| Je nachdem, according as ; | Die Waffen, pl. the arms, weapons ; |
| Die Kraft, -, pl. Kräfte the force ; | Zeigen, to show. |

5. When a sentence begins with any other word than its subject, except as already specified, the main verb, or its auxiliary, usually precedes the subject. For the sake of special emphasis, the verb, followed by an adversative clause, may be placed at the head of the sentence :

| | |
|---|--|
| Warum hat er nicht gelesen ? | Why has he not read ? |
| Gelesen hat er, aber nicht laut. | He <i>has</i> read, but not loud. |
| Denn ihn habe ich beleidigt. | For him have I offended. |
| Diesen Mann kenne ich, aber jenen habe ich nie gesehen. | This man I know, but that one I never have seen. |
| Fänger kann ich nicht warten. | Longer I can not wait. |
| Da liegt Ihr Buch. | Here lies your book. |

Obs.—As the same word may be an adverb or a conjunction, it may require the construction of the relative sentence, or the inversion of subject and verb :

| | |
|---|---|
| Da kommt Ihr Freund. | There comes your friend. |
| Da Ihr Freund kommt, so will ich warten. | As your friend is coming I will wait. |
| Damit bin ich zufrieden. | With that I am satisfied. |
| Damit ich nicht zu gehen brauche, geht er selbst. | In order that I may not need to go he goes himself. |

6. Sometimes a causal conjunction in a leading clause is best omitted in translating :

| | |
|--|--|
| Er ist deshalb unzufrieden, weil sein Freund nicht hier ist. | He is (—) discontented because his friend is not here. |
|--|--|

7. Adverbs (*except* genug) precede the adjectives and adverbs which they qualify :

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Es ist schon ziemlich kalt. | It is already pretty cold. |
| Der Hut ist groß genug. | The hat is large enough. |

8. Adverbs follow the verbs that they qualify (in compound tenses the *first* auxiliary); those of time preceding those of place :

| | |
|--|---|
| Er war gestern hier. | He was here yesterday. |
| Sie kommen oft zu uns. | They often come to our house. |
| Er wird morgen hier sein. | He will be here to-morrow. |
| Wir besuchen ihn oft, aber er besucht uns nie. | We often visit him, but he never visits us. |
| Er wird diesen Abend nach der Stadt fahren. | He will drive to the city this afternoon. |

9. Adverbs of time precede the object (except when it is a personal pronoun); while those of manner, referring exclusively to the verb, commonly follow the object :

| | |
|---|---|
| Er machte gestern seine Arbeit sehr schlecht. | He did his work yesterday very badly. |
| Er hat gestern seine Arbeit sehr schlecht gemacht'. | He has done his work (yesterday) very badly. (See L. 38. 3.). |
| Er hat sie heute besser gemacht'. | He has done it better to-day. |
| Er hat mir gestern diese Mitteilung schriftlich gemacht'. | He made this communication to me yesterday in writing. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Es verbrießt ihn, daß man ihn nicht holen ließ. | He is vexed that he was not sent for. |
| Je mehr man hat, je (or desto) mehr will man haben. | The more one has the more one wants (wishes to have). |
| Man muß sehen, ob er es thun wird. | One must see whether he will do it. |
| In der Tugend allein' findet der Weise Zufriedenheit. | In (the) virtue alone the wise man finds contentment. |
| Nur mit dem Leben werden unsere Leiden aufhören. | Only with life will our sufferings cease. |
| Daß diese Sprache schwieriger als die englische ist, haben Sie wohl schon eingesehen. | That this language is more difficult than the English, you have probably already seen. |
| Nie habe ich sie gemieden und schließlich werde ich ihnen (L. 63. 3.) ganz entgegen.—S. | Never have I avoided them, and hardly shall I entirely escape them. |
| Dem Friedlichen gewährt man gern den Frieden.—S. | To the peaceful man one willingly accords peace. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Ankommen, to arrive, p. 350 ; | Der Nachen, -s, pl. -, the boat ; |
| Bis, till ; | Der Nebel, -s, pl. -, the mist ; |
| Der Bürger, -s, pl. -, the citizen ; | Ob, whether ; |
| Der Dampf, -es, pl. Dämpfe, steam, exhalation ; | Der Regen, -s, the rain ; |
| Doch, yet, however ; | Seitdem, since ; |
| Der Dunst, -es, pl. Dünste, vapor ; | Träge, idle ; |
| Endlich, at last, finally ; | Unglücklich, unhappy ; |
| Entstehen, to arise, originate ; | Unzählig, innumerable ; |
| Gott, -es, God ; | Verbinden, to unite, p. 346 ; |
| Je-beste, L. 32. 11 ; | Vertheiligen, to defend ; |
| Je nachdem, according as ; | Die Waffen, pl. the arms, weapons ; |
| Die Kraft, -, pl. Kräfte, the force ; | Zeigen, to show. |

EXERCISE 106.

Aufgabe 106.

1. Endlich zeigten die Bürger ihre Waffen, und fingen an sich zu vertheidigen. 2. Ich hatte ihn gesehen, ehe seine Freunde angekommen waren. 3. Warten Sie bis ich den Brief gelesen habe. 4. Wir wissen, daß er übermorgen kommen wird. 5. Je mehr Gott dir gegeben hat, desto mehr sollst du den Armen geben. 6. Je nachdem man gehandelt hat, wird man glücklich oder unglücklich sein. 7. Ich weiß nicht, ob er da ist. 8. Seitdem sein Vater hier ist, ist er viel zufriedener. 9. Wir wissen, wie er das gethan hat und wo er hingegangen ist. 10. Aus Dämpfen und Dünsten entstehen Nebel und Regen. 11. Sie wissen nicht, warum ich das gesagt habe. 12. Alle seine Kräfte wollte er sammeln und sie mit dem Feinde verbinden. 13. Unser Schiff nennt er einen Nachen. 14. Obgleich er arm ist, so ist er doch glücklich. 15. Weil Sie krank sind, so können Sie nicht ausgehen. 16. Sie sind krank und können deshalb nicht ausgehen. 17. Ueber uns sehen wir nur den Himmel und unzählige Sterne.

EXERCISE 107.

Aufgabe 107.

1. He has written more books than he has bought. 2. They saw me before I saw them. 3. We will wait here till you can go with us. 4. You know that I have not seen him. 5. The longer a man lives the shorter time has he yet to live. 6. According as one is idle or industrious will one be unhappy or contented. 7. I do not know whether he will come or not. 8. I have seen him since I have been here. 9. Do you know how long he remained in the city? 10. No, I know that he has been there, but I do not know how long he remained. 11. We know him, but we do not know where he lives. 12. This boy is sad because his father is sick. 13. Because he has not much money he is discontented. 14. I am tired and can, therefore, write no longer. 15. They can not go out because they are sick. 16. Because he is sick he can not go out. 17. These books I have never read.

LESSON LIV.

Lektion LIV.

COMPOUND VERBS INSEPARABLE.

1. The unaccented particles *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *miß*, *ver*, *wider* and *zer*, when prefixed to verbs, reject the augment (*ge*) in the *past* participle, and take before them *zu* of the infinitive:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Er hat sein Haus verkauft. | He has sold his house. |
| Er hat ein Haus zu verkaufen. | He has a house to sell. |
| Wie hat man euch empfangen? | How were you received? |
| Das hat mir nie gehört'. | That has never belonged to me. |
| Du hast den Spiegel zerbrochen. | You have broken the mirror. |

For a more complete survey of the above particles than could here be properly introduced, see § 95. and following.

2. *Durch*, through; *hinter*, behind; *über*, over; *um*, around; *unter*, under; *voll*, full; *wider*, against; *wieder*, again, back, when accented, are separable, and when unaccented, inseparable:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Er wiederholte was er gehört hatte. | He repeated what he had heard. |
| Er holte das Buch wieder. | He brought the book again. |
| Das Wasser ist durchgelaufen. | The water has run through. |

3. The particle *miß*, in some words, takes the accent, and, in the infinitive and past participle, is treated like other separable particles:

| | |
|---|---|
| Es hat mißgetönt; es scheint mißzu- tönen. | It has sounded wrong; it seems to sound wrong (mis-sound). |
|---|---|

4. In some verbs the augment is used before the prefix *miß* (but is oftener wholly rejected):

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Sie haben ihn gemißhandelt (or miß- handelt). | They have maltreated (abused) him. |
|--|---------------------------------------|

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Er befaß' ihnen (L. 62. 3.) ihre Hän- ser zu beleuchten. | He commanded them to illuminate their houses. |
| Ach, ich habe euren Jammer nur ver- größert. | Alas! I have only increased your grief. |
| Er hat uns übergeführt. | He has taken (ferried) us over. |
| Er hat ein Trauerspiel aus dem Deut- schen übersetzt'. | He has translated a tragedy from the German. |

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Dieser Kaufmann versorgt' uns mit | This merchant supplies us with |
| Kaffee, Thee, Zucker, &c. | coffee, tea, sugar, &c. |
| Diese Pflanzen müssen alle Jahre ver- | These plants must be transplanted |
| setzt werden. | every year. |
| Die Herrlichkeit der Welt verschwi'ndet. | The glory of the world vanishes. |
| So vergeht alles Irdische. | Thus perishes every thing earthly. |
| Er hat Alles verlernt' was er wußte. | He has forgotten every thing that |
| | he knew. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Bege'h'en, to commit, p. 348; | Die Kunst, -, pl. Künste, the art; |
| Beloh'n'en, to reward; | Die Liebe, the love; |
| Beraub'en, to rob; | • Miß'verstehen, to misunder- |
| Beschrei'b'en, to describe, p. 354; | stand, p. 356; |
| Daven, of it; | Die Pflicht, -, pl. -en, the duty; |
| Die Eltern, pl. the parents; | Polir'en, to polish; |
| Erfin'd'en, to invent, p. 348; | Der Spiegel, -s, pl. -, looking-glass; |
| Erhal't'en, to receive; | Der Theil, -es, pl. -e, the part; |
| Ermor'd'en, to murder; | Das Verbrechen, -s, pl. -, crime; |
| Erse'tzen, to replace; | Versu'h'en, to try; |
| Die Güte, -, the goodness; | Vertrei'b'en, to drive away, 356; |
| Die Jugend, -, the youth; | Zerbrech'en, to break, p. 346. |

EXERCISE 108.

Aufgabe 108.

1. Ich hoffe morgen einen Brief zu erhalten. 2. Hat der arme Mann sein Geld erhalten, oder nur einen Theil davon? 3. Ich habe das Wort vergessen und das Papier verloren. 4. Die Deutschen haben viele nützliche Künste erfunden. 5. Meine Schüler haben sich gut betragen. 6. Man hat mir dieses Buch empfohlen. 7. Ich habe einen Brief von einem meiner Freunde erhalten, worin er seine Reise beschrieben hat. 8. Einer erwartet Geld von seinem Vater, und der Andere verdient sein Geld. 9. Wir mußten den alten Mann in das Meer begraben. 10. Der Bauer hat seinen Weizen verkauft. 11. Ihr Bruder hat mich mißverstanden, ich habe ihm nichts versprochen. 12. Er hat seinen Spiegel zerbrochen. 13. Unsere Freunde haben uns besucht, sie versuchten deutsch zu sprechen, aber wir konnten sie nicht verstehen. 14. Das tapfere Heer hat den Feind vertrieben. 15. Er hat seine Pflicht erfüllt und seine Freunde haben ihn belohnt. 16. Was für ein Verbrechen haben diese Leute begangen? 17. Sie haben einen Mann geraubt und ermordet. 18. Der Knabe hat seine Knöpfe polirt, anstatt sein Buch zu studiren. 19. Die's Buch hat er in seiner Jugend gelesen.

EXERCISE 109.

Aufgabe 109.

1. Have you received your books, or only a part of them?
 2. I have not yet received them, but I expect them to-morrow.
 3. Have you studied this book much? 4. I have not had much time to study it. 5. Have you understood all that you have studied? 6. I have understood it, but I have forgotten a part of it. 7. I earn the money that I receive. 8. Somebody has broken my knife. 9. We tried to speak German, but they could not understand us. 10. I can recommend this book to you, I studied it in my youth. 11. The poor man was obliged to sell his bed. 12. This man has committed no crime. 13. The thief has buried the murdered man in the forest. 14. He has robbed his friend. 15. Have you sold any thing to-day? 16. Yes, I have sold my horse. 17. What have you promised me? 18. I have not promised you any thing. 19. Either you have forgotten or I have misunderstood you. 20. Do your duty and I will reward you. 21. I have not yet received that which you promised me, but I have not forgotten it.

LESSON LV.

Lektion LV.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

CONJUGATION OF *Sein*, *Haben* AND *Werden*.

PRESENT TENSE.

I may be.

ich sei,
 du seiest (or seist),
 er sei,
 wir seien (or sein),
 ihr seiet,
 sie seien (or sein).

I may have.

ich habe,
 du habest,
 er habe,
 wir haben,
 ihr habet,
 sie haben.

I may become.

ich werde,
 du werdest,
 er werde,
 wir werden,
 ihr werdet,
 sie werden.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I might be.

ich wäre,
 du wärest (or wärst),
 er wäre,
 wir wären,
 ihr wäret (or wärt),
 sie wären.

I might have.

ich hätte,
 du hättest,
 er hätte,
 wir hätten,
 ihr hättet,
 sie hätten.

I might become.

ich würde,
 du würdest,
 er würde,
 wir würden,
 ihr würdet,
 sie würden.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Der Mensch versuche die Götter nicht. | Let not man tempt the gods. |
| Es sei wie Ihr gewünscht! | Be it (let it be) as you wished. |
| Jetzt gehe Jeder seines Weges.—S. | Now let each go his way. |
| Haben wir Geduld! or | Let us be patient! <i>literally</i> , |
| Läßt uns Geduld haben! | Let us have patience! |
| Man bind ihn an die Linde dort! | Let him be bound to the lindens yonder. |

FORMATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

4. The present subjunctive of all verbs is formed by suffixing to the root, *e* for the first and third person singular, and *est* for the second; the first and third person plural add *en*, and the second *et*:

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------|
| ich lob- <i>e</i> , | wir lob-en; | ich woll- <i>e</i> , | wie woll-en; |
| du lob-est, | ihr lob-et; | du woll-est, | ihr woll-et; |
| er lob- <i>e</i> , | sie lob-en. | er woll- <i>e</i> , | sie woll-en. |

Imperfect Tense.

5. In regular verbs the imperfect of the subjunctive differs from that of the indicative in taking *e* before the endings *te*, *te st*, *ten* and *tet* (L. 37. 7. 8.):

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| ich lob-te, | wir lob-ten; | ich lob-e-te, | wir lob-e-ten; |
| du lob-test, | ihr lob-tet; | du lob-e-test, | ihr lob-e-tet; |
| er lob-te, | sie lob-ten. | er lob-e-te, | sie lob-e-ten. |

6. Irregular verbs add *e* to the form of the indicative, and usually take the Umlaut, if capable of it:

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| ich gab, | wir gaben; | ich gäbe, | wir gäben; |
| du gabst, | ihr gabt; | du gäbest, | ihr gäbet; |
| er gab, | sie gaben. | er gäbe, | sie gäben. |

The other tenses are formed by means of auxiliaries. For complete list of irregular verbs see p. 346; also, remarks § 77.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Wer nicht die Welt in seinen Freunden | He who does not see the world in |
| steht verdient nicht daß die Welt von | his friends does not deserve that |
| ihm erfah're.—S. | the world should hear of him. |

| | |
|--|---|
| Daß man einen Vogel fangen kann, das weiß ich; aber: daß man ihm seinen Käfig angenehmer als das freie Feld machen könne, das weiß ich nicht.— L. | That a bird can be caught (that) I know, but that his cage can be made more pleasant to him than the open field (that) I do not know. |
|--|---|

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|---|
| Behaupten, to affirm; | Das Rom, -s, (the) Rome; |
| Das Berlin, -s, (the) Berlin; | Der Tyrann, -en, pl. -en, tyrant; |
| Bilden, to cultivate; | Umsonst, in vain; |
| Binden, to bind, tie, p. 346; | Das Vene'dig, -s, (the) Venice; |
| Das Dresden, -s, (the) Dresden; | Die Verste'l'lung, -, pl. -en, the dis- |
| Fragen, to ask; | simulation; |
| Die Handlung, -, pl. en, the action; | Viermal, four times; |
| Der Herr, -n, pl. -en, lord, master; | Die Welt, -, pl. -en, the world; |
| Die Linde, -, pl. -n, linden-tree; | Wieder, again; |
| Meinen, to think; | Das Wien, -s, (the) Vienna; |
| Die Meinung, -, pl. -en, opinion; | Zwar, indeed; |
| Die Natur, -, pl. -en, the nature; | Zweimal, twice. |
| Das Nervenfieber, -s, pl. -, the nerv- ous fever; | |

EXERCISE 110.

Aufgabe 110.

1. Ich hörte, daß dieser Tyrann in Berlin gewesen, aber ich mußte nicht, ob es wahr sei. 2. Haben Sie auch gehört, ich sei vom Pferde gefallen? 3. Nein, ich hörte, Sie seien aus dem Wagen gefallen. 4. Die Franzosen behaupten sie seien die Gebildetsten in der Welt. 5. Ihre Schwester glaubte, Sie seien in der Stadt gewesen; ich meinte aber, daß Sie im Walde gewesen seien. 6. Die Engländer sind der Meinung, sie seien die Herren des Meeres. 7. Dieser Reisende erzählt, daß er zweimal in Rom und viermal in Venedig gewesen sei. 8. Er hofft, daß er in acht Tagen in Wien sein werde. 9. Ich glaube, daß viele Menschen hier auf Erden ihr Gutes gehabt haben werden. 10. Er sagte zwar, er sei krank, aber viele glauben, es sei Versteckung von ihm gewesen. 11. Ich hörte mit Bedauern, Sie hätten in Dresden das Nervenfieber gehabt. 12. Er fragte mich, ob ich etwas von dieser Handlung gehört hätte. 13. Er glaubt, er werde nie wieder glücklich sein. 14. Er meint, ich möchte es lesen, aber ich könnte nicht. 15. Man bind' ihn an die Linde dort. 16. Er sagte, er müsse gehen. 17. Ihr Freund meint, keine Schönheit der Natur sei umsonst geschaffen, und wir Menschen seien da, um sie zu genießen.

EXERCISE 111.

Aufgabe 111.

1. I hope I shall see them to-morrow. 2. He has promised that he will go with us to-morrow to the city. 3. He made me believe that he was my friend. 4. We heard that you were unwell. 5. Why do you think that he is your enemy? 6. Because my friends told me that he hates me. 7. I have heard that my brother has lost his horse. 8. They say these people are very poor. 9. He says we were in his garden. 10. Did you hear that I had found my money? 11. I had not heard that you had lost your money. 12. This man says that he has been in Vienna. 13. It is said that the ship has arrived. 14. These people think that we are very rich. 15. A good scholar studies diligently that he may learn rapidly. 16. He thought I could not write. 17. They said that they must have the money. 18. My brother says that they have praised you.

LESSON LVI.

Section LVI.

CONDITIONAL.

CONDITIONAL OF Sein, Haben AND Werden.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

I should be.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

} sein.

I should have.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

} haben.

I should become.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

} werden.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

I should have been

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

} gewesen
sein.*I should have had.*

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

} gehabt
haben.*I should have become.*

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

} geworden
or worden
sein.

1. The conditional mode is employed where a condition is supposed which is regarded as doubtful or impossible:

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich würde selbst gehen, wenn ich nicht so alt wäre. | I would go myself, if I were not so old. |
| Was würden Sie gethan haben, wenn Sie es gesehen hätten? | What would you have done, if you had seen it? |
| Er würde es thun, wenn er könnte. | He would do it, if he could. |
| Sie würden es gethan haben, wenn sie da gewesen wären. | They would have done it, if they had been there. |

2. For the above forms of the conditional, the imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive are often substituted; *wenn* being omitted, and the subject preceded by the verb:

| | |
|--|---|
| Das wäre schöner, wäre es nicht so groß; <i>instead of</i> | That were more beautiful, were it not so large; <i>instead of</i> |
| Das würde schöner sein, wenn es nicht so groß wäre. | That would be more beautiful, if it were not so large. |
| Ich hätte es nicht geglaubt, hätte ich es nicht gesehen; <i>instead of</i> | I had not believed it, had I not seen it; <i>instead of</i> |
| Ich würde es nicht geglaubt haben, wenn ich es nicht gesehen hätte. | I would not have believed it, if I had not seen it. |
| Wüßte er, wo ich bin, so käme er zu mir; <i>instead of</i> | <i>Here our idiom does not admit of a literal translation.</i> |
| Wenn er wüßte, wo ich bin, so würde er zu mir kommen. | If he knew where I am, he would come to me. |

EXAMPLES OF THE CONDITIONAL AND THE INDICATIVE.

Conditional.

Indicative.

| | | | |
|--|--|---|---|
| Er würde kommen, wenn er dürfte. | He would come, if he were at liberty to. | Er konnte kommen, aber er wollte nicht. | He could come, but he would not. |
| Sie würde bleiben, wenn sie nicht gehen müßte. | She would remain, if she were not obliged to go. | Sie wollte nicht bleiben, obgleich sie nicht gehen mußte. | She would not remain, though she was not obliged to go. |
| Er würde es gehört haben, wenn er da gewesen wäre. | He would have heard it, if he had been there. | Er war da gewesen, es nicht gehört. | He had been there, but he had not heard it. |

3. The conditional mode is employed:

a. Interrogatively to express surprise or dissent:

| | |
|---|---|
| Du wärest Don Manuel?—S. | You are Don Manuel! (Do you say?) |
| Träume, Prinz? So wären es nur Träume gewesen?—S. | Dreams, Prince? Were they then only (i. e. they were not) dreams? |

Mir hätte es einfallen sollen diesen (Who pretends that) it occurred to
Staat im Staate zu bulden?—S. me to tolerate this state within
the state?

b. Sometimes the condition, or that on which it depends, is
not expressed :

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Frommer Stab! O hät' ich nimmer | Peaceful staff! O, had I never |
| mit dem Schwerte dich vertauscht! | changed thee for the sword! |
| Dies elende Werkzeug könnte mich ret- | This wretched vehicle (instrument) |
| ten, brächte mich schnell zu befreund- | might save me—might soon con- |
| ten Städten.—S. | vey me to friendly cities. |
| Den möcht' ich wissen, der der Treuste | I would like to know (the one) who |
| mir von Allen ist.—S. | is the most faithful of all to me. |

c. To express an opinion with caution or diffidence :

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Schwerlich möchte er des Feindes Kund- | He can (I think) scarcely escape |
| schaft hintergehn.—S. | the search of the enemy. |
| Alles könnte zuletzt nur falsches Spiel | All might (may) finally be decep- |
| sein.—S. | tion (false play). |
| Der Pöbel hätte mich fast gesteinigt. | The rabble almost (was likely to |
| —G. | have) stoned me. |

d. After a negative the conditional is used to give empha-
sis or intensity to the sentence :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Auch können wir über keine Neuerung | Nor can we make complaint of any |
| Klage führen, welche in dieser Zeit | innovation that has been made |
| irgend wo gemacht worden wäre.—S. | any where during this time. |
| Ich bin in meinem Leben so glücklich | I have not been so fortunate in my |
| nicht gewesen, daß ich das Vergnügen | life as often to have experienced |
| oft empfunden hätte.—L. | the pleasure. |

Obs.—To give additional prominence to what may be regarded as
extraordinary, the imperfect of the indicative is sometimes substituted
for the conditional :

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| "Hätte er in diesem Augenblicke sich | Had it ignited at this moment, the |
| entzündet, so war (for wäre) der | best part of its effect would have |
| beste Theil seiner Wirkung verloren." | been (were) lost. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Hättest du von Menschen besser stets ge- | Hadst thou always thought better |
| dacht, du hättest besser auch gehan- | of men (mankind) thou wouldst |
| belt.—S. | also have acted better. |
| Gäbe es nichts Unerklärliches mehr, so | If there were no longer any thing |
| möchte ich nicht mehr leben, weder | inexplicable, I should no longer |
| hier noch dort.—R. | wish to live, neither here nor |
| | hereafter. |

Eure Versöhnung war ein wenig zu schnell, als daß sie hätte dauerhaft sein sollen.—G. Your reconciliation was a little too hasty to (allow that it might) be permanent.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Abreisen, to depart; | Gütig, kind; |
| Das Ame'rika, -s, (the) America; | Das Herz, -ens, pl. -en, the heart; |
| Anders, differently, otherwise; | Das Leip'zig, -s, (the) Leipsic; |
| Auswandern, to emigrate; | Mißlich, perilous, dubious; |
| Beglei'ten, to accompany; | Recht, very, right; |
| Die Ehre, -, pl. -n, the honor; | Die Sache, -, pl. -n, the business, |
| Der Fremde, -n, pl. -n, foreigner, | affair, cause; |
| stranger; | Verfah'ren, to act, proceed; |
| Die Gesell'schaft, -, pl. -en, the com- | Vernün'ftig, reasonable; |
| pany; | Verschwen'derisch, wasteful; |
| Gewiß, sure, certain; | Das Wesen, -s, pl. -, the being. |

EXERCISE 112.

Aufgabe 112.

1. Das Beste, was diese ganze Gesellschaft thun könnte, wäre, gleich abzureisen. 2. Wer hätte geglaubt, daß er ein solches Herz zeigen würde? 3. Dieser Fremde hätte es gewiß nicht gethan, wenn wir ihn gütig behandelt hätten. 4. Kein vernünftiger Mensch würde so gehandelt haben. 5. Er könnte recht gut leben, wenn er nicht so verzweifenderisch wäre. 6. Ich würde gleich zu ihm gehen, wenn ich nur wüßte, wo er ist. 7. Sie wäre gewiß von der Brücke hinab gefallen, wenn ihre Freundin sie nicht gehalten hätte. 8. Er würde elend sein, wenn er so leben müßte wie ich. 9. Wenn ich das gewußt hätte, so wäre ich ganz anders verfahren. 10. Ich würde mit Ihnen gehen, wenn ich nicht so viel zu thun hätte. 11. Wenn ich das Buch gesehen hätte, so würde ich es gekauft haben. 12. Wir würden schon sprechen können, wenn wir fleißig studirt hätten. 13. Wenn sie Zeit hätten würden sie uns gewiß begleiten. 14. Wenn ich englisch könnte, so würde ich gleich nach Amerika auswandern. 15. Ich glaube nicht, daß du lange dort bleiben würdest, wenn du auswandern solltest. 16. Ich würde das Holz kaufen, wenn es gut wäre. 17. Das wäre eine mißliche Sache. 18. Ohne Ehre würde der Mensch ein elendes Wesen sein.

EXERCISE 113.

Aufgabe 113.

1. What would you do with this book if it were yours? 2. I would study and try to learn the language that it teaches.

3. What would you do if you were rich? 4. I would travel and study. 5. I should be satisfied if I could speak as well as you do. 6. If I had had a teacher I should have learned much faster. 7. Would you sell this house if it were yours? 8. No, I would live in it. 9. I do not believe you could sell it. 10. If the stranger had called, I should certainly have heard him. 11. You would have money enough if you were only industrious. 12. We could have bought the horses if we had had the money. 13. I would write you a German letter if I could. 14. We should have seen the company if we had been at home. 15. They would come if they had not so much to do. 16. If he were only here it would be quite a different affair. 17. It would not be the business of a month.

LESSON LVII.

Lesson LVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Besides the verbs denoting natural phenomena (as, *es donnert*, *es regnet*, etc.) which in both languages are alike impersonal (§ 88), there are many verbs in German impersonally used, for which the neuter or passive form is required in English :

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Es hat stark geregnet.</i> | It has rained hard. |
| <i>Es hagelt und schneit.</i> | It hails and snows. |
| <i>Es nachtet schon.</i> | It is already growing dark (night). |
| <i>Es grauet mir vor ihm, davor.</i> | I have a horror of him, of it. |
| <i>Es gelüftet ihm nach Allem was er sieht.</i> | He covets every thing that he sees |
| <i>Es freut mich.</i> | I am glad, <i>lit.</i> it rejoices me. |
| <i>Es hungert und durstet uns.</i> | We are hungry and thirsty. |
| <i>Es ist mir mit dieser Sache Ernst.</i> | I am in earnest in this matter. |
| <i>Es gelang or glückte ihm es zu thun.</i> | He succeeded in doing it. |
| <i>Es thut uns Allen sehr leid.</i> | We are all very sorry. |
| <i>Es schwindelt ihnen.</i> | They feel dizzy. |
| <i>Es hat ihm gewiß geträumt.</i> | He has certainly been dreaming. |
| <i>Um welche Zeit tagt es?</i> | At what time does it dawn (grow light)! |

2. Some impersonal verbs are sometimes preceded by the object; the pronoun *es* being omitted:

Mich hungert.

Mir schwindelt.

Ihnen hat geträumt.

Uns durstet.

3. Däuchten, dünken impersonally used, take either the dative or accusative:

Mich dünkt sie hatten recht.

Methinks they were right.

Das dünkt mir doch zu gräßlich.

That really seems to me too horrible.

4. Geben, impersonally used, indicates existence in a general and indefinite manner, and is rendered by *to be*; the *object* of *geben* standing as the subject of *to be*:

„Es gibt böse Geister, die in des Menschen Brust sich ihren Wohnsitz nehmen.“

There are (exist) evil spirits that take (to themselves) their abode in man's breast.

Gibt es heute was Neues?

Is there any thing new to-day?

Was gibt's, warum laufen Sie?

What's the matter, why do you run?

5. Fehlen, gebrechen and mangeln are often used impersonally, generally followed by the dative of a person, with the dative of a thing; the latter being governed by a *it*:

Es fehlte ihm nicht an gutem Willen.

He was not lacking in good will.

„Dem Glücklichen kann es an Nichts gebrechen.“

The happy man can be in want of nothing.

An Lebensmitteln mangelt es ihnen.

There is a lack (scarcity) of provisions with them.

6. Verbs, intransitive as well as transitive, are frequently used impersonally and reflexively, to denote an action in progress, or what is customary:

Es fragt sich, ob er es wird thun können.

It is questionable whether he will be able to do it.

„Lebhaft träumt sich's unter diesem Baum.“

One dreams briskly (much) under this tree.

Es fährt sich gut auf diesem Wagen.

This is a good wagon to ride in.

Es gebührt sich nicht das zu thun.

It is not proper to do that.

Es gehört sich unsere Eltern zu lieben und ehren.

It is our duty (becomes us) to love and honor our parents.

Es trägt sich nicht selten zu, daß unter einem unscheinbaren Kleide die schönsten Talente verborgen sind.

It not unfrequently happens that under an unsightly garb the most splendid talents are concealed

7. *Œſen*, impersonally used and governing the dative, may often be rendered by *to be*; the dative frequently being rendered by our nominative, or the objective after *with*:

| | |
|---|---|
| Den Bchern geht es oft wie den Menschen. | It is often with books as with men. |
| Wie geht es (or wie geht es Ihnen)? | How are you (how goes it)? |
| Es geht ihnen sehr schlecht. | They get along very badly. |
| Wie geht's dir? Mir dnkt wohl ganz recht.—B. | How is't with you? It seems to me (you get along) quite well. |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|---|
| * Es gibt eine Art von Menschen, die man viele Jahre lang beobachten kann, ohne mit sich einig zu werden, ob man sie in die Klasse der schwachen oder der bsen Leute setzen soll. | There is a kind of men whom one may (L. 45. 5. b) observe for many years, without being able to come to a conclusion as to whether to place (locate) them in the class of weak or of wicked people. |
| * Es gibt Wrter welche Thaten sind. | There are words which are deeds. |
| Die Frage, ob es Geistessterbe, kann kein vernnftiger Mensch bejahen. | The question whether ghosts exist no reasonable man can answer affirmatively. |
| Es soll an mir nicht fehlen.—C. | I shall not be lacking (absent). |
| Wie Ring und Kette dir gefallen werden, die in Damascus ich dir ausgesucht, verlange mich zu sehen.—L. | How (the) ring and chain that I selected for you in Damascus will please you, I long to see. |
| Wenige haben es versucht, und noch Wenigern ist es gelungen. | Few have tried it, and still fewer have succeeded in it. |
| Er lpft es sich an Nichts mangeln. | He denies himself in nothing (lets nothing lack to himself). |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Anhaltend, constant; | Leid thun, to be sorry; |
| Blitzen, to lighten; | Die Leute, pl. the people; |
| Dursten, to thirst; (see 1. & 2.) | Das Malta, -s, (the) Malta; |
| Entzweien (sich), to quarrel; | Der Muth, -es, the courage; |
| Ereignen (sich), to happen; | Der Neid, -es, the envy; |
| Die Ernte, -, pl. -n. the harvest; | Der Ort, -es, pl. -e, (better) place; |
| Fehlen, to fail, be deficient in; | Das Sarbi'nien, -s, (the) Sardinia; |
| Frieren, to be cold, freeze, 1. 2; | Die Schlange, -, pl. -n. the serpent; |
| Giftig, venomous; | Schneien, to snow; |
| Heiligen, to hallow; | Der Sonntag, -es, pl. -e, Sunday; |
| Hungern, to hunger; (s. 1. & 2.) | Ueberzeugen, to convince. |
| Die Insel, -, pl. -n. the island; | Versand'ig, sensible; |
| Das Island, -es, (the) Iceland; | Uutragen, to happen, (see 6.) |

EXERCISE 114.

Aufgabe 114.

1. Es ist ihm endlich gelungen, seinen Freund zu überzeugen. 2. Sein Plan ist gelungen, und doch ist er unzufrieden. 3. Es fragt sich, ob wir morgen gehen können? 4. Es gehört sich, den Sonntag zu heiligen. 5. Es schickt sich, ältere Leute zu achten. 6. Es ereignet sich selten, daß gute, verständige Leute sich entzweien. 7. Es thut dem Knaben sehr leid, daß er so nachlässig gewesen ist. 8. Es würde mich sehr freuen, ihn wiederzusehen. 9. Durstet Sie? 10. Nein, aber mich hungert und friert. 11. Es versteht sich, daß er heute nicht kommen wird, denn die Wege sind zu schlecht. 12. Es trägt sich zuweilen zu, daß anhaltender Regen die ganze Ernte verdirbt. 13. Auf der Insel Malta gibt es keine Schlangen; in Sardinien gibt es keine Wölfe; in Deutschland gibt es keine Krokodile; auf Island gibt es nichts Giftiges, aber in der ganzen Welt ist kein Ort, wo es keinen Neid gibt. 14. Ein Mann, welchem es an Muth fehlt, ist kein guter Soldat.

EXERCISE 115.

Aufgabe 115.

1. I would be very glad to accompany you home, but I am afraid it will rain; do you not see how it lightens, and hear how it thunders? 2. I think it will snow to-morrow; it is questionable whether our friends will be able to come as they have promised. 3. The peasants have finally succeeded in selling their horses. 4. I am very sorry not to have seen them, but it was so cold while they were in the city that I could not go out. 5. It sometimes happens that lazy people are very rich, but never that they are wise, learned, useful or happy. 6. This man is not hungry, but he is very cold. 7. Of course you will visit us as soon as you can, will you not? 8. It is questionable whether he can do that. 9. Is there any thing more useful in the world than cold water? 10. They say they are very sorry that they did not succeed in convincing us that we were wrong. 11. What is the matter, why are all those people running into the house?

LESSON LVIII.

1. PARADIGM OF

Geliebt werden,

| | | INDICATIVE | | SUBJUNCTIVE | |
|-------------|---|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I am | ich werde | I may |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou art | du werdest | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er wird | he is | er werde | he may |
| | 1 | wir werden | we are | wir werden | we may |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you are | ihr werdet | you may |
| | 3 | sie werden | they are | sie werden | they may |
| | | geliebt, | loved. | geliebt, | be loved. |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich würde | I was | ich würde | I might |
| | 2 | du würdest | thou wast | du würdest | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er würde | he was | er würde | he might |
| | 1 | wir würden | we were | wir würden | we might |
| | 2 | ihr würdet | you were | ihr würdet | you might |
| | 3 | sie würden | they were | sie würden | they might |
| | | geliebt, | loved. | geliebt, | be loved |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich bin | I have | ich sei | I may |
| | 2 | du bist | thou hast | du seiest | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er ist | he has | er sei | he may |
| | 1 | wir sind | we have | wir seien | we may |
| | 2 | ihr seid | you have | ihr seiet | you may |
| | 3 | sie sind | they have | sie seien | they may |
| | | geliebt worden, | been loved. | geliebt worden, | have been l'd. |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich war | I had | ich wäre | I might |
| | 2 | du warst | thou had | du wärest | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er war | he had | er wäre | he might |
| | 1 | wir waren | we had | wir wären | we might |
| | 2 | ihr wäret | you had | ihr wäret | you might |
| | 3 | sie waren | they had | sie wären | they might |
| | | geliebt worden, | been loved. | geliebt worden, | have been l'd. |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | " thou wilt |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | " he will |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | " we shall |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | " you will |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | " they will |
| | | geliebt werden, | be loved. | geliebt werden, | be loved. |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | " thou wilt |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | " he will |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | " we shall |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | " you will |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | " they will |
| | | geliebt worden sein, | have been l'd. | gel't worden sein, | have been l'd. |

Section LVIII.

A PASSIVE VERB.

TO BE LOVED.

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICI. |
|--|--|---|--------------------------------|
| PRESENT TENSE. | PRESENT TENSE. werde du werde er werden wir werdet ihr werden sie } geliebt, be thou loved. | PRESENT TENSE. geliebt werden, to be loved. | PRESENT |
| IMPERFECT TENSE. | IMPERF. TENSE. | IMPERF. TENSE. | IMPERFECT |
| PERFECT TENSE. | PERFECT TENSE. | PERFECT TENSE. geliebt worden sein, to have been loved. | PERFECT. geliebt, loved. |
| PLUPERFECT TENSE. | PLUPERF. TENSE. | PLUPERF. TENSE. | PLUPERF. |
| FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden } geliebt werden, I should be loved, etc. | FIRST FUTURE. | FIRST FUTURE. werden geliebt werden, to be about to be loved. | 1st. FUTURE. |
| SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden } geliebt worden sein, I should have been loved. | SECOND FUTURE. | SECOND FUTURE. | 2d. FUTURE. |

2. The passive voice is formed by connecting the auxiliary *werden*, through all its modes and tenses, with the *past* participle of the *main* verb :

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Das Pferd wird beschlagen. | The horse is being (becoming) shod. |
| Das Pferd wurde beschlagen. | The horse was (became) shod. |
| Das Pferd ist beschlagen worden. | The horse has been (become) shod. |

3. The form of the perfect, with omission of *werden*, is used to indicate a *present* state or condition, as the *result* of a *previous* action ; as,

- Das Pferd ist beschlagen, the horse is shod—is *now* in a state *resulting* from the act of shoeing (i. e. in a shod condition); das Pferd ist beschlagen worden, on the contrary, merely indicates a like previous act, while the *result* (namely, a present shod condition) may no longer exist.

4. Passive verbs are often used impersonally to denote an action or event in progress :

| | |
|---|--|
| Es wird gesungen. | There is singing ("going on"). |
| Es wurde bis spät in die Nacht gefoch'ten. | The fighting continued (it was fought) till late in the night. |
| Dort wurde alle Tage getanz't und gespielt'. | There was dancing and playing there every day. |
| Es wurde ihm von allen Seiten zu Hülfe geeilt'. | From all sides it was run to his assistance.—Milton. |
| Die Schönheit wird mit Wunder angeblickt, doch nur Gefeeligkeit entzückt. | Beauty is looked at with admiration, but only kindness enchants. |

-23.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--|---|
| Das Glück der Gesellschaft wird eben sehr durch Thorheit als durch Verbrechen und Vaster gestört.—S. | The happiness of society is interrupted quite as much by folly as by crimes and vices. |
| Den Schlaf, den Reichthum und die Gesundheit genießt' man nur, wenn sie unterbrochen worden (sind).—R. | Sleep, wealth and health (L. 42. 1. a.) are enjoyed only when they have been interrupted. |
| Der Genius wird nur vom Genius gefaßt', die edle Natur' nur von ihres Gleichen (L. 35. 4. 5.)—R. | Genius is comprehended only by genius, a (the) noble nature only by its peer. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Der Augenblick, -es, pl. -e, moment; | Die Erbitterung, -, pl. -en, the animosity; |
| Ausfinden, to find out, p. 348; | Erfleht, to climb; |
| Betrübt', afflicted; | Erfleht, earnest, stern; |
| Erzinsf', in the future; | |

| | |
|---|--|
| Erschei'nen, to appear, p. 348; | Der Prome'theus, (the) Prometheus; |
| Erstie'sen, to shoot, p. 354; | Der Schmeichler, -s, pl. -, flatterer; |
| Fortschleppen, to drag away; | Schmieden, to chain; |
| Der Gens'enjäger, -s, pl. -, the cha- mois-hunter; | Die Seite, -, pl. -n, the side; |
| Das Gericht', -s, pl. -e, tribunal; | Der Streit, -es, the combat; |
| Günstig, favorable. propitious; | Täuschen, to deceive; |
| Herbei'führen, to bring on; | Das Unglück, -s, es, the misfortune |
| Der Jupiter, -s, (the) Jupiter; | Versam'meln, to assemble; |
| Melden, to announce; | Be'en'den, to finish; |
| Nachdem, after; | Verstö'ren, to destroy |

EXERCISE 116.

Aufgabe 116.

1. Der Fleißige wird gelobt, und der Träge wird getadelt. 2. Die steilsten Felsen werden von den Gens'enjägern erklettert. 3. Der günstige Augenblick wird von dem Klugen ergriffen. 4. Es wurde mehr gespielt als gearbeitet. 5. Der Streit wurde auf beiden Seiten mit großer Erbitterung geführt. 6. Das Buch ist endlich vollendet worden und wird bald erscheinen. 7. Endlich ist es ausgefunden worden, wer der Dieb ist. 8. Es wird dereinst ein ernstes Gericht gehalten werden, nachdem alle Völker werden versammelt worden sein. 9. Der Nachbar glaubt, daß der Vater von seinem Kinde getäuscht werde. 10. Er meldet, daß die ganze Stadt zerstört worden sei. 11. Man sagt, daß der arme Mann fortgeschleppt worden sei. 12. Der betrückte Vater glaubt, sein Sohn werde von dem Feinde erschossen worden sein. 13. Die Freundin behauptete, daß das Unglück durch die Schuld des Nachbarn herbeigeführt worden wäre. 14. Prometheus war von Jupiter an einen Felsen geschmiedet worden. 15. Das Haus wird von einem sehr geschickten Manne gebaut. 16. Diese Leute glauben, sie seien von uns getäuscht worden. 17. Wissen Sie von wem diese Bücher geschrieben worden sind?

EXERCISE 117.

Aufgabe 117.

1 Do you know why you have been blamed by your friends?
 2 I was blamed by them because the letter that has been promised by me had not been written before they arrived here. 3. I hope the enemy will be defeated and driven out of the country. 4. My letter will have been read before yours will have been written. 5. We are not often hated by those who are loved by us. 6. The bad will be punished and the good will

be rewarded. 7. Good men are often blamed while they live, and praised after they are dead. 8. The ring of the rich young traveler has been found by one of his servants. 9. These beautiful baskets are said (L. 45. 9. 6.) to have been made by the blind man to whom the flute was sent yesterday. 10. Those indolent boys deserve to be punished. 11. There has been more done to day than yesterday. 12. We are often deceived by those who praise us, for we are often praised by flatterers. 13. The hunter says he has been bitten by a bear that had been shot by one of his friends. 14. Has it not yet been found out by whom the money was stolen?

LESSON LIX.

Lesson LIX.

PROPER AND COMMON NAMES.

1. The proper and common names of places and countries, as also of months, are placed in apposition:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Die Stadt München ist die Hauptstadt | The city (of) Munich is the capital |
| des Königreichs Baiern. | of the kingdom (of) Bavaria. |
| Der Monat März ist stürmisch und un- | The month of March is stormy and |
| angenehm. | disagreeable. |

2. The date of the month (without a preposition intervening) precedes its name:

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Die Nacht zwischen dem vierten und | The night between the fourth and |
| fünften April war zu diesem großen | fifth of April was designated for |
| Unternehmen bestimmt.—G. | the execution of this great un- |
| | dertaking. |

3. Nouns denoting weight, measure, quantity and kind usually stand in the same case as those that they limit. When followed by nouns in the plural, the feminine takes the plural form, while those of the masculine and neuter retain that of the singular:

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Er kaufte eine Elle Tuch und zwei Ellen | He bought an ell of cloth and two |
| Seide, ein Pfund Kaffee und zwei | ells of silk, one pound of coffee |
| Pfund Zucker. | and two pounds of sugar. |

Ich habe eine neue Art Papier. I have a new kind of paper.
Er hat drei Stück Vieh. He has three head of cattle.

4. When, however, the latter noun is qualified by some other word, it usually stands in the genitive; in a few phrases, also, the genitive occurs when not thus qualified:

Bringe mir ein Glas dieses klaren Wassers. Bring me a glass of that clear water.

Eine unzählige Menge Volk war herbeigeströmt.—S. A countless multitude of people had flocked together.

5. *Man n*, when referring to organized bodies of men, retains (like *sail*, *horse*, etc., in an analogous use) the singular form, with the plural signification:

Ein schwedischer General, der mit einem acht tausend Mann starken Heere an der Elbe zurückgeblieben war, hielt die Stadt Magdeburg auf's engste eingeschlossen.—S. A Swedish general, who had remained on the Elbe with an army of eight thousand men strong, held the city of Magdeburg closely invested.

6. *Ein Paar* (*literally* a pair) often answers to *a few*, and is used, undeclined, before nouns in any case:

Warten Sie noch ein Paar Stunden. Wait a few hours yet.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Und sammelten alle Speisen der sieben Jahre so im Lande Egypten waren. And he gathered up all the food of the seven years which were in the land of Egypt.
—Gen. xli, 48.

Die Unschuld hat eine Menge Annehmlichkeiten.—B. (The) innocence has a multitude of graces.

Ein neues zwanzigtausend Mann starkes Heer entstand in Kurzem unter seinen Fahnen.—S. A new army twenty thousand men strong soon came into existence under his banners.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Abfahren, to set out; | Der Januar', -s, (the) January, |
| Der April', -s, (the) April; | Der Juni, -s, (the) June; |
| Die Armee', -, pl. -n, the army; | Das Königreich, -s, pl. -e, kingdom |
| Die Art, -, pl. -en, the kind; | Neulich, recently; |
| Das Baiern, -s, (the) Bavaria; | Das Paar, -e, pl. -e, the pair, |
| Das Bremen, -s, (the) Bremen; | Das Preußen, -s, (the) Prussia; |
| Die Elle, -, pl. -n, the ell; | Das Sachsen, -s, (the) Saxony; |
| Der Februar', -s, (the) February; | Sechse, six; |
| Die Frucht, -, pl. Früchte, the fruit; | Das Stück, -e, pl. -e, piece, head; |
| Die Hauptstadt, -, pl. -städte, the capital, chief city; | Der Thaler, -s, pl. -, the thaler; |
| | Der Viehhändler, -s, pl. -, drover |

EXERCISE 118.

Aufgabe 118.

1. Am ersten Juni wird die Armee in die Stadt ziehen. 2. Der alte Viehhändler hat hundert Stück Vieh gekauft. 3. Er trinkt jeden Morgen zwei Glas Wasser. 4. Wollen Sie mir ein Stück Brod geben? 5. Ich will Ihnen zwei Stück Fleisch geben. 6. Wir fuhrren am fünf und zwanzigsten Januar von der Stadt New-York ab, und kamen am achtzehnten Februar in der Stadt Bremen an. 7. Der Monat Mai ist viel angenehmer als der Monat April. 8. Die Stadt Berlin ist die Hauptstadt des Königreichs Preußen. 9. Das ist eine Art Frucht, die ich nie gesehen habe. 10. Er hat zwei Paar Handschuhe und sechs Ellen Tuch gekauft. 11. Der Dom in der Stadt Magdeburg ist sehr schön. 12. Das Königreich Sachsen ist sehr klein. 13. Er hat noch ein wenig Geld, denn ein guter Freund hat ihm neulich ein Paar Thaler aus Baiern geschickt.

EXERCISE 119.

Aufgabe 119.

1. Here is a little piece of paper for you. 2. Our friends live in the city of Vienna. 3. The shoemaker has sent you a pair of shoes. 4. I have bought three barrels of flour and a hundred pounds of coffee. 5. The kingdom of Prussia is larger than the kingdoms of Saxony and Bavaria. 6. We were in the city of Dresden in the month of June. 7. The city of Dresden is rich and very beautiful. 8. This man says he has a new kind of paper. 9. Will you give me a glass of water? 10. Will you not take a glass of wine? 11. I have already drank a glass of wine. 12. We remained only a few days, and did not see much. 13. On the sixteenth of August we were in the city of Cologne.



LESSON LX.

Lection LX.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE.

1. The following prepositions are construed with the genitive; namel ;

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Anstatt or statt, instead; | Ungeachtet, notwithstanding; |
| Außerhalb, outside of, without; | Unterhalb, below; |
| Diesseit (s), on this side; | Unfern, unweit, not far from, |
| Halb, halben or halber, on account (o); | near; |
| Innerhalb, inside, within; | Vermittelt, mittelst, by means of; |
| Jenseit (s), beyond, on the other side; | Vermöge, by dint of; |
| Kraft, by virtue of; | Während, during; |
| Laut, according to; | Wegen, on account of; |
| Überhalb, above; | Längs, along; |
| Um—wille n, for the sake of; | Troß, in spite of; |
| | Zufolge, according to. |

In German grammars the list is sometimes found as follows

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Unweit, mittelst, kraft und während, | Stehen mit dem Genitiv, |
| Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet, | Über auf die Frage, wissen?— |
| Überhalb und unterhalb, | Doch ist hier nicht zu vergessen, |
| Innerhalb und außerhalb, | Daß bei diesen letzten Drei, |
| Diesseit, jenseit, halben, wegen, | Auch der Dativ richtig sei. |
| Statt, auch längs, zufolge, troß, | |

2. Längs and troß may be used also with the dative .

Längs dem Gestade (or des Gestades) Along the shore of the ocean.
des Meeres.—B.

Troß meiner Aufsicht, meinem scharfen In spite of my inspection, my close
Suchen noch Kostbarkeiten, noch ge- scrutiny still valuables, still so-
heime Schätze.—C. cret treasures (are concealed).

Zufolge preceding the noun, takes the genitive; following it the dative:

Zufolge des Befehls (dem Befehle zu In conformity to the order I shall
folge) bleibe ich hier. (L. 38. 1. c.) remain here.

3. Entlang, before a noun, also requires the genitive, after a noun, the accusative:

Rausche Fluß das Thal entlang.—G. Rustle river along the vale.

Wir hatten den ganzen Tag gejagt ent- We had hunted all day along the
lang des Waldgebirges.—C. woody mountains.

4. Halb, halben or halber must follow the noun; ungeachtet and wegen may precede or follow it:

Nicht des Beispiels halben, sondern der Not on account of the example, but
Pflicht wegen soll man in der Gesell- on account of duty should one
schaft höflich sein. be polite in society.

5. The genitive is placed between *um* and *willen* :

Um seines Freundes willen hat er es *On his friend's account he has done*
gethan. *it.*

6. *Halben*, *wegen* and *willen* are often compounded with pronouns, *t* being substituted for the final *r*, or added after *n* :

Meine *t* wegen (*instead of meiner wegen*), for my sake;

Seine *t* halben (*instead of seiner halben*), for his sake;

Um dessen willen (*instead of um dessen willen*), for the sake of whom
or which.

7. *Anstatt* may be divided ; *statt* taking its original character as a noun :

Er dient an seines Vaters Statt (*or He serves in his father's stead (or*
anstatt seines Vaters). *instead of his father).*

8. *Wegen*, preceded by *von*, was formerly employed as a substantive; hence certain expressions like the following still occur :

Von Rechts wegen.

On account of justice (right).

Gibt Rechenschaft von wegen des
vergoßnen Blutes.—S.

Give account of (in reference to) the
spilled blood.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Man muß die Tugend um ihrer selbst willen lieben, oder sie ganz aufgeben.
—G. *One must love virtue for its own sake, or give it up (renounce it) entirely.*

Indiens wegen hatte man die spanischen
Länder entvölkert.—S. *For the sake of India the Spanish territories had been depopulated.*

Mittels seines Beistandes setzte ich es
durch. *By means of his assistance I accomplished it.*

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Anlangen, to arrive; | Senseits, on the other side, |
| Ausführen, to accomplish; | Längs, along; |
| Außerhalb, outside of; | Oberhalb, above; |
| Der Befehl, — <i>es</i> , pl. — <i>e</i> , command; | Die Pest, —, pl. — <i>en</i> , the pestilence |
| Begreifen, to comprehend, 350; | Prächtig, magnificent; |
| Dennoch, notwithstanding; | Der Rhein, — <i>es</i> , the Rhine; |
| Diesseits, on this side; | Trotz, in spite of; |
| Die Dunkelheit, —, the darkness; | Das Ufer, — <i>s</i> , pl. —, the shore; |
| Die Freundschaft, —, pl. — <i>en</i> , friend- ship; | Um-willen, for the sake of. |
| Halben, halber, on account of; | Unfern, near, not far from |
| Innerhalb, within; | Ungeachtet, notwithstanding. |
| | Unterhalb, below. |

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Unweit, near, not far from; | Die Warnung, -, pl. -en, warning; |
| Vermittelt, by means of; | Wegen, on account of; |
| Vermöge, by dint of; | Wüthen, to rage; |
| Der Verstand', -es, understanding; | Zufolge, according to; |
| Der Warmbrunnen, -s, pl. -, the warm-spring; | Zurück'kehren, to return. |

EXERCISE 120.

Aufgabe 120.

1. Anstatt des Herrn kam der Diener. 2. Innerhalb der Stadt wüthete die Pest, und außerhalb derselben der Feind. 3. Was diesseits des Rheines liegt gehört zu Deutschland, was jenseits liegt, zu Frankreich. 4. Geben Sie ihm das Geld, der Freundschaft oder der Armuth halben? 5. Wir segelten längs des Ufers, bis wir an der Stadt anlangten. 6. Er erhielt die Belohnung kraft eines Befehles der Regierung. 7. Oberhalb der Brücke auf dem Berge steht ein prächtiges Schloß. 8. Trotz aller Warnungen vor den Gefahren wagte er es dennoch. 9. Um seiner Eltern willen kehrt er bald zurück. 10. Ungeachtet der Dunkelheit habe ich ihn erkannt. 11. Er wohnte unterhalb der Stadt, unweit des Flusses. 12. Unfern des Meeres lag das Schloß auf hohem Felsen. 13. Unweit der Stadt ist der berühmte Warmbrunnen. 14. Er kann es vermittelt seines Geldes ausführen. 15. Das kannst du vermöge deines Verstandes begreifen. 16. Dieser Mann ist während seines ganzen Lebens nie krank gewesen. 17. Wegen dieses Unglücks ist er sehr betrübt. 18. Zufolge dieses Befehles ist er gleich abgereist.

EXERCISE 121.

Aufgabe 121.

1. The servant came instead of my friend. 2. The pestilence raged within the entire state. 3. That which lies on this side of the river belongs to the rich merchants, and that which lies on the other side, to poor fishermen and day laborers. 4. Do you visit him on account of his money or his poverty? 5. We walked along the shore of the river. 6. He received this reward by virtue of a command of the king. 7. We saw the black clouds above the city. 8. In spite of his promise he did it nevertheless. 9. For the sake of his poor mother he still remained in his native country. 10. Notwithstanding the deep snow and the cold weather he went. 11. The building stands below the city, near the stream. 12. The castle lay upon lofty

rocks, not far from the sea. 13. The celebrated Warm-spring in Germany is near the Giant-Mountains. 14. He can accomplish it by means of his friends. 15. He did it by means of his diligence. 16. He saw his friend during his journey. 17. He is so sad on account of the death of his friend. 18. According to the officer's command he remained.



LESSON LXI.

Section LXI.

ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.

1. The following adjectives are construed with, and usually follow, the genitive :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Bedürftig, in want, wanting; | Theilhaftig, participant, sharing; |
| Bedürft'igt, necessitated, needing; | Ueberdrüssig, tired, disgusted; |
| Bewußt', conscious, aware; | Verdächtig, suspected, suspicious; |
| Eingedenk, mindful; | Verlust'ig, deprived of, having lost; |
| Fähig, capable; | Würdig, worthy; |
| Froh, glad; (see 4.) | Gewahr', aware; |
| Erwartig, expecting; | Gewohnt', accustomed; |
| Gewiß', sure, certain; | Frei, free, rid; |
| Kenntig, having knowledge; | Müde, tired, weary; |
| Leig, free, single, void; | Satt, satiated; |
| Mächtig, powerful, master of; | Voll, full; |
| Quitt, clear, rid; | Worth, worthy. |

Leute, die eine große Beßthat gleich, People who can at once, without
ohne Bedenken, annehmen können, hesitation accept a great kind-
sind der Beßthat selten würdig.— ness are seldom worthy of the
2. kindness.

So bist du beines Eides quitt.—Gen. Thou shalt be clear from this thy
xxiv, 8. oath,

Die meisten Verluste sind eines Ersatzes Most losses are capable of a repara-
fähig.—S. tion.

2. The last *seven* adjectives of the above list are more commonly used with the accusative :

Den Künstler wird man nicht gewahr. The artist is not perceived. (One
—S. does not become aware of, etc.)

Der Beutel ist voll Geld. The purse is full of money.

Das heutige Geschlecht' wird diesen The present race will not get rid
 Jammer nicht los.—G. of this misfortune.

Der aber sagt er sei es müd'.—S. He, however, says he is tired of it.

3. Voll, as employed by many writers, often takes, with the accusative, the ending er :

Er war geistreich, voller Talente.—G. She was witty, full of talent(s).

4. Groß is often followed by über with the accusative ;
 gerich, leer and voll by von, and fähig by zu :

Sie sind zu allem Bösen fähig. They are capable of every thing bad.

5. Schuldig with the genitive signifies *guilty* ; with the accusative, *indebted* :

Er ist gewiß keines Verbrechens schuldig. He is certainly not guilty of any
 crime.

Wie viel ist er uns wohl schuldig ? How much is he probably indebted
 to (does he probably owe) us ?

6. Werth with the genitive answers to *worthy* ; with the accusative it denotes the value of a thing, and is rendered by *worth* :

Er ist aller Ehren werth. He is worthy of all honor.

Es ist seinen Groschen werth. It is not worth a groat.

In referring to one's wealth, reich, instead of werth, is employed :

Er ist hundert tausend Gulden reich. He is worth a hundred thousand
 florins.

7. Formerly, in denoting the relation of magnitude, the genitive was used ; and it is thus, in a few expressions, still retained :

Es ist eines Daumes dick. It is a thumb's thick(ness).

8. The genitive is often employed adverbially, in which case feminine nouns sometime take s :

Gehen Sie des Morgens ? Do you go in the morning ?

Ich gehe Nachts um wie ein gequalter Geist. —S. I go about at night as a tormented
 spirit (goes).

9. The genitive, denoting possession, frequently precedes the governing noun :

„Der Alten Rath, der Jungen The advice of the old, the action
 That macht Krümmes grad.“ of the young makes crooked
 straight.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Das Amt , -es, pl. Aemter, the office; Anvertrauen, to intrust; | Kraft , by virtue of; |
| Der Aufenthalt , -es, the sojourn; | Die Krone , -, pl. -n, the crown; |
| Wändig , to break, taine; | Mächtig , master of; |
| Bedürftig , in need of; | Der Sinn , -es, pl. -e, the mind; |
| Bedürftigt , in want of; | Das Stadtleben , -s, the city life; |
| Die Bestimmung , -, pl. -en, destiny; | Die Stärke , -, the strength; |
| Bewußt , conscious; | Der Tell , -s, (the) Tell; |
| Der Erfaß , -es, the restitution; | Ueberdüssig , tired, weary, |
| Erweichen , to soften; | Die Ueberei'lung , -, pl. -en, the pre- cipitancy; |
| Ewig , eternal; | Uneingedenk , unmindful; |
| Fähig , capable; | Ungewohnt , unaccustomed; |
| Froh , glad; | Untreu , faithless; |
| Einer Sache froh werden , to en- joy a thing; | Verbringen , to spend, p. 346; |
| Gewahr , aware; | Verdächtig , suspected; |
| Das Glück , -es, s, the fortune; | Verhaften , to arrest; |
| Der Hader , -s, the quarrel; | Der Verlust , -es, pl. -e, the loss; |
| Herrschen , to rule; | Der Verrath , -es, the treason; |
| Die Hülfe , -, pl. -n, the aid, help; | Würdig , worthy. |

EXERCISE 122.

Aufgabe 122.

1. Wenn das Pferd seiner Stärke bewußt wäre, könnte Niemand es händigen. 2. Ich bin viel Geld schuldig, aber ich bin keines Ver-
brechens schuldig. 3. Er würde diese Arbeit, deren er ganz ungewohnt
ist, nicht thun, wenn er nicht des Geldes benöthigt wäre. 4. Ist dein
Bruder deiner Hülfe bedürftig, so frage nicht, ob er derselben würdig
ist. 5. Mancher Mensch verklingt sein Leben uneingedenk seiner
ewigen Bestimmung. 6. Solche Verluste sind eines Erjähes fähig.
7. Kein Geiziger kann seines Lebens froh werden. 8. Er ist seiner
Uebereilung gewahr geworden. 9. Ich bin des Lebens und Herr-
schens müde. 10. Der tapfere Tell ist frei und seines Armes mäch-
tig. 11. Er hat meinen Hut anstatt des seinigen genommen. 12.
Während meines Aufenthalts in D. wurde ich des Stadtlebens ganz
überdüssig. 13. Kraft seines Amtes verhaftete er alle, die er des
Verraths verdächtig hielt. 14. Um seines Vaters Willen klebt er in
dieser Stelle, obgleich er einer bessern würdig ist. 15. "Der König
und die Kaiserin des langen Haders müde, erweichten ihren harten
Sinn und machten endlich Friede." 16. Dieser Tag war es, um
dessentwillen er Krone und Leben dem untreuen Glücke anvertraute.

EXERCISE 123.

Aufgabe 123.

1. We live on the other side of the city. 2. During the cold weather we remained at home. 3. He has taken your hat instead of his cap. 4. Those people are destitute of money, and in want of help. 5. They are not tired of walking, but they are weary of the road. 6. This is a labor to which I am entirely unaccustomed, and I do it only because I am in want of money. 7. Men often become guilty of a crime because they owe much money. 8. I am sure of his innocence, for I know that he is not capable of such a crime. 9. Every industrious man who is mindful of his destiny does not become tired of his life. 10. Our friends live within the city. 11. During our sojourn in Berlin my friend became master of the language. 12. For his friend's sake he remains here, although he is tired of city life. 13. He is conscious of his strength, sure of his aim, and certain of his cause. 14. This scholar is in want of money, and in need of good books. 15. By virtue of his office he has at length arrested the criminal. 16. He is not conscious of his strength. 17. This young stranger is worthy of a better situation.

LESSON LXII.

Section LXII.

REFLEXIVE VERBS WITH THE GENITIVE.

1. The following reflexive verbs require the genitive after the accusative (*or* dative) which they govern; namely,

| | | |
|--|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Anmaßen, to usurp; | Entblößen, to dare; | Geträsten, to be assured; |
| Annehmen, to protect; | Entbreiten, to forbear; | Rühmen, to boast of; |
| Bedienen, to avail; | Enthalten, to abstain; | Schämen, to be ashamed; |
| Befleißigen <i>or</i> befehligen, to endeavor; | Entschlagen, to get rid of; | Ueberheben, to boast; |
| Bergehen, to yield up; | Erinnern, to remember; | Unterfangen, to attempt; |
| Bemächtigen, to seize; | Erbarren, to pity; | Unterwinden, to venture; |
| Bemeistern, to master; | Erfreuen, to presume; | Vermessen, to vaunt; |
| Befehligen, to concede; | Erinnern, to recollect; | Versehen, to expect; |
| Befürchten, to consider; | Erfürchten, to dare; | Wehren, to resist; |
| Entsinnen, to consider; | Erweisen, to keep off; | Weigern, to decline; |
| Entaußern, to abstain; | Freuen, to rejoice; | Wundern, to wonder at; |

Enthalten is often followed by *von*; erbarmen, freuen, schämen and wundern by *über*; and besinnen and freuen by *auf*:

Deiner heiligen Zeichen, O Wahrheit, Thy holy signs, O Truth, deception
hat der Betrug sich angemast.—S. has usurped.

Ich denk' des Ausdrucks noch recht wohl I still very well remember the ex-
beß einst du selber dich von ihm be- pression that you once used in
b'ntest.—L. reference to him.

Sie erinnert sich ihres Versprechens. She remembers her promise.

Der Landmann rühme sich des Pflugs. Let the peasant boast of the plow.
—S.

Obs.—Behalten, when referring to a thing *learned*, answers to re-
member:

Ich kann die Namen nicht behalten. I can not *remember* the names.

2. Es gelüstet (or es lüstet), es jammert, es reuet,
es lohnt sich, also take a genitive after the accusative:

Lohnt sich's der Mühe zu hoffen und zu Is it worth the trouble to hope and
streben?—S. to strive?

Und da er das Volk sah jammerte ihn But when he saw the multitudes,
desselben.—Matt. ix, 36. he was moved with compassion
on them.

Es gelüstet is sometimes followed by *nach* (L. 57. 2.):

Wenn dich so nach Kämpfen lüstete. If you so longed for contests.

TRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE GENITIVE.

3. The following transitive verbs govern the genitive of a thing, and the accusative of a person:

| | | |
|---|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Anklagen, to accuse; | Vertröst'en, to put off, | Entlass'en, to dismiss; |
| Beleh'ren, to instruct; | feed with hope; | Entsetz'en, to displace, |
| Beraub'en, to bereave; | Wüldigen, to deign; | Entwöh'nen, to disuse; |
| Beschuld'igen, to accuse; | Zeihen, to accuse; | Lossprech'en, to acquit; |
| Enthe'b'en, to exempt (See 4. next page.) | Ueberfüh'ren, to convict, | |
| from; | Entsünd'en, to release; | Ueberzeug'en, to con- |
| Entle'bigen, to set free | Entblö'ssen, to uncover; | vince; |
| Mahn'en, to warn; | Entklei'b'en, to divest; | Versich'ern, to assure, |
| Ueberhe'b'en, to exempt | Entla'den, to discharge; | ascertain. |

Welch anderer Sünde klagt das Herz Of what other sin does your (the)
dich an?—S. heart accuse you!

Einer großen Furcht sind wir entlebigt. Of a great fear we are relieved.
—S.

Nicht Kleinmuths zeigt Der Cäsar. He who knows Don Caesar does not
 wer ihn kennt. -- S. accuse him of want of courage.
 Er überzeugte sie seiner Unschuld. He convinced them of his inno-
 cence.

4. The last *eleven* of the above list are often followed by
 von, mahnen by a n, and vertrüsten by a u f :

Wir sind von seiner Unschuld überzeugt. We are convinced of his innocence.
 Der Tod entbin'det von erzwung'nen Death releases from compulsory
 Pflichten. -- S. (compelled) duties.
 Dies Manifest spricht los das Heer von This manifesto releases the army
 des Gehor'sams Pflichten. -- S. from the duties of obedience.

VERBS WITH THE GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

5. The following verbs, though sometimes construed with
 the genitive, oftener take, except the last two, the accusative :

| | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Bedür'fen, to need; | Erwäh'nen, to mention; | Vergess'en, to forget; |
| Begeh'ren, to desire; | Genie'ssen, to enjoy; | Wah'ren, to preserve; |
| Brauchen, to need; | Gewah'ren, to perceive; | Wahrnehmen, to per- |
| Entbeh'ren, to lack; | Pflegen, to take care of; | ceive; |
| Entzath'en, to dispense | Schonen, to spare; | Erman'geln, to lack. |
| with; | Verseh'en, to miss; | |

Er bedarf des Geldes (or des Geld). He needs (is in need of) money.
 Erwähnte er der (or die) Sache? Did he mention the matter?
 Schone den (or des) Armen. Spare the poor man.
 Er kann diese (or dieser) Sachen leicht He can easily do without (lack)
 entbehren. these things.

6. Achten and warten govern the genitive or accusative :
 Ich achte ihn (or seiner). I regard (esteem) him.

With auf, achten signifies to pay attention to, to observe; and war-
 ten, with auf, to wait for :

Ich achte auf das was er sagt. I attend to what he is saying.
 Sie warten auf uns. They are waiting for us.

7. Harren governs the genitive, or is followed by the ac-
 cusative with a u f :

Wir harren deiner (or auf dich). We wait for (depend on) thee.

8. Gedenken (or denken) governs the genitive, or is fol-
 lowed by the accusative with a n :

Gedenke meiner (or an mich). Think of (remember) me.

9. *Lachen, spotten and walten* govern the genitive, or are followed by the accusative with *über* :

Ich spottete ihrer (or über sie). I mock (deride) them.
Es sind nicht Alle frei, die ihrer Ketten spotten.—G. They are not all free who deride their chains.

10. Many other verbs and adjectives were formerly followed by the genitive, some of which are still retained :

Sie sterben Hungers. They are dying of hunger.
Sie sind des Preises einig. They are agreed as to the price.
Hier ist meines Bleibens nicht. Here is not my abiding-place.
Man hat ihn des Landes verwiesen. He has been banished from the country.

Verbs governing the genitive, when used passively, take the impersonal form :

Deiner wird noch gedacht. You are still remembered.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Schäme dich nicht der Sparsamkeit. Be not ashamed of frugality.
Mehr als je, hebt ihn das Glück, denkst seiner alten Freunde der Ehrenmann.—G. More than ever, does the man of honor, if prosperity elevates him, think of (remember) his friends.
Der Freunde wird nicht mehr gedacht.—G. The (your) friends are no longer remembered.
Wir hätten seiner Gesellschaft entbehren können. We could have dispensed with his company.
O schonet mein !—G. O, spare me.
Genieße des Lebens, aber mit Ehren. Enjoy (the) life, but with honor.
Wenn ich seines Betrugens auch geschweigen wollte, muß ich seine Reden tadeln. Even if I would be silent concerning his behavior, I must blame his talk.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Berauben</i> , to rob ; | <i>Die Seele</i> , —, pl. —n, the soul ; |
| <i>Die Erhaltung</i> , —, the preservation ; | <i>Die Sorge</i> , —, pl. —n, the care ; |
| <i>Erinnern</i> , to remind ; | <i>Sorgfältig</i> , careful ; |
| <i>Erwähnen</i> , to mention ; | <i>Die Sphäre</i> , —, pl. —n, the sphere ; |
| <i>Erdenken</i> , to think of, p. 346 ; | <i>Spotten</i> , to deride ; |
| <i>Erst</i> , harsh, bitter ; | <i>Der Tod</i> , —s, the death ; |
| <i>Der Kampf</i> , —s, pl. Kämpfe, contest ; | <i>Die Veredelung</i> , —, pl. —en, the improvement, ennoblement ; |
| <i>Kaum</i> , scarcely ; | <i>Versehen</i> , to miss ; |
| <i>Der Körper</i> , —s, pl. —, the body ; | <i>Der Wechsel</i> , —s, pl. —, vicissitude ; |
| <i>Der Kummer</i> , —s, the grief ; | <i>Die Wiege</i> , —, pl. —n, the cradle ; |
| <i>Pflegen</i> , to take care of, nurse ; | <i>Die Würze</i> , —, pl. —n, the seasoning |
| <i>Schonen</i> , to spare ; | |

EXERCISE 124.

Aufgabe 124.

1. Es (L. 28. 9.) schon der Krieg auch (§ 156. 2. h.) nicht des Kindes in der Wiege. 2. Der Kranke vergaß seiner Schmerzen, der Trauernde seines Kummer, die Armuth ihrer Sorgen. 3. Mancher Mensch pflegt so sorgfältig seines Körpers, daß er seiner Seele kaum gedenkt. 4. Ihr fürchtet der Eshäre zu verfehlen, die eures Geistes würdig ist. 5. Genieße des Lebens, aber gedenke auch des Todes. 6. Die Freuden der Erde bedürfen der Würze des herben Wechsels zu ihrer Erhaltung und Veredlung. 7. Wer des Unglücklichen nicht schon, sondern desselben spotten kann, der verdient, daß man auch seiner im Unglück vergesse. 8. Ihres Freundes wartet noch ein schwerer Kampf. 9. Des Königs wurde heute gar nicht erwähnt. 10. Er erinnert sich der Güte dieses Fremden.

EXERCISE 125.

Aufgabe 125.

1. He often thinks of thee, but then he has forgotten. 2. Among others, he mentioned his cousin. 3. Do not forget the poor, while you are enjoying so many pleasures. 4. He who ridicules the poor shows a bad heart. 5. Never forget the love and kindness of those who instructed you in your youth. 6. Your friend does not need your assistance. 7. We should forget our sorrows and remember our joys. 8. He spares the guilty and punishes the innocent. 9. The matter was not mentioned. 10. He has taken care of his sick friend. 11. The good man does not forget his friends.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Anklagen, to accuse; | Erbar'men, to pity; |
| Anschuldigen, to accuse; | Erklären, to declare; |
| Anwesend, present; | Die Fessel, -, pl. -n, the chain; |
| Augenblicklich, instantly; | Die Freisprechung, -, pl. -en, the acquittal; |
| Befleiß'gen, to be studious of; | Der Gedanke, -ns, pl. -n, thought; |
| Begeben, to renounce, p. 348; | Gestweigen, to pass over in silence, p. 354; |
| Behalten, to retain, remember; | Je doch', however; |
| Bereits', already; | Der Kerker, -s, pl. -, the prison; |
| Beschuldigen, to accuse; | Die Landstraße, -, pl. -n, highway; |
| Beschuldig'en, to convict; | Das Mittel, -s, pl. -, the means; |
| Entblößt', destitute; | Der Rath, -es, the counsel, advice; |
| Entheben, to exempt from, 350; | Der Raub, -es, the robbery; |
| Entlassen, to release; | |
| Entschlagen, to divest, p. 354; | |

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Der Räuber, -s, pl. -, the robber; | Ueberfüh'ren, to convict; |
| Rühmen, to boast of; | Vielmehr, rather; |
| Schamen (sich), to be ashamed; | Wenig, last; |
| Die That, -, pl. -en, the deed; | Wündigen, to vouchsafe. |

EXERCISE 126.

Aufgabe 126.

1. Sie erinnern sich wohl (§ 151.) noch des jungen Mannes, der im vorigen Jahre des Raubes angeklagt war. 2. Er war beschuldigt einen reichen Viehhändler auf der Landstraße seines Geldes beraubt zu haben. 3. Man konnte ihn jedoch dieses Verbrechens nicht überführen. 4. Er hatte sich bereits aller Hoffnung einer Freisprechung begeben und sich des Gedankens entschlagen, als unschuldig erklärt zu werden. 5. Der Richter jedoch enthob ihn aller Sorge. 6. Nachdem er den Angeklagten aufgefordert hatte, gutes Muthes zu sein und sich alles Kammers zu entschlagen, erklärte er: Ich bin der vollen Meinung, daß man diesen jungen Mann nicht des Raubes bezüchtigen kann. 7. Denn nicht Jeder, der sich des Bettelns schämt und aller Mittel entkleidet ist, wird ein Räuber. 8. Ich will seines guten Betragens geschweigen, denn er hat sich immer eines ordentlichen Lebens beflissen. 9. Ich erinnere euch aber der Thaten im letzten Kriege, deren er sich mit Recht rühmen kann. 10. Freuet euch seiner Freisprechung und würdigt ihn eurer Freundschaft. 11. Spottet seiner nicht, weil er im Kerker war, sondern erbarmet euch vielmehr seiner und gedenket seiner Leiden. 12. Jeder, der seiner lacht, schäme sich seines eigenen Betragens. 13. Alle Anwesenden freuten sich dieser Rede, und man entledigte augenblicklich den Angeeschuldigten seiner Fesseln. 14. Ich kann mich dieser Leute erinnern, aber ich kann ihre Namen nicht behalten. 15. Er freute sich des klugen Rathes und ging hinaus und begab sich an die Arbeit.

EXERCISE 127.

Aufgabe 127.

1. The old soldier boasts of his valiant deeds. 2. Do you remember the promise that you gave me? 3. I do not remember that I gave you a promise. 4. Can you remember all the long words that you have found in this book? 5. Have you accused any one of this crime? 6. Who has robbed the traveler of his money? 7. He has been convinced of his error, but convicted of no crime. 8. The tyrant avails himself

of his power. 9. An honest man would be ashamed of such an action. 10. Do you remember the old man whom we met in the city? 11. Do you remember the old gentleman with whom we traveled from Berlin to Bremen? 12. Yes, I still remember him. 13. It is difficult for those who have a bad memory to remember the rules of a language. 14. Are you of the opinion that he is guilty of this crime? 15. I remember the man who accused your servant of robbery. 16. We rejoice to leave the country of the tyrant. 17. Our enemies have robbed us of our money, but they can not rob us of our honor. 18. The happy parents greatly (jêhr) rejoiced to see their lost child again. 19. He remembers still the happy days when he went to school with these children.



LESSON LXIII.

Section LXIII.

ADJECTIVES WITH THE DATIVE.

1. The dative is governed by many adjectives, and is then usually rendered by our objective preceded by *to* or *for*; sometimes by other prepositions. The dative generally precedes the adjective by which it is governed:

| | |
|--|--|
| Es ist den Menschen leichter zu schmei- cheln als zu loben.—R. | It is easier for man to flatter than to praise. |
| Weß' Dem, der zu der Wahrheit geht durch Schuld; sie wird ihm nimmer- mehr erfreulich sein.—S. | Woe to him who comes to the truth through guilt, it can never be a source of pleasure to him. |
| Es ist mir erinnerlich. | I can remember it. |
| Es ist mir unvergeßlich. | I can not forget it. |
| „Weß' dem armen Opfer, wenn derselbe Mund der das Gesetz gab, auch das Urtheil spricht.“ | Woe to (woe is) the poor victim, if the same mouth that gave the law also pronounces the sentence. |
| Weß! Dem, der frei von Schuld und Fehler bewahrt die kindlich reine Seele.—S. | Happy he (well to him) who, free from guilt and error, preserves his soul pure as a child. |

2. The dative is often substituted for a possessive pronoun, or for the genitive of a noun:

Wir rosten in der Halle Helm und Schild (for mein Helm &c.).—S. My helmet and my shield are rust-
ing in the hall.
Der Gott des Sieges wandelt ihr zur Seite.—S. The god of victory walks at her
side.

3. The first and second persons of pronouns, in the dative, are often used to indicate, in an indefinite manner, some special participation or sympathy on the part of the individuals which they represent :

Es sind Euch gar trotzig Kamera'ben. They are right insolent fellows (for
—S. you).
"Damals waren wir dir sehr vergnügt." At that time we were very joyous.

4. The dative, with *bei*, *von* and *zu*, often denotes one's place of residence or business, and is rendered by our possessive preceded by *at*, *from* or *to* :

Der Mantel ist beim Schneider. The cloak is *at* the tailor's.
Er geht zu seinem Oheim. He is going to his uncle's.
Sie kommt von ihrer Tante. She is coming *from* her aunt's.

The dative of the personal pronouns is used in the same manner; usually rendered by the possessive case of our pronoun followed by a noun :

Sie wohnen bei uns. They live at our house.
Wir gehen heute zu ihm. We are going to his house to-day.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Und erregt ihm den Grimm in der Seele.—S. And excites rage (anger) in his
soul.
Er ist bei seinem Freunde. He is at his friend's.
Wohnen Sie bei ihnen? Do you live at their house?
Sei deinen Freunden erge'ben und deinen Feinden gefäl'lig. Be devoted to thy friends and oblig-
ing to thy enemies.
Jeder rechtsiche Mann ist dem Guten geneigt' und dem Bösen abgeneigt. Every upright man is inclined to
(the) good, and disinclined to
(the) evil.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Der Charakter, -s, pl. -te're, the character; | Das Gegentheil, -s, the contrary, |
| Danbar, thankful, grateful; | Gehor'sam, obedient; |
| Die Falschheit, -, pl. -en, falsehood; | Das Gemüth', -es, pl. -er, mind |
| Gefähr'lich, dangerous; | Gleich, like, equal; |
| | Unäbig, gracious. |

| | |
|--|---|
| Der Grundsatz, -tē, pl. -sätze, the principle; | Der Sonnenschein, -ē, the sunshine; |
| Die Heuchelei, -, pl. -en, hypocrisy; | Das Spanien, -ē, (the) Spain; |
| Die Königin, -, pl. -nen, the queen; | Der Tadel, -ē, the blame; |
| Lasterhaft, wicked, vicious; | Ueberlegen, superior; |
| Lästig, burdensome, troublesome; | Unerträglich, intolerable; |
| Lebzig, free; | Unterthan (adj.), subject; |
| Lieb, dear, pleasant; | Unvergesslich, memorable; es ist mir —, I can never forget; |
| Das Lob, -ē, the praise; | Vereh'ren, to honor; |
| Die Neigung, -, pl. -en, inclination; | Verhaßt, hateful; |
| Der Rang, -tē, pl. Ränge, the rank; | Das Wachsthum, -tē, vegetation. |
| Schmeichelfhaft, flattering; | Werth, worth, dear; |
| | Widrig, repugnant; |

EXERCISE 128.

Aufgabe 128.

1. Ein gutes Kind ist seinen Eltern gehorsam und dankbar. 2. Das Rauchen ist denen sehr unangenehm, die es nicht gewohnt sind. 3. Mir ist es lieb, daß ich dir in dieser Sache nützlich sein kann. 4. Das Wetter war uns gestern sehr günstig, aber heute ist es ganz das Gegentheil. 5. Gut zu werden ist dem Lasterhaften schwer, denn er bleibt gewöhnlich seinen Neigungen treu. 6. Dem Königreich Spanien ist Frankreich überlegen. 7. Was ihn euch widrig macht, macht ihn mir werth. 8. Ihr seid dieser Königin nicht unterthan. 9. Vieles, was uns nicht gefährlich ist, ist uns doch sehr lästig. 10. Im Range ist er seinem Bruder gleich, im Charakter seinem Vater ähnlich. 11. Nichts ist mir so sehr verhaßt als Falschheit und Heuchelei. 12. Du bist des Leibes lebzig, Gott sei der Seele gnädig. 13. Warum ist dieses alte Buch unsern Freunden so lieb? 14. Es ist mir unvergesslich, wie sehr ich dir verbunden bin. 15. Den Soldaten war das Lob ihres verehrten Feldherrn sehr schmeichelfhaft. 16. Dieser Aufenthalt ist ihm fast unerträglich geworden. 17. Tadel und Lob sind dem Gemüthe des Menschen, was Sturm und Sonnenschein dem Wachsthum sind. 18. Ich wohne bei meinem Onkel.

EXERCISE 129.

Aufgabe 129.

1. These things may be useful and agreeable to you, but they are very unpleasant to me, and injurious to my friends. 2. Every good man is grateful to his benefactors. 3. This weather is very unfavorable for us. 4. It is very unpleasant to me that I am obliged to remain here so long. 5. Every good citizen is obedient to the just laws of his country. 6.

Will this happy country ever be subject to a king ? 7. What is more hateful to a good man than hypocrisy ? 8. I am much obliged to you that you have been useful to my friends in this matter. 9. The soldiers were with blind obedience devoted to their leader. 10. This house is very similar to the one in which you live. 11. No country in the world is superior to ours. 12. The few friends that this man has are very dear to him. 13. Many things are burdensome which are not dangerous to us. 14. Those are to be called good, who remain true to their principles. 15. The praise of a good man is very flattering to us. 16. He is gracious to those who are obedient to him. 17. Is he at his brother's ?

LESSON LXIV.

Section LXIV.

VERBS WITH THE DATIVE.

1. The dative is governed :

a. By transitive verbs, which in addition to the direct object (in the accusative), require the object to be specified, for or in relation to which an action is performed. In this use, as also with *gehören*, *schmeinen* and *reichen*, the dative is rendered by our objective with a preposition expressed or implied :

Er nahm es ihnen weg.
Dieser Hut gehört mir.

He took it away from them.
This hat belongs to me.

b. Many German verbs are called intransitive, and govern the dative, whose English equivalents are transitive, and govern the *objective* ; as, *antworten*, *befehlen*, *begegnen*, *danke*, *denken*, *drohen*, *fehlen*, *fluchen*, *folgen*, *fröhnen*, *frommen*, *gehören*, *gefallen*, *gehörten*, *gereichen*, *gleichen*, *helfen*, *huldigen*, *lohn*, *man*, *geln*, *nahe*, *nutzen*, *passen*, *rathen*, *schaden*, *schmeicheln*, *trauen*, *trösten*, *wehren*, *ziemen* :

Wer dir schmeichelt, schadet dir, wenn du ihm glaubst. He who flatters you injures you, if you believe him.

c. With the impersonally used verbs *es scheint*, *es dünkt*, *es*

dünkt, es efelt, es graut, es schwindelt, es träumt, as also es wird es ist, the dative is frequently rendered by our nominative :

Höret, was mir geträumt hat.—Gen. Hear what I have dreamed (hear, xxxvii. 6. I pray you, this dream which I have dreamed).

d. Intransitive verbs, governing the dative, take, when used passively, the impersonal form; the logical subject being put in the dative, in which position (like the impersonal verbs, see c.) it is rendered by the nominative :

Es wurde ihm (or ihm wurde) geschadet. He was injured.

Dennoch wurde dem Adel mehr geschmeichelt, als wirklicher Einfluß gegeben. Still, to the nobility, there was accorded more of flattery than of actual influence.
—C.

2. Some verbs govern the dative or the accusative, according to their signification :

Wir riefen ihnen, aber sie hörten uns nicht. We called them (to them) but they did not hear us.

Wir riefen sie in das Haus. We called them into the house.

3. *Rosten* is generally used with a dative and accusative; sometimes, however, with two accusatives :

“Es würde Freiheit mir und Leben kosten.” It would cost me freedom and life.

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

Endlich gelang' es ihm seinem Freunde die Augen zu öffnen. Finally he succeeded in opening his friend's eyes.

Traue nicht jedem Menschen, und am allerwenigsten denjenigen, die dir schmeicheln. Trust not every one, and least of all those who flatter thee.

Die Ermahnung eines Freundes gilt mir viel, und ich folge ihr gern. The admonition of a friend is of much value to me, and I follow it gladly.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Abfagen, to renounce;
Anhängen, to adhere to;
Angehören, to belong;
Antworten, to answer;
Beisommen, to get at;
Beistehen, to assist;
Beistimmen, to assent to;

Befla'gen (sich), to complain;
Beimohnen, to be present at, to take part in;
Danken, to thank;
Edelmüthig, noble;
Eigensinnig, obstinate;
Die Feindseligkeit, pl -en, hostility

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Gefehr'en, to obey; | Das Oesterreich, -s, (the) Austria; |
| Helfen, to help, avail; | Passen, to fit; |
| Der Herzog, -es, pl. -e, the duke; | Schaden, to injure; |
| Das Interesse, -s, pl. -n, interest; | Verpflicht'en, to bind (by oath), |
| Der Löwe, -n, pl. -n, the lion; | Das Vorhaben, -s, the design; |
| Mächtig, powerful, mighty; | Weh thun, to hurt; |
| Der Minister, -s, pl. -, minister; | Widersprech'en, to contradict; |
| Oeffnen, to open; | Zugehören, to belong to. |

EXERCISE 130.

Aufgabe 130.

1. Ich danke Ihnen, daß Sie mir geholfen haben. 2. Er würde mir gewiß schaden, wenn er mir beikommen könnte. 3. Dieser Hut paßt mir besser als jener. 4. Was fehlt Ihnen, warum widersprechen Sie Ihrem Freunde? 5. Es fehlt mir nichts; ob ihm etwas fehlen mag, weiß ich nicht. 6. Der Knabe hat sich in den Finger geschnitten. 7. Ganz Oesterreich lag dem edelmüthigen Ungarn zu Füßen. 8. Diesem eigensinnigen Menschen ist gar nicht zu helfen. 9. Es thut mir sehr leid, daß er sich weh gethan hat. 10. Dem König, welcher sich über diese Feindseligkeit beklagte, wurde geantwortet, "der Kaiser habe der Soldaten zu viel; er müsse seinen guten Freunden damit helfen." 11. Endlich gelang es dem Minister, dem König über sein wahres Interesse die Augen zu öffnen. 12. Wenn in alten Zeiten ein Mächtiger dem andern feind war, so sagte er demselben ab. 13. Aus allen Orten, die ihm angehörten, sammelte dieser mächtige Herr die Männer, die ihm anhängen. 14. Nachdem sie seinem Vorhaben beigestimmt hatten, verpflichteten sie sich ihm beizustehen und dem Kriege beizuwohnen. 15. Solch ein mächtiger Herr war Heinrich der Löwe, Herzog von Baiern, welchem große Länder zugehörten und Tausende von Kriegern gehorchten.

EXERCISE 131.

Aufgabe 131.

1. Why do you not answer him? 2. I have answered him, but he has not answered me. 3. Do they wish to injure their friends? 4. They have assisted us, and we will assist them. 5. Will you not help this boy? he has hurt himself. 6. The soldiers that adhered to him, bound themselves to take part in the war. 7. He calls them obstinate, because they will not assent to his design. 8. Do you know what ails those people? 9. This hat fits me better than the other one. 10. He does

not contradict them, though he thinks that they are wrong.
 11. How was the king answered when he complained of certain hostilities? 12. Is it my duty to obey such men, and to help them? 13. Have you succeeded in finding them? 14. Do you succeed in learning Spanish?

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ein kleiner Mann, ein großes Pferd; ein kurzer Arm, ein langes Schwert; muß eins dem andern helfen.—U. | A small man, a large horse, a short arm, a long sword must help each other (<i>i. e.</i> ought to go together). |
| Eine Frau, der die Erfüllung ihrer Pflichten am Herzen liegt, zeigt ihre Liebe zum Schönen nicht in einem kostbaren Anzuge, sondern in der gu- ten Einrichtung ihres Hauswesens. —W. | A woman who has at heart the fulfilment of her duties, shows her love of the beautiful, not in costly apparel, but in the appro- priate arrangement of her house- hold. |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Der Befehl, -es, pl. -e, the com- mand, order; | Der Kriegszug, -es, pl. -züge, cam- paign; |
| Die Acht, -, pl. -en, the outlawry; Drohen, to threaten; | Mißlingen, to fail, miscarry; Schweben, to wave; |
| Das Elend, -es, -e, the misery; Erliegen, to succumb, p. 350; Erweisen, to show, render, 358; | Der Stolz, -es, the pride; Trauen, to confide in; Trogen, to defy; |
| Die Familie, -, pl. -n, the family; Fluchen, to curse; Fügen (sich), to submit; Gebüh'ren, to be due; Gefal'len, to please, p. 348; Gleichen, to resemble, be like; Genü'gen, to suffice, satisfy; | Uebel wollen, to bear a grudge; Ueberzie'h'en, to invade, p. 358; Das Verlan'gen, -s, the demand; Die Vernunft, -, the reason; Widerste'h'en, to resist, p. 356; Widerstre'b'en, to oppose, to struggle against; |
| Der Herzogshut, -es, pl. -hüte, the ducal hat; | Bürnen, to be angry; Zuvor'kommen, to anticipate. |

EXERCISE 132.

Aufgabe 132.

1. Doch die Krone eines Kaisers schwebte ihm immer vor Augen.
 2. Der Herzogshut genügte ihm nicht. 3. Er traute seiner eignen Kraft und trogte dem Kaiser. 4. Der Kaiser forderle ihn auf sich seinen Befehlen zu fügen, und drohte ihm mit der Acht. 5. Doch dem Herzoge, der einem Löwen glich, galt weder Vernunft noch guter Rath. 6. Ihm gefiel nur seine eigne Meinung, und er widerstrebte dem Verlangen, dem Kaiser eine Ehre zu erweisen, die demselben

gehörte. 7. Der Kaiser, der dem Herzoge schon seit langer Zeit übel wollte und ihm wegen seines Stolzes zürnte, kam ihm zuvor und überzog ihn mit Krieg. 8. Der Kriegszug mißlang dem Kaiser nicht. 9. Der Herzog konnte der feindlichen Macht nicht widerstehen und erlag dem Kaiser in der Schlacht. 10. Er mußte nach England fliehen und nur seine Familie und einige Freunde folgten ihm. 11. Hier entlagte er jeder Hoffnung und flüchte dem Stolze, als der Ursache seines Elends.

EXERCISE 133.

Aufgabe 133.

1. Threaten them as you will, they will never succumb to you. 2. Will no one render them this service? 3. These men will not submit to his commands. 4. What does not please them is of no value to them. 5. All that he has heard and seen does not satisfy him. 6. They will not be able to resist so powerful an enemy. 7. The laws of nature are opposed in vain, there no resistance avails. 8. Why do you defy him? 9. He is angry at his friends. 10. Those people will injure you if you confide in them. 11. He anticipated us in every thing. 12. So great an honor is due to no man. 13. These children resemble their parents. 14. He struggled against the demand, but could not resist his enemy. 15. Your advice is of no value to him, for he can not renounce his evil company.

LESSON LXV.

Lektion LXV.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

1. *And er*, with words denoting time, signifies *next, following* and never refers, like *other*, to indefinite past time :

Er geht übermorgen und wir den andern Tag. He goes the day after to-morrow and we the next day.

Der Mann, der vor einigen Tagen hier war, ist krank. The man that was here the other day (a few days ago) is sick.

a. Instead of *and er*, as the equivalent of *other*, in denoting something additional, the adverb *noch* is employed :

Nimm noch einen Mantel, einer ist nicht genug. Take another cloak (in addition to this), one is not enough.

Nimm einen andern Mantel, dieser ist zu dünn. Take another cloak (instead of this), this is too thin.

b. The adverb *anders, otherwise, differently, else*, sometimes occurs in the signification of *namely, that is* :

Wer einen Zweck will, muß auch die Mittel wollen, wenn er anders verständig ist.—Gel. He who wishes a result must also wish for the means, *that is*, if (provided) he is judicious.

2. *Beide*, unlike *both*, may refer to objects taken separately; with *nicht* or *kein*, *beide* often answers to *neither, not either* :

Sorge für die Gesundheit deines Leibes und deiner Seele, aber verzürle beide nicht.—Re. Take care of the health of (thy) body and soul, but do not pamper either.

Welches von den beiden Pferden wird er kaufen? Which one of the two (both) horses will he buy?

Er wird keines von beiden kaufen. He will buy neither of them.

3. In referring to two things, different in kind, the neuter form singular, *beides*, is often employed :

Er hatte den Ring und die Feder, aber er hat beides verloren. He had the ring and the pen, but he has lost both.

Sie irren sich, denn beides liegt auf seinem Tische. You mistake (yourself), for both are (each is) lying on his table.

4. *Etwas* is sometimes used before nouns in the singular, and before adjectives, in the signification of *a little, somewhat* :

Sie brachten ihm etwas Milch.

They brought him a little milk.

Die Tage werden etwas länger.

The days are getting somewhat longer.

5. *So Etwas* signifies *such a thing, something of the kind* :

Ich hatte schon so Etwas gehört, ehe er ankam. I had (already) heard something of the kind before he arrived.

6. *Irgend* denotes great indefiniteness; it is often followed by the indefinite article, and generally rendered *any, some, whatever* :

Er hatte immer irgend eine unangenehme Wahrheit auf der Lippe.—Re.

He always had some disagreeable truth on his lips (lip).

7. *Viel* and *wenig*, in referring to a quantity, or to a number taken collectively, are not usually inflected, except when preceded by the definite article, or an adjective pronoun :

Der Jüngling hat sein vieles Geld und seine vielen Freunde verloren.

The youth has lost his large sum of money and his many friends.

Wie viel Uhr ist es?

What o'clock is it?

In the last example the phrase, in German as in English, is abbrevi-

viated; the full form being, wie viel auf der Uhr ist es? how much of the clock (o'clock) is it? The time may be reckoned either from a preceding or a following hour:

| | |
|--|---|
| Es ist ein Viertel nach drei; <i>or</i> | It is a quarter past three; <i>or</i> |
| Es ist ein Viertel auf vier. | It is a quarter on (<i>or</i> toward) four. |
| Es fehlt ein Viertel an (<i>or</i> bis) acht. | It lacks a quarter to eight; <i>or</i> |
| Es ist drei Viertel auf acht. | It is $\frac{3}{4}$ toward 8 (<i>i. e.</i> , it lacks $\frac{1}{4}$ of 9). |

After *halb*, *auf* is omitted; as, es ist *halb* acht, it is half (toward) eight; *i. e.*, half past seven.

8. **Viel** and **wenig** are declined, when they refer to a number taken as *individuals*; or *substantively* to persons; and, often, when preceded in the singular by prepositions:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Viele Menschen trinken keinen Wein. | Many men drink no wine. |
| Wenige Menschen sind ganz zufrieden. | Few men are perfectly contented. |

9. When declined in the singular, except as above specified, **viel** and **wenig** signify many or few *kinds*:

| | |
|--|--|
| Er trinkt viel Wein, aber nicht vielen Wein. | He drinks much wine, but not many kinds of wine. |
|--|--|

10. The superlative of **viel** (**meist**) is often preceded by the definite article, or a possessive pronoun:

| | |
|---|---|
| Unsere meisten Leiden sind die Folge unserer eignen Fehler. | Most of our sufferings are the consequence of our own errors. |
|---|---|

11. **Alle**, **all**, in some phrases, is equivalent to *all gone*, *spent*, *wasted*; with **beide** it does not require translation:

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sein Geld ist alle. | His money is <i>all gone</i> . |
| Alle Beide waren krank. | Both (of them) were sick. |

12. The plural of **all**, applied to divisions of time, answers to *every*. The English *all*, in such phrases as *all day*, *all the week*, etc., is rendered by **gan**z:

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Er geht alle Tage. | He goes <i>every</i> day (all days). |
| Er war den ganzen Tag hier. | He was here <i>all</i> (the whole) day |

Beispiele.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|--|
| Die Wahrheit und die Rose sind sehr schön, aber beide haben Dornen. | (The) truth and the rose are very beautiful, but both have thorns. |
| Ich habe ihn nie mit irgend einem Worte beleidigt. | I have never offended him by a single word. |
| Buweißen essen die Rennthiere nichts anderes als Moos. | Sometimes the reindeer eat nothing but (else than) moss. |
| Erinnere dich der vielen Wohlthaten die ich dir erwies. | Remember the many good deeds (favours) that I showed you. |
| Auf solche Art will ich nicht reich werden. | I do not wish to become rich in such a manner. |
| Unser Alles ist auf dem Spiel. | Our all is at stake |

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

| | |
|--|---|
| <p> Allerbest, very best; Ausgeben, to spend, p. 348; Beide, both; Der Bekann'te, -n, pl. -n, the ac- quaintance; Einiger, some (§ 52. 3); Einstellen, to appear; Der Empör'er, -s, pl. -, the rebel; Erben, to inherit; Die Flasche, -, pl. -n, flask, bottle; </p> | <p> Die Folge, -, pl. -n consequence; Der Geißhals, -es, pl. -hälse, the miser; Das Main, (the) Mayence; Das Mannheim, -s, (the) Manheim, Schlimm, bad, sad; Der Ueberroß, -es, pl. -röße, the overcoat; Das Vergnüg'en, -s, the pleasure; Vorsetzen, to place before. </p> |
|--|---|

EXERCISE 134.

Aufgabe 134.

1. Er heißt alles ^a Feinde und Empörer, was nicht mit ihm ist.
2. Verstehst du alles, was ich dir sage? 3. Wir alle ^a wollen mit
dir gehen. 4. Der Bauer setzte uns den allerbesten ^a Wein vor.
5. Er will noch Äpfel und eine andere Flasche Wein. 6. Wollen
Sie Bücher kaufen? 7. Ich habe schon welche ^b gekauft, aber ich will
noch einige kaufen. 8. Welches ereignete sich und die schlimmen Fol-
gen von Welchem stellten sich ein. 9. Das Wetter ist schon etwas
(or ein wenig) kälter geworden. 10. Wer hätte so etwas geglaubt?
11. Kennst du irgend Jemanden, der so etwas thun würde? 12. Ein
Jeder ^a von seinen Freunden hat ihn verlassen. 13. Er hat viel
Wein getrunken und viel Geld dafür ausgegeben. 14. Das viele
Geld, das er erbt, hat er ausgegeben für den vielen Wein, den er
getrunken hat. 15. Lerne nicht auf einmal Vieles, sondern viel.
16. Jeden Tag, den Sie zu uns kommen wollen, wollen wir Alle mit
Ihnen spazieren gehen. 17. Dieser Ueberroß ist zu klein, nehmen
Sie ihn weg und bringen Sie mir einen andern (see 1. a.).

EXERCISE 135.

Aufgabe 135.

1. The weather is so cold that I must have two overcoats,
bring me another one (see 1. a.). 2. As soon as my money was
all gone I had no longer any friends. 3. Which of these car-
riages shall you buy? 4. I shall not buy either of them, for
neither of them pleases me. 5. If you wait another day we
will all go with you. 6. Do you wish to buy any thing more?

a. § 58. 3; b. L. 39. 4; c. L. 48. 3; d. L. 32. 7.

7. I have a little money and he has a great deal. 8. Many of my acquaintances reside in this city. 9. The few friends that he has are more powerful than his many enemies. 10. Who has more enemies and fewer friends, more trouble and less pleasure than the miser? 11. I understand all that you say and can read all the letters that you have written. 12. I would like to buy a few pears and a few more apples. 13. To-morrow I shall go to Manheim, and the next day to Mayence. 14. Every book that I have is in this room. 15. Do you wish to buy some more horses? 16. The weather is becoming somewhat warmer.

LESSON LXVI.

Lektion LXVI.

PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE DATIVE.

1. Aus, § 112.

| | |
|---|--|
| Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinne. | <i>Out of sight, out of mind.</i> |
| Er ist aus Berlin. | He is <i>from</i> Berlin. |
| Ich that es aus Gehorsam gegen Sie. | I did it <i>through</i> obedience to you. |
| Aus bloßem Verdacht soll man nicht so handeln. | On mere suspicion one should <i>not</i> act thus. |
| Das sieht man aus dem Briefe. | One sees that <i>by</i> the letter. |
| Aus diesem Grunde bleibt er. | <i>For</i> this reason he remains. |
| Er lief aus allen Kräften. | He ran <i>with</i> all his might. |
| Was ist aus ihm geworden? | What has become <i>of</i> him? |
| Aus Freunden werden oft Feinde, seltener Freunde aus Feinden. | Friends often become enemies, enemies less frequently friends. |
| Er that es aus freien Stücken. | He did it of his own accord. |
| Sie wissen weder aus noch ein. | They are entirely at a loss. |
| Er hat sich aus dem Staube gemacht. | He has run away ("cut sticks"). |
| Es ist aus mit ihm. | It is all over with him. |
| Er schrieb seinem Bruder von München aus. | He wrote to his brother <i>from</i> Munich. |

2. Außer, § 112. 2.

| | |
|---|---|
| Nichts ist so sehr unser eigen, als unsere Gedanken; alles Andere ist außer uns.—W. | Nothing is so much (so completely) our own as our thoughts; all else is <i>without</i> (<i>exterior to</i>) us. |
| Wer nichts lieben will als sein Ebenbild, hat außer sich nichts zu lieben.—M. | He who will love nothing but his own image, has <i>except</i> (<i>beside</i>) himself, nothing to love. |
| Er war außer sich vor Wuth. | He was <i>beside</i> himself with rage. |
| Ich bin ganz außer Athem. | I am entirely <i>out of</i> breath. |
| Von dieser Gewohnheit geht er nicht ab außer wenn Fremde bei ihm sind. | From this custom he varies not, <i>except</i> when strangers are with him. |

Er kommt v o n dem Markte.

Ich komme a u s der Oper.

Was sagt man v o n ihm?

Sie singen v o n Lenz und Liebe.—ll.

Dieser Tisch ist v o n Ebenholz.

Und ließen sich taufen v o n ihm.

Er ist ein Schwede v o n Geburt.

V o n wem ist dieses Gemälde?

Er war v o n Wonne trunken.

Er ist klein v o n Person.

Du sollst Gott, deinen Herrn, lieben
v o n ganzem Herzen.

Er lebt v o n seinem Einkünften.

Es ging gut v o n Statten.

Er that es v o n freien Stücken.

Blau v o n Augen, weiß v o n Stirne.

Der Ein' in goldenen Locken, der Andre
grau v o n Haar.—ll.

He comes *from* the market.

I come *from* (out of) the opera.

What is said of him?

They sing of spring-time and love.

This table is (made) of ebony.

And were baptized of (by) him.

He is a Swede by birth.

By whom is this painting?

He was intoxicated with delight.

He is small in stature.

Thou shalt love the Lord thy God,
with all thy heart.

He lives on his income.

It went off (succeeded) well.

He did it of his own accord.

Blue-eyed (blue of), white-browed.

The one in golden locks, the other
gray-haired.

13. 3 u.

Er geht z u Markte, z u Tische.

Sie betteln von Haus z u Haus.

Es gereicht ihm z u r Ehre.

Sie ziehen ihn z u r Verantwortung.

Ich gehe z u meinem Bruder.

Er saß noch z u Tische.

Sie lagen ihm z u Füßen.

Sie stand ihm z u r Seite.

Er sah ein Treffen z u r See.

Wir kamen z u r rechten Zeit.

• Er dient z u Hofe.

Sie ist noch z u Hause. L 43. 2.

Er kauft Tuch z u einem Rock.

Das kann z u m Beweise dienen.

Es ist dir z u m Besten geschehen.

Du hast ihn z u m letzten Mal gesehen.

Sie starben z u Tausenden.

Man fängt sie z u Hausen.

Er reist z u Wasser, ich z u Lande.

Sie reisen z u Pferde, ich z u Fuß.

He is going to market, to table.

They beg from house to house.

It redounds to his honor.

They call him to account.

I am going to my brother's.

He was still sitting at table.

They lay at his feet.

She stood at his side.

He saw an engagement at sea.

We came at the right time.

He serves at court.

She is still at home.

He buys cloth for a coat.

That may serve for (as) a proof.

It was done for your good.

You have seen him for the last time.

They died by thousands.

They are caught by (in) multitudes.

He travels by water, I by land.

They travel on horseback, I on foot.

14. 3 u often occurs after a noun preceded by a u f or n a c h.

Er ging a u f den Fremden z u.

He went up to the stranger.

15. The dative with 3 u in connection with werden, is often rendered by our nominative; after m a c h e n, by our objective:

Von Natur besitzen wir keinen Fehler,
der nicht z u r Tugend, seine Tugend,
die nicht z u m Fehler werden könnte.

—G.

Vierzig Jahre dauerte ein Krieg, der
den Besitzer des goldreichen Peru
z u m armen Manne machte.—S.

By nature we possess no fault that
might not become a virtue, (and)
no virtue that might not become
a fault.

Forty years a war continued, which
made the possessor of gold yield-
ing Peru a poor man.

16. *Idioms with zu and nach.*

| | |
|--|--|
| Man hat es endlich zu Stande gebracht. | It has finally been accomplished. |
| Er machte sich den Umstand zu Nutze. | He profited by the circumstance. |
| Diese Leute hatten das Ihrige zu Rath. | These people take care of their own. |
| Er will zur Aber lassen. | He wishes to be bled. |
| Ich habe ihn zu Gesichte bekommen. | I have got a sight at (of) him. |
| Er konnte nicht zu Worte kommen. | He could not make himself heard. |
| Es kam ihm sehr zu Statten. | It was very favorable to him. |
| Die Haare standen ihm zu Berge. | His hair stood on end. |
| Er konnte vor Lachen kaum zu Athem kommen. | He could scarcely get his breath for laughing. |
| Mir ist nicht wohl zu Muth. | I feel ill-at-ease. |
| Das ist wirklich beinahe zum Toll werden. | That is really almost enough to make one mad. |
| Die Fremden logirten im Wirthshaus zum Adler. | The strangers lodged at the Eagle Hotel. |
| Die Thür ist zu, das Fenster auf. | The door is shut, the window open. |
| Er hat zu viel zu thun. | He has too much to do. |
| Nur immer zu! | Keep on! go on! |
| Schmerz und Traurigkeit machen die Seele nach und nach schlaff und wehmüthig.—B. | Melancholy and sadness gradually (by degrees) make the soul remiss and effeminate. |

LESSON LXVII.

Section LXVII.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. *Durch.*

| | |
|--|---|
| Er ging durch den Wald. | He went <i>through</i> the woods. |
| Wir sind noch nicht durch. | We are not yet <i>through</i> . |
| Arm an Genuß und noch ärmer durch den Genuß, was haben wir anders als Hoffnungen?—R. | Poor in enjoyment, and still poorer <i>through</i> enjoyment, what have we but hope(s)! |
| Er meint, er könne es durch Geld ausrichten. | He thinks he can accomplish it <i>by</i> (means of) money. |
| Durch nichts bezeichnen die Menschen mehr ihren Charakter als durch das, was sie lächerlich finden.—G. | In nothing do men more (perfectly) indicate their character, than in that which they call ridiculous. |

2. *Für.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Nur nur für sich und nicht auch für Andere lebt, ist nie glücklich. | He who lives only <i>for</i> himself, and not <i>for</i> others also is never happy |
| Ich fühle weder Liebe noch Haß für ihn. | I feel neither love nor hate <i>for</i> (toward) him. |
| Ich sehe ihn Tag für Tag. | I see him day <i>after</i> (by) day. |
| Er hat ein Zimmer für sich. | He has a room <i>by</i> (to) himself. |
| Ich halte es für meine Pflicht. | I consider it (regard it as) my duty |
| Du bist unsere Zuflucht für und für. | Thou hast been (art) our dwelling place in all generations. |
| —Ps. xc. l. | |

Er kaufte für einen Gulden Kaffee
Ich habe es für mein Leben gern.
Ich bin nicht dafür.

He bought a florin's worth of coffee
I am extravagantly fond of it.
I am not in favor of it.

3. Gegen.

Er ist höflich gegen sie.
Er verließ uns gegen Abend.
Sie sind verbunden gegen mich.
Weiß man kein Mittel gegen den Biß
eines tollen Hundes?
Er verkauft es nur gegen Geld.
Das Leben gleicht gegen die Ewig-
keit, dem schnellen Hauch der dem
Sterbenden entflieht.—R.
Wenn ich mich gegen sie verpflichten
soll, so müssen sie's auch gegen
mich.—S.

He is polite to (toward) them.
He left us toward evening.
They are united against me.
Is no remedy known for (against)
the bite of a mad dog?
He sells it only for money.
Life compared with eternity resem-
bles the fleeting breath that es-
capes the dying man.
If I am to pledge myself to them,
they must also do it to me.

4. Ohne

Nichts Werthvolles ist ohne Arbeit zu erlangen.
Ohne ihn wäre ich glücklich.
Ohne is sometimes substituted for als:
Es ist kein Erbe ohne (als) du und ich nach dir.—Ruth. iv. 4.

Nothing valuable is to be obtained without labor.
But for him I should be happy.
There is none to redeem it but thee, and I after thee.

5. Um

Des ganzen Landes Bauern stehen um
den Ort geschaart.—U.
Weiß er um die Sache?
Der Engel des Herrn lagert sich um
die her, die ihn fürchten.
Er kommt um fünf Uhr.
Um wieviel Uhr (welche Zeit) geht die
Sonne auf?
Verdiene ich das um dich?
Wie steht es um ihn?
Er ist um zehn Jahre älter.
Trauer war noch in Zamorra um den
Tod des großen Königs.—S.
Er fiel seinem Freunde um den Hals.
Um so (um desto) besser für uns.
Die Zeit ist um.
Er kommt einen Tag um den andern.
Sie kommen einer um den andern.
Er hat sich um das Vaterland verdient
gemacht.
Er spricht wie es ihm um's Herz ist.
Es handelt sich nicht um Kleinigkeiten.
Sie laufen um die Wette.
Um die Wette is often equivalent to eagerly, with all one's
might.

The peasants of the whole province
stand gathered round the place.
Does he know about (of) the affair?
The angel of the Lord encampeth
round about them that fear him.
He is coming at five o'clock.
At what time (what o'clock) does
the sun rise?
Do I deserve that from you?
How stands (is) it with him?
He is older by ten years.
There still was mourning in Zamo-
ra for the great king's death.
He fell upon his friend's neck.
So much the better for us.
The time is up (past).
He comes every other day.
They come on alternate days.
He has earned the gratitude of his
country.
He speaks as he thinks (feels).
It is not a trifle that is under con-
sideration.
They are running for a (the) wager.

6. *Um* in compounds frequently marks loss or privation :

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Er kam um sein Geld. | He lost his money. |
| Mann brachte ihn um. | He was destroyed. |
| Die ganze Mannschaft kam um. | The whole crew perished. |

7. The accusative with *um* is sometimes best rendered by our nominative :

| | |
|---|--|
| Es ist ein köstliches Ding um die Gesundheit. | The health is a precious thing (as to the health it is, etc.). |
|---|--|

LESSON LXVIII.

Section LXVIII.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

1. *An*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Er steht an Fenster, an der Thür. | He stands <i>at</i> the window, <i>at</i> the door. |
| Er sagt er sei krank an m Herzen (L. 20.4). | He says he is sick <i>at</i> (the) heart. |
| Er lehnte sich an die Wand. | He leaned <i>against</i> the wall. |
| Der Tisch stand an der Wand. | The table stood <i>against</i> the wall. |
| Ich erkannte ihn an der Stimme. | I recognized him <i>by</i> his voice. |
| Er nahm sie an der Hand. | He took her <i>by</i> the hand. |
| Er leidet an Kopfsch. | He suffers <i>from</i> headache. |
| Am Tage sieht man ihn nie. | <i>During</i> the day one never sees him. |
| Er ist reich an Hoffnung. | He is rich <i>in</i> hope. |
| Ich thue es an seiner Statt. | I do it <i>in</i> his stead. |
| Er starb an einer Wunde. | He died <i>of</i> a wound. |
| An ihn dachte ich nicht. | I did not think <i>of</i> him. |
| Die Stadt liegt an dem Flusse. | The city lies <i>on</i> the river. |
| Der Hut hängt an dem Nagel. | The hat hangs <i>on</i> the nail. |
| Er geht an die Thüre. | He is going <i>to</i> the door. |
| Schreiben Sie an ihn? | Are you writing <i>to</i> him? |
| Gaben Sie es an ihn ab? | Did you deliver it <i>to</i> him? |
| Er ist an zehn Jahre alt. | He is <i>about</i> ten years old. |

2. *Idioms with an*.

| | |
|--|--|
| Er ist noch an Leben. | He is still alive. |
| Er hat es so an der Art. | It is his way (custom). |
| Wir liegt nichts an der Sache. | I care nothing about the matter. |
| An der Sache ist nichts. | The affair is of no consequence. |
| Er hat Ekel an Allem. | He is disgusted <i>with</i> every thing. |
| Der Hund liegt an der Kette. | The dog is chained. |
| Die Reife kommt morgen an mich. | It will come my turn to-morrow. |
| Zu Reife ist an Ihnen; nein, sie ist an mir. | It is your turn; no, it is mine. L. 46. 2. |
| Das ist nicht an dem. | That is not true (is nothing in it). |
| Es ist an dem, daß ich gehen muß. | It is time for me to go. |
| Er ging ihnen an die Hand. | He assisted them. |
| Er hat es an den Mann gebracht. | He has found a customer. |
| Von jetzt an werde ich fleißig sein. | From now <i>on</i> I will be diligent. |
| Er steht oben an. | He stands <i>at</i> the head. |
| Sie wohnen neben an. | They live next door |

3. A u f.

| | |
|--|---|
| Er besteht d a r a u f. | He insists <i>upon</i> it. |
| Sie spielt a u f dem Flügel. | She plays <i>on</i> the piano. |
| Ich verlaſſe mich a u f Sie. | I depend <i>upon</i> you. |
| Er geht a u f den (steht a u f dem) Hügel. | He goes <i>on</i> (stands <i>on</i>) the hill. |
| Er iſt a u f der Hochzeit. | He is <i>at</i> the wedding. |
| Was fanden Sie a u f der Poſt? | What did you find <i>at</i> the post-office? |
| War er a u f dem Ball? | Was he <i>at</i> the ball? |
| Er iſt böſe a u f uns. | He is angry <i>at</i> us. |
| Ich höre a u f das was er ſagt. | I listen <i>to</i> what he says. |
| Sie gehen a u f der Wieſe. | They are walking <i>in</i> the meadow |
| Er wohnt a u f dem Schloß. | He lives <i>in</i> the castle. |
| Sind ſie a u f dem Lande? | Are they <i>in</i> the country. |
| A u f dieſe Weiſe geht es nicht. | <i>In</i> this way it will not succeed. |
| Er kleidet ſich a u f engliſche Art. | He dresses <i>in</i> the English faſhior.. |
| Er wartete a u f mich. | He waited <i>for</i> me. |
| Leihen Sie es mir a u f einige Tage. | Lend it <i>to</i> me <i>for</i> a few days. |
| Geht er a u f den Markt? | Is he going <i>to</i> market? |
| Er treibt das Vieh a u f die Weiße. | He drives the cattle <i>to</i> the pasture. |
| Er iſt ſtolz a u f ſein Geld, und eiſerſüchtig a u f ſeine Nachbarn. | He is proud <i>of</i> his money, and jealous <i>of</i> his neighbors. |
| Er halt viel (große Stücke) a u f ſie. | He thinks a great deal <i>of</i> them. |
| Es koſtet a u f vierzig Gulden. | It costs about forty florins. |
| Es liegt a u f dem (er legt es a u f den) Tiſch. | It lies (he lies it) <i>on</i> the table. |

4. I n.

| | |
|--|--|
| Er iſt in dem Garten. | He is <i>in</i> the garden. |
| Was hat er jezt in Sinne? | What has he <i>in</i> mind (on foot) <i>now</i> ! |
| Er geht in den Garten. | He is going <i>into</i> the garden. |
| Sie ſind in dem Concert. | They are <i>at</i> the concert. |
| Sein Vermögen beſteht in Grundſtücken. | His property consists <i>of</i> real estate. |
| Er that es in dieſer Abſicht. | He did it <i>with</i> this intention. |
| Sie gehen in das Concert. | They go <i>to</i> the concert. |
| Er jagte ſie in die Flucht. | He put them <i>to</i> flight. |
| Er ſprang in die Höhe. | He sprang <i>up</i> . |
| Er klatschte in die Hände. | He clapped his hands. |
| Das fällt in die Augen. | That attracts attention. |
| Ich habe ihn in Verdacht. | I suspect him. |
| Er lebt in den Tag hinein. | He lives extravagantly. |
| Er ſchlug die Arme in einander. | He folded his arms. |
| Sie drangen in ihn ſich zu erklären. | They pressed him <i>to</i> declare <i>himself</i> . |
| Das ſamm ich in den Tod nicht leiden. | To that I have a mortal aversion. |
| Wie kamen ſie in's Gedränge, aber er legte ſich für ſie in's Mittel. | They were <i>in</i> a dilemma, but he interposed <i>in</i> their behalf. |
| Er ſah ſie in's Auge. | He looked sharply <i>at</i> them. |
| Er liegt in den letzten Augen. | He lies <i>at</i> the point of death. |
| Sie liegen ſich in den Haaren. | They are together <i>by</i> the ears. |
| Sie redete in einem fort. | She spoke without cessation. |
| Er reiſte in aller Frühe ab. | He started very early. |
| Er iſt noch nicht in Reinen darüber. | He has not yet decided (is not clear) <i>in</i> reference to it. |
| Er ſagt, ſie habe ſich in ihn verliebt. | He says she has fallen <i>in</i> love <i>with</i> him. |

| | |
|--|---|
| Sie werden in den ersten Tagen ab- reißen. | They will depart <i>in</i> a very few days. |
| Er ist in der letzten Zeit sehr traurig gewesen. | For some time past he has been very sad. |
| Sechs Wörterlein nehmen mich in An- spruch jeden Tag.—Mt. | Six words claim my attention every day. |
| Sie haben ihn in Schutz genommen. | They have taken him <i>under</i> their protection. |

5. Über.

| | |
|--|--|
| Die Lampe hängt über dem Tische. | The lamp hangs <i>over</i> the table. |
| Er saß über mir am Tische. | He sat <i>above</i> me at the table. |
| Sie geht über die Brücke. | She is going <i>across</i> the bridge. |
| Das ist über Menschen Vermögen. | That is <i>beyond</i> (above) human power. |
| Er bekommt Brief über Brief. | He receives letter <i>after</i> (over) letter. |
| Lasset die Sonne über euren Zorn nicht untergehen.—Eph. iv. 26. | Let not the sun go down <i>upon</i> your wrath. |
| Hier über hat er nicht nachgedacht. | On this he has not reflected. |
| Und wollen, daß mein Volk meines Na- mens vergesse über ihren Träumen, gleichwie ihre Väter meines Namens vergessen über den Baal.—Jer. 23. | Which think to cause my people to forget my name <i>by</i> their dreams, as their fathers have for- gotten my name <i>for</i> Baal. |
| Über diese langweilige Rede schlief er ein. | <i>Under</i> (during) this tedious speech he fell asleep. |
| Über das Säumniß haben euch die Spanier das Netz über die Ohren gezogen.—G. | <i>During</i> the delay the Spaniards have drawn the net <i>over</i> your ears. |
| Moses aber stöh über diese Rede. | Then fled Moses <i>at</i> this saying. |
| Sie ist böse über mein Lachen. | She is angry <i>at</i> my laughing. |
| So wir heute werden gerichtet über dieser Wohlthat. | If we this day be examined <i>of</i> this good deed.—Acts, iv. 9. |
| Man hat ihn über der That ertappt. | He has been caught <i>in</i> the act. |
| Er hatte sich getröstet über Amnon.— 2. Sam. xiii. 39. | He was comforted <i>concerning</i> Am- non. |
| Heute über acht Tage kommt er. | A week <i>from</i> to-day he is coming. |
| Reisen Sie über Bremen? | Do you go <i>by way of</i> Bremen? |
| Über den Sommer wohnt er auf dem Lande. | <i>During</i> (through) the summer he lives in the country. |
| Über kurz oder lang kommt er an den Galgen. | Sooner or later he will come to the gallows. |
| Bei ihm geht die Reblüchkeit über Alles. | With him honesty is prized <i>above</i> every thing else. |
| Er konnte es nicht über das Herz bringen. | He could not find it <i>in</i> his heart (take up his mind to it). |
| Sie sind über Feld gegangen. | They have walked <i>into</i> the country. |
| Über den faulen Kerl! | O, the <i>very</i> fellow! |
| D, über die Blinden, die nicht sehen wollen!—L. | (O,) <i>charge</i> on the blind that will not see! |

6. Unter.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Wir saßen unter dem Baum. | We sat <i>under</i> the tree. |
| Er saß unter mir am Tische. | He sat <i>below</i> me at the table. |
| Das ist unter seiner Würde. | That is <i>below</i> his dignity. |
| Unter dieser Bedingung thue ich es. | On this condition I will do it. |

| | |
|---|--|
| Unter seinen Söhnen habe ich mir einen König erwählt. | I have provided me a king <i>among</i> his sons.—1 Sam. xvi. 1. |
| Er bestieg unter dem Schalle der Trommeten das Roß. | <i>Amid</i> the clangor of trumpets he mounted the steed. |
| So lange der Erbe ein Kind ist, so ist unter ihm und einem Knechte kein Unterschied.—Gal. iv. 1 | As long as the heir is a child there is no difference <i>between</i> him and a servant (<i>Literal</i>). |
| Man kennt ihn nur unter diesem Namen. | He is known only <i>by (under)</i> this name. |
| Komme mir nie wieder unter die Augen. | Never come <i>before</i> my eyes again. |
| Er ist unter der Arbeit eingeschlafen. | He has fallen asleep <i>at</i> his work. |
| Das Buch ist unter der Presse. | The book is <i>in</i> press. |
| Es ist unmöglich alle Köpfe unter einen Hut zu bringen. | It is impossible to make all men of one opinion. |
| Er hat um eine Unterredung unter vier Augen. | He sought a private (secret) interview. |
| Er ging unter die Soldaten. | He became a soldier. |
| Es liegt Alles unter einander. | Every thing lies in confusion. |
| Er steht unter einer Decke mit ihnen. | He is in collusion (under one cover) with them. |

7. V o r.

| | |
|---|--|
| Sie steht vor der Thür. | She is standing <i>before</i> the door. |
| Sie weinten vor Freude. | They wept <i>for (with)</i> joy. |
| Er starb vor Hunger. | He died <i>of</i> hunger. |
| Er war außer sich vor Zorn. | He was beside himself <i>with</i> anger. |
| Nest sind wir sicher vor ihm. | Now we are safe <i>from</i> him. |
| Find er Schutz vor ihm? | Did he find protection <i>against</i> him? |
| Das Schiff liegt vor Anker. | The ship lies <i>at</i> anchor. |
| Ich sah ihn vor einer Stunde. | I saw him an hour <i>ago</i> . |
| Das ist vor der Hand hinreichend. | That, <i>for</i> the present, is sufficient. |
| Die Hinrichtung wird bald vor sich gehen. | The execution will soon take place. |

LESSON LXIX.

Section LIX.

ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Ü b e r.

| | |
|---|---|
| Es ist gut, aber nicht schön. | It is good, <i>but</i> not beautiful. |
| Er, aber, wollte nicht gehen. | He, <i>however</i> , would not go. |
| Sie kann es thun; will sie aber? | She can do it; will she <i>though</i> ? |
| Und aber erlang die Trommets. | And <i>again</i> the trumpet resounded. |
| Er ist höchst aber—(i. e. über)gläubig. | He is exceedingly superstitious. |

2. A l l e i n.

| | |
|---|---|
| Sie sind zwar reich, allein sie nutzen ihren Reichthum nicht. | They are, it is true, wealthy, <i>but</i> they do not use their wealth. |
| Er ist nicht allein reich, sondern auch wohlthätig. | He is not <i>only (alone)</i> rich, but also beneficent. |

3. Als.

| | |
|---|--|
| Der Max bleibt uns a l s Geißel.—S. | Max remains (to us) <i>as</i> (a) hostage. |
| Er sieht aus, a l s ob er krank wäre. | He looks <i>as</i> though he were sick. |
| Süßer ist nichts, a l s Liebe; König ist Galle zu ihr.—S. | Sweeter <i>than</i> love is nothing; honey is gall (compared) to it. |
| Er hat nichts a l s das Leben. | He has naught <i>but</i> (else <i>than</i>) life. |
| Niemand a l s er kann es thun. | None <i>but</i> him can do it. |
| Ich spreche so viel.—) ich kann. | I speak as much as I can. |

NOTE.—After *so*, *as* in the above example, *als* is often omitted.

4. Also.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich mußte a l s o handeln. | I was obliged to act <i>thus</i> (so). |
| Er hat es versprochen, a l s o muß er es thun. | He has promised it, <i>consequently</i> (<i>hence</i>) he must do it. |
| Sie kennen ihn a l s o? | You know him <i>then</i> ! |

5. Auch.

| | |
|---|---|
| Der Schüler ist a u c h hier gewesen. | The scholar also has been here. |
| Sie kennen ihn, ich kenne ihn a u c h. | You know him, I know him <i>too</i> . |
| Sie kennen ihn nicht, ich kenne ihn a u c h nicht. | You do not know him, neither (L. 21. 8.) do I (L. 38. 7.). |
| Schrecklich immer, a u c h in gerechter Sache ist Gewalt.—S. | Dreadful always, <i>even</i> in a just cause, is violence. |
| Es ist brav und löblich einen Bösewicht, wo er a u c h steht, furchtlos anzugreifen.—S. | It is noble and praiseworthy fearlessly to attack a villain, wherever he may stand. |
| Das Wahre, Gute und Vortreffliche ist einfach und sich immer gleich, wie es a u c h erscheine.—S. | The true, good and excellent is simple and always alike, however it may appear. |

6. Bald.

| | |
|---|--|
| Er wird b a l d ankommen. | He will <i>soon</i> arrive. |
| Er wird b a l d böse. | He is <i>easily</i> provoked. |
| Er wäre b a l d gefallen. | He <i>almost</i> fell (was likely to fall) |
| Es ist b a l d vier Uhr. | It is <i>nearly</i> four o'clock. |
| B a l d hört man es hier, b a l d dort. | <i>Now</i> it is heard here, <i>now</i> there. |

7. Bis.

| | |
|---|---|
| Warte b i s ich zurückkomme. | Wait <i>till</i> I return. |
| Er ging b i s an die Brücke. | He went <i>as far as</i> (to) the bridge. |
| Sie gingen b i s an den Hals in das Wasser. | They went in to the water <i>up to</i> their necks. |
| Er ist b i s zum Sterben krank. | He is sick <i>even unto</i> death (dying). |
| Ich habe ihn b i s auf den letzten Pfennig bezahlt. | I have paid him <i>to</i> the last farthing. |
| E: hatte das Geld b i s auf einige Groschen erhalten. | He had received the money <i>within</i> (except) a few groats. |
| Alle b i s auf Sie sind zufrieden. | All <i>but</i> (except) you are satisfied. |
| W e r n i c h t erfolgt des Kampfes Ende, a l s b i s der letzte Mann gefallen ist. | The end of the contest did not come <i>until</i> the last man fell (had fallen) |

8. Da.

Da er nicht geht, so gehe ich. *As (since) he does not go, I go.*
 Da noch Alles lag in weiter Ferne... *As (when or while) all yet lay in the*
 Da hartest Du Entschluß und Muth— *distance, (then) you had resolu-*
 und jetzt, *tion and courage, and now that*
 ... Da der Erfolg versichert ist da *the result is secured (now) you*
 fängst Du an zu zagen.—S. *begin to despair.*
 Du standest hier, ich stand da. *You stood here, I stood there.*
 Da bin ich schon wieder. *Here I am again already.*
 elig sind, die da Leid tragen. *Blessed are they that mourn.*

9. Daß.

Sagte er, daß er heute gehe? *Did he say that he goes to-day!*
 Wie lange ist es, daß er hier war? *How long is it since he was here?*
 Warte bis daß er kommt. *Wait till (that) he comes.*
 Daß ich ihn nur sehen könnte! *That I might only see him!*
 Daß du nicht von der Stelle gehst. *Do not move from the spot.*
 Daß ich es nicht wüßte! *As though I did not know it!*
 Auf daß er es bald vergesse. *In order that he may soon forget it.*

10. Denn.

Warum geht er denn nicht mit uns? *Why does he not go with us then?*
 Ich muß ihn achten, denn er ist ein *I must respect him, for he is an*
 aufrichtiger Mann. *upright man.*
 Sie essen nichts denn Brod. *They eat nothing but bread.*
 Er steht höher als Krieger, denn als *He stands higher as a warrior than*
 Staatsmann. *as a statesman.*
 Der Mensch kann nicht wahrhaft glück- *Man can not be truly happy (i. e.*
 lich sein, es sei denn, daß er tug- *unconditionally), be it then (as the*
 endhaft sei. *condition), that he be virtuous; or,*
 Man can not be truly happy unless he is virtuous.

11. Doch.

Das ist doch sonderbar. *That is really singular.*
 Ich möchte doch wissen, warum er da- *Why, I should like to know, why he*
 hin geht. *goes there.*
 Gehen Sie doch mit mir. *Do (pray do) go with us.*
 Ja, doch! Nein, doch! *Yes, indeed! No, indeed!*
 Du kennst sie nicht. *You do not know them. O yes I do.*
 Er hat kein Buch. } doch (or o doch.) *He has no book. Yes he has.*

12. Eben.

Sie ist eben so alt wie er. *She is just as old as he.*
 Wir gehen eben (or so eben) aus. *We are just going out.*
 Das dachte ich eben nicht. *That is not exactly what I thought.*
 Eben darum will ich nicht mehr schrei- *For that very reason I will not*
 ben. *write any longer.*

13. Ehe.

Ich sah ihn, ehe er mich sah. *I saw him before he saw me.*
 Ich möchte eher (lieber) sterben, als so *I would rather die than to live*
 leben. *thus.*
 Er ging nicht ehe er, als bis er sie alle *He did not go till (before) he had*
 gesehen hatte. *seen them all.*

14. Erst.

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Erst bete, dann arbeite. | <i>First pray, then work.</i> |
| Sie ist erst zehn Jahre alt. | She is <i>only</i> ten years old. |
| Er hat erst angefangen. | He has <i>only just</i> begun. |
| Wir werden erst morgen gehen. | We shall <i>not</i> go <i>till</i> to-morrow. |

15. Etwa.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Er ist etwa fünfzig Jahre alt. | He is <i>about</i> fifty years old. |
| Habe ich Sie etwa beleidigt? | Have I (<i>perhaps</i>) offended you? |

16. Gar.

| | |
|--|---|
| Es ist nicht so gar lange her. | It is not so <i>very</i> long since. |
| Ich weiß es nur gar zu wohl. | I know it <i>but</i> (altogether) <i>too well</i> . |
| Es ist gar zu schön. | It is <i>very</i> (too) beautiful. |
| Es ist schädlich, wenn nicht gar gefährlich. | It is injurious, if not <i>even</i> dangerous. |
| Es dürstete sie gar sehr. | They were exceedingly thirsty. |
| Ei, warum nicht gar? | Hey, why not then (indeed)? |
| Ich sehe es gar nicht. (L. 19. 3.) | I do not see it all. |

17. Gern, *fain, gladly*, comparative lieber, *rather*, often answers to *like, be fond of*, etc.

| | |
|--|--|
| Die Kinder, sie hören es gerne.—G. | The children (L. 28.) <i>like</i> to hear it. |
| Ich trinke gern Kaffee. | I am <i>fond</i> of coffee. |
| Möchten Sie gern Deutsch lernen? | Would you <i>like</i> to learn German? |
| Er hat sie sehr gern. | He <i>likes</i> them very much. |
| Diese Pflanze hat gern einen sandigen Boden. | This plant <i>likes</i> (flourishes best in) a sandy soil. |
| Es möchte gern regnen. | It "is trying" to (looks like) rain. |
| Dies Pferd schlägt gern. | This horse is <i>inclined</i> to kick. |
| Stille Wasser sind gern tief. | Still waters are (<i>apt</i> to be) deep. |

18. Gleich is often equivalent to *vergleich* (L. 53).

| | |
|--|---|
| Ist es gleich nicht schön, so ist es doch gut. | <i>Although</i> it is not beautiful, it is (nevertheless) good. |
| Ist gleich der Birnamwald auf Dunsinane herangerückt.—S. | <i>Though</i> Birnam wood be come to Dunsinane.—Shak. |

19. Immer.

| | |
|--|--|
| So sei es immer. | Thus be it ever (<i>or always</i>). |
| Es sind noch immer hier. | They are still (—) here. |
| Es ist immer ein gewagtes Unternehmen. | It is a hazardous undertaking, at any rate. |
| So schlimm es immer (<i>or auch</i>) ist. | However bad (bad as) it is. |
| Sie mögen immer wissen, daß ich nichts mehr habe.—L. | It is a matter of indifference to me that they should know I no longer have any thing. |
| Er kann es immer glauben. | He may (for aught I care) believe it. |
| Er sage, was er immer wolle. | Let him say what he pleases. |
| Sie werden immer stolzer. | They grow prouder and prouder. |

20. *3 a.*

bleiben Sie ja zu Hause.
 Thun Sie es ja nicht,
 Ich kann ja nicht lesen, noch rechnen
 und schreiben.—B.
 Wenn ich ja länger ausbleiben sollte, so
 warte nicht auf mich.

Remain, *by all means*, at home.
 Do not, *by any means*, do it.
 Why, I can not read, nor cipher
 nor write.
 But if I should remain longer do
 not wait for me.

21. *3 c.*

Sie ist je und je traurig.
 Ist er je hier gewesen?
 Das hat von je her die Erfahrung be-
 wiesen.
 Sie gingen je zwei und zwei.
 Es neckt je einer den andern.
 Je nachdem er gehandelt hat, wird sein
 Loos sein.
 Je länger hier, je (besto) später dort.

She is *always* (ever and ever) sad.
 Has he *ever* been here?
 Experience has *always* (from the
 first) proved that.
 They went two by two.
 Each teases the other.
 According as he has acted will his
 lot be.
 The longer here the later there.

22. *Kein.*

Es ist kein Schnee.—G.
 Und nirgends kein Dank.—G.
 Wie elend wäre nicht der Mensch ohne
 Hoffnung.

It is not (is no) snow.
 And nowhere any (no) gratitude.
 How miserable would (not) man
 be without (but for) hope.

NOTE.—Where two negatives occur, as above, only one should be translated.

23. *Noch.*

Er wohnt noch hier.
 Es ist weder schön noch nützlich.
 Ich habe ihn noch nicht gesehen.
 Singen Sie es noch einmal.
 Nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel.
 Beendige eine Sache, wenn sie auch
 noch so klein scheint, ehe du eine an-
 dere anfängst.

He *still* lives here.
 It is *neither* beautiful *nor* useful.
 I have not *yet* seen him (L. 21. 7).
 Sing it *again* (yet once).
 Take *another* apple (L. 65. 1. a).
 Finish one thing, even if it *seems*
 ever (never) so small, before you
 begin another.

24. *Nun.*

Was ist nun zu thun?
 Nun, was ist zu thun?
 Welchen Entschluß nun sie faßten, er
 hatte seinen Zweck erreicht.
 Und nun dies Blatt uns für die
 Truppen bürgt.—G.

What is to be done *now*?
 Well, what is to be done?
 Whatever resolution they adopted
 he had gained his end.
 And since (now that) this sheet
 secures to us the troops.

25. *Nur.*

Das weiß er nur zu gut.
 Er hat nur einen Freund.
 "Wohin ich nur sehe."
 Laß ihn nur kommen.
 Wie ich es nur immer verlangen mag.

That he knows *but* too well.
 He has *only* (but) one friend.
 Wherever I look.
 Just let him come.
 However I may demand it.

26. *ſchon*.

Sie kommen *ſchon*.
 Sie werden *ſchon* kommen.
 Das iſt ihm *ſchon* recht.
 Habe ich *ſchon* wenig (obſchon ich wenig habe) ſo habe ich doch genug.

They are *already* coming.
 They will come at the right time.
 He is perfectly ſatisfied wit that.
Although I have but little, ſtill I have enough,

27. *ſo*.

Er iſt eben ſo alt wie ich.
 So ein Buch ſieht man ſelten.
 Wie kann er ſo etwas glauben?
 So ihr bleiben werdet an meiner Seite, ſo ſeid ihr meine rechten Jünger.
 Ich bin euch ein Dorn in den Augen, ſo klein ich bin.—G.
 Nicht ſo bald war etner fort, als ein anderer kam.
 So gehen Sie ſchon?
 So groß ihre Furcht vor dem Feinde war, ſo angenehm war ihre Ueberaſchung über ſeine Mäßigung.

He is just *as* old as I am.
Such a book one ſeldom ſees.
 How can he believe *such* a thing?
 If ye (will) continue in my word, then are ye my diſciples indeed.
 I am a thorn in your eyes, ſmall *as* (however ſmall) I am.
 No ſooner was one gone than another came.
 Ah (indeed), are you already going?
 Great *as* was their fear of the enemy, *so* agreeable was their ſurpriſe at his moderation.

28. *ſonſt*.

Thue es nicht, ſonſt wirſt du beſtraft werden.
 Sie müſſen es thun, ſonſt geht er weg.
 Er hat ſie ſonſt wo geſehen.
 Sonſt dachte und handelte er ganz anders.
 Sie könnten es thun, wenn ſie es ſonſt wollten.

Do not do it, *otherwise* you will be puniſhed.
 You muſt do it, *or else* he will go away.
 He has ſeen them *somewhere else*.
Formerly he thought and acted entirely *otherwise*.
 You could do it, that *is*, if you would (if you only would).

29. *und*.

Der Menſch iſt frei geſchaffen, iſt frei, und würd er in Ketten geboren.—G.

Man is created free, is free *even* (and) were he born in chains.

30. *vielleicht*.

Sie kennen ihn vielleicht.
 Kennen Sie ihn vielleicht?
 Können Sie mir vielleicht ſagen, wo er wohnt?

Perhaps you know him.
 Do you know him (*perhaps*)?
 Can you (*perhaps*) tell me *where* he lives?

31. *wie*.

Wiſſen Sie, wie er ſingt?
 Er ſpricht, wie er denkt.
 Sie wohnen noch hier, wie ich hörte.
 Er heult wie ein Wolf.
 Der Menſchen Thaten und Gedanken, wiſt, ſind nicht wie Meeres wild bewegte Wellen.—G.

Do you know *how* he ſings?
 He ſpeaks *as* he thinks.
 They ſtill leave here, *as* I hear.
 He howls like a wolf.
 Men's thoughts and deeds, know (ye), are not *like* (not *as* are) ocean's wildly agitated waves.

32. Als wie sometimes occurs in the signification of wie :

Der See liegt ruhig da, als wie ein The lake lies quiet there (so as)
ebener Spiegel.—G. like a smooth mirror.

33. Wie (or als wie) sometimes follows an adjective in the comparative, and answers to than :

Weniger reich, wie sie scheint ist un- Less rich than it seems is our lan-
ger Sprache.—R. guage.

34. Wohl.

Er befindet sich wohl. He is (finds himself L. 28. 9.) well.
Ich bin nicht so recht wohl. I am not so very (right) well.
Mir ist nicht wohl. I do not feel well (L. 57. 2.).
Es thut Einem wohl. It is pleasant (grateful) to one.

35. Wohl often denotes a doubt, a supposition, or a probability.

Sie hat uns wohl noch nicht gesehen. She has probably not seen us yet.
Der Bauer wagt' sein Leben dran; doch The peasant risked his life at it,
thut er's wohl um Goldes Klang? but did he do it probably for the
—B. clink of gold?

Es sind wohl Hundert Jahre her. It is perhaps a hundred years since.

Wie kann der Mensch sich kennen lernen? How can man become acquainted
Durch Betrachtungen niemals, wohl with himself by reflection never,
aber durch Handeln.—G. but he can by acting.

Wohl ist sie schön, die Welt.—G. The world is indeed beautiful.

LESSON LXX.

Lesson LXX.

1. Herr, Frau and Fräulein, placed before proper names, answer to Mr., Mrs. and Miss. In address, when the name is omitted, Mein Herr answers to Sir, and Mein Fräulein, to Miss; Meine Herren, to Gentlemen, and meine Fräulein, to Ladies. Madam' (singular), and meine Damen (plural), are addressed to married ladies.

2. Herr, Frau and Fräulein are used before words denoting relationship (except in reference to one's own relatives); and the first two before titles :

Ich habe heute Herrn N., Frau N. I have to-day seen Mr. N., Mrs.
und Fräulein N. gesehen. N. and Miss. N.

Guten Morgen, mein Herr, wie befin- Good morning Sir, how is your
det sich Ihr Herr Vater? father?

Guten Abend, mein Fräulein, wie be- Good evening Miss, how are your
finden sich Ihre Frau Mutter und mother and your sisters?

Ihre Fräulein Schwestern? Can you tell me where Mr. Secret-
rären Sie mir sagen, wo der Herr ary L. resides?

Secretär L. wohnt? I have seen your brothers and your
Ich habe Ihre Herren Brüder und Ihre sisters.

Fräulein Schwestern gesehen. Good evening Gentlemen, how do
Guten Abend meine Herren, wie befin- you do?

den Sie sich? Is the Professor at home?

Ist der Herr Professor zu Hause?

ABBREVIATIONS. *Abkürzungen.*

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a. a. D. | am angeführten Orte, . . . | at the place mentioned |
| Abschn. | Abchnitt, | section. |
| Ann. or Anmerk. | Anmerkung, | observation. |
| Antw. | Antwort, | answer. |
| a. St. | alten Styls, | old style. |
| A. T. | Altes Testament, | Old Testament. |
| Auß. | Auflage, | edition. |
| ausg. | ausgenommen, | except. |
| B. | Buch, Band, | book; volume. |
| C., Cap. or Kap. | Capitel or Kapitel, | chapter. |
| Centn., Ct. or Ctr. | Centner, | hundred weight. |
| D., Dr. or Doct. | Doctor, | Doctor. |
| Dem. or Demois. | Demoiselle, | maiden, lady, <i>miss</i> . |
| d. h. | das heißt, | that means. |
| d. i. | das ist, | i. e., viz. |
| d. J. | dieses Jahr, | this year. |
| d. M. | dieses Monats, | of this month. |
| d. V. | der Verfasser, | the author. |
| Ev. | Evangelium, | Gospel. |
| Ew. | Euer, Eure, | your. |
| f. or folg. | folgend, (<i>sing.</i>) | } . . the following. |
| ff. | folgende, (<i>plur.</i>) | |
| Fr. | Frau, | lady, wife. |
| Frhr. | Freiherr, | baronet, baron. |
| geb. | geboren, | born. |
| gest. | gestorben, | died. |
| Fr., Frn. | Herr, Herrn, | Mr., Sir, Sirs, <i>Messrs</i> |
| h. S. | heilige Schrift, | Holy Scriptures. |
| J. C. | Jesus Christus, | Jesus Christ. |
| Kais. or kaiserl. | kaiserlich, | imperial. |
| Kön. or königl. | königlich, | royal. |
| L. | lies, | read. |
| Mad. | Madam, | Madam |
| Maj. | Majestät, | Majesty. |
| Mlle. | Mademoiselle, | Mademoiselle, <i>Miss</i> . |
| Ms. or Mscrpt. | Manuscript, | manuscript. |
| N. or N. N. | Name or Namen, | name or names. |
| N. | Norden, | north. |
| N. S. | Nachschrift, | postscript |
| N. St. | neuen Styls, | new style. |
| N. T. | Neues Testament, | New Testament. |

| | | | | |
|----------------|-------|----------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| D. | ..... | Osten, | ..... | East. |
| ob. | ..... | ober, | ..... | or. |
| Pf. or Pfd. | ..... | Pfund, | ..... | pound. |
| Prof. | ..... | Professor, | ..... | professor. |
| Rec. | ..... | Recensent, | ..... | reviewer, critic. |
| Rthlr. | ..... | Reichsthaler, | ..... | Rixdollar. |
| S. | ..... | Seite; Süden, | ..... | page; South. |
| S. or s. | ..... | siehe, | ..... | see, vide. |
| sel. | ..... | selig, | ..... | late, deceased. |
| St. or Sct. | ..... | Sanct, | ..... | Saint. |
| Stb. | ..... | Stunde, | ..... | hour. |
| Th. | ..... | Theil, | ..... | volume, part. |
| Thlr. | ..... | Thaler, | ..... | dollar. |
| u. | ..... | und, | ..... | and. |
| u. a. m. | ..... | und andere mehr, | ..... | &c., farther. |
| u. bgl. m. | ..... | und vergleichen mehr, | ..... | and similar instances |
| u. f. f. | ..... | und so fort, or ferner, | } | .etc. |
| u. f. m. | ..... | und so mehr, | | |
| u. f. w. or u. | ..... | und so weiter, | | |
| u. v. A. | ..... | und viele Andere, | ..... | and many others. |
| V. | ..... | Vers, | ..... | verse. |
| v. | ..... | von | ..... | of, from. |
| Versf. or Vf. | ..... | Verfasser, | ..... | author. |
| vergl. or vgl. | ..... | vergleiche, | ..... | compare. |
| v. o. | ..... | von oben, | ..... | from above. |
| Vorr. | ..... | Vorrede, | ..... | preface. |
| v. u. | ..... | von unten, | ..... | from below. |
| W. | ..... | Westen, | ..... | West. |
| z. | ..... | Zeile, | ..... | line. |
| z. B. or z. E. | ..... | zum Beispiel, zum Exempel, | ..... | for example. |

§ 1. ETYMOLOGY.

Etymology regards words as *individuals*; discloses their origin and formation; classifies them according to signification; and shows the various modifications, which they undergo in the course of declension and conjugation. *

§ 2. DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

(1) In respect to derivation, all German words are divisible into three classes: *Primitives*, *Derivatives* and *Compound*s.

(2) The Primitives, which are also called *roots* or *radicals*, are all *verbs*; forming the basis of what are now generally called the irregular verbs, and of about fifty, or sixty others, which were once irregular in conjugation, but are so no longer. They are also all *monosyllables*; and are seen in the crude form, (so to speak,) by merely dropping the suffix (en) of the Infinitive mood: thus, *bind(en)* to bind; *schließ(en)* to close; *fang(en)* to catch.

(3) From the primitives, sometimes *with*, sometimes *without*, any change in, or addition to the crude form, comes a numerous train of derivatives: chiefly *nouns* and *adjectives*.

Thus, from *bind(en)* to bind, we get *der B and*, the volume, and *der Bund*, the league, where the derivatives are produced by a mere *vowel* change. The derivative is, also, often distinguished by a mere euphonic, or orthographic termination: changing the *form* indeed, but in no wise affecting the *sense*. The terminations employed, in this way, are *er*, *el*, *en*, *e*, *de*, *te* and *et*; thus, from *sprech(en)* to speak, comes *die Sprache*, speech; language. In some cases, moreover, in forming derivatives, the syllable *ge* (*without meaning*) is prefixed¹; as, *gewiß*, sure; certain; *der Gefang*, the song.

* The inflection of all parts of speech, except the Verb, is, in Grammar, called *declension*: the regular arrangement of the moods, tenses, numbers, persons, and participles of a verb, is called *Conjugation*: in a general way, however, all words capable of inflection are said to be *declinable*. The *irdeclinable* parts of speech are often called *Particles*.

(4) But there is another and a most extensive class of derivatives, sometimes called *secondary* derivatives formed by the union of radical * words with suffixes, that are *significant*: thus, from *heilig*, (*holy, sacred*;) we get by adding *e n*, the verb *heiligen*, to *make* holy; to consecrate. The suffixes of this class (the *significant* ones) are, however, most of them, used in forming nouns and adjectives. They will be found explained under those heads respectively. Several of them are the same in *form* exactly as the terminations mentioned above, as being often added to *primary* derivatives. From these, that is, from the merely orthographic endings, the significant suffixes are to be carefully distinguished.

(5) Among the secondary derivatives must, also, be included those formed by means of *prefixes* as well as suffixes. These are mainly verbs, and are treated somewhat at large under the head of Compound Verbs.

(6) In respect to COMPOUNDS, properly so called, that is, words formed by the union, not of prefixes and suffixes with radicals, but of radicals, or other independent words, one with another, the German is peculiarly rich. Not only is it rich in the abundance of such compounds already in use; but it possesses a rare facility of forming them, as occasions arise, out of its own resources.

(7) In forming these compounds, the two components are often merely joined together as one word; as *Uhrmacher*, (from *Uhr*, a clock or watch, and *Macher*, a maker.) But in numerous cases, the union is marked by the insertion of certain letters, which may be called *letters of union*: thus,

Die Tod *e n* Noth, (from *Tod*, death and *Noth*, need, agony;) the death-agony;

Das Himmel *s* Licht, (from *Himmel*, heaven and *Licht*, light;) the light of heaven;

Die Herz *e n* Güte, (from *Herz*, heart, and *Güte*, goodness;) the goodness of heart;

* The word *radical*, however, in *this* place, is designed to indicate *any* word capable of assuming a suffix. In this looser sense, the word is often employed for the sake of convenience.

- Der Pferd e arzt, (from Pferd, horse, and Arzt, doctor;) the horse-doctor ;
 Daß Hirt e n leben, (from Hirt, shepherd, and Leben, life;) the pastoral-life ;
 Der Ei e r kuchen, (from Ei, egg, and Kuchen, cake;) the omelet.

(8) Some of these letters of union are nothing more than the signs of the genitive case of the first component: others are mere euphonic additions.

(9) In some instances, the union of the parts of a compound is characterized by the *omission* of some letters; as, der Sonntag, (Sonn e, the Sun, and Tag, day;) Sunday; denkwürdig, (denk e n, to think, and würdig, worthy;) worthy of thought.

(10) In all compounds, finally, the main accent falls upon the *first* component which, also, always qualifies or defines the second, as containing the fundamental idea.

§ 3. PARTS OF SPEECH.

(1) The parts of speech in German are usually reckoned **ten**:

| | |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| Articles, | Verbs, |
| Nouns, or Substantives, | Adverbs, |
| Adjectives, | Prepositions, |
| Numerals, | Conjunctions, |
| Pronouns, | Interjections. |

(2) Of these, *six*, namely, Articles, Nouns, Adjectives, Numerals, Pronouns and Verbs, are capable of *inflection*; that is, admit of various changes of termination by which various modifications of meaning are expressed: the other *four*, namely, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections, are in *forma invariable*.

(3) All parts of speech capable of inflection have two numbers: the SINGULAR, which denotes but one, and the PLURAL, which denotes more than one.

(4) All parts of speech capable of inflection, except the verb, have four CASES; namely the NOMINATIVE, GENITIVE,

DATIVE and ACCUSATIVE: also, three **GENDERS**; namely, the **MASCULINE**, the **FEMININE** and the **NEUTER**.

(5) Cases are variations made in the form of a word, to indicate its several relations to other words: the nominative being that form which denotes the *subject* of a verb; the genitive that which is chiefly used in signifying *source* or *possession*; the dative that which indicates the person or thing *for* or *to* whom or which any thing is directed; and the accusative that which points to the *immediate* or *direct* object of an action.

The cases in German correspond well to those in the Latin language. The *Vocative*, however, is never counted, because it is the same exactly in form with the nominative; while the *Ablative* (as in Greek,) is wholly wanting: its place being generally supplied by the Dative (with a suitable preposition).

§ 4. THE ARTICLE.

(1) There are two articles in German: the Definite, *der, the*; and the Indefinite, *ein, a, or an*. They are inflected thus:

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> | |
| Non. Der, | die, | das, | the; | Nom. Die, the; |
| Gen. Des, | der, | des, | of the; | Gen. Der, of the; |
| Dat. Dem, | der, | dem, | to, or for the; | Dat. Den, to, or for the; |
| Acc. Den, | die, | das, | the. | Acc. Die, the. |
| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | |
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> | |
| Nom. Ein, | eine, | ein, | an, or a; | N. } Wanting. |
| Gen. Eins, | einer, | eines, | of an, or a; | G. } |
| Dat. Einem, | einer, | einem, | to, or for an, or a; | D. } |
| Acc. Einen, | eine, | ein, | an, or a. | A. } |

(2) In familiar style, certain prepositions are frequently contracted with the dative and accusative of the definite article into one word.

EXAMPLES.

D. am, for an dem, as, am Feuer, at the fire; .
A. anß, for an daß, as, anß Licht, to the light;

| | | |
|-------------|-----------------|--|
| D. aufm, | for auf dem, | as, aufm Thurm, on the tower; |
| A. aufß, | for auf daß, | as, aufß Haus, upon the house; |
| D. beim, | for bei dem, | as, beim Vater, with the father; |
| A. durchß, | for durch daß, | as, durchß Wasser, through the water; |
| A. fürs, | for für daß, | as, fürs Geld, for the money; |
| D. hinterm, | for hinter dem, | as, hinterm Hause, behind the house; |
| D. im, | for in dem, | as, im Himmel, in (the) heaven; |
| A. inß, | for in daß, | as, inß Haus, into the house; |
| D. vom, | for von dem, | as, vom Uebel, from (the) evil; |
| A. vorß, | for vor daß, | as, vorß Fenster, before the window; |
| D. vorm, | for vor dem, | as, vorm Thore, before the door; |
| D. überm, | for über dem, | as, überm Feuer, upon the fire; |
| A. überß, | for über daß, | as, überß Land, over (the) land; |
| D. unterm, | for unter dem, | as, unterm Wasser, under (the) water; |
| D. zum, | for zu dem, | as, zum Flusse, to the river; |
| D. zur, | for zu der, | as, zur Ehre, to the honor. |

§ 5. NOUNS.

(1) In German, as in English, the nouns, that is, the *names* of persons and things, are divided into two great classes: viz: *Common nouns*, which designate sorts, kinds, or classes of objects; and *Proper nouns*, which are peculiar to individuals.

(2) Under the head of common nouns * are commonly

* I. In German all *Nouns*, as also all parts of speech when used as nouns begin with a capital letter. Ex.: 1. Der Sohn, the son; die Tochter, the daughter. 2. Der Gute, the good (man); die Gute, the good (woman). 3. Das Singen, the singing.

II. *The Indefinite Pronouns*. Ex.: Jemand, (any body, somebody). Jetermann, (every body). Etwas, (anything, something, and Nichts, (nothing).

Note, that when Etwas and Nichts are connected with a noun, or with an adjective used as a noun they do *not* begin with a capital. Ex.: Er hat etwas Brod, he has *some* bread; er hat nichts Gutes, he has *nothing* good.

III. *The absolute Possessive Pronouns* (when used substantively. L 35. 2.) Ex.: Die Meinigen, (my family); das Meinige, (my property).

IV. *The Indefinite Numerals*, when used without a substantive. Ex.: Alles, All, 'all'; Einige, (some); Mancher, (many a); Viele, (many).

(3) To the **NEUTER** belong the names of

places ; as, *Berlin* ; &c.
metals ; as, *das Silber* ; &c.
materials ; as, *das Holz* ; &c.
letters ; as, *das A* ; *das B* ; &c.
infinitives used as nouns ; as,
das Leben ; *das Reiten* ; &c.
many individuals taken together ; (i. e. *collective* nouns ;) as, *das Herr* ; &c.
adjectives used as nouns ; (in an abstract, and indefinite way ;) as, *das Gute*, *das Schöne* ; &c.

(3) To the **NEUTER** belong

a. Those secondary derivatives formed by means of the suffixes, *den* *lein* *sal*, *sel*, *nig*, *thum*.

b. Those nouns having the augment *g* &c.

§ 8. GENDER OF COMPOUNDS AND FOREIGN WORDS

(1) Compounds in general adopt the gender of their last component : as,

| | | |
|------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| <i>die Hofkirche</i> , | { (from <i>Hof</i> , court, or yard, } and <i>Kirche</i> , church ;) | { court church ; |
| <i>der Kirchhof</i>, |  |  | the church yard ; |
| <i>der Eichbaum</i> , | (from <i>die Eiche</i> , the oak, and <i>der Baum</i> , | tree ;) the oak-tree ; |
| <i>die Windmühle</i> , | (from <i>der Wind</i> , the wind, and <i>die Mühle</i> ; | mill ;) the windmill ; |
| <i>das Rathhaus</i> , | (from <i>der Rath</i> , council, and <i>das Haus</i> ; | house ;) the council-house. |

(2) Foreign words, for the most part, when taken into the German language, retain their original gender. Those, however, that have become fairly *Germanized*, often take a different gender as they take a different form : thus, *Corpus*, (the body,) which, in Latin, is *neuter*, becomes, in German, *der Körper*, which is *masculine*.

§ 9. DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

(1) To what has been already said (§ 2. (3)) concerning the derivation of nouns, we add here, before entering upon the subject of Declension, a brief view of those (the *secondary*

adjectives) that are made by *significant* suffixes. And that the matter may have the most practical shape, we subjoin a list of the leading suffixes of this class: putting in brackets the equivalent *English* terminations, explaining severally their force and use, and illustrating the whole by suitable examples.

§ 10. SUFFIXES USED IN FORMING NOUNS.

SUFFIXES. *English equivalents.*

| | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|--|
| er | [er, ier, or, yer, zen ;] | designates (<i>male</i>) persons, also, <i>agents</i> , or <i>instruments</i> ; |
| ing, or ling | [ling, aster ,] | denotes (often <i>contemptuously</i>) persons, animals and things ; |
| in or inn | [ess, ix ,] | designates (<i>female</i>) persons ; |
| ei | [y, ry, ary, ery, ory ;] | indicates the <i>act</i> , <i>practice</i> , or <i>place of business</i> ; |
| ung | [ing, ure, um ;] | signifies the <i>act</i> , or the <i>continuing to act</i> ; |
| e | [ness, ity, th ; } | denote <i>qualities</i> , or <i>attributes</i> ; |
| heit | [ness, ity, th ; } | |
| feit | [ness, ity, th ; } | |
| schaft | [ship, hood, ity ; } | express <i>rank</i> , <i>grade</i> , <i>office</i> ; also, a <i>number of things taken collectively</i> ; often, merely the <i>quality</i> ; |
| thum | [dom, hood, ity ; } | |
| sal | [ude, cy ; } | denote the <i>state</i> , or <i>condition</i> ; also, the <i>quality</i> ; |
| fel | [ude, cy ; } | |
| nig | [ness, cy ; } | sometimes the <i>result</i> ; |
| chen | [kin, ule, et, let ; } | indicate <i>diminutiveness</i> . |
| lein | [kin, ule, et, let ; } | |

§ 11. EXAMPLES.

| | | |
|----|--------------|-------------------------|
| er | Sänger, | a singer ; |
| | Bürger, | a citizen ; |
| | Säger, | a sawyer |
| | Schneider, | a tailor ; |
| | Römer, * | a Roman ; |
| | Leipziger, † | a resident of Leipzig ; |
| | Wiener, | a Viennese ; |

* Appellatives derived from the names of people often have the termination : as der Hesse, the Hessian ; der Türke, the Turk ; &c.

† Nouns derived from the name of a city or town, are often used indeclinably as adjectives. Ex. : Das Leipziger Bier, the Leipzig beer. Gen. Des Leipziger Biers.

| | | |
|-----------|-----------------|--|
| ling | Hauptling, | a captain ; |
| | Flüchtling, | a fugitive ; |
| | Mietling, | a hireling ; |
| | Dichterling, | a poetaster ; |
| | Hänfling, | a linnet ; |
| in or inn | Schößling, | a shoot, or sprig |
| | Gräfin, | a countess ; |
| | Heldin, | a heroine ; |
| | Königin, | a queen ; |
| | Professorin, | a professor's wife ; |
| ei | Löwin, | a lioness ; |
| | Dieberei, | thievery ; |
| | Heuchelei, | hypocrisy ; |
| | Fischerei, | fishery ; |
| | Brauerei, | brewery ; |
| ung | Belehrung, | teaching, i.e. the act of teaching ; |
| | Erbauung, | the building, or erecting ; |
| | Krönung, | the crowning, or coronation ; |
| | Sitzung, | the sitting, or session ; |
| eit | Güte, | goodness ; |
| | Stärke, | strength ; |
| | Krankheit, | sickness ; |
| | Dummheit, | stupidity ; |
| | Heiligkeit, | holiness ; |
| schaft | Feuchtigkeit, | humidity ; |
| | Freundschaft, | friendship ; |
| | Priesterschaft, | priesthood, that is, the body of the priests ; |
| | Bereitschaft, | readiness ; |
| | Heidenthum, | heathendom ; heathenism ; |
| thum | Christenthum, | Christendom ; Christianity ; |
| | Eigenthum, | property ; |
| | Wüthsal, | the state of being in trouble ; dis- tress ; |
| | Wütsel, | that which has resulted from hacking and cutting ; i. e. cuttings ; |
| niß | Bedürfniß, | the state of being in want ; necessity ; |
| | Gleichniß, | quality , or state of being like ; like- ness ; |
| lein | Büchlein, | a little book |
| | Knäblein, | a little boy ; |
| | Stühlchen, | a little stool ; |
| chen | Eichen, | a little egg. |

(1) It should be observed, in forming derivatives of the order illustrated above, that when *a*, *o*, or *u*, is contained in the radical part, it is modified into *ä*, *ö*, or *ü*, upon receiving any one of the suffixes *er*, *ing*, *in*, *en*, *lein*, *e*, *nig* and *sel*; as, in the case of *Länger*, (from *lang*,) *Bürger*, (from *Burg*,) and others of the like kind.

(2) Often, moreover, in forming secondary derivatives certain *euphonic* letters are inserted between the suffix and the word to which it is added; as, *ig* in *Feuchtigkeit*, humidity. Other letters employed in this way, are *e*, *n*, and *t*. These euphonic parts are easily distinguished from those having an influence on the meaning, by merely resolving the derivative into its elements.

(3) Here, too, may be noted the particle *ge*, which being prefixed to certain primary words, forms a class of nouns denoting either *frequency* of action, or a *collection* of things. These words, also, most commonly suffix the letter *e*; *Gerede*, constant talk; *Geheul*, frequent crying; *Gebirge*, a range of hills, are examples.

§ 12. DECLENSION OF COMMON NOUNS.

(1) In German there are two declensions, distinguished as the *Old* and the *New*. The characteristic of each is the termination of the genitive singular. In the former, the genitive is formed from the nominative by adding *es* or *s*; when otherwise formed, the noun is of the new declension.

(2) To the old declension belong almost all masculine and neuter nouns; that is, by far the greater part of all the nouns in the language.

(3) In both declensions, the nominative, genitive and accusative plural are, in form, alike; while the dative terminates always in the letter *n*. Unless, therefore, the word under declension already ends in that letter, it is, in the dative, uniformly assumed.

(4) All *feminine* nouns are invariable in the singular; in the plural, they are, for the most part, inflected according to the new declension.

(5) In compounds, the *last* word only is subjected to the variations of declension.

§ 13. OLD DECLENSION.

TERMINATIONS.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| NOMINATIVE | —— | —— <i>e</i> (5; -4). |
| GENITIVE | —— <i>es</i> or <i>s</i> , (see 3). | —— <i>e</i> . |
| DATIVE | —— <i>e</i> or like nom. | —— <i>en</i> (9). |
| ACCUSATIVE | —— | —— <i>e</i> . |

SINGULAR NUMBER.

(1) *Feminine* nouns in the singular number are *not* inflected; those of the *other* genders ending in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *chen* and *lein*, add *s* in the *genitive*; the dative and accusative being like the nominative:

N. der Spaten, the spade; das Büchlein, the book;
 G. des Spaten-*s*, of the spade; des Büchlein-*s*, of the book;
 D. dem Spaten, to the spade; dem Büchlein, to the book;
 A. den Spaten, the spade; das Büchlein, (L. XXIV. 1)

(2) Nouns of the *old* declension which do *not* end in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *chen* and *lein*, add *es* (see 3) in the *genitive*, and *e* (see 3) in the dative; the accusative remaining like the nominative:

N. das Jahr, the year; der Baum, the tree;
 G. des Jahr-*es*, of the year; des Baum-*es*, of the tree;
 D. dem Jahr-*e*, to, for the year; dem Baum-*e*, to, for the tree;
 A. das Jahr, the year; den Baum, the tree.

N. das Pult, the desk; der Stahl, the steel;
 G. des Pult-*es*, of the desk; des Stahl-*es*, of the steel;
 D. dem Pult-*e*, to, for the desk; dem Stahl-*e*, to, for the steel;
 A. das Pult, the desk; den Stahl, the steel.

(3) The *e* of the *genitive* and *dative* is often omitted in words *not* ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, *chen*, *lein*. Its omission or retention is to be determined by euphony alone. In nouns of

two or more syllables, unless the last one be under the full accent, *e* is commonly omitted in the genitive, and sometimes also in the dative; as, *des Königs, dem König*, instead of *des Königes, dem Könige*.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

(4) Nouns ending in *e, el, en, er, ſen* and *lein*, have the same form in the plural as in the singular :

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| der Spaten, | die Spaten; | das Büchlein, | die Büchlein; |
| der Schloffer, | die Schloffer; | das Mittel, | die Mittel. |

Exceptions. a. The following take the umlaut (L. 2. II.):

Apfel, Hammel, Handel, Mangel, Mantel, Nabel, Nagel, Sattel, Schnabel, Vogel, Faden, Garten, Graben, Fafen, Ofen, Schaden, Aker, Bruder, Hammer, Schwager, Vater, Kloster; as, *der Apfel*, the apple; *die Äpfel*, the apples etc.

b. Kragen, Magen and Wagen, also, sometimes take the umlaut in the plural.

(5) *Neuter* nouns *not* ending in *e, el, en, er, ſen, lein*, form their *plural* by adding *e* :

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| das Jahr, | die Jahr-e; | das Stück, | die Stück-e; |
| das Pult, | die Pult-e; | das Schaf, | die Schaf-e. |

Exceptions. a. Floß and Roß take the umlaut; Boot has the regular form *Boote*, or *Böte*.

b. The following neuter nouns add *er* in the plural, and those capable of it take the umlaut :

As, Amt, Bad, Bild, Blatt, Buch, Dach, Dorf, Ei, Fach, Faß, Feld, Feib, Gemüth, Geschlecht, Gespenst, Glas, Lieb, Grab, Gras, Gut, Haupt, Haus, Hospital, Fußn, Kalb, Kamisol, Kino, Meib, Korn, Kraut, Lamm, Lieb, Loch, Maul, Nest, Parlament, Pfand, Rad, Regiment, Reis, Rind, Schloß, Schwert, Spital, Thul, Volk, Weib; as, *das Amt*, the office; *die Ämter*, the offices. etc.

c. All nouns, also, ending in *thum*, *masculine* as well as *neuter*, add *er* and take the umlaut; as, *der Reichthum*, *die Reichthümer* &c.

(6) *Masculine* nouns *not* ending in *e, el, en, er*, form their *plural* by adding *e*, and taking the umlaut, if capable of it :

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|-------------|
| der Baum, | die Bäume; | der Stuhl, | die Stühle; |
| der Rock, | die Röcke; | der Ball, | die Bälle. |

Exceptions. a. The following add *e* :

Bösewicht, Dorn, Geist, Gott, Leib, Mann, Ort, Rand, Vermund, Wald, Wurm; *as*, der Dorn, the thorn; die Dörner, the thorns etc.

b. The following reject the umlaut:

Mal, Mar, Abend, Amboß, Anwalt, Arm, Decht, Dolch, Dorch, Eibam, Gemüth, Grab, Habicht, Palm, Rauch, Herzog, Fuß, Fund, Kapaun, Kobold, Korf, Kranich, Laut, Leichnam, Luchs, Molch, Monat, Mond, Nord, Pfad, Propf, Puls, Punkt, Salm, Schacht, Schuh, Staar, Stoff, Tag, Trunkendolch, Unholz, Viefstraß, Wiechepf, Zoll (inch); *as*, der Aal, the eel; die Aale, the eels; etc.

(7) Feminine nouns ending in *kunst* and *nif*, *as* also those of the following list, form their plural by adding *e*, and taking the umlaut, if capable of it:

Angst, Ausflucht, Art, Bank, Braut, Brust, Faust, Frucht, Ganz, Grust, Geschwulst, Hand, Haut, Kluft, Kraft, Ruh, Kunst, Laus, Lust, Luß, Macht, Nage, Maus, Nacht, Naht, Noth, Ruß, Sau, Schnur, Stadt, Wand, Welt, Wurst, Zunft, Zusammenkunft.

(8) The two nouns *Mutter* and *Tochter* form their plural by taking the umlaut.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS IN THE PLURAL.

(9) Nouns whose plural ends in *en*, have all cases in this number alike; those of other terminations have the genitive and accusative like the nominative, and add *n* in the dative:

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| N. die Spaten, | the spades; | die Büchlein, | the books, L. 24; |
| G. der Spaten, | of the spades; | der Büchlein, | of the books; |
| D. den Spaten, | to the spades; | den Büchlein, | to the books; |
| A. die Spaten, | the spades; | die Büchlein, | the books. |

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| N. die Bäume, | the trees; | die Pulte, | the desks, |
| G. der Bäume, | of the trees; | der Pulte, | of the desks; |
| D. den Bäume-n, | to the trees; | den Pulte-n, | to the desks; |
| A. die Bäume, | the trees; | die Pulte, | the desks. |

§ 14. THE NEW DECLENSION.

TERMINATIONS.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|
| Nom. —. | —en or n. |
| Gen. —en or n.* | —en or n. |
| Dat. —en or n. | —en or n. |
| Acc. —en or n. | —en or n. |

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| N. der Graf, the count ; | die Grafen, the counts ; |
| G. des Grafen, of the count ; | der Grafen, of the counts ; |
| D. dem Grafen, to the count ; | den Grafen, to or for the counts ; |
| A. den Grafen, the count. | die Grafen, the counts. |
| N. der Falke, the falcon ; | die Falken, the falcons ; |
| G. des Falken, of the falcon ; | der Falken, of the falcons ; |
| D. dem Falken, to the falcon ; | den Falken, to the falcons ; |
| A. den Falken, the falcon. | die Falken, the falcons. |

(1) Feminine nouns which are indeclinable in the singular, are, for the most part, of this declension. † Those ending in the suffix *in*, in the singular, double the *n* in the plural. These last are, also, often written with the double *n* in the singular : as, *Helbinn*, a heroine.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| N. die Schuld, ‡ the debt ; | die Schulden, the debts ; |
| G. der Schuld, of the debt ; | der Schulden, of the debts ; |
| D. der Schuld, to the debt ; | den Schulden, to the debts ; |
| A. die Schuld, the debt. | die Schulden, the debts. |

* When the singular ends in *e*, *el*, *ar* or *er*, the plural takes *n* only.

† *Mutter*, mother, and *Tochter*, daughter, are the only feminine nouns that have the terminations of the Nom., Gen. and Acc. plural like the singular. They add *n* to the dative.

‡ Feminine nouns, it will be remembered, have no variations of declension in the *singular*. As exceptions to this rule, however, some examples remain (vestiges of the ancient mode of declension), in which the Gen and Dat appear under the government of a preposition and varied by terminations. Thus: mit or in Ehren, with or in respect or honor: Ehren, from Ehre; auf Ehren, on earth: Ehren, from Eree; mit Freuden, with joy: Freuden, from Freude; von or auf Seiten, on the part of: Seiten, from Seite.

The ending of the Genitive is sometimes, also, retained, when the word is under the government of a noun succeeding. Thus, *Dies ist meiner Frauen Schwester*, this is my wife's sister.

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| N. die Hirtin, the shepherdess; | die Hirtinnen, the shepherdesses; |
| G. der Hirtin, of the shepherdess; | der Hirtinnen, of the shepherdesses; |
| D. der Hirtin, to the shepherdess; | den Hirtinnen, to the shepherdesses; |
| A. die Hirtin, the shepherdess. | die Hirtinnen, the shepherdesses. |

§ 15. OBSERVATIONS ON THE DECLENSION OF COMMON NOUNS

(1) Some have NO SINGULAR: as,

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Ältern (Ältern), parents. | Kosten and Unkosten, costs. |
| Ähnen, ancestors. | Kriegsläufe, events of war. |
| Älpen, alps. | Leute, * people, folks. |
| Ännaten, first fruits. | Masern and Röteln, measles. |
| Beinkleider, small clothes. | Molken, whey. |
| Blattern, small-pox. | Östern, Easter. |
| Briefschaften, letters, papers. | Wingsten, Whitsuntide. |
| Einkünfte, revenue. | Nänke, tricks. |
| Fasten, Lent, fasts. | Reprellalien, reprisals. |
| Ferien, Holidays. | Schranken, bounds. |
| Fußstapfen, footsteps. | Ersen, expenses. |
| Gebrüder, brothers. | Eporteln, fees. |
| Gefälle, rents. | Epolien, spoils. |
| Geschwister, brothers and sisters. | Studien, studies. |
| Gliedmaßen, the limbs. | Träber or Treber, husks, lees. |
| Gündel, quarrels. | Trümmer, ruins. |
| Hefen, dregs, yeast. | Truppen, troops. |
| Hosen, trowsers. | Weihnachten, Christmas. |
| Insignien, marks, badges. | Zeitläufe, events of the times. |
| Kalbsdaunen, entrails. | Zinsen, interest of money. |

* *Leute* merely expresses plurality of persons. In this it differs from *Menschen* (*human beings*) which has regard to the kind or species, as also from *Männer* (*men*) which denotes particularly the sex. Those compounds, however, of which, in the singular, *Mann* forms the last part, take generally, in the plural, *Leute* instead of *Männer*; thus,

Singular.

Arbeitsmann, workman;
Edelmann, nobleman;
Kaufmann, merchant;
Landmann, countryman;

Plural.

Arbeitsleute, workpeople.
Edelleute, noblemen.
Kaufleute, merchants.
Landleute, countrypeople.

The distinctive difference between *Leute* and *Männer* may be forcibly shown by reference to the words *Eheleute* and *Ehemänner*: *Eheleute* means *married people*; *Ehemänner* signifies *married men*, i. e. *husbands*.

(2) Some have NO PLURAL.

These are,

a. Generic names of material substances; as, *das Gold*, gold; *Silber*, silver; *Eisen*, iron; &c.

b. General terms and those expressive of abstract ideas; as, *Raub*, pillage: *Ruhm*, glory; *das Vieh*, cattle; *Vernunft*, reason; *Stolz*, pride; *Kälte*, cold; &c.

c. Some names of plants; as, *der Kehl*, the cabbage; *Hopsen*, hops; *Kresse*, cresses; &c.

d. All infinitives employed as nouns, as also all neuter adjectives so employed; as, *Leben*, life; *Verlangen*, wish; *das Weiß*, white; &c.

e. Nouns, for the most part, denoting quantity, number, weight or measure; * as, *Bund*, bundle; *Duzend*, dozen; *Grad*, degree; *Pfund*, pound; *Zoll*, an inch; &c.

(3) Some, in the plural, have two FORMS; conveying, however, in general, different, though kindred significations; as,

Singular.

Plurals.

| | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>der Band</i> , | <i>Bande</i> , bonds, fetters; | <i>Bänder</i> , † ribbons. |
| <i>die Banf</i> , | <i>Bänke</i> , benches; | <i>Banken</i> , banks (of commerce). |
| <i>der Bogen</i> , | <i>Bogen</i> , sheets of paper; | <i>Bögen</i> , arches, bows. |
| <i>das Ding</i> , | <i>Dinge</i> , things in general; | <i>Dinger</i> , little creatures. |
| <i>der Dorn</i> , | <i>Dornen</i> , kinds of thorn; | <i>Dörner</i> , thorns (more than one). |
| <i>der Fuß</i> , | <i>Füße</i> , feet; | <i>Fuße</i> , feet (as measures). |
| <i>das Gesicht</i> , | <i>Gesichte</i> , visions, sights; | <i>Gesichter</i> , faces. |
| <i>das Horn</i> , | <i>Hörne</i> , sorts of horn; | <i>Hörner</i> , horns (more than one). |
| <i>das Holz</i> , | <i>Hölze</i> , sorts of wood; | <i>Hölzer</i> , pieces of wood |

* It should be noted that words expressing quantity, number, weight or measure, even if qualified by numerals signifying *more than one*, are rarely found in the plural. Thus, in German, we say, *neun Meilen*, nine fathoms; *hundert Grad*, a hundred degrees; &c., where, though the numeral expresses more than one, the noun of measure is still in the singular number.

Note, however, that feminines ending in *e* and words denoting periods of time, as also the names of coins, are, in general, excepted from the rule given in the note preceding.

† The singular of this is *das (neuter) Band*. From *der Band*, we have another form: *Bände* volumes.

280 FOREIGN NOUNS OF THE OLD DECLENSION. § 16. § 17.

| | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| der Laden, | Laden, shutters ; | Läden, shops. |
| das Land, | Land, regions ; | Länder, states. |
| das Mahl, | Mahle, marks, seasons ; | Mähler, meals. |
| der Mann, | Männer, men ; | Mannen, vassals. |
| der Mond, | Moneten, months ; | Monde, planets. |
| der Ort, | Orte, places (any) ; | Orter, places (particular). |
| die Sau, | Sauen, wild boars ; | Säue, swine. |
| der Schild, | Schilde, shields ; | Schilder, * sign-boards. |
| die Schnur, | Schnüre, tapes ; | Schnuren, daughters-in-law. |
| der Strauß, | Sträuße, nosegays ; | Straußen, ostriches. |
| das Wort, | Wörter, words (more than one) ; | Worte, words (in construction) |
| der Zoll, | Zölle, inches ; | Zölle, tolls. |

§ 16. FOREIGN NOUNS.

(1) Some nouns introduced into the German from foreign languages, retain their original terminations unaltered : as, *der Medicus*, a physician ; plur. *Medici*, physicians ; *Factum*, deed ; *Facta*, deeds.

(2) Some masculines and neuters from the French and the English, merely affix *s* to the genitive singular, which is retained in all the cases of the plural ; as, *der Lord*, gen. *des Lords* ; plur. *die Lords* ; *der Chef* ; gen. *des Chefs* ; plur. *die Chefs*.

(3) But foreign nouns, for the most part, drop the terminations peculiar to the language whence they come, and substitute those characteristic of the German. Some, accordingly, are found to be declined after the old declension, some after the new, and others, again, partly after the one and partly after the other.

§ 17. FOREIGN NOUNS OF THE OLD DECLENSION.

(1) Foreign nouns of the neuter gender, as also most of the masculines, are of the old declension.

* In the singular, *das Schild*.

(2) Among the masculines must be noted those appellations of persons ending in

al; as, Kardinal, cardinal.

ar; as, Notar, notary.

an; as, Kastellan, castellan.

aner; as, Dominikaner, dominican.

iner; as, Benediktiner, benedictine.

To which add Abt, Propst, Papst, Bischof, Mayor, Epion, Patron, Offizier.

(3) Some have, in the plural, the form *er* (*e* + *r*); as, Hospital, Epital, Kamisol, Regiment, Parlament; plur. Hospitäler, Epitäler, &c.

(4) Some, in the plural, soften the radical vowels; as, Abt, Altar, Bischof, Cher, Choral, Hospital, Epital, Kanal, Caplan, Kardinal, Kloster, Marsch, Morast, Palaß, Papst, Propst; plur. Aebte, Altäre, Bischöfe, &c.

§ 18. FOREIGN NOUNS OF THE NEW DECLENSION.

(1) To the new declension belong all foreign nouns of the feminine gender, and nearly all masculines which are the appellations of *persons*. These latter are chiefly those ending in

at; as, Advocat, advocate.

ant; as, Adjutant, adjutant.

ent; as, Student, student.

if; as, Katholik, Catholic.

ast; as, Phantast, humorist.

ist; as, Jurist, lawyer.

ost; as, Starost, Polish magistrate.

et; as, Poet, poet.

it; as, Jesuit, Jesuit.

ot; as, Idiot, idiot.

e; as, Eleve, pupil.

log; as, Theolog, theologian.

osph; as, Philosoph, philosopher.

onm; as, Astronom, astronomer.

(2) To these are to be added some other foreign masculines; as, der Elefant, the elephant; der Ducat, the ducat; der

Komet, the comet; **der Planet**, the planet; **der Konsonant**, the consonant; **der Prinz**, the prince; **der Tyrann**, the tyrant.

§ 19. FOREIGN NOUNS PARTLY OF THE OLD AND PARTLY OF THE NEW DECLENSION.

(1) These are, *first*, neuters ending in *f* *v*; as, **das Passiv**, gen. **Passivs**; plur. **Passiven**; — *secondly*, titles of males in *or*; as, **Doctor**; gen. **Doctors**; plur. **Doctoren**; — *thirdly*, neuters ending in *a* *l*, *i* *l* and *u* *m*, which, also, often have *i* before the *e* *n* of the plural; as, **Kapital**, plur. **Kapitalien**; **Gessell**, plur. **Gessillen**; **Studium**, plur. **Studien**; — *fourthly*, the following masculines, **Asterisk**, **Diamant**, **Fasan**, **Kapaun**, **Import**, **Konsul**, **Muskel**, **Pantoffel**, **Präsekt**, **Psalm**, **Rubin**, **Staat**, **Thor**, **Traktat**, **Vins**; to which add **Insekt**, **Atom**, **Pronom**, **Statut** and **Verb** which are neuters.

§ 20. DECLENSION OF PROPER NOUNS,
in the singular number.

(1) Names of males and females, except when the latter terminate in *e*, take *s* to form the genitive, which is their only variation; * as,

| | | |
|----|------------|-------------|
| N. | Heinrich, | Elisabeth, |
| G. | Heinrichs, | Elisabeths, |
| D. | Heinrich, | Elisabeth, |
| A. | Heinrich. | Elisabeth. |

(2) Names of females ending in *e*, as also of males ending in *s*, *ß*, *f* *ch*, *r*, or *z*, form the genitive in *e* *n* *s*; † as,

| | | | |
|----|----------|-------------|------------|
| N. | Luiſe, | Leibnitz, | Woff, |
| G. | Luiſens, | Leibnizens, | Woffens, ‡ |
| D. | Luiſe, | Leibnitz, | Woff, |
| A. | Luiſe, | Leibnitz, | Woff. |

* It is customary with some writers to affix *e* *n* to the dative and accusative of proper names; but a better usage distinguishes these cases by prefixing the article; as, *Leßing*; gen. *Leßings*; dat. *dem Leßing* (instead of *Leßingen*); acc. *den Leßing* (instead of *Leßingen*).

† The genitive, dative and accusative of names ending in *a*, are sometimes formed by adding respectively *e* *n* *s* and *e* *n*, after dropping the *a*; as, *Diana*; gen. *Dianens*; dat. *Dianen*; acc. *Dianen*.

‡ The termination *e* *n* *s* sometimes suffers contraction; as, *Woff's*, *Leibnitz's*.

(3) Names whether of males or females, when preceded by an article, are indeclinable ; as,

| | | |
|----|---------------|-------------|
| N. | der Schiller, | die Luise ; |
| G. | des Schiller, | der Luise ; |
| D. | dem Schiller, | der Luise ; |
| A. | den Schiller, | die Luise. |

(4) Foreign names, also, having the unaccented terminations *a*, *é*, *i*, *u*, *ü*, admit no variations of form, either in the singular or the plural. When, therefore, their case and number are not otherwise sufficiently indicated, an article or a preposition is used to point them out.

§ 21. PROPER NOUNS IN THE PLURAL.

(1) Proper nouns, when employed in the plural, conform, for the most part, to the rules for the declension of common nouns : the masculines being varied according to the old declension, and the feminines according to the new. *

(2) Their inflection is in no wise affected by the presence of the article, nor do the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, ever assume the Umlaut.

Examples.

| | | | | |
|----|----------------|------------|---------|---------|
| N. | die Leibnize, | Schlegel, | Luifen, | Annen ; |
| G. | der Leibnize, | Schlegel, | Luifen, | Annen ; |
| D. | den Leibnizen, | Schlegeln, | Luifen, | Annen ; |
| A. | die Leibnize, | Schlegel, | Luifen, | Annen. |

§ 22. PROPER NAMES OF COUNTRIES, CITIES, &c.

(1) Proper names of places admit no changes of form for the purposes of declension, beyond the mere addition of *s* to the genitive singular ; as, Berlin ; gen. Berlin*s*.

(2) If, however, the word end in a sound not easily admitting an *s* after it, the case is distinguished by placing be-

* Sometimes the plural is made by the addition of *s* to the singular ; as, die Schillers, die Herders ; the Schillers, the Herders. Those ending in *o* add *n* to the plural *ne* or *nen* ; as, Gato ; nom. plur. Gatone or Gatonen, &c.

| | | | |
|------|---|-------------|---|
| iſch | { | Erbiſch; | earthly; <i>belonging to earth.</i> |
| | | Poetiſch; | poetical. |
| | | Bäntiſch; * | quarrelsome. |
| ſam | { | Arbeitsam; | <i>inclined to work; diligent.</i> |
| | | Folgsam; | <i>inclined to follow (orders), i. e. obedient.</i> |

§ 27. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

(1) Whether an adjective is to be inflected at all or not, depends wholly upon the way in which it is used; for, when employed as a predicate, it is *never* declined; † when as an attributive, almost *always*. Be the noun, therefore, masculine, feminine or neuter; be it singular or plural; if the adjective, to which it is applied, be used as a *predicate* (L. 14. Note.), its form remains unchanged: thus,

Der Mann iſt gut; the man is good.

Die Frau iſt gut; the woman is good.

Das Kind iſt gut; the child is good.

Die Männer ſind gut; the men are good.

Die Frauen ſind gut; the women are good.

Ich nenne das Kind ſchön; I call the child beautiful.

Ich nenne die Kinder ſchön; I call the children beautiful.

Der Knabe, klug und artig; ‡ the boy prudent and polite.

(2) The following adjectives (and a few others) are never used otherwise than as predicates, and are, of course, indeclinable:

abſchloß, averse.

feind, hostile.

angſt, anxious.

gehaßt, hating, hated.

anheißig, bound by promise.

gar, done; cooked enough.

bereit, ready.

güng und gebe, current; usual

brach, fallow.

eingedenk, mindful.

* This is the ending commonly added to names of places pointing to things belonging to them; as, engliſch, ſchwediſch (§ 5. Note VII), &c. If however, a name be a compound, the suffix *er* is used in place of *iſch*; as, das Merſeburger Bier; the Merseburg beer.

† For the form of the adjective substantively employed after *nichts* or *etwas*, see Lesson 14. 6.

‡ In this last example, the *predicative* use of the adjectives may be made more obvious, by completing the structure, thus, der Knabe, welcher klug und artig iſt; the boy who is prudent and polite; or also, Gaſar, klug und tapfer.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| getruft, cheerful. | noth, needful. |
| genwärtig, aware. | nutz, useful. |
| gram, grudge-bearing. | quer, crosswise. |
| habhaft, possessing, or possessed of. | quitt, rid of. |
| handgem, skirmishing. | theilhaft, sharing. |
| irre, wrong; erring. | unpaß, ill; sick. |
| funb, known. | verlustig, forfeiting. |
| eib, distressing; sorry. | |

§ 28. DECLINABLE ADJECTIVES.

(1) There are two declensions of adjectives, as there are two declensions of nouns: the Old and the New. In either of these, according to circumstances, are *attributive* adjectives declined. The following are the terminations of

THE OLD DECLENSION.

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | | <i>Plural</i> |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> |
| Nom. | er. * | e. | eß. † | Nom. e. |
| Gen. | eß (en †). | er. | eß (en †). | Gen. er. |
| Dat. | em. | er. | em. | Dat. en. |
| Acc. | en. | e. | eß. † | Acc. e. |

§ 29. RULE.

When the adjective stands either entirely *alone* before its substantive, or preceded and restricted by a word that is un-

* Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, commonly drop the *e* upon receiving a suffix; as,

| | |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| edel, noble; | edler (not edeler) Mann; |
| eben, even; | ebner (not ebenet) Weg; |
| lauter, pure; | lautrer (not lauterer) Rath. |

Upon adding *en*, the *e* of the termination (*en*) is dropped, while that of the root is retained; as, den heitern (instead of heitren) Morgen; the serene morning.

† In these two places (*nom. and acc. neut.*) the termination *eß* is often omitted, when the adjective is under no special emphasis; as, falt (for faltet) Wasser; cold water.

‡ Note that here (*gen. sing. masc. and neut.*) it is now the common custom to adopt the *new*, instead of the *old form*; *en*, for the sake of euphony, being substituted for *eß*; as, ein Stück frisches (not eß) Brod; a piece of fresh bread. In a few adverbial phrases, however, the *old form* is still generally used; as, gutes Muthes; of good courage.

declinable (see L. XIV. 3) it follows the Old form of declension - thus,

| | <i>Masc. Sing.</i> | <i>Fem. Sing.</i> | <i>Neut. Sing.</i> |
|----|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| N. | guter Vater, | gute Mutter, | gutes Geld, |
| G. | gutes (en) Vaters, | guter Mutter, | gutes (en) Geldes, |
| D. | gutem Vater, | guter Mutter, | gutem Gelde, |
| A. | guten Vater. | gute Mutter. | gutes Geld. |
| | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| N. | gute Väter, | gute Mütter, | gute Gelder, |
| G. | guter Väter, | guter Mütter, | guter Gelder, |
| D. | guten Vätern, | guten Müttern, | guten Geldern. |
| A. | gute Väter. | gute Mütter. | gute Gelder. |

(1) The following are examples, in which the adjective in each instance is preceded by a word, either undeclined or indeclinable (§ 33):

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Etwas guter Wein, | some good wine. |
| Viel frische Milch, | much fresh milk. |
| Wenig kaltes Wasser | a little cold water. |
| Sehr gute Menschen, | very good men. |
| Genug rother Wein, | enough red wine. |
| Fünf lange Jahre, | five long years. |
| Allerlei süße Frucht, | all kinds of sweet fruit. |

§ 30. THE NEW DECLENSION.

TERMINATIONS.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------|------------------|-------------|--------------|------------------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders</i> |
| Nom. | e. | e. | e. | en. |
| Gen. | en. | en. | en. | en. |
| Dat. | en. | en. | en. | en. |
| Acc. | en. | e. | e. | en. |

§ 31. RULE.

(1) When immediately preceded and restricted by the definite article, by a relative or demonstrative pronoun, or by an

indefinite numeral (*declined after the ancient form **), the adjective follows the new form of declension: thus,

| <i>Masc. Sing.</i> | <i>Fem. Sing.</i> | <i>Neut. Sing.</i> |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| N. der gute Mann, | die gute Frau, | das gute Kind, |
| G. des guten Mannes, | der guten Frau, | des guten Kindes, |
| D. dem guten Manne, | der guten Frau, | dem guten Kinde, |
| A. den guten Mann. | die gute Frau. | das gute Kind. |
| <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| N. die guten Männer, | die guten Frauen, | die guten Kinder, |
| G. der guten Männer, | der guten Frauen, | der guten Kinder, |
| D. den guten Männern, | den guten Frauen, | den guten Kindern, |
| A. die guten Männer. | die guten Frauen. | die guten Kinder. |

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Masculine.</i> | |
| N. dieser schöne Garten, | diese schönen Gärten. |
| G. dieses schönen Gartens, | dieser schönen Gärten. |
| D. diesem schönen Garten, | diesen schönen Gärten. |
| A. diesen schönen Garten, | diese schönen Gärten. |
| <i>Feminine.</i> | |
| N. welche schöne Blume, | welche schönen † Blumen. |
| G. welcher schönen Blume, | welcher schönen Blumen. |
| D. welcher schönen Blume, | welchen schönen Blumen. |
| A. welche schönen Blume, | welche schönen † Blumen. |

* *Da* & however, the *neuter* of the definite article, differs from the old form, in having the ending *a* &, instead of *e* &; so also in compounds; as, *das*selbe, the same; *das*jenige, that. The other words referred to in the rule, are

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <i>dieser</i> , this. | <i>aller</i> , every; all. |
| <i>jener</i> , that. | <i>einiger</i> , some; several. |
| <i>welcher</i> , who; which. | <i>etlicher</i> , some; several. |
| <i>solcher</i> , such. | <i>mancher</i> , many a. |
| <i>jeder</i> , <i>jedlicher</i> , each. | |

Three of these, it may further be noticed, viz. *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, which; *der*, *die*, *das*; *solcher*, *solche*, *solches*, such; and *mancher*, *manche*, *manches*, many a; sometimes appear without the terminations of declension: in which case the adjective assumes the suffixes denoting gender, &c. Thus, *manch* schöner Bild, many a beautiful picture.

† With many authors it is the custom to reject the final *n* of the nom. and acc. plural of adjectives preceded by *einige*, *etliche*, *mehrere*, *manche*, *viele*, *alle* *welche*, *solche* and *wenige*: as, *einige* *deutliche* *Kaiser*; some German emperors.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | <i>Neuter.</i> |
| N. | manches schöne Feld, | manche schönen Felder. |
| G. | manches schönen Feldes, | mancher schönen Felder. |
| D. | manchem schönen Felde, | manchen schönen Feldern. |
| A. | manches schöne Feld, | manche schöne Felder. |

§ 32. MIXED DECLENSION.

(1) We have seen that an adjective, when standing *alone* before its noun, is varied according to the *ancient* declension; and this, because the gender, number and case of the noun being very imperfectly indicated by the form of the noun itself, the terminations of the old declension, which, in this respect, are more complete, seem necessary in order the more fully to point out these particulars: thus, *guter Mann*, good man; *gute Frau*, good woman; *gutes Feld*, good field.

(2) When, however, as often happens, it is *itself* preceded by some restrictive word (such as *der, die, das*, the; *dieser, diese, diese*, this, &c.), declined after the ancient form, and, therefore, by its endings, sufficiently showing the gender, number and case of the noun, the adjective passes into the less distinctive form, called the *new* declension: thus, *dieser gute Mann*, this good man; *diese gute Frau*, this good woman; *dieses gute Feld*, this good field.

(3) But there are some restrictive words which, though, in the main, inflected according to the more complete form of the ancient declension, are, in *three leading places* (nom. sing. masc. and nom. and acc. sing. neuter), entirely destitute of significant terminations. These words are,

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| ein, a. | sein, his; its. |
| kein, no; none. | ihr, her; your; their. |
| mein, my. | unser, our. |
| dein, thy. | euer, your. |

(4) Hence it happens, that, while in every other case, the words just cited, follow the old form, and consequently require the subsequent adjective to adopt the new one, the adjective is itself made to supply the deficiency, in the three places

named above, by assuming therein the terminations proper to the ancient form. In this way, is produced a sort of *mixed declension*, which, in books generally, is set down as the Third Declension. Thus, then, will stand the

Terminations of the Mixed Declension.

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|----------------|-------------|----------------|----|----------------|
| N. | er (old form). | e. | eß (old form). | N. | en.* |
| G. | en. | en. | en. | G. | en. |
| D. | en. | en. | en. | D. | en. |
| A. | en. | e. | eß (old form). | A. | en.* |

(5) It must be added, also, that the personal pronouns, *ich, I; du, thou; er, he; sie, she; es, it; wir, we; ihr, ye or you; sie, they*; cause the adjective before which they stand, to take this mixed form of declension. Hence the

§ 33. RULE.

(1) When the adjective is immediatly preceded and restricted by the *indefinite article*, by a *personal* or *possessive pronoun*, or by the word *kein*, it assumes the endings characteristic of the mixed declension: thus,

Singular.

Masculine.

Plural.

N. ein guter Bruder,
G. eines guten Bruders,
D. einem guten Bruder,
A. einen guten Bruder.

Feminine.

| | | |
|----|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| N. | meine gute Schwester, | meine guten Schwestern. |
| G. | meiner guten Schwester, | meiner guten Schwestern. |
| D. | meiner guten Schwester, | meinen guten Schwestern. |
| A. | meine gute Schwester, | meine guten Schwestern. |

Neuter.

| | | |
|----|----------------------|-----------------------|
| N. | unser gutes Haus, | unsre guten Häuser. |
| G. | unserß guten Hauses, | unsrer guten Häuser. |
| D. | unserm guten Hause, | unsern guten Häusern. |
| A. | unser gu'tes Haus, | unsre guten Häuser. |

* See note page 105, also 2d note, page 289.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| N. | du gute Mutter, | ihr guten Mütter. |
| G. | deiner (der*) guten Mutter, | euer guten Mütter. |
| D. | dir guten Mutter, | euch guten Müttern. |
| A. | dich gute Mutter, | euch guten Mütter. |

§ 34. FURTHER OBSERVATIONS ON ADJECTIVES.

(1) When several consecutive adjectives come before and qualify the same noun, each has the same form, which according to the preceding rules, it would have, if standing alone; as, guter, rother, lauter Wein, good, red, pure wine; die reife, schöne, gute Frucht, the ripe, beautiful, good fruit.

(2) But when of two adjectives which relate to the same noun, the *second* forms with the noun an expression for a single idea, which the *first* qualifies as a whole, the second adjective takes (except in the nom. sing. and in nom. and acc. plural) the new form of declension; as, mit trockenem weissen Sand, with dry white sand; where *white sand*, that is, sand which is white, is said also to be *dry*.

(3) When two or more adjectives terminating alike, precede and qualify the same noun, the ending of the former is occasionally omitted; such omission being marked by a hyphen; as, ein roth- (for rothes) und weisses Gesicht, a red and white face; die schwarz-roth-goldene Fahne, the black red golden banner.

(4) Participles are declined after the manner of adjectives: thus, der geliebte Bruder, the beloved brother; gen. des geliebten Bruders, &c.

(5) Adjectives, in German, as in other languages, are, by ellipsis, often made to serve in place of nouns. They then begin with a capital letter, and, excepting that they retain the forms of declension peculiar to adjectives, are in all respects treated as nouns. Their gender is made apparent either by their terminations or by the presence of an article or other definitive; as, ein Deutscher, a German; dieser Deutsche, this Ger-

* Note that after the personal pronouns, in the *genitive case*, the article must be used; as, deiner, der guten Mutter; of thee, the good mother.

man; die Deutsche, the German woman; das Schöne, the beautiful; das Gute, the good; that is, *that which is beautiful; that which is good*. So, also, das Weiß, the white; das Grün, the green; das Roth, the red; &c.

(3) When of two adjectives preceding a noun, the first is employed as an *adverb* to qualify the second, the former is not declined: thus, ein ganz neues Haus, a house *entirely* new: not ein ganzes neues Haus, which would mean, *an entire, new house*.

§ 35. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

(1) In German, as in English, the degrees of comparison are commonly expressed by means of the suffixes *er* and *est*: thus,

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| wild, wild; | wilder, wilder; | wildest, wildest. |
| fest, firm; | fester, firmer; | feste st, firmest. |
| breit, bold; | breiter, bolder; | breiste st, boldest. |
| los, loose; | loser, looser; | lose st, loosest. |
| nass, wet; | nasser, wetter; | nasse st, wettest. |
| rasch, quick; | rascher, quicker; | rasche st, quickest. |
| stolz, proud; | stolzer, prouder; | stolze st, proudest. |

§ 36. EUPHONIC CHANGES.

(1) When the positive does not end in *b, t, st, s, ß, sch*, or *z*, the *e* of the superlative suffix (*est*) is omitted; as,

| | | |
|----------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| blank, bright; | blanker, brighter; | blank st, brightest. |
| klar, clear; | klarer, clearer; | klare st, clearest. |
| rein, pure; | reiner, purer; | rein st, purest. |
| schön, fine; | schöner, finer; | schöne st, finest. |

(2) When the positive ends in *e*, the *e* of the comparative suffix (*er*) is dropped; as,

| | | |
|--------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| weise, wise; | weiser, wiser; | weise st, wisest. |
| müde, weary; | müder, more weary; | müde st, most weary. |

| <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | } Wanting. |
|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------------|
| N. | | | |
| G. | | | |
| D. | | | |
| A. | | | |
| V. liebt e Väter . | theuerst e Schwestern ! | schönst e Kind e r ! | |

b. NEW FORM.

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> |
| N. der schönst e , | (die) -e, | (daß) -e, | die schönst e n. |
| G. des schönst e n , | (der) -e n , | (deß) -e n , | der schönst e n. |
| D. dem schönst e n , | (der) -e n , | (dem) -e n , | den schönst e n. |
| A. den schönst e n , | (die) -e, | (daß) -e, | die schönst e n. |

c. MIXED FORM.

| <i>Masc. Sing.</i> | <i>Fem. Sing.</i> | <i>Neut. Sing.</i> |
|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| N. unser schönst e r , | (unsere) -e, | (unser) -e &. |
| G. unseres schönst e n , | (unserer) -e n , | (unseres) -e n |
| D. unserem schönst e n , | (unserer) -e n , | (unserem) -e n. |
| A. unseren schönst e n , | (unsere) -e, | (unser) -e &. |

Plural for all genders.

| |
|-------------------------|
| N. unsere schönst e n. |
| G. unserer schönst e n. |
| D. unseren schönst e n. |
| A. unsere schönst e n |

§ 38. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) In place of the regular form of the superlative, preceded by the article and agreeing with the noun in gender, number and case, we often find a circumlocation employed ; which consists in the dative case singular of the new form preceded by the particle *a m* : thus, *die Tage sind im Winter am kürzesten*, the days are shortest in the winter. The explanation is easy : *a m*, compounded of *an (at)*, and *dem*, the dative of *der (the)*, signifies *at the*. Translated literally, therefore, the sentence above will be : The days in winter are *at the* shortest ; that is, at the shortest (*limit*) : where, in the German, *kürze-*

ſten agrees with some noun in the dative understood, which is governed by *a n*. But the phrase is used and treated just as any regular superlative form would be under the same circumstances. In like manner, *auf* (*upon*) and *zu* (*to*) combined respectively with the article (*a u f d a s* and *z u d e m*), and producing the forms *aufſ* and *zum*, are employed with adjectives in the superlative: thus, *aufſ ſchönſte eingerichtet*, arranged upon the finest (*plan*); *zum ſchönſten*, to, or according to the finest (*manner*). These latter forms, however, are chiefly employed to denote *eminence*, rather than to express *comparison*. Freely rendered, therefore, *aufſ ſchönſte* and *zum ſchönſten* will be: *very finely, most beautifully* or the like.

(2) Sometimes *aller* (*of all*) is found prefixed to superlatives to give intensity of meaning; as, *der allerbeſte*, the best of all, i. e. the *very* best; *die allerſchönſte*, the handsomest of all, i. e. the *very* handsomest.

(3) When mere *eminence*, and not *comparison*, is to be expressed, the words *äußerſt* (*extremely*) and *höchſt* (*highest*) are employed: as, *dieſ iſt eine äußerſt ſchöne Blume*, this is a *very* beautiful flower.

§ 39. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE FORMS.

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| gut, good; | better, better; | beſt or am beſten, best. |
| hoch, high; | höher, higher; | höchſt or am höchſten, highest. |
| nahe, near; | näher, nearer; | nächſt or am nächſten, nearest. |
| viel, much; | mehr, more; | meiſt or am meiſten, most. |
| wenig, little; | minder, less; | mindeſt or am mindeſten, least. |
| groß, great; | größter, greater; | größt or am größten, greatest. |
| balb, early; | äter, earlier; | erſt or am erſten, earliest. |
| wanting. | wanting. | lezt or am lezten, latest. |
| „ | äußere, outer; | äußerſt, uttermost. |
| „ | inner, inner; | innerſt, innermost. |
| „ | vorder, fore; | vorderſt, foremost. |
| „ | hinter, hinder; | hinterſt, hindermost. |
| „ | ober, upper; | oberſt, uppermost. |
| „ | unter, under; | unterſt, undermost. |

§ 40. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Note that *hoch* (*high*), in the *comparative*, *drops*, while *nah* (*near*), in the *superlative*, assumes the letter *c*: thus, *hoch*, comp. *höher*; *nah*, comp. *näher*, sup. *nächst*.

(2) That *mehr* (*more*), the *comparative* of *viel*, has two forms in the plural, *mehr* *e* or *mehr* *e r e*; and that the latter (*mehrere*) is the more common one. It has the use and meaning of the English word *several*: as, *Ich sah mehrere Soldaten*, I saw several soldiers.

(3) That the *superlative* of *groß* (*great*) is contracted into *größt*.

(4) That *erst*, the *superlative* of *früher* (*earlier*), is a contraction for *frühest*.

(5) That from *der erste* (*the earliest or first*) and *der letzte* (*the latest or last*), are formed the correlative terms *erstere*, *the former*, and *letztere*, *the latter*.

(6) That the last six words in the list (§ 39) are formed from adverbs, and are *comparatives in form* rather than in *fact*.

§ 41. ADJECTIVES COMPARED BY MEANS OF ADVERBS.

(1) When the degrees of comparison are not expressed by suffixes, the adverbs *mehr* (*more*) and *am meisten* (*most*) are employed for that purpose: thus,

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| angst, <i>anxious</i> ; | mehr angst; | am meisten angst. |
| bereit, <i>ready</i> ; | mehr bereit; | am meisten bereit. |
| eingedenk, <i>mindful</i> ; | mehr eingedenk; | am meisten eingedenk. |
| feind, <i>hostile</i> ; | mehr feind; | am meisten feind. |
| gäng und gebe, <i>current</i> ; | mehr gäng und gebe; | am meisten gäng und gebe. |
| gar, <i>done</i> ; <i>cooked</i> ; | mehr gar ; | am meisten gar. |
| gram, <i>averse</i> ; | mehr gram ; | am meisten gram. |
| irre, <i>astray</i> ; | mehr irre ; | am meisten irre. |
| fund, <i>public</i> ; | mehr fund ; | am meisten fund. |

| | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| leid, <i>sorry</i> ; | mehr leid ; | am meisten leid. |
| nutz, <i>useful</i> ; | mehr nutz ; | am meisten nutz. |
| recht, <i>right</i> ; | mehr recht ; | am meisten recht. |
| theilhaft, <i>partaking</i> ; | mehr theilhaft ; | am meisten theilhaft. |

§ 42. OBSERVATIONS.

The above method of comparison, which is commonly called the *compound form*, is chiefly used in cases :

(1) Where a comparison is instituted between two different qualities of the same person or thing : as, er ist mehr lustig als traurig, he is more merry than sad ; er war mehr glücklich als tapfer, he was more fortunate than brave.

(2) Where the adjectives, like those in the list above, are never used otherwise than as predicates.

(3) Where the addition of the suffixes of comparison would offend against *euphony*, as in the superlative of adjectives ending in i f d ; thus, barbarisch.

§ 43. THE NUMERALS.

In German, as in other languages, the numerals are classified according to their signification. Among the classes thus produced, the first, in order, is

§ 44. THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The cardinal numbers, whence all the others are derived are those answering definitely to the question : "*How many ?*" They are

| | | | |
|----------------------|----|-----------------------|-----|
| Ein (ein, eine, ein) | 1. | zehn | 10. |
| zwei | 2. | elf | 11. |
| drei | 3. | zwölf | 12. |
| vier | 4. | dreizehn | 13. |
| fünf | 5. | vierzehn | 14. |
| sechs | 6. | fünfzehn | 15. |
| seven | 7. | sechzehn | 16. |
| acht | 8. | sevenzehn or siebzehn | 17. |
| neun | 9. | achtzehn | 18. |

| | | | |
|------------------------|-----|----------------------|------------|
| neunzehn | 19. | hundert | 100. |
| zwanzig | 20. | hundert und eins | 101. |
| ein und zwanzig | 21. | hundert und zwei | 102. |
| zwei und zwanzig &c. | 22. | hundert und drei &c. | 103. |
| dreißig | 30. | zwei hundert | 200. |
| ein und dreißig | 31. | drei hundert | 300. |
| zwei und dreißig &c. | 32. | tausend | 1000. |
| vierzig | 40. | zwei tausend | 2000. |
| fünfzig | 50. | drei tausend | 3000. |
| sechzig (not sechszig) | 60. | zehn tausend | 10,000. |
| siebenzig or siebenzig | 70. | hundert tausend | 100,000. |
| achtzig | 80. | eine Million | 1,000,000. |
| neunzig | 90. | zwei Millionen | 2,000,000. |

(1) OBSERVE that the cardinals are, for the most part, *indeclinable*.

(2) *Ein*, (*one*) however, is declined throughout like the indefinite article. It is, in fact, the same word with a different use; and is distinguished from it, in speaking and writing, only by a stronger emphasis and by being usually written with a capital initial. This is the form which it has, when immediately before a noun, or before an adjective qualifying a noun. Thus:

| | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|----|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| N. | { Ein Mann, | Eine Frau, | Ein Kind. |
| | { Ein guter Mann, | Eine gute Frau, | Ein gutes Kind. |
| G. | { Einem Manne, | Einer Frau, | Einem Kinde. |
| | { Einem guten Manne, | Einer guten Frau, | Einem guten Kin- |
| | | | des; &c. |

(3) In other situations, *ein* follows the ordinary rules of declension: thus in the

a. Old Form.

| | | | | |
|----|--------|--------|--------|-------------|
| N. | einer, | eine, | eines, | one. |
| G. | eines, | einer, | eines, | of one, &c. |

b. New Form.

| | | | | |
|----|------------|------------|------------|-----------------|
| N. | der eine, | die eine, | das eine, | the one. |
| G. | des einen, | der einen, | des einen, | of the one, &c. |

c. *Mixed Form.*

N mein einer, meine eine, mein eines, my one.*

G. meines einen, meiner einen, meines einen, of my one, &c

(4) Zwei (*two*) and drei (*three*), when the cases are not sufficiently pointed out by other words in the context, are declined: thus,

| | | | | |
|----|---------|----------------|---------|------------------|
| N. | Zwei, † | two, | drei, | three. |
| G. | Zweier, | of two, | dreier, | of three. |
| D. | Zweien, | to or for two, | dreien, | to or for three. |
| A. | Zwei, | two, | drei, | three. |

(5) All the rest of the cardinals, when employed *substantively*, take *en* in the *dative*: except such as already end in these letters; as, ich habe es Fünfen gesagt, I have told it to five (persons).

(6) Hundert and Tausend are often employed as collective (neuter) nouns, and regularly inflected; as, nom. das Hundert, gen. des Hunderts, plural (nom.) die Hunderte. Million is, in like manner, made a noun (feminine,) and is, in the singular always preceded by the *article*; as, Eine Million, a million.

(7) In speaking of the cardinals, *merely as figures or characters*, they are all regarded as being in the *feminine* gender: as, die Eins, the one, die Zwei, the two, die Drei, the three; where, in each case, the word, Zahl, (*number*) is supposed to be understood: thus die (Zahl) drei, the (number) three.

§ 45. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

(1) The ordinal numbers are those, which answer to the question: "*Which one of the series?*" They are given below,

* In relation to the numeral *ein* note, further, these three things:

1. That in merely counting, it has the termination of the neuter, with *e*, however, omitted; as eins, zwei, drei, one, two, three, &c.

2. That *ein* may be used in the *plural*, when the design is to distinguish classes of individuals; as, die Einen, *the ones*, der Einen, *of the ones*, &c. just as, in English, we say, *the ones, the others*.

3. That *ein*, unlike the English *one*, cannot be employed in a *suppletory* way, to fill the place of a noun: thus, we cannot say, in German, a new *one*, a good *one*, &c. In such cases, the adjective stands alone.

† In place of *zwei*, *beide* (*both*) which is declined like an adjective in the plural, is often employed; as beide Augen, both eyes; die beiden Brüder, both the brothers. The neuter *beide* never refers to *persons*.

for the purposes of comparison, side by side with the cardinals, and in the form required, by the definite article preceding · for the ordinal numbers are regularly inflected according to the rules already given for the declension of adjectives.

| CARDINALS. | | ORDINALS. |
|------------------------|-----|---|
| Ein (ein, eine, ein) | 1. | der erste (not der einte), the first. |
| zwei | 2. | " zweite (also der andere), the second. |
| drei | 3. | " dritte (not dreite), the third. |
| vier | 4. | " vierte, the fourth. |
| fünf | 5. | " fünfte, the fifth. |
| sechs | 6. | " sechste, the sixth. |
| sieben | 7. | " siebente, the seventh. |
| acht | 8. | " achte (not achtte), the eighth |
| neun | 9. | " neunte, the ninth. |
| zehn | 10. | " zehnte, the tenth. |
| elf | 11. | " elfte, the eleventh. |
| zwölf | 12. | " zwölfte, the twelfth. |
| dreizehn | 13. | " dreizehnte, the thirteenth. |
| vierzehn | 14. | " vierzehnte, the fourteenth. |
| fünfzehn | 15. | " fünfzehnte, the fifteenth. |
| sechzehn | 16. | " sechzehnte, the sixteenth; etc |
| siebenzehn or siebzehn | 17. | " siebzehnte or siebzehnte. |
| achtzehn | 18. | " achtzehnte. |
| neunzehn | 19. | " neunzehnte. |
| zwanzig | 20. | " zwanzigste. |
| ein und zwanzig | 21. | " ein und zwanzigste. |
| zwei und zwanzig &c. | 22. | " zwei und zwanzigste &c. |
| dreißig | 30. | " dreißigste. |
| ein und dreißig | 31. | " ein und dreißigste. |
| zwei und dreißig &c. | 32. | " zwei und dreißigste &c. |
| vierzig | 40. | " vierzigste. |
| fünfzig | 50. | " fünfzigste. |
| sechzig (not sechszig) | 60. | " sechzigste. |
| siebenzig or siebzig | 70. | " siebenzigste or siebzigste. |
| achtzig | 80. | " achtzigste. |
| neunzig | 90. | " neunzigste. |

| | | |
|----------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| hundert | 100. | der hundertste. |
| hundert und eins | 101. | " hundert und erste. |
| hundert und zwei | 102. | " hundert und zweite. |
| hundert und drei &c. | 103. | " hundert und dritte. |
| zwei hundert | 200. | " zweihundertste. |
| drei hundert | 300. | " dreihundertste. |
| tausend | 1000. | " tausendste. |
| zwei tausend | 2000. | " zweitausendste. |
| drei tausend | 3000. | " dreitausendste. |
| zehn tausend | 10,000. | " zehntausendste. |
| hundert tausend | 100,000. | " hunderttausendste &c. |

(2) OBSERVE that, in the formation of the ordinals from the cardinals, a certain law is observed : viz. from *zwei* (*two*) to *neunzehn* (*nineteen*) the corresponding ordinal, in each case (*dritte* and *achte* excepted), is made by adding the letters *te* ; as, *zwei*, *two* ; *zweite*, *second* ; *vier*, *four* ; *vierte*, *fourth*, &c. Beyond that number (*nineteen*), the same effect is produced by adding *ste* ; as, *zwanzig*, *twenty* ; *zwanzigste*, *twentieth* ; &c. *Erste* is from *er* (*before*).

(3) Note, also, that *der andere* (*the other*) is often used in place of *der zweite* ; but only in cases where two objects only are referred to.

(4) In compound numbers, it must be observed that the last one only, as in English, bears the suffix (*te* or *ste*) ; but in this case, the units usually precede the tens : thus, *der vier und zwanzigste*, the four and twentieth.

(5) We have, also, a sort of interrogative ordinal, formed from *wie* (*how*) and *viel* (*much*), which is used when we wish to put the question : *Which of the number ?* as, *der wievieltste ist heute ?* what day of the month is to-day ? *Das wievieltste ist es ?* how many does that make ?

§ 46. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

The distributives, which answer to the question : "*How many at a time ?*" are formed, as in English, by coupling cardinals by the conjunction *und* ; or by using before them the particle *je* (*ever* ; *at a time*) ; thus,

zwei und zwei, *two and two*, or je zwei, *two at a time*;
drei und drei, *three and three*, or je drei, *three at a time*, &c.

§ 47. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS.

The multiplicatives, which answer to the question: "*How many fold?*" are formed from the cardinals by adding the suffix *fach* (*fold*) or *fältig* (*having folds*); thus,

einfach or einfältig, * onefold or single;
zweifach or zweifältig, twofold or having two folds;
dreifach or dreifältig, threefold or treble;
vierfach or vierfältig, fourfold or having four folds, &c.

§ 48. VARIATIVE NUMERALS.

Variatives, which answer to the question; "*Of how many kinds?*" are formed from the cardinals by affixing *lei* (*a sort or kind*), the syllable *er* being inserted for the sake of euphony; thus,

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| einerlei, of one kind; | viererlei, of four kinds; |
| zweierlei, of two kinds; | fünferlei, of five kinds; |
| dreierlei, of three kinds; | mancherlei, of many kinds; &c. |

§ 49. DIMIDIATIVE NUMERALS.

The dimidiatives, which answer to the question: "*Which* (i. e. which of the numbers) *is but a half?*" are formed from the ordinals by annexing the word *halb* (*half*); thus,

zweitehalb, † *the second a half*, that is, *one whole and a half*; $1\frac{1}{2}$.

brittehalb, *third a half*, i. e. *two wholes and a half*; $2\frac{1}{2}$.

vierttehalb, *the fourth a half*, i. e. *three wholes and a half*; $3\frac{1}{2}$; &c.

* Einfältig is applied to what is *simple*, *artless* or *silly*.

† Instead of zweitehalb, the word in common use is anderthalb: the *par* *an* *der* being from *der* *and* *der*, the *second*. The word *would* be *anderhalb*; but the final *e* is exchanged for a *t*, probably, for the sake of *as* *simulating* it in *form*, to the rest of the words of this class.

§ 50. ITERATIVE NUMERALS.

The iteratives, which answer to the question: "*How often or how many times?*" are formed from cardinals and from indefinite numerals, by the addition of the word *mal* * (*time*); thus,

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>einmal</i> , one time; once; | <i>viermal</i> , four times; |
| <i>fünfmal</i> , five times; | <i>zweimal</i> , two times; twice; |
| <i>dreimal</i> , three times; | <i>sechsmal</i> , six times; |
| <i>jedemal</i> , each time; | <i>vielmal</i> , many times; &c. |

§ 51. DISTINCTIVES.

(1) The name, *distinctives*, has been applied to a class of ordinal adverbs, which answer to the question: "*In what place in the series?*" and which are formed by affixing *ten* to the ordinal numbers: thus,

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <i>ersten</i> , first or in the first place; | <i>fünften</i> , fifthly; |
| <i>zweiten</i> , secondly; | <i>sechsten</i> , sixthly; |
| <i>dritten</i> , thirdly; | <i>siebten</i> , seventhly; |
| <i>vierten</i> , fourthly; | <i>achten</i> , eighthly; &c. |

(2) Under the name, *distinctives*, may, also, be set down a class of numeral nouns, formed from the cardinals by the addition of the suffixes *er*, *in* and *ling*, which are used to designate one arrived at, belonging to, or valued at a certain number: thus,

Sechziger, *sixtier*, i. e. a man sixty years of age, or one of a company of sixty;
Dreier, *one valued at three*, i. e. a coin of 3 pfennigs Prussian;
Elfer, *eleven-er*, i. e. wine of the year 1811;
Williing, *two-ling*, i. e. a twin, &c.

* *Mal* is sometimes separated from the numerals, and is then regularly declined as a neuter noun.

§ 52. PARTITIVES OR FRACTIONALS.

Under this name (partitives) are embraced a class of neuter nouns, answering to the question: "*What part?*" which are formed by affixing to the ordinals the suffix *tel*† (*part*): thus,

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Drittel, a third; | Siebentel, a seventh, |
| Viertel, a fourth; | Achtel, an eighth; |
| Fünftel, a fifth; | Neuntel, a ninth; |
| Sechstel, a sixth; | Zehntel, a tenth; &c. |

§ 53. INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

(1) The indefinite numerals, which are, for the most part, used and inflected as adjectives, are commonly divided into such as serve to indicate NUMBER, such as merely denote QUANTITY, and such, finally, as are employed to express BOTH. Those denoting number only, are

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| jeder, jede, jedes, each, every; | |
| jedlicher, —e, —es, „ „ | } old and unusual forms of jeder. |
| jedweder, —e, —es, „ „ | |
| manche, manche, manches, many a; many (in the plural). | |
| mehrere, several; plural of mehr, more. | |

(2) Those denoting *quantity* only, are

etw a s, some; which is indeclinable.

gan z, the whole, as opposed to a part; declined generally like an adjective; indeclinable, however, when placed before neuter names of places and not preceded by an article or pronoun; as, ganz Deutschland, all Germany; (with the article or pronoun preceding) das ganze Deutschland, the whole of Germany; sein ganzer Reichthum, his whole riches.

h a l b, half, follows the same law, in declension, as the word gan z above.

† *Tel* is simply a contracted form of the word *Theil*, a part. From 20 upwards, note that *ßtel* (instead of *tel*) is added; as, zwanzigßtel, the twentieth, &c.

(3) Those denoting number and quantity *both*, are

aller, alle, alles, all; applied to quantity, in the *singular* only; as, *aller Reichthum*, all riches; *alle Macht*, all power; *alles Gold*, all gold; *dieses alles* (not *alle*) *will ich geben*, all this will I give; *welches alles*, all which. Placed *before* a pronoun, which latter is followed by a noun, the terminations of declension are often omitted; as, *all* (for *alles*) *dieses Geld*, all this money; *all* (for *aller*) *dieser Wein*, all this wine. In the neuter of the singular, it often denotes an indefinite number or amount; as, *alles*, *was reisen kann*, *reiset*, all that can travel, do travel; *er scheint alles zu wissen*, he seems to know everything. In the *plural*, the word denotes *number*; as, *alle Menschen*, all men; *an allen Orten*, in all places: — it is never used in the sense of *whole*, which is expressed by *ganß*; as, *der ganze Tag*, the whole day; nor is it followed, as in English, by the definite article; as, *alles Geld* (not *alles das Geld*), all the money; — finally, the phrases "*all of us*," "*all of you*," &c., are in German: *wir alle*, *we all*, &c. The plural is used like our word *every*; as, *ich gehe alle Tage*, I go every day.

einiger, einige, einigeß, some; few; applied to number in the *plural* only.

etlicher, —e, —es, some; synonymous with *einiger*.

kein, keine, kein, no; none; declined like *ein, eine, ein*; as, *kein Vater, keine Mutter, kein Kind*; when employed as a noun, it takes the old form of declension; as, *keiner der alten Verehrer*, *none* of the ancient worshippers.

sammtlicher, —e, —es, entire; } regularly declined like
gesamter, —e, —es, „ } adjectives.

viel, much; (in the plural) *many*; when it expresses quantity or number, taken *collectively*, and is not preceded by an article or a pronoun, it is not declined: as, *viel Gold*, much gold; but, *das viel Gold*, the quantity of gold; — when applied to a number as *individuals*, it is regularly declined: as, *vieler, viele, vieles, &c.*; thus, *viele Männer*

find träge, many men are indolent; er hat sehr viele Freunde und ich habe auch viele, he has a great many friends and I have also a great many.
 wenig, little; (in the plural) few; follows the same rules of inflection as viel above.
 mehr, more; } are indeclinable; for the plural of mehr,
 weniger, less; } however, see above.
 genug, enough; sufficient; never declined; Geld genug, money enough.
 lauter, merely; only; never declined; lauter Kupfer, copper only or nothing but copper.
 nichts, nothing.

§ 54. PRONOUNS.

In German, as in other languages, will be found a number of those words, which, for the sake of convenience, are employed as the direct representatives of nouns. These are the pronouns. They are divided, according to the particular offices which they perform, into six different classes: viz.: Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Determinative, Relative and Interrogative.

§ 55. TABLE OF THE PRONOUNS.

| <i>Personal Pronouns.</i> | | | | <i>Possessive Pronouns.</i> | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|----------------|--|---|--|----------------|--|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> | | <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> | |
| Ich, I. | | Wir, We. | | Mein, My. | | Unser, Our. | |
| Du, Thou. | | Ihr, Ye. | | Dein, Thy. | | Euer, Your. | |
| Er, He. | | Sie, They. | | Sein, His. | | Ihr, Their. | |
| Sie, She. | | Sie, They. | | Ihr, Her. | | | |
| Es, It. | | Sie, They. | | Sein, Its. | | | |
| <i>Indefinite Pronouns.</i> | | | | <i>Reflexive and Reciprocal Pronouns.</i> | | | |
| Man, one; a certain one. | | | | | | | |
| Jemand, some one; somebody. | | | | Sich, Himself, Herself, | | | |
| Niemand, no one; nobody. | | | | Itself, Themselves | | | |
| Jedermann, every one; everybody. | | | | Einander, one another. | | | |

| <i>Demonstrative Pronouns.</i> | <i>Determinative Pronouns.</i> |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Dieser, This. | Der, That, That one, <i>He</i> . |
| Jener, That. | Derjenige, That, That person |
| Der, This or That. | Derfelbe, The same. |
| | Selbiger, The same. |
| | Solcher, Such. |

| <i>Relative Pronouns.</i> | <i>Interrogative Pronouns.</i> |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Welcher, Who, Which. | Wer, Who? was? What? |
| Der, That. | Welcher, Who? Which? |
| Wer, Who, He or she, who or that. | Was für, What sort of? |

§ 56. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

There are five personal pronouns; namely, *ich*, (*I*) which represents the *speaker* and is, therefore, of the *first* person; *du*, (*thou*) which represents the *hearer* or person addressed, and is therefore, of the *second* person; and *er*, (*he*) *ſie*, (*she*) and *eſ*, (*it*) representing the person or thing merely *spoken of*, and, therefore, of the *third* person. They are declined thus

| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|--|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| | <i>First person.</i> | |
| N. <i>ich</i> , I. | | <i>mir</i> , we. |
| G. <i>meiner</i> , <i>mein</i> , of me. | | <i>unſer</i> , of us. |
| D. <i>mir</i> , to me. | | <i>unſ</i> , to us. |
| A. <i>miſ</i> , me. | | <i>unſ</i> , us. |
| | <i>Second person.</i> | |
| N. <i>du</i> , thou. | | <i>ihr</i> , ye or you. |
| G. <i>deiner</i> , <i>dein</i> of thee. | | <i>euer</i> , of you. |
| D. <i>dir</i> , to thee. | | <i>euch</i> , to you. |
| A. <i>diſ</i> , thee. | | <i>euch</i> , you. |
| | <i>Third person, Masc.</i> | |
| N. <i>er</i> , he. | | <i>ſie</i> , they. |
| G. <i>ſeiner</i> , <i>ſein</i> , of him. | | <i>ihrer</i> , of them. |
| D. <i>ihm</i> , to him. | | <i>ihnen</i> , to them. |
| A. <i>ihn</i> , him | | <i>ſie</i> , them. |

*Singular.**Plural.**Third person, Fem.*

| | | |
|----|----------------|-----------------|
| N. | ſie, she. | ſie, they. |
| G. | ihrer, of her. | ihrer, of them. |
| D. | ihr, to her. | ihnen, to them. |
| A. | ſie, her. | ſie, them. |

Third person, Neut.

| | | |
|----|----------------|-----------------|
| N. | eſ, it. | ſie, they. |
| G. | ſeiner, of it. | ihrer, of them. |
| D. | ihn, to it. | ihnen, to them. |
| A. | eſ, it. | ſie, them. |

§ 57. REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(1) The genitives, *mein, dein, ſein*, are the earlier forms. The others (*meiner, deiner, ſeiner*) are the ones now commonly used.

(2) When construed with the prepositions *halben, wegen*, and *um-willen*, (signifying *for the sake of, on account of*); these genitives are united with the preposition by the euphonic letters, *et*, or (in case of *unſer* and *euer*) simply *t*. Thus : *meinetwegen, on account of me* ; *um unſertwillen, on account of us, &c.*

(3) The personal pronouns of the third person, when they represent things *without life*. are seldom, if ever, used in the dative, and never in the genitive. In such instances, the corresponding case of the demonstrative *der, die, daſ*, is employed : thus, *deſſen, (of this,)* instead of *ſeiner* ; and *deren, (of these,)* instead of *ihrer*.

(4) The word *ſelbſt* or *ſelber* (*self, selves*) may, also, for the greater clearness or emphasis, be added not only to the pronouns, but even to nouns. Thus ; *Ich ſelbſt, I myself* ; *die Leute ſelbſt, the people themselves*.

(5) Here, too, observe, that the personal pronouns have, also in the plural, a reciprocal force. Thus : *ſie lieben ſich, they love one another*. But as *ſie lieben ſich*, for example, might

signify, they love *themselves*, the Germans, also, use the word *einander*, (*one another*) about which there can be no mistake: as, *ſie lieben einander* (§ 60.)

(6) In polite conversation, the Germans use the *third person plural*, where we use the *second*. Thus: *Ich habe Sie geſehen*, I have seen you. To prevent misconception, the pronouns thus used are written with a capital letter; as, *ich danke Ihnen*, I thank (*them*) you. A similar sacrifice of Grammar to (supposed) courtesy, may be found in our own language. For we constantly use the *plural* for the singular; thus: "How are *you*?" instead of "How art *thou*?" The Germans proceed just one step beyond this, and besides taking the plural for the singular, take the *third person* for the second. With them, our familiar salutation "How do *you* do?" would be, "How do *they* do?"

(7) It must be observed, however, that the *second person singular*, *Du*, is always as in English, used in addressing the Supreme Being. It is, also, the proper mode of address among warm friends and near relatives. But it is, also, used in angry disputes, where little regard is paid to points of politeness. The *second person plural* is employed by superiors to their inferiors. The third person *singular* *er, ſie*, is used in the like manner, that is, by masters to servants, &c.

(8) The neuter pronoun (*es*) of the third person singular, like the words *it* and *there* in English, is often employed, as a nominative, both before and after verbs, singular and plural, as a mere *expletive*; that is, more for the purpose of aiding the *sound* than the *sense* of the sentence. In this use, moreover, it is construed with words of all genders. Thus: *Es iſt der Mann*, *it* is the man; *Es iſt die Frau*, *it* is the woman; *Es ſind Männer*, *they* are men; *Es donnert*; *it* thunders; *Es folgten viele*, *there* followed many, &c. &c.

When *Es* is thus used with a personal pronoun, the arrangement of the words is precisely the reverse of the English. Ex.: *Ich bin es*, It is I. *Du biſt es*, It is thou. *Sie ſind es*, It is they, &c.

(8) It should be added that the Germans, when no other pronoun is likely to grow out of it, often omit the possessive pronoun, where in English it would be used: the definite article seeming sufficiently to supply its place; as, *Ich habe es in den Händen*, I have it in *the* hands; that is, I have it in *my* hands. *Er nahm es auf die Schultern*, he took it upon the (his) shoulders; *Er hat den Arm gebrochen*, he has broken (the) an arm or his arm.

§ 59. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(1) Pronouns employed to represent persons and things in a general way, without reference to particular individuals, are called indefinite pronouns. Such are these,

Man, one; a certain one.

Jemand, some one; somebody.

Niemand, no one; nobody.

Jedermann, * every one; everybody.

(2) The German *man* (like the French *on*) is used to indicate persons in the most general manner: thus, *man sagt*, *one* says; that is, *they* say, *people* say, *it* is said, &c. It is indeclinable, and is found only in the nominative; when, therefore, any other case would be called for, the corresponding oblique case of *ein* is employed: thus, *er will einen nie hören*, he will never listen to one, i. e. to *any one*.

(3) *Jemand* and *Niemand* are declined in the following manner:

Singular.

| | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>Jemand</i> , <i>somebody</i> . | <i>Niemand</i> , <i>nobody</i> . |
| G. <i>Jemandes</i> or <i>Jemandes</i> . | <i>Niemandes</i> or <i>Niemandes</i> . |
| D. <i>Jemand</i> or <i>Jemandem</i> . | <i>Niemand</i> or <i>Niemandem</i> . |
| A. <i>Jemand</i> or <i>Jemanden</i> . | <i>Niemand</i> or <i>Niemanden</i> . |

* The following, which also belong to this list of indefinites, have already been treated of under the head of indefinite numerals: viz.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Etwas</i> , something. | <i>Jedlicher</i> , each; every one. |
| <i>Nichts</i> , nothing. | <i>Einige</i> , somewhat; some. |
| <i>Keiner</i> , no one; none. | <i>Etliche</i> , some; many. |
| <i>Einiger</i> , one; some one. | <i>Alle</i> , every one; all. |
| <i>Jeder</i> , each; every one. | <i>Mancher</i> , many a; it any; several. |
| <i>Jedweder</i> , each; every one. | |

Jedermann is declined thus :

- N. Jedermann, everybody.
- G. Jedermanns, of everybody.
- D. Jedermann, to everybody.
- A. Jedermann, everybody.

(4) Note that the second form of the dative (*Jedermannem*, *Niemandem*) is seldom employed except when the other form would leave the meaning ambiguous. Thus, *es ist Niemandem nützlich*, it is useful to nobody; where, were „*Niemand*“ used, the sense might be, nobody is useful. This remark applies, also, to the accusative: as, *sie liebt Niemanden*, she loves nobody: in which instance, were the other form (*Niemand*) substituted, it might mean, nobody loves her.

§ 60. REFLEXIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

(1) When the subject and the object of a verb are identical, the latter being a personal pronoun, the pronoun is said to be *reflexive*; because the action is thereby represented as reverting upon the actor: thus, *er rühmt sich*, he praises *himself*.

(2) When, however, in such case, the design is to represent the individuals constituting a plural subject as acting one upon another, the pronoun is said to be *reciprocal*: thus, *sie beschämen sich*, they disgrace *one another*.

(3) But, as (for example) *sie beschämen sich* may equally mean, they disgrace *themselves*, the reciprocal word *einander* (one another) is added to or substituted for *sich*, wherever there is danger of mistake; as, *sie verstehen sich einander*, or *sie verstehen einander*, they understand one another.

(4) In the dative and accusative (singular and plural) the German affords a special form for the reflexives; viz. *sich*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*. The personal pronouns, therefore, in all the oblique * cases, are used in a reflexive sense; except in the dative and accusative (*third* person), where, instead of *ihm*, *ihn*, *ihn* &c., the word *sich* is employed. Re-

* All cases, except the nominative, are called oblique cases

garded as *reflexives*, the personal pronouns are declined thus :

| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural</i> |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>First person.</i> | | |
| N. | <i>None.</i> | <i>None.</i> |
| G. | meiner, of myself | unſer, of ourselves. |
| D. | mir, to myself. | unſ, to ourselves |
| A. | miſh, myself. | unſ, ourselves. |
| <i>Second person.</i> | | |
| N. | <i>None.</i> | <i>None.</i> |
| G. | deiner, of thyself. | euer, of yourselves. |
| D. | dir, to thyself. | euch, to yourselves. |
| A. | diſh, thyself. | euch, yourselves. |
| <i>Third person masc.</i> | | |
| N. | <i>None.</i> | <i>None.</i> |
| G. | ſeiner, of himself. | ihrer, of themselves. |
| D. | ſi ſh, to himself. | ſi ſh, to themselves. |
| A. | ſi ſh, himself. | ſi ſh, themselves. |
| <i>Third person fem.</i> | | |
| N. | <i>None.</i> | <i>None.</i> |
| G. | ihrer, of herself. | ihrer, of themselves. |
| D. | ſi ſh, to herself. | ſi ſh, to themselves. |
| A. | ſi ſh, herself. | ſi ſh, themselves |
| <i>Third person neuter.</i> | | |
| N. | <i>None.</i> | <i>None.</i> |
| G. | ſeiner, of itself. | ihrer, of themselves. |
| D. | ſi ſh, to itself. | ſi ſh, to themselves. |
| A. | ſi ſh, itself. | ſi ſh, themselves. |

§ 61. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(1) The peculiar office of a demonstrative pronoun is to point out the relative *position* of the object to which it refers. Of these there are three :

dieſer, this (pointing to something *near at hand*) ;
 jener, that (indicating something *remote*) ;
 der, this or that (referring to things in either position).

(2) *Dieser* and *jener* are declined after the Old form of adjectives: thus,

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> |
| N. <i>dieser</i> , | <i>diese</i> , | <i>dieses</i> (<i>dieß</i>), this ; | <i>diese</i> , these. |
| G. <i>dieses</i> , | <i>dieser</i> , | <i>dieses</i> , of this ; | <i>dieser</i> , of these. |
| D. <i>diesem</i> , | <i>dieser</i> , | <i>diesem</i> , to this ; | <i>diesen</i> , to these. |
| A. <i>diesen</i> , | <i>diese</i> , | <i>dieses</i> (<i>dieß</i>), this ; | <i>diese</i> , these. |

(3) *Der*, when used in connection with a noun, is inflected (like the definite article) thus :

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> |
| N. <i>der</i> , | <i>die</i> , | <i>daß</i> , this or that ; | <i>die</i> , these or those. |
| G. <i>des</i> , | <i>der</i> , | <i>des</i> , of this or that ; | <i>der</i> , of these or those. |
| D. <i>dem</i> , | <i>der</i> , | <i>dem</i> , to this or that ; | <i>den</i> , to these or those. |
| A. <i>den</i> , | <i>die</i> , | <i>daß</i> , this or that ; | <i>die</i> , these or those. |

(4) When used absolutely, that is, to represent a substantive, it stands thus :

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> |
| N. <i>der</i> , | <i>die</i> , | <i>daß</i> ; | <i>die</i> . |
| G. <i>dessen</i> (<i>deß</i>), | <i>deren</i> (<i>der</i>), | <i>dessen</i> (<i>deß</i>) ; | <i>deren</i> . |
| D. <i>dem</i> , | <i>der</i> , | <i>dem</i> ; | <i>denen</i> . |
| A. <i>den</i> , | <i>die</i> , | <i>daß</i> ; | <i>die</i> . |

§ 62. OBSERVATIONS ON THE DEMONSTRATIVES.

(1) The neuters *dieses* (contract form *dieß*), *jenes* and *daß*, are, like *es* (§ 134. 1.) employed with verbs, without distinction of gender or number: thus, *dieß ist ein Mann*, this is a man; *dieß sind Menschen*, these are men; *jenes ist eine Frau*, that is a woman; &c.

(2) *Dieser*, when denoting immediate proximity, signifies "*this*;" as, *in dieser Welt ist alles vergänglich*, in this world all is transitory. More generally, however, it answers in use to "*that*." *Jener* always denotes greater remoteness than *dieser*,

and signifies "*that*," "*yon*," "*yonder*;" as, *jenen Stern ist kaum sichtbar*, that (or yonder) star is hardly visible.

Jener and *dieser*, when employed to express contrast or comparison, often find their equivalents in the English expressions "*the former*"—"the latter;" "*that*, *that one*"—"this, this one."

(3) The demonstrative *der*, *die*, *das*, is distinguishable from the article, with which it is identical in form, by being uttered with greater emphasis, as in the following example: *der Mann hat es gesagt, nicht jener*, *this man has said it, not that one*.

(4) The form *dessen* is chiefly found in compounds; as, *deswegen*, on this account.

(5) Sometimes *der* is, for the sake of greater clearness, employed in place of a possessive: as, *er malte seinen Vetter und dessen Sohn*, he painted his cousin and *his* son; *literally*, and the *son of this one*, i. e. the cousin's son.

(6) The pronouns, both demonstrative and determinative, are frequently made more *intensive* by the particle *eben*, *even*; *very*: *eben diese Blume*, *this very flower*; *eben das Kind*, *that same child*; *eben derselbe*, *the very same*.

§ 63. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

(1) The pronouns of this class are commonly set down among the demonstratives. Their *distinctive* feature, however, is that of being used where an antecedent is to be limited by a relative clause succeeding, and so rendered more or less prominent or emphatic: thus, *der, welcher klug handelt, verdient Lob*, *he (that man) who acts wisely, deserves praise*. From this use they derive the name *determinative*. They are

der, that; that one; *he*;

derjenige, that; that person (*strongly determinative*);

derselbe, * the same (denoting *identity*);

derselber, the same (seldom used);

solcher, such (marking *similarity* of kind or nature).

(2) *Der*, when used in connection with a noun, is declined like the demonstrative *der*; that is, like the definite article:

* Where two words precede, either of which *might* be taken for the ante-

when used *absolutely*, it differs from the demonstrative *der* only in the genitive plural: taking *derer* instead of *deren*.

(3) *Derjenige* and *derselbe* are compounded of *der* and the parts *jenige* and *selbe* respectively. In declining, both parts of each must be inflected; *der*, like the article, and *jenige* and *selbe* after the New form of adjectives: thus,

| | <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> |
| N. | <i>derjenige,</i> | <i>diejenige,</i> | <i>daßjenige;</i> | <i>diejenigen.</i> |
| G. | <i>deßjenigen,</i> | <i>derjenigen,</i> | <i>deßjenigen;</i> | <i>derjenigen</i> |
| D. | <i>demjenigen,</i> | <i>derjenigen,</i> | <i>demjenigen;</i> | <i>denjenigen.</i> |
| A. | <i>denjenigen,</i> | <i>diejenige,</i> | <i>daßjenige;</i> | <i>diejenigen.</i> |

(4) *Selbiger, Selbige, Selbiges* and *Solcher, Solche, Solches*, are declined after the Old form of adjectives; the latter, however, when the indefinite article (*ein, eine, ein*) precedes, takes the *Mixed* form: * thus,

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | |
|----|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| N. | <i>ein solcher, †</i> | <i>eine solche,</i> | <i>ein solches,</i> | <i>such a.</i> |
| G. | <i>eines solchen,</i> | <i>einer solchen,</i> | <i>eines solchen,</i> | <i>of such a.</i> |
| D. | <i>einem solchen,</i> | <i>einer solchen,</i> | <i>einem solchen,</i> | <i>to such a.</i> |
| A. | <i>einen solchen,</i> | <i>eine solche,</i> | <i>ein solches,</i> | <i>such a.</i> |

§ 64. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(1) The proper office of a relative pronoun is to represent an antecedent word or phrase; but, while so doing, it serves also to connect the different clauses of a sentence. The Relatives in German are these:

sedent of a personal pronoun of the third person, *derselbe* is used to prevent doubt: thus, *der Vater schrieb seinem Sohne, derselbe müsse nach London reisen*, the father wrote the son, that *he* (*derselbe*, the *last* one named, i. e. the *son*) must set out for London.

* When *ein* comes *after* *solcher*, the latter is not inflected at all; as, *solch ein Mann*, such a man.

† Nearly synonymous with *Solcher* are the words, *beßgleichen, verglichen, seinesgleichen, ihresgleichen*, all which are indeclinable; as, *ich habe keinen Umgang mit beßgleichen Leuten*, I have no intercourse with such people. *Wer unter euch ist seinesgleichen?* Who among you is his equal?

| | |
|----------|---|
| Welcher, | who, which. |
| Der, | that. |
| Wer, | who, he who, or that, or she who. |
| Wo, * | which, (nearly obsolete, and indeclinable.) |

(2) Welcher is declined after the Old form ; thus,

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> | |
| N. welcher, | welche, | welches ; | welche, who, which. | |
| G. welches, | welcher, | welches ; | welcher, of whom, whose. | |
| D. welchem, | welcher, | welchem ; | welchen, to whom, to which | |
| A. welchen, | welche, | welches ; | welche, whom, which. | |

(3) Der is declined, thus :

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> | |
| N. der, | die, | das ; | die, that, who, which. | |
| G. dessen, | derer, | dessen ; | deren, of whom, or which, whose. | |
| D. dem, | der, | dem ; | denen, to whom, or which. | |
| A. den, | die, | das ; | die, that, who, which. | |

(4) Wer stands thus :

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | |
| N. wer, † | wer, | was ; | N. } Wanting. |
| G. wessen (or wess,) | wessen (or wess,) | wess ; | G. } |
| D. wem, | wem, | wanting † | D. } |
| A. wen, | wen, | was ; | A. } |

§ 65. OBSERVATIONS ON THE RELATIVES.

(1) Of the pronouns declined above, welcher, welche, welches, is the only one that can be used in conjunction with a noun, after the manner of an adjective : thus, welcher Mann,

* Wo is really an adverb used as a relative.

† Wer has no plural, but like "es," is sometimes used before plural verbs
Example : Wer sind diese Leute ? Who are this people ?

‡ This dative is supplied by an adverbial compound ; as, wozu, (wo + zu) whereto, or to which. Womit, where-with, with what, wovon, whereof, of what, &c.

which man; (not *wer Mann*;) and, except when so joined with a noun, the genitive (both Sing. and Plural) of *welcher* is never used, but, in place of it, the corresponding parts of *der*; that is, *dessen*, *deren*, *dessen*, for the Singular, and *deren*, for the plural; as, *der Mann, dessen* (not *welches*) *Freund ich bin*, the man, whose friend I am; *die Bäume, deren* (not *welcher*) *Blüthen abgefallen sind*, the trees whose blossoms have fallen off.

(2) *Der, die, daß*, as a relative, like the English word *that*, is used as a sort of substitute for the regular relative. Thus (Sec obs. next above) its genitive is employed in place of that of *welcher*, because the genitive of the latter, (*welches, welcher, welcher*,) being the same in form as the nominative masc. and neuter, might occasion mistake. So after the pronouns of the first and second person, (and of *the third, when used for the second*,) *welcher* is never employed, but *der*, thus:

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Ich,</i> | <i>der ich*</i> | <i>ihn sah,</i> | I, who saw him. |
| <i>Du,</i> | <i>der du*</i> | <i>uns segnest,</i> | thou, who blessest us. |
| <i>Wir,</i> | <i>die wir*</i> | <i>hier versammelt sind,</i> | we, who are here assembled. |
| <i>Ihr,</i> | <i>die ihr*</i> | <i>euer Vaterland liebt,</i> | ye, who love your country. |
| <i>Sie,</i> | <i>die Sie*</i> | <i>mir beistimmten,</i> | ye, who agreed with me. |

Der, die, daß, after *solcher*, is equivalent to the English "*as*": thus, *solche, die an Bäumen wächst*, such as grows on trees.

(3) *Wer, was*, is an indefinite relative employed wherever any uncertainty exists about the antecedent: thus, *sönnen Sie mir sagen, wer dieses gethan hat?* Can you tell me, *who* has done this? *Ich weiß nicht, was er sagte*, I do not know, *what* he said.

(4) Often *wer, was*, has at once the force of both a relative and an antecedent; as, *wer auf dem Wege der Jugend man-*

* In each case, it will be noted, the personal pronoun is *repeated* after the relative. In translating, of course the pronoun repeated, is to be omitted; or the order of the words being reversed (*ich der*, instead of *der ich*) the rendering may be: I, I who saw, &c. It must be added, that, when the pronoun is not repeated, the verb will be in the *third* person and in agreement with the relative: as, *du warst es, der es mir sagte*, thou wast the one, that told me &c.

best, ist glücklich, *he that* walks in the path of virtue, is happy; was gerecht ist, verdient Lob, *what, or that which* is right, deserves praise.

(5) Wer always begins a clause or sentence and never comes *after* the word which it represents; was may, or may *not* begin a clause, and may or may *not* come after its proper *antecedent*: thus, wer nicht hören will, der muß fühlen, he who will not hear, must feel; ich sage, was ich weiß, I say what I know; alles, was ich gesehen habe, all that I have seen; was gerecht ist, verdient Lob, what is right, deserves praise.

The form *weß* occurs in the compounds *weßwegen*, *weßhalb*, on which or what account.

(6) Welcher, -e, -es, is often employed as an indefinite adjective pronoun. See Lesson 39. 4.

§ 66. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(1) The interrogative pronouns, that is, those used in asking questions, are

wer, was? who? what?
welcher? who? which?
was für ein? what sort of a?

(2) They are the same in form, as the relatives; or rather the relatives themselves employed in a different way. Wer, was, and welcher, welche, welches, are declined just as when they are relatives, except that welcher, -e, -es, when interrogative never adopts the genitive of *der*.

(3) Wer and was (*who? what?*) can never be joined with a noun. They are used when the question is put in a manner general and indefinite. Welcher, welche, welches, on the other hand, has a more definite reference, and may be employed adjectively: thus, welcher Mann? which man? &c.

(4) Was für ein (literally, *what for a?*) is a form used in inquiring as to the *kind*, *quality* or *species* of a thing: as, was für ein Mann? what sort of a man? was für eine Frau? what sort of a woman? was für ein Kind? what kind of a child?

(5) The only part of was für ein, capable of inflection, is *ein*; which, when the thing referred to in the question, is *as*

pressed, takes the form of the indefinite article : when it is left *understood*, *ein* is inflected like an adjective of the Old form. The plural, in both cases, omits the article, and stands simply thus, *was für*.

(6) *Was für ein*, with a substantive.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|-----------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders.</i> |
| N. | <i>was für ein,</i> | <i>eine,</i> | <i>ein ;</i> | <i>was für, what sort of ?</i> |
| G. | <i>was für eines,</i> | <i>einer,</i> | <i>eines ;</i> | <i>was für, of what sort of ?</i> |
| D. | <i>was für einem,</i> | <i>einer,</i> | <i>einem ;</i> | <i>was für, to what sort of ?</i> |
| A. | <i>was für einen,</i> | <i>eine,</i> | <i>ein ;</i> | <i>was für, what sort of ?</i> |

(7) *Was für ein* without a substantive.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|-----------------------|---------------|----------------|------------------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>For all genders</i> |
| N. | <i>was für einer,</i> | <i>eine,</i> | <i>eines ;</i> | <i>was für</i> |
| G. | <i>was für eines,</i> | <i>einer,</i> | <i>eines ;</i> | <i>was für.</i> |
| D. | <i>was für einem,</i> | <i>einer,</i> | <i>einem ;</i> | <i>was für.</i> |
| A. | <i>was für einen,</i> | <i>eine,</i> | <i>eines ;</i> | <i>was für.</i> |

§ 67. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Observe further that *ein*, in *was für ein*, is sometimes omitted in the *singular*, especially before words denoting materials as, *was für Zeug*, what sort of stuff? *was für Wein*, what kind of wine?

(2) That *was für ein*, and also *welch* (that is, *welcher*, without the terminations of declension) are occasionally employed in expressions of surprise or wonder ; as, *was für ein Mann*, or, *welch ein Mann!* what a man!

(3) That *was* is sometimes used for *warum*: thus, *was schlägst du mich?* why strikest thou me?

§ 68. VERBS.

(1) A verb is that part of speech which defines the *condition* of a subject; that is, shows whether it *acts*, is *acted upon* or merely *exists*.

(2) In respect to *form*, verbs are either regular or irregular; simple or compound; all which will be more fully explained hereafter.

(3) In respect to *meaning*, verbs are active transitive, active intransitive, passive, neuter, reflexive, or impersonal. These terms have in German the same general signification which they have in English. Their application will, however, more largely appear in subsequent sections.

(4) The German, like the English verb, has its moods, tenses, numbers, persons and participles.

(5) There are *five* moods: viz: the Indicative, the Subjunctive, the Conditional *, the Imperative and the Infinitive.

(6) There are *six* tenses: viz: the Present, the Imperfect, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, the first Future and the second Future.

(7) These names (the names both of the moods and tenses) designate in German, just the same things as do the corresponding ones in English. For their general signification, see the paradigms on the pages following; for more particular explanation of their uses, see the Syntax.

§ 69. PARTICIPLES.

(1) There are *three* Participles: viz: the *Present*, which terminates in *end* and answers in signification to the English participle in *ing*; as, lob *end*, praising.

(2) The *Perfect*, which, besides prefixing in most cases the augment *ge* ends in verbs of the Old Form, in *en* or *n*, and in those of the New Form, in *et* or *t*; and has a meaning correspondent to our participle in *ed*; as, *getragen* (*ge*+*trag*+*en*) carried; *gelobet* (*ge*+*lob*+*et*) praised.

* This (the *Conditional*) is made up of the Imperfect Subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *werden*, (which see) and the Present and Perfect Infinitive of another verb. It is used to denote what is, also often denoted by the Subjunctive, (Imperfect and Pluperfect) namely, a *supposed condition* of things, i. e. *possibility* without *actuality*. By some it is treated as a distinct *mood*: by others, it is made to consist of two *tenses*: its *use* (which see more at large in the Syntax) is the same in both views.

(3) The *Future*, which is produced by prefixing the particle *zu* (*te*) to the form of the Present Participle, (*lobend*) thus, *zu lobend*, which means *to-be-praised*, that is *praiseworthy*.

(4) The Particle *Ge* mentioned above, as being generally prefixed to the perfect participle, was originally designed, it would seem, to indicate *completed* action. It is commonly accounted merely *euphonic*, or at most *intensive*. The instances in which it is altogether *omitted*, are these :

First : in the case of all verbs compounded with *inseparable* prefixes ; (See § 24.) as, *belehrt*, (not *gebelehrt*) informed :

Second : in the case of verbs from foreign languages, which make the infinitive in *iren* or *ieren* : as, *studirt*, (from *studiren*), studied ; instead of *gestudirt* :

Third : in the case of the verb *werden*, when joined as an auxiliary to another verb : as, *ich bin gelobt worden*, (not *geworden*) I have been praised.

§ 70. AUXILIARY VERBS.

(1) In German the auxiliary verbs are usually divided into two classes.

(2) THE FIRST CLASS consists of three verbs, without which no complete conjugation can be formed. They are *haben*, *to have*, *sein*, *to be*, and *werden*, *to become*. These verbs, though chiefly employed as auxiliaries, are often themselves in the condition of *principal* verbs. In that case, they aid one another in the formation of the compound tenses. A glance at the paradigms will show, how this is done.

(3) As auxiliaries, these three verbs enter into the composition of the compound tenses, active and passive, of all classes of verbs.

(4) *haben* is used in forming the perfect, pluperfect and second future tenses in the active voice : thus, from *loben*, *to praise*, we have

| | | |
|---------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Perf. | ich habe gelobt, | I have praised. |
| Plup. | ich hatte gelobt, | I had praised. |
| 2. Fut. | ich werde gelobt haben, | I shall have praised. |

(5) *Sein* is used in forming the perfect, pluperfect and second future tenses, both in the active and passive; thus, from *loben*, to praise and *wachsen*, to grow.

*Active.**Passive.*

| | |
|---|--|
| Perf. <i>ich bin gewachsen,</i> I have * grown. | <i>ich bin gelobt worden,</i> I have * been praised. |
| Plup. <i>ich war gewachsen,</i> I had grown. | <i>ich war gelobt worden,</i> I had been praised. |
| 2. Fut. <i>ich werde gewachsen sein,</i> I shall have grown. | <i>ich werde gelobt worden sein,</i> I shall have been praised. |

(6) *Werden* is used in forming the future tenses and the conditionals †: thus, from *loben*, to praise, we have

*Futures.**Conditionals.*

| | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>ich werde loben,</i> I shall praise. | <i>ich würde loben,</i> I would praise. |
| 2. <i>ich werde gelobt haben,</i> I shall have praised. | <i>ich würde gelobt haben,</i> I should have praised. |

§ 71. REMARKS ON THE USE OF *haben* AND *sein*.

(1) As the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses of verbs must be conjugated, sometimes with *haben* and sometimes with *sein*, it becomes important to know *when* to use the one and when the other. The determination of this question depends chiefly upon the *signification* of the main verb. The general rules are these:

(2) *haben* is to be used in conjugating all *active transitive verbs*, all *reflective verbs*, all *impersonal verbs*, all the auxiliaries

* It will be noticed here, that wherever, in the formation of these tenses, any part of *sein* occurs, it is *Englished* by the corresponding part of the verb *haben*: thus, *ich bin gewachsen*, I have grown, &c. This grows out of the necessity of suiting the translation to our language, which in these places requires the verb *have*.

† It is, also, employed with the perfect participle of a principal verb, to form the Passive voice; (See § 84). Note, also, above that *werde* and *würde* are rendered by their equivalents (*shall* and *should*) in the conjugation of the English verb.

of the second class (viz. *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *wollen*, *sollen*, *müssen* and *lassen*), and *many intransitives*.

(3) *Sein* is to be used in conjugating all *intransitives*, signifying a change of the condition of the subject; as, *gedeihen*, to prosper; *genesen*, to recover; *reifen*, to ripen; *schwinden*, to dwindle; *sterben*, to die; all those indicating motion towards or from a place; *eilen*, to hasten; *gehen*, to go; *reiten*, to ride; *sinken*, to sink; and, also, all verbs in the passive voice.

(4) Some verbs take, in the formation of these tenses, either *haben* or *sein*, according as they are employed in one sense or in another. This, however, will be best understood by practice in reading and speaking. The following are examples:

| | |
|--|--|
| Er ist in seinem neuen Wagen fortgefahren. | He has driven off in his new carriage. |
| Mein Bruder hat fortgefahren deutsch zu lesen. | My brother has proceeded to read German. |
| Das Wasser ist gefroren. | The water is (has) frozen. |
| Den armen Mann hat es in dem kalten Zimmer gefroren. | It has chilled the poor man in the cold room. |
| Die Thränen sind über die Wangen geronnen. | The tears have flowed over the cheeks. |
| Das Gefäß hat geronnen. | The vessel has leaked. |
| Das Schiff ist auf einen Felsen gestoßen. | The ship has struck upon a rock. |
| Das Volk hat den König vom Throne gestoßen. | The people have thrust the king from the throne. |
| Das Schiff ist ans Ufer getrieben. | The ship has been driven upon the shore. |
| Der Baum hat neue Zweige getrieben. | The tree has shot forth new branches. |

§ 72. PARADIGMS OF THE AUX

(1) Haben,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------|---|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich habe, | I have. | ich habe, | I may have. |
| | 2 | du habst, | thou hast. | du habest, | thou mayst have. |
| | 3 | er hat, | he has. | er habe, | he may have. |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir haben, | we have. | wir haben, | we may have. |
| | 2 | ihr habet, | you have. | ihr habet, | you may have. |
| | 3 | sie haben, | they have. | sie haben, | they may have. |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich hatte, | I had. | ich hätte, | I might have. |
| | 2 | du hättest, | thou hadst. | du hättest, | thou mightst have. |
| | 3 | er hatte, | he had. | er hätte, | he might have. |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir hätten, | we had. | wir hätten, | we might have. |
| | 2 | ihr hättet, | you had. | ihr hättet, | you might have. |
| | 3 | sie hätten, | they had. | sie hätten, | they might have. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have had. | ich habe | I may have had, |
| | 2 | du habest | thou hast had. | du habest | &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has had. | er habe | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir haben | we have had. | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have had. | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have had. | sie haben | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had had. | ich hätte | I might have had, |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst had. | du hättest | &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had had. | er hätte | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir hätten | we had had. | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had had. | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had had. | sie hätten | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall have. | ich werde | (if) I shall have, |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt have. | du werdest | &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will have. | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we shall have. | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will have. | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will have. | sie werden | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall have had. | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt have had. | du werdest | had &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will have had. | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we will have had. | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will have had. | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will have had. | sie werden | |

(2) *Sein,*

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------|---|----------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich bin, | I am. | ich sei, | I may be. |
| | 2 | du bist, | thou art. | du seiest, | thou mayst be. |
| | 3 | er ist, | he is. | er sei, | he may be. |
| | 1 | wir sind, | we are. | wir seien, | we may be. |
| | 2 | ihr seid, | you are. | ihr seiet, | you may be. |
| PLUR. | 3 | sie sind, | they are. | sie seien, | they may be. |
| | | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. |
| SING. | 1 | ich war, | I was. | ich wäre, | I might be. |
| | 2 | du warst, | thou wast. | du wärest, | thou mightst be. |
| | 3 | er war, | he was. | er wäre, | he might be. |
| | 1 | wir waren, | we were. | wir wären, | we might be. |
| | 2 | ihr wäret, | you were. | ihr wäret, | you might be. |
| PLUR. | 3 | sie waren, | they were. | sie wären, | they might be. |
| | | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. |
| SING. | 1 | ich bin | } gewesen, | ich sei | } I may have been, &c. |
| | 2 | du bist | | du seiest | |
| | 3 | er ist | | er sei | |
| | 1 | wir sind | | wir seien | |
| | 2 | ihr seid | | ihr seiet | |
| PLUR. | 3 | sie sind | sie seien | | |
| | | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. |
| SING. | 1 | ich war | } gewesen, | ich wäre | } I might have been &c. |
| | 2 | du warst | | du wärest | |
| | 3 | er war | | er wäre | |
| | 1 | wir waren | | wir wären | |
| | 2 | ihr wäret | | ihr wäret | |
| PLUR. | 3 | sie waren | sie wären | | |
| | | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | } sein, | ich werde | } (if) I shall be, &c |
| | 2 | du wirst | | du werdest | |
| | 3 | er wird | | er werde | |
| | 1 | wir werden | | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | | ihr werdet | |
| PLUR. | 3 | sie werden | sie werden | | |
| | | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | } sein, | ich werde | } (if) I should have been, &c. |
| | 2 | du wirst | | du werdest | |
| | 3 | er wird | | er werde | |
| | 1 | wir werden | | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | | ihr werdet | |
| PLUR. | 3 | sie werden | sie werden | | |

to be.

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|---|--|----------------------------------|
| | PRESENT TENSE. 1. <i>wanting</i> 2. sei du, be thou. 3. sei er, let him be. 1. seien wir, let us be. 2. seid ihr, be ye. 3. seien sie, let them be. | PRESENT TENSE. sein, to be. | PRESENT. seind, being. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gewesen sein, to have been. | PERFECT gewesen. |
| FIRST FUTURE. <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden </div> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">}</div> <div> sein, I should be, &c. </div> </div> | | FIRST FUTURE. sein werden, to be about to be. | |
| SECOND FUTURE. <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> ich würde tu würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden </div> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">}</div> <div> gewesen sein, I should have been, &c. </div> </div> | | | |

(3) Werden,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------|---|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde, | I become. | ich werde, | I may become. |
| | 2 | du wirst, | thou becomest. | du werdest, | thou mayst become. |
| | 3 | er wird, | he becomes. | er werde, | he may become. |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden, | we become. | wir werden, | we may become. |
| | 2 | ihr werdet, | you become. | ihr werdet, | you may become. |
| | 3 | sie werden, | they become. | sie werden, | they may become. |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich würde,* | I became. | ich würde, | I might become. |
| | 2 | du würdest, | thou becamest. | du würdest, | thou mightest become. |
| | 3 | er würde, | he became. | er würde, | he might become. |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir würden, | we became. | wir würden, | we might become. |
| | 2 | ihr würdet, | you became. | ihr würdet, | you might become. |
| | 3 | sie würden, | they became. | sie würden, | they might become. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich bin | } geworden, | ich sei | } I may have become, &c. |
| | 2 | du bist | | du seiest | |
| | 3 | er ist | | er sei | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir sind | } geworden, | wir seien | } geworden, |
| | 2 | ihr seid | | ihr seiet | |
| | 3 | sie sind | | sie seien | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich war | } gewesen, | ich wäre | } I might have become, &c. |
| | 2 | du warst | | du wärest | |
| | 3 | er war | | er wäre | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir waren | } gewesen, | wir wären | } gewesen, |
| | 2 | ihr wäret | | ihr wäret | |
| | 3 | sie waren | | sie wären | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | } werden, | ich werde | } (if) I shall become, &c. |
| | 2 | du wirst | | du werdest | |
| | 3 | er wird | | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | } werden, | wir werden | } werden, |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | | sie werden | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | } geworden sein, | ich werde | } (if) I shall have become, &c. |
| | 2 | du wirst | | du werdest | |
| | 3 | er wird | | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | } geworden sein, | wir werden | } geworden sein, |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | | sie werden | |

* Or warb, L. 46 3.

to become. -

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|---|--|
| | PRESENT TENSE. 1. <i>wanting.</i> 2. werde du, become thou. 3. werde er, let him become. 1. werden wir, let us become. 2. werdet ihr, become ye. 3. werden sie, let them become. | PRESENT TENSE. werden, to be- come. | PRESENT. werdend, becom- ing. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. geworden sein, to have become. | PERFECT. geworden, become |
| FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden werden, I should be- come, &c. | | FIRST FUTURE. werden werden, to be about to become. | |
| SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden geworden sein, I should have become, &c. | | | |

§ 73. SYNOPTICAL VIEW

OF

THE THREE TENSE AUXILIARIES

Sein, to be.

haben, to have.

werden, to become.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

*I am,*ich bin
du bist
er ist
wir sind
ihr seid
sie sind.*I have,*ich habe
du hast
er hat
wir haben
ihr habt or habt
sie haben.*I become.*ich werde
du wirst
er wird
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I was,*ich war
du warst (or warst)
er war
wir waren
ihr wart (or wart)
sie waren.*I had,*ich hatte
du hattest
er hatte
wir hatten
ihr hattet
sie hatten.*I became.*ich wurde
du wurdest
er wurde
wir wurden
ihr wurdet
sie wurden.

PERFECT TENSE.

*I have been,*ich bin
du bist
er ist
wir sind
ihr seid
sie sind } gewesen.*I have had,*ich habe
du hast
er hat
wir haben
ihr habet
sie haben } gehabt.*I have become.*ich bin
du bist
er ist
wir sind
ihr seid
sie sind } geworden or
worden.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*I had been,*ich war
du warst
er war
wir waren
ihr wart
sie waren } gewesen.*I had had,*ich hatte
du hattest
er hatte
wir hatten
ihr hattet
sie hatten } gehabt.*I had become.*ich war
du warst
er war
wir waren
ihr wart
sie waren } geworden or
worden.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall be,*ich werde
du wirst
er wird
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden } sein.*I shall have,*ich werde
du wirst
er wird
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden } haben.*I shall become.*ich werde
du wirst
er wird
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden } werden.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

I shall have been,

| | |
|------------|-----------------|
| ich werde | } gewesen sein. |
| du wirst | |
| er wird | |
| wir werden | |
| ihr werdet | |
| sie werden | |

I shall have had.

| | |
|------------|----------------|
| ich werde | } gehabt haben |
| du wirst | |
| er wird | |
| wir werden | |
| ihr werdet | |
| sie werden | |

I shall have become.

| | |
|------------|------------------|
| ich werde | } geworden sein. |
| du wirst | |
| er wird | |
| wir werden | |
| ihr werdet | |
| sie werden | |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I may be,

| |
|----------------------|
| ich sei |
| du seiest (or seist) |
| er sei |
| wir seien (or sein) |
| ihr seiet |
| sie seien (or sein.) |

I may have,

| |
|------------|
| ich habe |
| du habest |
| er habe |
| wir haben |
| ihr habet |
| sie haben. |

I may become.

| |
|-------------|
| ich werde |
| du werdest |
| er werde |
| wir werden |
| ihr werdet |
| sie werden. |

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I might be,

| |
|----------------------|
| ich wäre |
| du wärest (or wärst) |
| er wäre |
| wir wären |
| ihr wäret (or wärt) |
| sie wären. |

I might have,

| |
|-------------|
| ich hätte |
| du hättest |
| er hätte |
| wir hätten |
| ihr hättet |
| sie hätten. |

I might become.

| |
|-------------|
| ich würde |
| du würdest |
| er würde |
| wir würden |
| ihr würdet |
| sie würden. |

PERFECT TENSE.

I may have been,

| | |
|-----------|------------|
| ich sei | } gewesen. |
| du seiest | |
| er sei | |
| wir seien | |
| ihr seiet | |
| sie seien | |

I may have had,

| | |
|-----------|-----------|
| ich habe | } gehabt. |
| du habest | |
| er habe | |
| wir haben | |
| ihr habet | |
| sie haben | |

I may have become,

| | |
|-----------|------------------------|
| ich sei | } geworden, or worden. |
| du seiest | |
| er sei | |
| wir seien | |
| ihr seiet | |
| sie seien | |

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I might have been

| | |
|-----------|------------|
| ich wäre | } gewesen. |
| du wärest | |
| er wäre | |
| wir wären | |
| ihr wäret | |
| sie wären | |

I might have had,

| | |
|------------|-----------|
| ich hätte | } gehabt. |
| du hättest | |
| er hätte | |
| wir hätten | |
| ihr hättet | |
| sie hätten | |

I might have become.

| | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| ich wäre | } geworden, (worden.) |
| du wärest | |
| er wäre | |
| wir wären | |
| ihr wäret | |
| sie wären | |

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

(If) I shall be

| | |
|------------|---------|
| ich werde | } sein. |
| du werdest | |
| er werde | |
| wir werden | |
| ihr werdet | |
| sie werden | |

(If) I shall have,

| | |
|------------|----------|
| ich werde | } haben. |
| du werdest | |
| er werde | |
| wir werden | |
| ihr werdet | |
| sie werden | |

(If) I shall become.

| | |
|-------------|----------|
| ich werde | } werden |
| du werdest | |
| er werde | |
| wir werden | |
| ihr werdet | |
| sie werden. | |

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

(If) I shall have been,
 ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

} gewesen
 sein.

(If) I shall have had,
 ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

} gehabt
 haben.

(If) I shall have become,
 ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

} geworden.
 (worden)
 sein.

CONDITIONAL.

FIRST CONDITIONAL

I should be,
 ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

} sein.

I should have,
 ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

} haben.

I should become.
 ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

} werden.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

I should have been,
 ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

} gewesen
 sein.

I should have had,
 ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

} gehabt ha-
 ben.

I should have become.
 ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

} geworden
 (worden)
 sein.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Be thou,
wanting,
 sei du
 sei, er, sie or es
 seien wir
 seid ihr
 seien sie.

Have thou,
wanting,
 habe du
 habe er, sie or es
 haben wir
 habet ihr
 haben sie.

Become thou.
wanting.
 werde du
 werde er, sie or es
 werden wir
 werdet ihr
 werden sie.

INFINITIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE.

to be,
 sein.

to have,
 haben.

to become.
 werden.

PERFECT TENSE.

to have been,
 gewesen sein.

to have had,
 gehabt haben.

to have become.
 geworden sein.

FUTURE TENSE.

to be about to be,
 sein werden.

to be about to have,
 haben werden.

to be about to become
 werden werden.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

being
seind.having,
habend.becoming,
werbend.

PERFECT.

been,
gewesen.had,
gehabt.become,
geworden.

§ 74. AUXILIARIES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

(1) The second Class of auxiliaries embraces the following:

| |
|--|
| Ich mag, I am allowed; (<i>may</i> ;) Ich darf, I am permitted; I dare. |
| Ich will, I will; (<i>purpose</i> ;) Ich muß, I am obliged; (<i>must</i> .) |
| Ich soll, I am obliged; (<i>shall</i> ;) Ich lasse, I let. |
| Ich kann, I am able; (<i>can</i> ;) |

(2) These verbs are, for the most part, very irregular in conjugation, and serve simply the purpose of modifying with the ideas of *liberty*, *possibility*, or *necessity*, other verbs; which latter are in that case required to be in the infinitive mood; thus er mag lachen, he *may* (has permission to) laugh; ich kann schreiben, I *can* (am able to) write; where lachen and schreiben are both in the infinitive, governed respectively by mag and kann.

(3) In the perfect and pluperfect tenses, however, the past participle of these verbs is used only, when the principal verb is not expressed. Its place is supplied, in such cases, by the infinitive, the translation of course being the same in either case, as:

Ich habe ihn sehen können (instead of gekonnt);

I have been able to see him.

Er hat warten müssen (instead of gemußt);

he was obliged to wait.

Man hätte über ihn lachen mögen (instead of gemocht);

one might have laughed at him.

Er hat dem Befehle nicht gehorchen wollen (instead of gewollt);

he has not been willing to obey the command.

Ich habe sein Geheimniß wissen dürfen (instead of geburft);

I have been allowed to know his secret.

Sie hätte es thun sollen (instead of gesollt);

she ought to have done it.

Sie haben ihn gehen lassen (instead of *gelaufen*) ;
they have suffered him to go.

For a full display of the forms of these verbs* and for further remarks on their uses, see the Section on the *Mixed* Conjugation § 83.

§ 75. CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

(1) There are two conjugations of verbs: the *Old* and the *New*. The difference between them lies mainly in the mode of forming the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle.

(2) The verbs of the Old form are commonly denominated "*Irregular Verbs*." But, as nearly all the primitive verbs in the language are conjugated in this way, and few, except the derivative verbs (now the larger class), ever assume the other form, it is the custom of the best German grammarians to adopt the classification which we have given. This will occasion no confusion or inconvenience to those who prefer the common classification: since it is only necessary to remember that the *things* are the same, though the *names* have been changed.

(3) In order to afford the ready means of comparing the *terminal* differences between the Old and the New forms of conjugation, we subjoin the following tabular view of the *simple tenses and participles*, in which alone differences of this kind can exist.

(4) In the compound tenses, the *auxiliary* alone being subjected to terminal variation, the mode of inflecting these tenses becomes of course perfectly uniform in all classes of verbs. Hence to secure a complete acquaintance with the forms of the compound tenses, little more is necessary than a bare inspection of the *paradigms*.

* Except *lassen* (*to let*) which is not there, because it does not belong to the Mixed conjugation. This verb is used either in *permitting* or *commanding*: as, *ich habe ihn gehen lassen*, I have *allowed* him to go; *ich habe ihn kommen lassen*, I have *ordered* him to come, which two meanings are near akin. When used with a reciprocal pronoun, it has its equivalent in such phrases as, *is to, ought to, may*; as, *das läßt sich nicht thun* that is not to be done; literally, *does not allow itself* to be done. The infinitive active *after lassen*, must often be translated passively.

§ 76. TERMINATIONS OF THE SIMPLE TENSES.

Old Conjugation.

New Conjugation.

| INDICATIVE. | | | | SUBJUNC. | | | | INDICATIVE. | | | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | | | |
|---------------------|--|---------------|--|---------------------|--|---------------|--|---------------------|--|---------------|--|---------------------|--|---------------|--|
| NUMB. & PERS. | | TENSE-SIGN. | | ROOT. | | TENSE-SIGN. | | NUMB. & PERS. | | TENSE-SIGN. | | ROOT. | | TENSE-SIGN. | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Imperfect. | | | | Imperfect. | | | | Imperfect. | | | | Imperfect. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Imperative. | | | | Imperative. | | | | Imperative. | | | | Imperative. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Infinitive. | | | | Infinitive. | | | | Infinitive. | | | | Infinitive. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |
| Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | | Participles. | | | |
| PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | | PRES. ENDING. | |
| wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | | wanting. | |
| e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | | e | |
| ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | | ct, t | |
| n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | | n | |

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PRECEDING TABLE.

(1) OBSERVE, in the table above, that the terminations in all places, except the Imperfect of the New form, are to be added *directly* to the root. In the place excepted (*Imperfect of the New form*), there comes between the root and the personal ending, a sort of *tense-sign* (et or t), which is not necessary to verbs of the Old form: because in *them* the Imperfect is made by means of a change in the radical vowel.

(2) It may, also, be noticed that a characteristic difference in *form*, between the Indicative and the Subjunctive (3d person sing.) is that the former ends in et or t, the latter always in e; and that the *personal ending* in the first and third person sing. of the Imperfect of the *Old form*, is wholly omitted.

(3) It may further be observed, that the e in the terminations eft and et, of the Indicative, is retained or omitted just according to what is demanded by euphony. In the *Subjunctive*, for the most part, the full termination is preserved.

(4) For the same reason, also, that is, for the sake of euphony, when the root of a verb ends in el or et, the vowel e of any termination beginning with that letter, is commonly omitted; as, *hāmern* (not *hāmmeren*), to hammer; *sammeln* (not *sammelēn*), to collect. Sometimes, however, the e of the *root* is rejected: as, *lā sammle* (not *sammēle*), I collect.

§ 77. VERBS OF THE OLD CONJUGATION
(commonly called irregular verbs).

(1) In the Old Conjugation, the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle are distinguished from the Present, chiefly by a change of the radical vowels. Thus, in some verbs, a different radical vowel is found in each of these three parts:

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Perfect Participle.</i> |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Bitten, beg. | Bat, * begged. | Gebeten, begged. |
| Helfen, help. | Half, helped. | Geholfen, helped. |
| Einuen, reflect. | Eann, reflected. | Gefonnen, reflected. |
| Trinken, drink. | Tranf, drank. | Getrunken, drunk. |

* When in the course of the changes noted in the text above, a long vowel or diphthong becomes *short*, the final consonant of the root is doubled, as:

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Reiten, to ride. | Ritt, rode. | Geritten, ridden. |
| Leiden, to suffer. | Litt, suffered. | Gelitten, suffered. |

In the case of *Leiden*, note also, that b is changed into its cognate t.

(2) In some the vowel or diphthong in the Imperfect and the Participle, is the same, but is different from that in the present : as,

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Perfect Participle.</i> |
|-------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Glänzen, glimmer. | Glomm, glimmered. | Geglommen, glimmered. |
| Heben, lift. | hob, lifted. | Gehoben, lifted. |
| Klimmen, climb. | Klomm, climbed. | Geflommen, climbed. |
| Küren (führen), choose. | Kor, chose. | Geforen, chosen. |
| Leiden, suffer. | Litt, * suffered. | Gelitten, suffered. |
| Saugen, suck. | Sog, sucked. | Gesogen, sucked. |
| Schieben, shove. | Schob, shoved. | Geschoben, shoved. |
| Schleichen, sneak. | Schlich, sneaked. | Geschlichen, sneaked. |
| Schnauben, snort. | Schnob, snorted. | Geschnoben, snorted. |
| Schreiben, write. | Schrieb, wrote. | Geschrieben, written. |
| Stieben, scatter. | Stob, scattered. | Gestoben, scattered. |
| Treiben, drive. | Trieb, drove. | Getrieben, driven. |
| Trügen, betray. | Trog, betrayed. | Getrogen, betrayed. |
| Weben, weave. | Wob, wove. | Gewoben, woven. |

(3) In others, the vowel or diphthong of the Present is changed in the Imperfect, but resumed in the participle : as,

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Perfect Participle.</i> |
|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Blasen, blow, (sound) | Blies, blew. | Gebblasen, blown. |
| Fallen, fall. | Fiel, fell. | Gefallen, fallen. |
| Fangen, catch. | Fing, caught. | Gefangen, caught. |
| Geben, give. | Gab, gave. | Gegeben, given. |
| Hangen, hang. | hing, hung. | Gehangen, hung. |
| Kommen, come. | Kam, came. | Gefommen, come. |
| Laufen, run. | Lief, ran. | Gelaufen, run. |
| Schaffen, create. | Schuf, created. | Geschaffen, created. |
| Schlagen, beat. | Schlug, beat. | Geschlagen, beaten. |
| Sehen, see. | Sah, saw. | Gesehen, seen. |
| Stoßen, push. | Stieß, pushed. | Gestoßen, pushed. |
| Treten, tread. | Trat, trod. | Getreten, trodden. |

When, on the other hand, a short vowel is thus made long, the second of two radical consonants is omitted : as,

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Bitten, to beg ; | Bat, begged ; | Gebeten, begged. |
| Kommen, to come ; | Kam, came ; | Gefommen, come |

* See th : Note above

(4) Besides the vowel changes indicated above, verbs of the ancient Conjugation have the following characteristics:

a. The Perfect part ciple ends in *e n* or *n*, and is thereby distinguished from that of the New Form, which terminates in *e t*, or *t*, thus:

| <i>Old Form.</i> | <i>New Form.</i> |
|---|--|
| Geholf <u>e n</u> , helped; from Helf <u>e n</u> . | Gelob <u>e t</u> (gelobt), praised; from Lob <u>e n</u> . |
| Gefall <u>e n</u> , fallen; from Fall <u>e n</u> . | Gelieb <u>e t</u> (geliebt), loved; from Lieben. |
| Getrag <u>e n</u> , borne; from Tragen. | Gelab <u>e t</u> (gelabt), quickened; from Lab <u>e n</u> . |
| Gebot <u>e n</u> , bid ^{en} ; from Bieten. | Getausch <u>e t</u> (getauscht), exchanged; from Tausch <u>e n</u> . |

b. Those having *a* in the *first* person singular of the Present Indicative, assume the Umlaut in the *second* and *third* persons; thus,

INDICATIVE.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich fange, I catch,
 du fängst, thou catchest,
 er fängt, he catches,
 wir fangen, we catch,
 ihr fangt, you catch,
 sie fangen, they catch,

ich schlage, I strike.
 du schlagst, thou strikest.
 er schlagt, he strikes.
 wir schlagen, we strike.
 ihr schlagt, you strike.
 sie schlagen, they strike.

c. Those having *e* (long) in the *first* person singular of the Present Indicative, take, in the *second* and *third* persons, *ie*; those, in like manner, having *e* (short,) take in the same places, the vowel *i*; and in both instances, the Imperative (*second person singular*) adopts the vowel-form of the second person of the Indicative, thus:

INDICATIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.**wanting.*

ich lese, I read,
 du liesst, thou readst,
 er liest, he reads,

lies du (for liese).^{*}
 lese er, let him read. ^{*}

* The verbs that thus adopt the vowel-form of the 2. pers. of the Indic. lose also the characteristic *e* final: giving, as above, lies, for liese; hilf for hilfe, &c. It should be noted, further, that the unaccented *e* final, is, in other instances, also sometimes omitted.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

wir lesen, we read,
ihr lest, you read,
sie lesen, they read.

lesen wir, let us read.
lest ihr, read ye or you.
lesen sie, let them read.

ich helfe, I help,
du hilfst, thou helpst,
er hilft, he helps,
wir helfen, we help,
ihr helfet, you help,
sie helfen, they help.

wanting,
hilf du (for hilfe),* help thou.
helfe er, let him help.
helfen wir, let us help.
helfet ihr, help ye or you.
helfen sie, let them help.

d. The final *t*, of the *first* and *third* persons singular of the Imperfect Indicative, is always omitted, and in this tense the radical vowel, if it be capable of it assumes the Umlaut in the Subjunctive thus :

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

ich sprach, (for sprache,) I spoke,
du sprachst, thou didst speak,
er sprach, (for sprache,) he spoke,
wir sprachen, we spoke,
ihr sprachtet, you spoke,
sie sprachen, they spoke,

ich spräche, I might speak.
du sprächest, thou mightst speak.
er spräche, he might speak.
wir sprächen, we might speak.
ihr sprächet, you might speak.
sie sprächen, they might speak.

ich schlug, I struck,
du schlugst, thou didst strike,
er schlug, he struck,
wir schlugen, we struck,
ihr schluget, you struck,
sie schlugen, they struck,

ich schüge, I might strike.
du schügest, thou mightst strike.
er schüge, he might strike.
wir schügen, we might strike.
ihr schüget, you might strike.
sie schügen, they might strike.

* See Note page 342.

§ 78. PARADIGM OF A

Schlagen,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|---|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | ich schlage, | I strike. | ich schlage, | I may strike. |
| | 2 | du schlägst | thou strikest. | du schlägst, | thou mayst strike |
| | 3 | er schlägt, | he strikes. | er schlage, | he may strike. |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | wir schlagen, | we strike. | wir schlagen, | we may strike. |
| | 2 | ihr schlaget, | you strike. | ihr schlaget, | you may strike. |
| | 3 | sie schlagen, | they strike. | sie schlagen, | they may strike. |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | ich schlug, | I struck. | ich schüge, | I might strike. |
| | 2 | du schlugst, | thou didst strike. | du schügest, | thou mightst strike. |
| | 3 | er schlug, | he struck. | er schüge, | he might strike. |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | wir schlugen, | we struck. | wir schügen, | we might strike. |
| | 2 | ihr schluget, | you struck. | ihr schüget, | you might strike. |
| | 3 | sie schlugen, | they struck. | sie schügen, | they might strike. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have struck, |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | struck, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall strike, |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du werdest | thou wilt | du werdest | struck, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| FLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |

VERB OF THE OLD FORM.

to strike.

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|---|--|
| | PRESENT TENSE. 1. <i>wanting.</i> 2. schlage du, strike thou. 3. schlage er, let him strike. 1. schlagen wir, let us strike. 2. schlaget ihr, strike ye. 3. schlagen sie, let them strike. | PRESENT TENSE. schlagen, to strike. | PRESENT. schlagend, striking. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. geschlagen haben, to have struck. | PERFECT geschlagen struck. |
| FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } schlagen, I should strike, &c. | FIRST FUTURE. schlagen werden, to be about to strike. | |
| SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } ge-en haben. I should have struck, &c. | | |

(1) ALPHABETICAL LIST OF

*(commonly called*NOTE that in the following list many *compound* forms are not set down

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|---|--|------------------------|
| Baden <i>a</i>), to bask, | ich badest, du badest, er badet, | ich bad |
| Bedingen <i>b</i>), to bargain, | ich bedinge, &c. | ich bedung |
| Bedürfen, to need, | ich bedarf, du bedarfst, er bedarf; wir bedürfen, &c. | ich bedürfte |
| Befehlen, to command, | ich befehle, du befehlst, er befehlt. | ich befehl |
| Befleissen (sich) <i>c</i>), to apply one's self, | ich befeisse, &c. | ich befliss |
| Beginnen <i>d</i>), to begin, | ich beginne, &c. | ich begann |
| Bissen, to bite, | ich beiße, du beißest, er beißt, | ich biss |
| Befleimmen <i>e</i>), to pinch, press (by anxiety), | ich beflimme, &c. | ich beflimmte |
| Bergen, to conceal, | ich berge, du birgst, er birgt | ich barg |
| Bersten, to burst, | ich berste, &c. | ich brach or barst |
| Befinnen (sich), to think of, | ich besinne, &c. | ich besann |
| Besitzen, to possess, | ich besitze, &c. | ich besaß |
| Betrügen, to deceive, | ich betrüge, &c. | ich betrog |
| Bewegen <i>f</i>), to induce, move, | ich bewege, &c. | ich bewog |
| Biegen, to bend, | ich biege, &c. | ich bog |
| Bieten <i>g</i>), to offer, to bid, | ich biete, &c. | ich bot |
| Binden, to bind, | ich binde, &c. | ich band |
| Bitten, to entreat, to beg, | ich bitte, &c. | ich bat |
| Blasen, to blow, | ich blase, du blästest, er bläst | ich blies |
| Bleiben, to remain, | ich bleibe, &c. | ich blieb |
| Bleichen <i>h</i>), to fade, | ich bleiche, &c. | ich blieh |
| Braten, to roast, | ich brate, du bratest or brätst, er bratet or brät | ich briet |
| Brachen, to break, | ich breche, du brichst, er bricht | ich brach |
| Brennen <i>i</i>), to burn, | ich brenne, &c. | ich brannte |
| Bringen, to bring, | ich bringe, &c. | ich brachte |
| Denken, to think, | ich denke, &c. | ich dachte |
| Dingen <i>k</i>), to bargain | ich dinge, &c. | ich dungs |
| Dreschen, to thresh, | ich dresche, du drischest, er drischt | ich drach or drosch |
| Dringen <i>l</i>), to press, to urge, | ich dringe, &c. | ich drang |
| Dürfen, to be able, | ich darf, du darfst, er darf; wir dürfen, &c. | ich durfte |
| Empfangen, to receive, | ich empfangе, du empfängst, er empfangt | ich empfing |
| Empfehlen, to recommend, | ich empfehle, du empfehlst, er empfiehl | ich empfahl |
| Empfinden, to feel, | ich empfinde, &c. | ich empfand |
| Entlaufen, to escape, | ich entlaufe, &c. | ich entran |
| Entschlafen, to fall asleep, | ich entschlafe, &c. | ich entschlief |

VERBS OF THE OLD FORM

*irregular verbs).*In such case, the student has only to look for the verb in its *simple form*.

| IMP. SUBJ. | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| ich bûe | backe | gebacken. | a) Regular when active; as. <i>er backte Brod; das Brod buk.</i> |
| ich bedünge | bedinge | bedungen. | b) Regular when it means, to add a condition, to modify. |
| ich bedürfte | | bedurft. | Bedingt, conditional, is regular. |
| ich befehle | befiehl | befohlen. | c) Befiehligen (sich), to apply one's self, is regular. |
| ich befiße | besieße | besessen. | d) In the Imperf. subj. <i>begünne</i> is also used. |
| ich begünne | beginne | begonnen. | e) <i>Befleimmt</i> is not frequently used, and is employed, only in the sense of compressed |
| ich biße | beiß or beiße | gebissen. | |
| ich beklemmte | beklemme | bekommen or beklemmt. | |
| ich bürge | birg | geborgen. | |
| ich bürkte | berste or birst | geborsten. | |
| ich besünne | besinne | besonnen. | |
| ich besäße | besitze | beseßen. | |
| ich betrüge | betrüge | betrogen. | f) Irregular when it means, to induce; regular when it means, to move a <i>body</i> or affect the <i>sensibilities</i> . |
| ich bewöge | bewege | bewogen. | g) <i>Beutst</i> and <i>beut</i> , in the present, are poetical. |
| ich böge | biege | gebogen. | |
| ich biete | biere | gebieten. | |
| ich binde | binde | gebunden. | |
| ich bitte | bitte | gebeten. | |
| ich bläse | blase | geblasen. | |
| ich bliebe | bleibe or bleib | geblieben. | |
| ich bliehe | bleiche | gebliehen. | h) <i>Bleichen</i> , to bleach in the sun, active, is regular. |
| ich briete | brate | gebraten. | |
| ich brähe | brich | gebrochen. | |
| ich brennete | brenne | gebrannt. | i) Often regular when active: <i>Ich brenn' e Holz, weil es besser braun't als Loh.</i> |
| ich brächte | bringe | gebracht. | |
| ich dächte | denke | gedacht. | |
| ich dünge | dünge | gedungen. | k) <i>Dingte</i> is sometimes used in the imperfect, in the sense of hire. |
| ich drähe or drösch | drisch | gedroschen. | |
| ich dränge | bringe | gedrungen. | l) For <i>drang</i> , <i>drung</i> was formerly in use. |
| ich dürste | — | gedurft. | |
| ich empfinde | empfang | empfangen. | |
| ich empföhle | empfehl | empfohlen. | |
| ich empfände | empfinde | empfunten. | |
| ich entränne | entwinne | entconnen. | |
| ich entschlefe | entschlefe or entschlaf | entschlafen | |

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|--|---|---|
| Entsprechen, to answer, Erblicken m), to turn pale, Erstieren, to freeze, Ergreifen, to seize, to catch, Erteilen n), to select, | ich entspreche, ic. ich erblicke, ic. ich erstiere, ic. ich ergreife, ic. ich ertheile, ic. | ich entsprach ich erblick ich erstar ich ergriß ich ertheilte |
| Erführen o), to choose, | ich erführe (erküre), ic. | ich erforhe (erfor) |
| Erlöschen p), to extinguish, Ersaufen, to be drowned, Erschallen, to resound, Erscheinen, to appear, Erschrecken q), to be frightened, | ich erlauche, du ersäufest, er ersäuft ich erschalle, ic. ich erscheine, ic. ich erspreche, du erschrickst, er erschrickt | ich erlosch ich erscholl ich erschien ich erschrak |
| Ertrinken, to be drowned, Erwägen r), to consider, Essen, to eat, | ich ertrinke, ic. ich erwäge, ic. ich esse, du issest, er isset or ißt | ich ertran ich erwog ich aß |
| Fahen s), (obsolete,) to catch. | ich fahe, du fahest, er fahet | — |
| Fahren t), to drive a carriage, Fallen, to fall, | ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt ich falle, du fällst, er fällt | ich fuhr ich fiel |
| Falten u), to fold | ich falte, ic. | ich faltete |
| Fangen v), to catch, Fechten, to fight, Finden, to find, Fliehen, to twist, Fliegen w), to fly, | ich fange, du fängst, er fängt ich fechte, du fichtst, er sichtigt ich finde, ic. ich flechte, du flichtst, er flieht ich fliege, du fliegst, er fliegt | ich fing ich focht ich fand ich flocht ich flog |
| Fliehen x), to flee, | ich fliehe, ic. | ich floh |
| Fließen y), to flow, Fragen, to ask, Freßen, to devour, Frieren, to freeze, | ich fließe, ic. ich frage, du fragst, er fragt ich freße, du frißest or frisst ich friere, ic. | ich floss ich frug ich fraß ich froz |
| Gähren z), to ferment, Gebären, to bring forth, | ich gähre, ic. ich gebäre, du gebärst (gebierst) er gebärt (gebirt) | ich gahr ich gebar |
| Geben a), to give, | ich gebe, du gibst, er gibt | ich gab |
| Gebieten b), to command. Gedeihen c), to prosper, Gefallen, to please, | ich gebiete, ic. ich gebethe, ic. ich gefalle, du gefällst, er gefällt | ich gebot ich gedieh ich gefiel |
| Gehen d), to go, Gelingen, to succeed, Gelten e), to be worth, valid Geneßen, to recover, | ich gehe, ic. es gelingt ich gelte, du gillst, er gilt ich geneße, ic. | ich ging es gelang ich galt ich genas |

| IMP. DUU. | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|--|--|--|--|
| ich entspräche ich erblicke ich erfröhe ich ergreife ich erleihe | entsprich erbleibe erfröhe ergreife oder greif erleihe | entsprochen. erblickt. erfroren. ergreifen. erlesen. | m) Derived from <i>bleichen</i> , to whiten, as in the sun, which is regular. n) It is used in sublime style and in poetry. |
| ich erführe (erführe) | erführe (erführe) | erföhren (erföhren) | o) This verb is very seldom used. |
| ich erschöpfe ich erschölle ich erschiene ich erschreke | ersaube erschalle erschiene erschreck | erschöpfen. erschollen. erschienen. erschrocken. | p) Like <i>verlöschen</i> and <i>auslöschen</i> , irregular only when intransitive. <i>Löschen</i> is always transitive and regular. |
| ich ertränke ich erwäge ich esse | ertrink erwäge iß | ertrunken. erwogen. geessen. | q) Irregular always as an intransitive verb, but regular when transitive. r) More often used as a regular verb. |
| — | fahre | gefahren. | s) This poetical word is rarely used, and in the imperfect not at all. |
| ich führe ich fiele | fahre falle | gefahren. gefallen. | t) All the compounds of <i>fahren</i> are irregular except <i>willfahren</i> . |
| ich fälschte | falte | gefalten. | u) Irregular only in the participle now, for which <i>gefaltet</i> is often used. |
| ich fange ich fächte ich fände ich fächte ich flege | fange ficht finde ficht fliege | gefangen. gefächten. gefunden. gefächten. gefliegen. | v) The forms <i>fieng</i> and <i>fienge</i> are obsolete. So also <i>empfieng</i> and <i>empfienge</i> . |
| ich flöhe | fliehe or flieh | geflohen. | w) <i>Fliegt</i> and <i>fliegt</i> in the present, and <i>flieg</i> in the imperative are forms used only in poetry. |
| ich flöhe ich früge ich fröhe ich fröhe | fliehe frage fris friere | geflohen. gerragt. gefressen. gefroren. | x) <i>Fliechst</i> , <i>fliechst</i> and <i>fliechst</i> , poetical. y) <i>Fliehest</i> , <i>fliehest</i> and <i>fliehest</i> , poetical. |
| ich göhre ich gebäre (ge- bäre) | gähre gebäre (gebiet) | gegöhren geboren. | z) Sometimes regular, <i>gährte</i> . |
| ich gäbe | gib | gegeben. | a) Some writers prefer <i>giebst</i> , <i>giebt</i> , <i>gib</i> , to <i>gibst</i> , <i>gibt</i> , <i>gib</i> . |
| ich geböte ich gediehe ich gefiele | gebiete gedeih gefalle | gebieten. gediehen. gefallen. | b) <i>Gebienst</i> , <i>gebienst</i> , poetical. c) <i>Gediegen</i> is but a strengthened adjective form of <i>no</i> past participle. |
| ich ginge es gelänge ich gälte ich genesse | gehe or geh gelänge gilt genesse | gegangen. gelungen. gegolten. genesen. | d) <i>Gieng</i> for <i>ging</i> is antiquated. e) Formerly <i>golt</i> , <i>gölte</i> , were used in the imperf. indic. and subj. |

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|---|---|--|
| Genießen <i>f</i>), to enjoy, Gerathen, to hit upon, Geschehen, to happen | ich genieße, 1c. ich gerathe, du geräthst, er geräth es geschieht | ich genosß ich gerieth es geschah, geschah |
| Gewinnen, to gain, to win, | ich gewinne, 1c. | ich gewann |
| Gießen <i>g</i>), to pour, | ich gieße, 1c. | ich goß |
| Gleichen <i>h</i>), to resemble, | ich gleiche, 1c. | ich glich |
| Gleiten <i>d</i>), to glide, | ich gleite, 1c. | ich glitt |
| Glimmen <i>k</i>), to shine Graben, to dig, Greifen, to seize, | ich glimme, 1c. ich grabe, du gräbst, er gräbt ich greife, 1c. | ich glomm ich grub ich griff |
| haben <i>h</i>), to have, halten, to hold, hängen <i>m</i>), to hang, | ich habe, du hast, er hat ich halte, du hältst, er hält ich hänge, du hängst, er hängt | ich hatte ich hielt ich hing |
| hauen <i>n</i>), to hew, heben, to heave, heissen, to be named, helfen, to help, | ich hause, 1c. ich hebe, 1c. ich heiße, du heissest, er heisst ich helfe, du hilfst, er hilft | ich hieb ich hob or hup ich hieß ich half |
| heissen <i>o</i>), to chide, kennen, to know, kleben, to cleave, klimmen <i>p</i>), to climb klingen, to sound, kneifen, or kneipen <i>q</i>), to pinch, kommen, to come, | ich heisse, 1c. ich kenne, 1c. ich kleebe, 1c. ich klimme, 1c. ich klinge, 1c. ich kneipe, or kneipe, 1c. | ich kiff ich kannte ich floss ich flomm ich klang ich kniff or knip |
| können, to be able, kriechen <i>r</i>), to creep | ich komme, du kommst, er kommt, or du kömmt, er kömmt ich kann, du kannst, er kann ich kriech, 1c. | ich kam ich konnte ich kroch |
| kühen <i>s</i>), to choose | ich kühe, 1c. | ich kühr |
| laden, to load, | ich lade, du ladest or ladst, er lädet or lädt | ich lud |
| lassen <i>t</i>), to let, laufen, to run, leiden <i>u</i>), to suffer, leihen, to lend, lesen, to read, liegen, to lie down, lügen <i>z</i> , to lie, | ich lasse, du lässest, er lästet (läßt), ich laufe, du läuffst, er läuft ich leide, 1c. ich leihe, 1c. ich lese, du liest, er liest (liest), ich liege, 1c. ich lüge, 1c. | ich ließ ich lief ich litt ich lieh ich las ich lag ich log |

| IMP. SUBJ. | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|--|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| ich genöſſe ich geriethe es geſchehe | genieße gerathe geſchehe | genoffen. gerathen. geſchehen. | f) Genuß, genußt, and imperative genuß, poetical, seldom used. |
| ich gewänne (ge- wönne) | gewinne | gewonnen. | |
| ich göſſe | gieße | gegoffen. | g) Genuß, genußt, and imperative genuß. See genußen. |
| ich gleiche | gleiche | geglichen. | h) Regular as an active verb, to make similar, to compare. Vergleich, although active is irregular. |
| ich glitte | gleite | geglichen. | i) Gleiten and begleiten are not derived from gleiten, but from leiten, and therefore regular |
| ich glömmte | glimme | geglimmen. | k) Now more frequently regular |
| ich gräbe | grabe | gegraben. | |
| ich griffe | greife | gegriffen. | |
| ich hätte | habe | gehabt. | l) Handhaben is regular. |
| ich hielte | halte | gehalten. | |
| ich hänge | hänge | gehangen. | m) Hieng, hänge are old forms. This verb must not be mistaken for hängen, to suspend, which is active and regular. |
| ich hiebe | hau or hau | gehauen. | n) Haute (regular) is used when cutting wood, carving stone, &c., are meant. |
| ich hobbe | hebe | gehoben. | |
| ich hieße | heiße or heiße | geheißen. | |
| ich hülfte or hülfte | hilf | geholfen. | |
| ich kiffe | keiße or keiße | gekiffen. | o) This verb is sometimes used as a regular verb. |
| ich kenne | kenne | gekannt. | |
| ich klobbe | kliebe | geklieben. | |
| ich klobmte | klimme | geklommen. | p) Sometimes regular, klimmte. |
| ich klinge | klänge | geklungen. | |
| ich kniffe or knippe | kniffe or knippe | gekniffen or geknippen. | q) Knippe, geknippt is more frequently used. |
| ich kame | komm | gekommen. | |
| ich kunte | | gekonnt. | |
| ich krodde | krieche or kriede | gekrochen. | r) Krensch, krensch, krensch, obsolete. Only poetically used. |
| ich kühre | kühre | geköhren. | s) Köhren is entirely antiquated, wählen having taken its place. |
| ich kübe | lade | geladen. | |
| ich ließe | laße or laß | gelassen. | t) Veranlassen is regular. |
| ich liefte | laufe or lauf | gelaufen. | |
| ich litte | leide | gelitten. | |
| ich liebte | leibe | gelieben. | |
| ich läse | lies | gelesen. | |
| ich läge | liege | gelegen. | |
| ich läge | läge | gelogen. | u) Verleiden, to disgust is regular |

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|--------------------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| Wählen w), to grind, | ich wähle, du wählst (wählst), er wählt (wählt) | ich wähle (wähl) |
| Weiden , to avoid. | ich weide, &c. | ich nicht |
| Welten w), to milk, | ich melke, du melkst or milfst, er melkt or milkt | ich melk |
| Wessen , to measure, | ich messe, du missest, er misset or misst | ich maß |
| Missfallen , to displease, | ich missfalle, du missfällst, er miss- fällt | ich missfiel |
| Misslingen , to go amiss, | es misslingt | es mißlang |
| Mögen , to be able, | ich mag, du magst, er mag, wir mögen, &c. | ich mochte |
| Müssen , to be obliged, | ich muß, du mußt, er muß, wir müssen, ihr müisset or müßt, &c. | ich mußte |
| Nehmen , to take, | ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt | ich nahm |
| Nennen , to name, | ich nenne, &c. | ich nannte |
| Pfeifen , to whistle, | ich pfeife, &c. | ich piff |
| Pflegen x), to cherish, | ich pflege, &c. | ich pflog |
| Preisen , to praise, | ich preise, &c. | ich pries |
| Quellen y), to gush, | ich Quelle, du quillst, er quillt | ich quoll |
| Rächen z), to avenge, | ich räche, &c. | ich rächte (rach) |
| Rathen , to advise, | ich rathe, du rätst, er rät | ich riet |
| Reiben , to rub, | ich reibe, &c. | ich rieb |
| Reißen , to tear, | ich reiße, &c. | ich riß |
| Reiten a), to ride, | ich reite, &c. | ich ritt |
| Rennen b), to run, | ich renne, &c. | ich rannte or rennte |
| Riechen , to smell, | ich rieche, &c. | ich roch |
| Ringen , to wrestle, | ich ringe, &c. | ich rang |
| Rinnen , to run (of fluids), | ich rinne, &c. | ich rann |
| Rufen c), to call, | ich rufe, &c. | ich rief |
| Salzen d), to salt, | ich salze, &c. | ich salzte |
| Saufen , to drink, to tipple, | ich saufe, du säufst, er säuft | ich soff |
| Saugen e), to suck, | ich sauge, &c. | ich sog |
| Schaffen f), to create, | ich schaffe, &c. | ich schuf |
| Scheiden g), to separate, | ich scheide, &c. | ich schied |
| Scheinen to appear, | ich scheine, &c. | ich schien |

| IMP. SUBJ. | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|--|
| ich mahlete (mühlte) | mähle | gemahlen. | v) Except the past participle <i>ge-</i> <i>mahlen</i> , no irregular form is in use. |
| ich miede | meide | gemieden. | w) Sometimes regular. <i>Wiffst</i> &c., rarely used. |
| ich müßte | miß | gemessen. | |
| ich mißfielen | mißfalle | mißfallen. | |
| es mißlänge | mißlinge | mißlungen. | |
| ich müßte | — | gemocht. | |
| ich nähme | nimm | genommen. | |
| ich nennete | nenne | genannt. | |
| ich pfiffe | preiße or pfeif | gepfiffen. | x) When it signifies, to wait upon, or to be accustomed, it is regular. |
| ich pfüßte | pflege | gepflogen. | |
| ich priefe | preiße | geprießen. | y) <i>Quellst</i> , to swell, is regular |
| ich quüßte | quelle | gequollen. | |
| ich rächte (röche) | räche | gerächt (gero- chen). | z) The irregular form is no long- er used. Where it occurs in former writers it must not be confounded with the same forms from <i>riechen</i> . |
| ich riethe | rathe | gerathen. | a) <i>Bereiten</i> , to ride to, like all the compounds of <i>reiten</i> , is irregular; but <i>bereiten</i> , to make ready, from <i>bereit</i> , rea- dy, is regular, like all deriva- tives. |
| ich riebe | riebe | gerieben. | b) <i>Reunte</i> and <i>zerennt</i> , not often used. |
| ich riße | reiß | gerissen. | |
| ich ritte | rette | geritten. | |
| ich rennete | renne | gerannt or ge- rennt. | c) Regular in some writers, but improperly so. |
| ich röche | rieche or riech | gerochen. | d) Irregular only in the parti- ciple, and in that when used adjectively; as, <i>gesalzene Stei-</i> <i>ne</i> ; er hat sie <i>gesalzt</i> . |
| ich ränge | ringe | gerungen. | e) <i>Säugst</i> and <i>säugt</i> are not supported by good usage, but <i>säugen</i> , to suckle, is regular. |
| ich ränne (rönn), ich rünne | rinne | geronnen. | f) In the signification of to pro- cure, to get, it is regular, as also <i>anschaffen</i> , to purchase, to buy; <i>ab-schaffen</i> to part with, to dismiss. |
| ich rüßte | rufe | gerufen. | g) The active verb <i>scheiden</i> , to part, to disjoin, to divide, is regular. |
| ich salzte | salze | gesalzen. | |
| ich sößte | saufe | gesoffen. | |
| ich söge | saug | gesogen. | |
| ich schüßte | schaße | geschaffen. | |
| ich schiebe | scheide | geschieden. | |
| ich schiene | scheine | geschienen. | |

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|---------------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| Erſchelten, to scold | ich erſchelte, du erſchiltſt, er erſchilt | ich erſchalt (erſcholt) |
| Erſchren, to shew | ich erſchere, &c. | ich erſchor |
| Erſchieben, to shovl, | ich erſchiebe, &c. | ich erſchob |
| Erſchießen, to shoot, | ich erſchieße, &c. | ich erſchoß |
| Erſchinden, to ſlay, | ich erſchinde, &c. | ich erſchund |
| Erſchlafen, to ſleep, | ich erſchlafe, du erſchläſſt, er erſchläſt | ich erſchlieſ |
| Erſchlagen &, to beat, | ich erſchlage, du erſchlägſt, er erſchlägt | ich erſchlug |
| Erſchleichen, to ſneak, | ich erſchleihe, &c. | ich erſchlich |
| Erſchleifen &, to ſharpener, to whet, | ich erſchleiſe, &c. | ich erſchliff |
| Erſchleißen, to ſlit, | ich erſchleiße, &c. | ich erſchliß |
| Erſchließen, to ſlip, | ich erſchließe, &c. | ich erſchloß |
| Erſchließen, to ſhut, | ich erſchließe, &c. | ich erſchloß |
| Erſchlingen, to ſling, | ich erſchlinge, &c. | ich erſchlang |
| Erſchmelzen, to ſting, | ich erſchmelze, &c. | ich erſchmolz |
| Erſchmelzen &, to melt, | ich erſchmelze, du erſchmelzeſt (erſchmilzt) | ich erſchmolz |
| Erſchnauben, to ſnort, | ich erſchniehe or erſchnaube | ich erſchnob |
| Erſchneiden, to cut, | ich erſchneide, &c. | ich erſchnitt |
| Erſchrauben &, to ſcrew, | ich erſchraube, &c. | ich erſchraubte (erſchrob) |
| Erſchreiben, to write, | ich erſchreibe, &c. | ich erſchrieb |
| Erſchreien, to cry, | ich erſchreie, &c. | ich erſchrie |
| Erſchreiten, to ſtride, | ich erſchreite, &c. | ich erſchritt |
| Erſchrotten, to bruise, to gnaw, | ich erſchrote, &c. | ich erſchrotete |
| Erſchwären &, to ſuppurate, | ich erſchwäre, &c. | ich erſchwor |
| Erſchweigen, to be ſilent, | ich erſchweige, &c. | ich erſchwieg |
| Erſchwellen &, to ſwell, | ich erſchwellen, du erſchwillſt, er erſchwillt | ich erſchwill |
| Erſchwimmen, to ſwim, | ich erſchwimme, &c. | ich erſchwamm |
| Erſchwinden, to vaniſh, | ich erſchwinde, &c. | ich erſchwand |
| Erſchwingen &, to ſwing, | ich erſchwinge, &c. | ich erſchwang or erſchwung |
| Erſchwören, to ſwear, | ich erſchwöre, &c. | ich erſchwor or erſchwur |
| Erſehen, to ſee, | ich erſehe, du erſiehſt, er erſieht | ich erſah |
| Erſein, to be, | ich erſein, &c. | ich erſar, &c. |
| Erſenden, to ſend, | ich erſende, &c. | ich erſandte and erſendete |
| Erſieden &, to boil, | ich erſiede, &c. | ich erſott |
| Erſingen, to ſing, | ich erſinge, &c. | ich erſang |
| Erſinken, to ſink, | ich erſinke, &c. | ich erſank |
| Erſinnen, to think, to uſe, | ich erſinne, &c. | ich erſann |
| Erſitzen, to ſit, | ich erſiße, &c. | ich erſaß |
| Erſollen, to be obliged | ich erſoll, du erſollſt, er erſoll | ich erſollte |
| Erſpalten &, to ſplit, | ich erſpalte, &c. | ich erſpaltete |
| Erſpielen, to ſp'it, | ich erſpiele, &c. | ich erſpie |
| Erſpinnen, to ſpin, | ich erſpinne, &c. | ich erſpann |

| IMP. SUBJ. | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| ich schülte (schötte) | schilt | geschöleten. | |
| ich schöre | schere or schler | geschoren. | |
| ich schöße | schiebe | geschoben. | |
| ich schöße | schieße | geschossen. | |
| ich schünde | schinde | geschunden. | |
| ich schliefe | schlase | geschlafen. | |
| ich schlüge | schlage | geschlagen. | k) Rathschlagen and berathschlagen, to consult, are regular. |
| ich schliche | schliche | geschlichen. | i) Regular in all other significations, as, to demolish, or to drag |
| ich schliffe | schleife u. herseif | geschliffen. | |
| ich schliffe | schleife | geschliffen. | |
| ich schlöße | schliese | geschlossen. | |
| ich schlöße | schließe | geschlossen. | |
| ich schlänge | schlinge | geschlungen. | |
| ich schmiße | schmeiße | geschmissen. | |
| ich schmolze | schmilz or schmelz | geschmolzen. | k) As an active verb it is regular. |
| ich schnöbe | schnaube | geschnoben. | |
| ich schnitte | schneide | geschnitten. | |
| ich schraubete (schröbe) | schraube | geschraubt (geschroben). | l) Commonly regular, schraubte geschraubt. |
| ich schriebe | schreibe | geschrieben. | |
| ich schrie | schreie | geschrien. | |
| ich schritte | schreite | geschritten. | |
| ich schrote | schrote | geschroten. | Regular now except in the participle, and this is frequently geschrotet. |
| ich schwöre | schwäre | geschworen. | m) Schwierig it. in the present is provincial. |
| ich schwiege | schweige | geschwiegen. | n) Regular, when active. |
| ich schwölle | schwill or schwelle | geschwollen. | |
| ich schwämme | schwimme | geschwommen. | |
| ich schwände | schwinde | geschwunden. | |
| ich schwänge | schwinge | geschwungen. | o) Schwung is less in usage than schwäng. |
| ich schwöre or schwüre | schwöre | geschworen. | |
| ich sähe | siehe | gesehen. | |
| ich wäre | sei | gewesen. | |
| ich sendete | sende | gesandt and gesendet. | |
| ich stötte | stiehe | gestotten. | p) When active it is mostly regular. |
| ich sänge | singe | gesungen. | |
| ich säufe | sinke | gesunken. | |
| ich säune | sinne | gesonnen. | |
| ich (säune) | siehe | gesehen. | |
| ich säße | — | gesollt. | |
| ich spaltete | spalte | gespalten. | q) Irregular only in the participle, and this is sometimes gespallet when the verb is active. |
| ich spie | spie | gespien. | |
| ich spänne | spinne | gesponnen. | |
| ich (spänne) | — | — | |

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|--|--|-----------------------|
| Spalten , to split, | ich spalte, 2c. | ich spalt or spalt |
| Sprechen , to speak, | ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht | ich sprach |
| Sprossen r), to sprout, | ich sprieße, 2c. | ich sproß |
| Springen , to spring, | ich springe, 2c. | ich sprang |
| Stechen , to sting, to prick, | ich steche, du steichst, er sticht | ich stach |
| Stechen s), to stick, to be fast ened. | ich stecke, 2c. | ich steckte or steck. |
| Stehen , to stand, | ich stehe, 2c. | ich stand (stand) |
| Stehlen , to steal, | ich stehle, du stiehst, er stiehlt | ich stahl (stahl) |
| Steigen , to ascend, | ich steige, 2c. | ich stieg |
| Sterben , to die, | ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt | ich starb |
| Stieben f), to fly (as dust), | ich stiebe, 2c. | ich stob |
| Stinken , to stink, | ich stinke, 2c. | ich stank |
| Stoßen , to push, | ich stoße, du stoßest, er stoßt | ich stieß |
| Streichen , to stroke, | ich streiche, 2c. | ich strich |
| Streiten , to contend, | ich streite, 2c. | ich stritt |
| Thun , to do, | ich thue, du thust, er thut | ich that |
| Tragen , to bear, | ich trage, du trägst, er trägt | ich trug |
| Treffen , to hit, | ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft | ich traf |
| Treiben , to drive, | ich treibe, 2c. | ich trieb |
| Treten , to tread, | ich trete, du trittst, er tritt | ich trat |
| Triefen , to drip, to trickle, | ich triebe, 2c. | ich troff |
| Trinken , to drink, | ich trinke, 2c. | ich trank |
| Trügen , to deceive, | ich trüge, du trügst, er trügt | ich trog |
| Verbergen , to conceal, | ich verberge, du verbirgst, er ver- birgt | ich verbarg |
| Verbieten , to forbid, | ich verbiete, 2c. | ich verbot |
| Verbleiben , to remain, | ich verbleibe, 2c. | ich verblieb |
| Verbleichen , to grow pale, | ich verbleiche, 2c. | ich verblüht |
| Verderben u), to perish, | ich verderbe, du verdirbst, er ver- dirbt | ich verderb |
| Verdrießen , to offend, | es verdrießt | es verdroß |
| Vergeßen , to forget, | ich vergeße, du vergiffst, er ver- gibt | ich vergaß |
| Verhehlen to conceal, | ich verhehle, 2c. | ich verhehlte |
| Verlieren , to loose, | ich verliere, 2c. | ich verlor |
| Verlöschen , to extinguish, | ich verlösche, du verlöschest or ver- löscht, er verloscht or verlöscht | ich verlösch |
| Verschallen w), to die away in sound. | ich verschalle, 2c. | ich verscholl |
| Verschwinden , to disappear, | ich verschwinde, 2c. | ich verschwand |
| Verwirren , to perplex, | ich verwirre, 2c. | ich verwirrte |
| Verzeihen , to pardon, | ich verzeihe, 2c. | ich vergab |

| IMP. SUBJ. | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--|
| ich splisse | spleiße | gesplissen. | <p>r) This must not be confounded (in the imperfect) with the regular verb sprossen.</p> <p>s) This verb is commonly regular; when active it is always so.</p> |
| ich spräche | sprich | gesprochen. | |
| ich spröße | sprieße | gesprossen. | |
| ich spränge | sprünge | gesprungen. | |
| ich stäche | stich | gestochen. | |
| ich stecke or stäße | stecke | gesteckt. | |
| ich stände (stünde) | stehe | gestanden. | |
| ich stähle (stöhle) | stiehl | gestohlen. | |
| ich stiege | steige | gestiegen. | |
| ich stürbe (stürbe) | stirb | gestorben. | |
| ich stöbe | stieße | gestoßen. | <p>t) So zerfliegen, to be scattered as dust.</p> |
| ich stänke | stünke | gestunken. | |
| ich stieße | stoße | gestoßen. | |
| ich streiche | streiche | gestrichen. | |
| ich stritte | strette | gestritten. | |
| ich thäte | thue | gethan. | |
| ich trüge | trage | getragen. | |
| ich trübe | trüb | getröben. | |
| ich träte | tritt | getreten. | |
| ich tröffe | trief or triefe | getroffen. | |
| ich tränke | trinke | getrunken. | <p>u) Werberben, to destroy (active), is regular.</p> <p>v) Verdreußt, &c., nearly obsolete.</p> |
| ich trüge | trüge | getrogen. | |
| ich verbürge | verbirg | verborgen. | |
| ich verböte | verbiete | verbotten. | |
| ich verblicke | verbleibe | verblichen. | |
| ich verbliche | verbleibe | verblichen. | |
| ich verbürbe (verdürbe) | verdirb | verdorben. | |
| es verdürsse | verdrüsse | verdroffen. | |
| ich vergäße | vergiß | vergesen. | |
| ich verhehle | verhehle | verhehlt or verhöhlen. | <p>so) But little used, except in the imperfect and participle</p> |
| ich verlöre | verliere | verloren. | |
| ich verlosche | verlösche or verlischt | verloschen. | |
| ich verschülle | verschalle | verschollen. | |
| ich verschwände | verschwinde | verschwunden. | |
| ich verwirrte | verwirre | verwirrt or verworren. | |
| ich vergesse | vergeße | vergehen. | |

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|---|---|--|
| Wachsen , to grow, | ich wachse, du wächstest, er wächst | ich wuchs |
| Wägen or Wiegen x), to weigh, | ich wäge or wiege, du wägst or wiegst, er wägt or wiegt | ich wog |
| Waschen y), to wash, | ich wasche, &c. | ich wusch |
| Weben z), to weave, | ich webe, &c. | ich web |
| Weichen a), to yield, | ich weiche, &c. | ich wich |
| Weisen , to show, | ich weise, &c. | ich wies |
| Wenden b), to turn, | ich wende, &c. | ich wendete or wandte |
| Werben , to sue for, | ich werbe, du wirbst, er wirbt | ich warb |
| Werden , to become, | ich werde, du wirst, er wird | ich ward or wurde, du wurdest, er ward or wurde, wir wurden, &c. |
| Werfen , to throw, | ich werfe, du wirfst, er wirft | ich warf |
| Winden , to wind, | ich winde, &c. | ich wand |
| Wissen , to know, | ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß | ich wusste |
| Wollen , to will, | ich will, du willst, er will | ich wollte |
| Zeihen , to accuse of, | ich zeihe, &c. | ich zieh |
| Ziehen c), to draw, | ich ziehe, &c. | ich zog |
| Zwingen , to force, | ich zwinge, &c. | ich zwang |

§ 79. VERBS OF THE NEW CONJUGATION

(commonly called "regular verbs").

(1) In verbs of the New, or simpler form, the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle are not produced, as in the Old conjugation, by a change of the radical vowels; but by means of the suffix *et* or *t*, which serves as a *tense characteristic*: thus, taking the rad-

| IMP. SUBJ. | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|-------------|---------------|---|--|
| ich wüchſe | wachſe | gewachſen. | |
| ich wöge | wäge or wiege | gewogen. | a) Wägen is active, and has wäge in the imperf. subj.; wiegen is neuter, and has wiege. Wiegen, to rock; is regular. |
| ich wüſche | waſche | gewaſchen. | b) Waſcheſt and wäſcht are alſo uſed. |
| ich wöbe | webe | gewoben. | c) Regular except with the poets, or when uſed figuratively. |
| ich wiſche | weiſche | gewiſchen. | d) Weiſchen, to ſuſten, to mollify, is regular. |
| ich wieſe | weiſe | gewieſen. | |
| ich wendete | wende | gewendet or gewandt. | e) Regular when active |
| ich würbe | wirb | geworben. | |
| ich würbe | werbe | geworden; (and as an auxiliary) worden. | |
| ich wärfe | wirf | geworfen. | |
| ich wände | winde | gewunden. | |
| ich wüſſte | wiſſe | gewußt. | |
| ich wollte | — | gewollt. | |
| ich ziehe | zeihe | geziehen. | |
| ich zöge | ziehe | gezogen. | f) Ziehſt is antiquated, and only in poetical uſage |
| ich zwänge | zwinge | gezwungen. | |

cal part (lob) of loben, to praise, and affixing thereto et or t, we get lob e t or lob t; to which add the *personal* endings and we have lobete or lobte (lob + et + e), I praised; lobteſt or lobteſt, thou didst praise, &c.

(2) The verbs of the New form differ again from those of the Old, in that the former have in the Perfect Participle the termination et or t, instead of en: as, gelob e t or gelob t, praised. See the table of terminations § 76.

§ 80. PARADIGM OF A

Loben,

| INDICATIVE. | | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | | |
|----------------------|---|-------------|----------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| PRESENT TENSE. | | | PRESENT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich lobe, | I praise. | ich lobe, | I may |
| | 2 | du lobest, | thou praisest | du lobest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er lobt, | he praises. | er lobe, | he may |
| | 1 | wir loben, | we praise. | wir loben, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr lobet, | you praise. | ihr lobet, | you may |
| | 3 | sie loben, | they praise. | sie loben, | they may |
| IMPERFECT TENSE. | | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich lobte, | I praised. | ich lobete, | I might |
| | 2 | du lobtest, | thou didst praise. | du lobetest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er lobte, | he did praise. | er lobete, | he might |
| | 1 | wir lobten, | we did praise. | wir lobeten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr lobtet, | you did praise. | ihr lobetet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie lobten, | they did praise. | sie lobeten, | they might |
| PERFECT TENSE. | | | PERFECT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | praised, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have |
| | 2 | du hattest | thou hadst | du hättest | praised, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| | 1 | wir hatten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall praise. |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | praised, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |

§ 81. THE MIXED CONJUGATION

(embracing the irregular verbs properly so called).

There are a few verbs (sixteen in all), which have a sort of mixed conjugation: partaking of the *Old Form*, in that they change their radical vowels to form the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle; and at the same time, partaking of the *New Form*, in that they assume, in the same parts, the *tense-sign* *te* and the participial ending *t*. These are they which, strictly speaking, are the *irregular* verbs of the language, and accordingly, they are here so classed. They will be found, also, in the general List of (so called) "irregular" verbs (page 346), which, for the sake of convenience, we have there inserted.

§ 82.

LIST OF VERBS OF THE MIXED CONJUGATION.

| INFINITIVE | PRESENT of the indicative. | IMPERFECT. | | PAST PARTI- CIPLE. | IMPERATIVE |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|--------------------------|------------|
| | | Indicat. | Subjunct. | | |
| Brennen, to burn, | — — | ich brannte | ich brennte | gebrannt. | brenne |
| Bringen, to bring, | — — | ich brachte | ich brächte | gebracht. | — |
| Denken, to think, | — — | ich dachte | ich dächte | gedacht. | — |
| Dürfen, to be permitted, | ich darf, du darfst, er darf | ich durfte | ich dürfte | gedurft. | — |
| haben, to have, | ich habe, du hast, er hat | ich hatte | ich hätte | gehabt. | habe. |
| Kennen, to know, | — — | ich kannte | ich kenne | gekannt. | — |
| Können, to be able, can, | ich kann, du kannst, er kann | ich konnte | ich könnte | gekonnt. | — |
| mögen, to be allowed, | ich mag, du magst, er mag | ich mochte | ich möchte | gemocht. | — |
| may, | — — | — — | — — | — — | — — |
| Müssen, to be obliged, | ich muß, du mußt, er muß | ich mußte | ich müßte | gemußt. | — |
| must, | — — | — — | — — | — — | — — |
| Nennen, to name, | — — | ich nannte | ich nennte | genannt. | — |
| Rennen, to run, | — — | ich rannte | ich rennte | gerannt. | — |
| Senden, to send, | — — | ich sandte | ich sendete | gesandt. | — |
| essen, to be obliged, | ich soll, du sollst, er soll | — — | — — | — — | — — |
| shall, | — — | — — | — — | — — | — — |
| Senden, to turn, | — — | ich wandte | ich wendete | gewandt. | — |
| Wissen, to know, | ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß | ich wußte | ich wüßte | gewußt. | weiße |
| Wollen, to be willing, | ich will, du willst, er will | — — | — — | — — | — — |

§ 83. PARADIGMS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

(1) In order to a better display of the irregularities of some of these verbs, we append the following paradigms. They will be found exceedingly convenient for ready reference. Some of these verbs, also, have certain peculiar uses, which require special attention. For this reason we have, immediately after the paradigms, added a series of explanatory remarks, with copious examples illustrating the several ways in which they are employed.



(2) **Dürfen, to be permitted,**

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------|---|----------------------|------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich darf, | I am | ich dürfte, | I may |
| | 2 | du darfst, | thou art | du dürdest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er darf, | he is | er dürfte, | he may |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir dürfen, | we are | wir dürfen, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr dürft, | you are | ihr dürftet, | you may |
| | 3 | sie dürfen, | they are | sie dürfen, | they may |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | permitted | | be permitted. | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich dürfte, | I was | ich dürfte, | I might |
| | 2 | du dürdest, | thou wast | du dürdest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er dürfte, | he was | er dürfte, | he might |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir dürften, | we were | wir dürften, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr dürftet, | you were | ihr dürftet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie dürften, | they were | sie dürften, | they might |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | permitted. | | be permitted. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | permitted, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | geburst. | | geburst. | |
| | | been permitted. | | | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | permitted, &c. |
| | 3 | er hätte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | geburst. | | geburst. | |
| | | been permitted. | | | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall be per- |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | mitted, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | dürfen, | | dürfen, | |
| | | be permitted. | | | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | been permitted, |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | &c. |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | geburst haben, | | geburst haben, | |
| | | have been permitted. | | | |

to dare. (See Remark 9.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|--|--|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. dürfen, to be permitted. | PRESENT. dürfend, being permitted |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gedurft haben, to have been permitted. | PERFECT. gedurft, permitted. |
| FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | dürfen, I should be permitted &c. | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | gedurft haben, I should have been perm-d. | | |

(3) Können

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|---|-----------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|-------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich kann, | I am | ich könne, | I may |
| | 2 | du kannst, | thou art | du könneſt, | thou mayſt |
| | 3 | er kann, | he is | er könne, | he may |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir können, | we are | wir können, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr könntet, | you are | ihr könntet, | you may |
| | 3 | ſie können, | they are | ſie können, | they may |
| | | } able. | | } be able | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich konnte, | I was | ich könnte, | I might |
| | 2 | du könntest, | thou waſt | du könntest, | thou mightſt |
| | 3 | er konnte, | he was | er könnte, | he might |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir konnten, | we were | wir könnten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr könntet, | you were | ihr könntet, | you might |
| | 3 | ſie konnten, | they were | ſie könnten, | they might |
| | | } able. | | } be able. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du haſt | thou haſt | du habest | able, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | ſie haben | they have | ſie haben | |
| | | } geſount, } been able | | } geſount, } | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou haſt | du hättest | able, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | ſie hätten | they had | ſie hätten | |
| | | } geſount, } been able. | | } geſount, } | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I ſhall | ich werde | (if) I ſhall be |
| | 2 | du werſt | thou wilt | du werdest | able, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we ſhall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | ſie werden | they will | ſie werden | |
| | | } können, } be able. | | } können, } | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I ſhall | ich werde | (if) I ſhall have |
| | 2 | du werſt | thou wilt | du werdest | been able, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we ſhall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | ſie werden | they will | ſie werden | |
| | | } geſount haben } have been able. | | } geſount haben } | |

to be able. (See Remark 10.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|---|---|------------------------------------|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. können, to be able. | PRESENT. könnend, being able |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gekonnt haben, to have been able. | PERFECT. gekonnt, been able. |
| FIRST FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } können, I should be able, &c. | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } gekonnt haben, I should have been able, &c. | | |

(4) *Mögen*, to be allowed,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|---|----------------------|------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich mag, | I am | ich möge, | I may |
| | 2 | du magst, | thou art | du mögest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er mag, | he is | er möge, | he may |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir mögen, | we are | wir mögen, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr möget, | you are | ihr möget, | you may |
| | 3 | sie mögen, | they are | sie mögen, | they may |
| | | allowed. | | be allowed. | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich möchte, | I was | ich möchte, | I might |
| | 2 | du möchtest, | thou wast | du möchtest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er möchte, | he was | er möchte, | he might |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir möchten, | we were | wir möchten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr möchtet, | you were | ihr möchtet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie möchten, | they were | sie möchten, | they might |
| | | allowed. | | be allowed. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | allowed, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | been allowed. | | gemocht. | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | allowed, &c. |
| | 3 | er hätte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | been allowed. | | gemocht. | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall be al- |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | lowed, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | be allowed. | | mögen. | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | been allowed, |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | &c. |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | have been al- | | gemocht haben | |
| | | lowed. | | | |

to have liberty. (See Remark 11.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. mögen, to be allowed. | PRESENT. mögend, being allowed. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gemocht haben, to have been al- lowed. | PERFECT. gemocht, allowed. |
| FIRST FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } mögen, I should be allowed, &c. | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } gemocht haben I should have been a-ed, &c. | | |

(5) *Müssen*, to be obliged;

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|---|----------------------|------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich muß, | I am | ich müsse, | I may |
| | 2 | du mußt, | thou art | du müßest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er muß, | he is | er müsse, | he may |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir müssen, | we are | wir müssen, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr müßet, | you are | ihr müßet, | you may |
| | 3 | sie müssen, | they are | sie müssen, | they may |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | obliged. | | obliged. | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich mußte, | I was | ich müßte, | I might |
| | 2 | du mußtdest, | thou wast | du müßtdest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er mußte, | he was | er müßte, | he might |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir mußten, | we were | wir mußten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr müßtet, | you were | ihr müßtet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie mußten, | they were | sie mußten, | they might |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | obliged. | | obliged. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du habst | thou hast | du habest | obliged, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | gemußt, | | gemußt, | |
| | | been obliged. | | been obliged. | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | obliged, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | gemußt, | | gemußt, | |
| | | been obliged. | | been obliged. | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall be |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | obliged, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | müssen, | | müssen, | |
| | | be obliged. | | be obliged. | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | been obliged |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | &c. |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | gemußt haben | | gemußt haben | |
| | | have been obliged. | | have been obliged. | |

must. (See Remark 12.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|-----------------|---|---|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | <p>PRESENT TENSE. müssen, to be obliged.</p> <p>PERFECT TENSE. gemusst haben, to have been obliged.</p> | <p>PRESENT. müssend, being obliged.</p> <p>PERFECT. gemusst, obliged.</p> |
| <p>FIRST FUTURE.</p> <p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p> <p>} müssen, I should be obliged, &c.</p> | | | |
| <p>SECOND FUTURE.</p> <p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p> <p>} gemusst haben I should have been obliged, &c.</p> | | | |

(6) *Sollen, to be*

| INDICATIVE. | | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | | |
|----------------------|---|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| PRESENT TENSE. | | | PRESENT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich soll, I am | } | ich solle, I may | } be obliged. |
| | 2 | du sollst, thou art | | du sollest, thou mayst | |
| | 3 | er soll, he is | | er solle, he may | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir sollen, we are | } | wir sollen, we may | } be obliged. |
| | 2 | ihr sollt, you are | | ihr sollt, you may | |
| | 3 | sie sollen, they are | | sie sollen, they may | |
| IMPERFECT TENSE. | | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich sollte, I was | } | ich sollte, I might | } be obliged. |
| | 2 | du solltest, thou wast | | du sollest, thou mightst | |
| | 3 | er sollte, he was | | er sollte, he might | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir sollten, we were | } | wir sollten, we might | } be obliged. |
| | 2 | ihr solltet, you were | | ihr solltet, you might | |
| | 3 | sie sollten, they were | | sie sollten, they might | |
| PERFECT TENSE. | | | PERFECT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe I have | } | ich habe I may have been | } obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | du hast thou hast | | du habest | |
| | 3 | er hat he has | | er habe | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir haben we have | } | wir haben | } obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | ihr habet you have | | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben they have | | sie haben | |
| PLUPERFECT TENSE.* | | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte I had | } | ich hätte I might have been | } obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | du hättest thou hadst | | du hättest | |
| | 3 | er hatte he had | | er hätte | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir hätten we had | } | wir hätten | } obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | ihr hättet you had | | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten they had | | sie hätten | |
| FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde I shall | } | ich werde (if) I shall be | } obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | du wirst thou wilt | | du werdest | |
| | 3 | er wird he will | | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden we shall | } | wir werden | } obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | ihr werdet you will | | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden they will | | sie werden | |
| SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde I shall | } | ich werde (if) I shall have | } been obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | du wirst thou wilt | | du werdest | |
| | 3 | er wird he will | | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden we shall | } | wir werden | } have been obliged, &c. |
| | 2 | ihr werdet you will | | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden they will | | sie werden | |

obliged. (See Remark 13.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------|---|---|-----------|---|---|------------|----------|------------|------------|------------|--|-----------------------------|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. sollen, to be obliged. | PRESENT. sollend, being obliged. | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gefolgt haben, to have been obliged. | PERFECT. gefolgt, obliged. | | | | | | | | | | |
| FIRST FUTURE. <table><tr><td>ich würde</td><td rowspan="5">}</td><td rowspan="5">sollen, be obliged, &c.</td></tr><tr><td>du würdest</td></tr><tr><td>er würde</td></tr><tr><td>wir würden</td></tr><tr><td>ihr würdet</td></tr><tr><td>sie würden</td><td></td><td>I should be obliged, &c.</td></tr></table> | | | | ich würde | } | sollen, be obliged, &c. | du würdest | er würde | wir würden | ihr würdet | sie würden | | I should be obliged, &c. |
| ich würde | } | sollen, be obliged, &c. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| du würdest | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| er würde | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wir würden | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ihr würdet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| sie würden | | I should be obliged, &c. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. <table><tr><td>ich würde</td><td rowspan="5">}</td><td rowspan="5">gefolgt haben, I should have been o-ed, &c.</td></tr><tr><td>du würdest</td></tr><tr><td>er würde</td></tr><tr><td>wir würden</td></tr><tr><td>ihr würdet</td></tr><tr><td>sie würden</td><td></td><td></td></tr></table> | | | | ich würde | } | gefolgt haben, I should have been o-ed, &c. | du würdest | er würde | wir würden | ihr würdet | sie würden | | |
| ich würde | } | gefolgt haben, I should have been o-ed, &c. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| du würdest | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| er würde | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wir würden | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ihr würdet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| sie würden | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| INFINITIVE. | PRESENT INDICATIVE. | IMP. INDIC. |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Wachsen , to grow, | ich wachse, du wächst, er wächst | ich wuchs |
| Wägen or Wiegen x), to weigh, | ich wäge or wiege, du wägst or wiegst, er wägt or wiegt | ich wog |
| Waschen y), to wash, | ich wasche, &c. | ich wusch |
| Weben z), to weave, | ich webte, &c. | ich web |
| Weichen a), to yield, | ich weiche, &c. | ich wich |
| Weisen , to show, | ich weise, &c. | ich wies |
| Wenden b), to turn, | ich wende, &c. | ich wendete or wandte |
| Werben , to sue for, | ich werbe, du wirbst, er wirbt | ich warb |
| Werden , to become, | ich werde, du wirst, er wird | ich ward or wurde, du wurdest, er ward or wurde, wir wurden, &c. |
| Werfen , to throw, | ich werfe, du wirfst, er wirft | ich warf |
| Winden , to wind, | ich winde, &c. | ich wand |
| Wissen , to know, | ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß | ich wußte |
| Wollen , to will, | ich will, du willst, er will | ich wollte |
| Zeihen , to accuse of, | ich zeihe, &c. | ich zieh |
| Ziehen c), to draw, | ich ziehe, &c. | ich zog |
| Zwingen , to force, | ich zwinge, &c. | ich zwang |

§ 79. VERBS OF THE NEW CONJUGATION

(commonly called "regular verbs").

(1) In verbs of the New, or simpler form, the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle are not produced, as in the Old conjugation, by a change of the radical vowels; but by means of the suffix *et* or *t*, which serves as a *tense characteristic*: thus, taking the rad-

| IMP. SUBJ | IMPERATIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | REMARKS. |
|-------------|---------------|---|--|
| ich wüchſe | wachſe | gewachſen. | |
| ich wöge | wäge or wiege | gewogen. | a) Wägen is active, and has wäge in the imperf. subj.; wiegen is neuter, and has wiege. Wiegen, to rock; is regular. |
| ich wüſche | waſche | gewaſchen. | b) Wäſcheſt and wäſcht are also used. |
| ich wöbte | webte | gewoben. | c) Regular except with the poets, or when used figuratively. |
| ich wiche | weichte | gewichen. | d) Weichen, to soften, to mollify, is regular. |
| ich wiefte | weiſte | gewieſen. | |
| ich wendete | wende | gewendet or gewandt. | e) Regular when active |
| ich würbe | wirb | geworben. | |
| ich würde | werbe | geworden; (and as an auxiliary) worden. | |
| ich würfe | wirf | geworfen. | |
| ich wände | winde | gewunden. | |
| ich wüßte | wiſſte | gewußt. | |
| ich wollte | — | gewollt. | |
| ich ziehe | zeihe | gezichen. | |
| ich zöge | ziehe | gezogen. | f) Ziehung is antiquated, and only in poetical usage |
| ich zwänge | zwingte | gezwungen. | |

cal part (lob) of loben, to praise, and affixing thereto et or t, we get lob e t or lob t; to which add the *personal* endings and we have lobete or lobte (lob + et + e), I praised; lobetest or lobtest, thou didst praise, &c.

(2) The verbs of the New form differ again from those of the Old, in that the former have in the Perfect Participle the termination et or t, instead of en: as, gelob e t or gelob t, praised. See the table of terminations § 76.

§ 80. PARADIGM OF A

Loben,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|---|-------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUP. SING. | 1 | ich lobe, | I praise. | ich lobe, | I may |
| | 2 | du lobest, | thou praisest | du lobest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er lobt, | he praises. | er lobe, | he may |
| | 1 | wir loben, | we praise. | wir loben, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr lobet, | you praise. | ihr lobet, | you may |
| | 3 | sie loben, | they praise. | sie loben, | they may |
| | | | | } praise. | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUP. SING. | 1 | ich lobte, | I praised. | ich lobete, | I might |
| | 2 | du lobtest, | thou didst praise. | du lobetest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er lobte, | he did praise. | er lobete, | he might |
| | 1 | wir lobten, | we did praise. | wir lobeten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr lobtet, | you did praise. | ihr lobetet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie lobten, | they did praise. | sie lobeten, | they might |
| | | | | } praise. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUP. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | praised, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | } gelobt, praised. | | } gelobt, | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUP. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have |
| | 2 | du hattest | thou hadst | du hättest | praised, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| | 1 | wir hatten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | } gelobt, praised. | | } gelobt, | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUP. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall praise. |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } loben, praised. | | } loben, | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUP. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | praised, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } gelobt haben, have praised. | | } gelobt haben, | |

VERB OF THE NEW FORM.

to praise.

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|--|---|
| | PRESENT TENSE 1. <i>wanting.</i> 2. lobe du, praise thou. 3. lobe er, let him praise. 1. loben wir, let us praise. 2. lobet ihr, praise ye. 3. loben sie, let them praise. | PRESENT TENSE. loben, to praise. | PRESENT. lobend, praising. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gelobt haben, to have praised. | PERFECT gelobt, praised. |
| FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | loben. I should praise, &c. | FIRST FUTURE. loben werden, to be about to praise. | |
| SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | gelobt haben. I should have praised, &c. | | |

§ 81. THE MIXED CONJUGATION

(embracing the irregular verbs properly so called).

There are a few verbs (sixteen in all), which have a sort of mixed conjugation: partaking of the *Old Form*, in that they change their radical vowels to form the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle; and at the same time, partaking of the *New Form*, in that they assume, in the same parts, the *tense-sign* *te* and the participial ending *t*. These are they which, strictly speaking, are the *irregular* verbs of the language, and accordingly, they are here so classed. They will be found, also, in the general List of (so called) "irregular" verbs (page 346), which, for the sake of convenience, we have there inserted.

§ 82.

LIST OF VERBS OF THE MIXED CONJUGATION.

| INFINITIVE | PRESENT <i>of the indicative.</i> | IMPERFECT. | | PAST PARTI- CIPLE. | IMPERATIVE |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------------------|------------|
| | | <i>Indicat.</i> | <i>Subjunct.</i> | | |
| Brennen, to burn, | — — | ich brannte | ich brennte | gebrannt. | brenne |
| Bringen, to bring, | — — | ich brachte | ich brächte | gebracht. | — |
| Denken, to think, | — — | ich dachte | ich dächte | gedacht. | — |
| Dürfen, to be permitted, | ich darf, du darfst, er darf | ich dürfte | ich dürfte | gedurft. | — |
| haben, to have, | ich habe, du hast, er hat | ich hätte | ich hätte | gehabt. | habe. |
| Kennen, to know, | — — | ich kannte | ich kenne | gekannt. | — |
| Können, to be able, can, | ich kann, du kannst, er kann | ich könnte | ich könnte | gekannt. | — |
| mögen, to be allowed, may, | ich mag, du magst, er mag | ich möchte | ich möchte | gemocht. | — |
| Müssen, to be obliged, must, | ich muß, du mußt, er muß | ich müßte | ich müßte | gemußt. | — |
| Nennen, to name, | — — | ich nannte | ich nennte | genannt. | — |
| Rennen, to run, | — — | ich rannte | ich rennte | gerannt. | — |
| Senden, to send, | — — | ich sandte | ich sendete | gesandt. | — |
| Sollen, to be obliged, shall, | ich soll, du sollst, er soll | — | — | — | — |
| Werden, to turn, | — — | ich warnte | ich warnte | gewarnt. | — |
| Wissen, to know, | ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß | ich wüßte | ich wüßte | gewußt. | — |
| Wollen, to be willing, | ich will, du willst, er will | — | — | — | — |

§ 83. PARADIGMS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

(1) In order to a better display of the irregularities of some of these verbs, we append the following paradigms. They will be found exceedingly convenient for ready reference. Some of these verbs, also, have certain peculiar uses, which require special attention. For this reason we have, immediately after the paradigms, added a series of explanatory remarks, with copious examples illustrating the several ways in which they are employed.

(2) **Dürfen**, to be permitted,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|--------------|------------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich darf, | I am | ich dürfe, | I may |
| | 2 | du darfst, | thou art | du dürdest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er darf, | he is | er dürfe, | he may |
| | 1 | wir dürfen, | we are | wir dürfen, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr dürfet, | you are | ihr dürfet, | you may |
| 3 | sie dürfen, | they are | sie dürfen, | they may | |
| | | } permitted | | } be permitted. | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich dürftest, | I was | ich dürftest, | I might |
| | 2 | du dürftest, | thou wast | du dürftest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er dürftest, | he was | er dürftest, | he might |
| | 1 | wir dürften, | we were | wir dürften, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr dürftet, | you were | ihr dürftet, | you might |
| 3 | sie dürften, | they were | sie dürften, | they might | |
| | | } permitted. | | } be permitted. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | permitted, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | | |
| | | } been permitted. | | } geburft. | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | permitted, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | | |
| | | } been permitted. | | } geburft. | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall be per- |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | mitted, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | | |
| | | } permitted. | | } dürfen, | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | been permitted, |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | &c. |
| | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | | |
| | | } have been permitted. | | } geburft haben, | |

to dare. (See Remark 9.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|-----------------|---|--|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | <p>PRESENT TENSE. dürfen, to be permitted.</p> <p>PERFECT TENSE. gedurft haben, to have been permitted.</p> | <p>PRESENT. dürfend, being permitted</p> <p>PERFECT. gedurft, permitted.</p> |
| <p>FIRST FUTURE.</p> <p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p> <p> } dürfen, I should be permitted &c. </p> | | | |
| <p>SECOND FUTUR.</p> <p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p> <p> } gedurft haben, I should have been perm-d. </p> | | | |

(3) Können

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|---|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|-------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich kann, | I am | ich könne, | I may |
| | 2 | du kannst, | thou art | du könneſt, | thou mayſt |
| | 3 | er kann, | he is | er könne, | he may |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir können, | we are | wir können, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr könntet, | you are | ihr könntet, | you may |
| | 3 | sie können, | they are | sie können, | they may |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich konnte, | I was | ich könnte, | I might |
| | 2 | du könntest, | thou waſt | du könntest, | thou mightſt |
| | 3 | er konnte, | he was | er könnte, | he might |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir konnten, | we were | wir könnten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr könntet, | you were | ihr könntet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie konnten, | they were | sie könnten, | they might |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du haſt | thou haſt | du habest | able, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hätte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou haſt | du hättest | able, &c. |
| | 3 | er hätte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I ſhall | ich werde | (if) I ſhall be |
| | 2 | du wirſt | thou wilt | du werdest | able, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we ſhall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I ſhall | ich werde | (if) I ſhall have |
| | 2 | du wirſt | thou wilt | du werdest | been able, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we ſhall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |

to be able. (See Remark 10.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|-----------|---|------------|----------|------------|------------|------------|--|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. können, to be able. | PRESENT. könnend, being able | | | | | | | | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gekonnt haben, to have been able. | PERFECT. gekonnt, been able. | | | | | | | | |
| FIRST FUTURE. <table><tr><td>ich würde</td><td rowspan="5">} können, I should be able, &c.</td></tr><tr><td>du würdest</td></tr><tr><td>er würde</td></tr><tr><td>wir würden</td></tr><tr><td>ihr würdet</td></tr><tr><td>sie würden</td><td></td></tr></table> | | | | ich würde | } können, I should be able, &c. | du würdest | er würde | wir würden | ihr würdet | sie würden | |
| ich würde | } können, I should be able, &c. | | | | | | | | | | |
| du würdest | | | | | | | | | | | |
| er würde | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wir würden | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ihr würdet | | | | | | | | | | | |
| sie würden | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. <table><tr><td>ich würde</td><td rowspan="5">} gekonnt haben, I should have been able, &c.</td></tr><tr><td>du würdest</td></tr><tr><td>er würde</td></tr><tr><td>wir würden</td></tr><tr><td>ihr würdet</td></tr><tr><td>sie würden</td><td></td></tr></table> | | | | ich würde | } gekonnt haben, I should have been able, &c. | du würdest | er würde | wir würden | ihr würdet | sie würden | |
| ich würde | } gekonnt haben, I should have been able, &c. | | | | | | | | | | |
| du würdest | | | | | | | | | | | |
| er würde | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wir würden | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ihr würdet | | | | | | | | | | | |
| sie würden | | | | | | | | | | | |

(4) Mögen, to be allowed,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------|---|----------------------|------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich mag, | I am | ich möge, | I may |
| | 2 | du magst, | thou art | du mögest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er mag, | he is | er möge, | he may |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir mögen, | we are | wir mögen, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr möget, | you are | ihr möget, | you may |
| | 3 | sie mögen, | they are | sie mögen, | they may |
| | | allowed. | | be allowed | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich möchte, | I was | ich möchte, | I might |
| | 2 | du möchtest, | thou wast | du möchtest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er möchte, | he was | er möchte, | he might |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir möchten, | we were | wir möchten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr möchtet, | you were | ihr möchtet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie möchten, | they were | sie möchten, | they might |
| | | allowed. | | be allowed. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | allowed, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | gemocht. |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | been allowed. | | gemocht. | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | allowed, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | gemocht. |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | been allowed. | | gemocht. | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall be al- |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | lowed, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | mögen. |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | be allowed | | mögen. | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | been allowed, |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | &c. |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | gemocht haben |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | have been al- | | gemocht haben | |
| | | lowed. | | | |

to have liberty. (See Remark 11.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. mögen, to be allowed. | PRESENT. mögend, being allowed. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gemocht haben, to have been al- lowed. | PERFECT. gemocht, allowed. |
| FIRST FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | mögen, I should be allowed, &c. | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | gemocht haben I should have been a-ed, &c. | | |

(5) *Müssen*, to be obliged;

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-------------|---|----------------------|------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich muß, | I am | ich müße, | I may |
| | 2 | du mußt, | thou art | du müßest, | thou mayst |
| | 3 | er muß, | he is | er müße, | he may |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir müssen, | we are | wir müssen, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr müßet, | you are | ihr müßet, | you may |
| | 3 | sie müssen, | they are | sie müssen, | they may |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | obliged. | | obliged. | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich mußte, | I was | ich müßte, | I might |
| | 2 | du mußtdest, | thou wast | du müßtdest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er mußte, | he was | er müßte, | he might |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir mußten, | we were | wir mußten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr müßtet, | you were | ihr müßtet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie mußten, | they were | sie mußten, | they might |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | obliged. | | obliged. | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | obliged, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | gemußt, | | gemußt, | |
| | | been obliged. | | been obliged. | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich hatte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | obliged, &c. |
| | 3 | er hatte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | gemußt, | | gemußt, | |
| | | been obliged. | | been obliged. | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall be |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | obliged, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | müssen, | | müssen, | |
| | | be obliged. | | be obliged. | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | been obliged |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | &c. |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | } | | } | |
| | | gemußt haben | | gemußt haben | |
| | | have been obliged. | | have been obliged. | |

MUST. (See Remark 12.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|-----------------|---|---|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | <p>PRESENT TENSE. müssen, to be obliged.</p> <p>PERFECT TENSE. gemusst haben, to have been obliged.</p> | <p>PRESENT. müssend, being obliged.</p> <p>PERFECT. gemusst, obliged.</p> |
| <p>FIRST FUTURE.</p> <p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p> <p>müssen, I should be obliged, &c.</p> | | | |
| <p>SECOND FUTURE.</p> <p>ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden</p> <p>gemusst haben I should have been obliged, &c.</p> | | | |

(6) Sollen, to be

| INDICATIVE. | | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | | |
|----------------------|---|------------------------|----------------------|---|------------------------------|
| PRESENT TENSE. | | | PRESENT TENSE. | | |
| SING. | 1 | ich soll, I am | SING. | 1 | ich solle, I may |
| | 2 | du sollst, thou art | | 2 | du sollest, thou mayst |
| | 3 | er soll, he is | | 3 | er solle, he may |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir sollen, we are | PLUR. | 1 | wir sollen, we may |
| | 2 | ihr sollt, you are | | 2 | ihr sollt, you may |
| | 3 | sie sollen, they are | | 3 | sie sollen, they may |
| IMPERFECT TENSE. | | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | |
| SING. | 1 | ich sollte, I was | SING. | 1 | ich sollte, I might |
| | 2 | du solltest, thou wast | | 2 | du solltest, thou mightst |
| | 3 | er sollte, he was | | 3 | er sollte, he might |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir sollten, we were | PLUR. | 1 | wir sollten, we might |
| | 2 | ihr solltet, you were | | 2 | ihr solltet, you might |
| | 3 | sie sollten, they were | | 3 | sie sollten, they might |
| PERFECT TENSE. | | | PERFECT TENSE. | | |
| SING. | 1 | ich habe, I have | SING. | 1 | ich habe, I may have been |
| | 2 | du hast, thou hast | | 2 | du habest, thou hast |
| | 3 | er hat, he has | | 3 | er hat, he has |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir haben, we have | PLUR. | 1 | wir haben, we have |
| | 2 | ihr habet, you have | | 2 | ihr habet, you have |
| | 3 | sie haben, they have | | 3 | sie haben, they have |
| PLUPERFECT TENSE.* | | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | |
| SING. | 1 | ich hatte, I had | SING. | 1 | ich hätte, I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest, thou hadst | | 2 | du hättest, thou hadst |
| | 3 | er hatte, he had | | 3 | er hätte, he had |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir hätten, we had | PLUR. | 1 | wir hätten, we had |
| | 2 | ihr hättet, you had | | 2 | ihr hättet, you had |
| | 3 | sie hätten, they had | | 3 | sie hätten, they had |
| FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde, I shall | SING. | 1 | ich werde, (if) I shall be |
| | 2 | du wirst, thou wilt | | 2 | du werdest, thou wilt |
| | 3 | er wird, he will | | 3 | er werde, he will |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden, we shall | PLUR. | 1 | wir werden, we shall |
| | 2 | ihr werdet, you will | | 2 | ihr werdet, you will |
| | 3 | sie werden, they will | | 3 | sie werden, they will |
| SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde, I shall | SING. | 1 | ich werde, (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst, thou wilt | | 2 | du werdest, thou wilt |
| | 3 | er wird, he will | | 3 | er werde, he will |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden, we shall | PLUR. | 1 | wir werden, we shall |
| | 2 | ihr werdet, you will | | 2 | ihr werdet, you will |
| | 3 | sie werden, they will | | 3 | sie werden, they will |

obliged. (See Remark 13.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|--|--|--|
| | <i>Wanting.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. sollen, to be obliged. | PRESENT. sollend, being obliged. |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. gefolgt haben, to have been obliged. | PERFECT. gefolgt, obliged. |
| FIRST FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } sollen, I should be obliged, &c. | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | } gefolgt haben, I should have been o-ed, &c. | | |
| | | | |

(8) *Wollen, to be*

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE | |
|-------|---|----------------------|------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich will, | I will. | ich wolle, | I may |
| | 2 | du willst, | thou wilt. | du wollest, | thou mayest |
| | 3 | er will, | he will. | er wolle, | he may |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir wollen, | we will. | wir wollen, | we may |
| | 2 | ihr wollet, | you will. | ihr wollet, | you may |
| | 3 | sie wollen, | they will. | sie wollen, | they may |
| | | | | | |
| | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich wollte, | I was | ich wollte, | I might |
| | 2 | du wolltest, | thou wast | du wolltest, | thou mightst |
| | 3 | er wollte, | he was | er wollte, | he might |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir wollten, | we were | wir wollten, | we might |
| | 2 | ihr wolltet, | you were | ihr wolltet, | you might |
| | 3 | sie wollten, | they were | sie wollten, | they might |
| | | | | | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich habe | I have | ich habe | I may have been |
| | 2 | du hast | thou hast | du habest | willing, &c. |
| | 3 | er hat | he has | er habe | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir haben | we have | wir haben | |
| | 2 | ihr habet | you have | ihr habet | |
| | 3 | sie haben | they have | sie haben | |
| | | | | | |
| | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich hätte | I had | ich hätte | I might have been |
| | 2 | du hättest | thou hadst | du hättest | willing, &c. |
| | 3 | er hätte | he had | er hätte | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir hätten | we had | wir hätten | |
| | 2 | ihr hättet | you had | ihr hättet | |
| | 3 | sie hätten | they had | sie hätten | |
| | | | | | |
| | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall be wil- |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | ling, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |
| | | | | | |
| | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | |
| SING. | 1 | ich werde | I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have |
| | 2 | du wirst | thou wilt | du werdest | been willing, &c. |
| | 3 | er wird | he will | er werde | |
| PLUR. | 1 | wir werden | we shall | wir werden | |
| | 2 | ihr werdet | you will | ihr werdet | |
| | 3 | sie werden | they will | sie werden | |

willing. (See Remark 14.)

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|--|--|--|
| | 1. <i>Wanting.</i> 2. <i>Wolle tu, will thou.</i> 3. <i>Wolle er, let him be. willing.</i> | PRESENT TENSE. wollen, to be willing. PERFECT TENSE. gewollt haben, to have willed. | PRESENT wollend, willing PERFECT. gewollt, willed |
| FIRST FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | wollen, I should be willing, &c. | | |
| SECOND FUTURE. | | | |
| ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden | gewollt haben. I should have been w-g. &c. | | |

(9) *Remarks on dürfen.*

This verb is commonly rendered, *to dare*, though the primary sense seems to be that given above, viz, *to be permitted*: the signification, *to dare*, is one in which it is now seldom used. The verb is also employed (only in the Imperfect Subjunctive, however,) to denote what *probably may be*, and may then be translated by such words as *might, need, would, &c.*: thus, *Es dürfte jetzt zu spät sein*, it *may or might be* too late now: *Es dürfte vielleicht wahr sein*, it *might perchance be* true. It also signifies, *to need, to have occasion, &c.*: as, *Er darf nur reden*, he *needs only* to speak; *Er darf sich darüber nicht wundern*, he *must not or should not wonder at that*. When used without an infinitive after it, one must be supplied to complete the construction: thus, *Er darf nicht in das Haus (kommen)*, he ventures not (*to come*) into the house.

(10) *Remarks on können.*

The original signification of *können* was *to know, or to know how*; hence the present sense, *to be at liberty to do a thing, to be able*; as, *ich kann lesen und schreiben*, I can (*know how to*) read and write. Its chief power now, is to indicate bare possibility, and hence it is often aptly translated by the English, *may*: as, *Er kann es verstanden haben*, he *may* (possibly) have understood it. It differs, therefore, from *dürfen*, when it (*dürfen*) is used (in the Imperfect Subjunctive) to express possibility; for *dürfen* not only signifies that the thing *may be*, but that it *probably is or will be*. *Können* like *dürfen*, has sometimes an infinitive understood after it, to complete the construction.

(11) *Remarks on mögen.*

Mögen marks *possibility* under allowance or concession from another: as, *Er mag lachen*, he *may* laugh; that is, he has permission to laugh, no one hinders him. *Er mag ein braver Mann sein*, he *may* (I grant) be a brave man; where the *possibility* of his being a brave man, is a thing conceded. Kindred to this are the other significations (*chance, inclination, wish, &c.*) usually attributed to this verb: thus, *es möchte regnen*, it *might* rain; that is, the causes that seem to forbid, are likely not to operate; *ich möchte es begweifeln*, I am *disposed or inclined* to doubt it, that is, *I might* doubt it altogether, but for certain circumstances seeming to forbid: *möge es der Himmel geben*, *may* heaven grant it; *ich mag es nicht thun*, I *do not like* to do it, that is, I am not permitted by my feelings to do it cheerfully, &c.

(12) *Remarks on müssen.*

The German *müssen* and the English *must*, are very near equivalents. The predominant power of the word is everywhere that of obligation or necessity, and this being kept in mind, it will often be convenient to employ in translating it, such words, as, *be obliged, am to, have need to* and the like. Often an infinitive is understood with it: as, *ich muß zurück, I must (go) back.*

(13) *Remarks on sollen.*

The prime and prevalent use of *sollen* is to indicate *obligation* or *necessity*. What particular word or phrase shall be employed to translate it, in any given case, must be determined by circumstances. It is only necessary always to adhere to the *primary* idea; for in whatever way expressed, that primary sense must be kept in view. The following examples will be sufficient to show this:

Du sollst das thun, thou *art to* (i. e. *art obliged to*) do that:

Er soll gehen, he *is to* (i. e. *is bidden to*) go:

Soll ich es haben? *am I to* (i. e. *am I bound or am I permitted to*) have it?

Die Flotte soll geschlagen werden sein, the fleet *is said or reported to* (i. e. *must, according to report*) be beaten.

Sie sollen ihn nicht beleidigt haben, you are *supposed or admitted not to* (that is, you *could not of necessity, in my opinion*) have offended him.

Was soll der Gut? what *means* the (i. e. what *must be the meaning of the*) hat?

Wenn er kommen sollte, so will ich es ihm sagen, if he *should come* (i. e. *should be obliged by circumstances to come*) I will tell him so.

So with an infinitive understood: was soll ich? what *am I to (do)?* was soll das? what *signifies that?* (i. e. *supplying sein, what is that to be?*)

Er weiß nicht was er thun soll, he does not know what to do.

(14) *Remarks on wollen.*

Wollen implies future *purpose*: thus, *ich will gehen, I will (to) go* i. e. my *purpose* is to go. The expression of mere futurity would be, *ich werde gehen*. Kindred to this is another signification of *wollen*: as, *er will dich gesehen haben, he wills to have seen you, that is, he will have it or affirms, that he saw you.*

(15) EXAMPLES,

further illustrating the uses of the preceding verbs.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ich darf es thun. | I am allowed to do it. |
| Es dürfte vielleicht wahr sein. | It might perhaps be true. |
| Es dürfte wohl geschehen. | It might easily happen. |
| Du darfst es nur fordern. | You need only ask for it. |
| Er kann weder lesen noch schreiben. | He can neither read nor write. |
| Ich kann mich irren. | I may be mistaken. |
| Ich konnte ihn nicht verstehen. | I could not understand him. |
| Können Sie heute zu mir kommen? | Can you come to me to-day? |
| Ich mag das nicht. | I do not like that. |
| Ich möchte gerne wissen, wieviel Uhr es ist. | I should like to know what o'clock it is. |
| Ich möchte wohl etwas davon haben. | I should like to have some of it. |
| Es mag sein. | It may be. |
| Ich möchte lieber. | I had rather; I would rather. |
| Möge er lange leben! | May he live long! |
| Ich muß es thun. | I must do it. |
| Er mußte sich seines Betragens schämen. | He should be ashamed of his conduct. |
| Mußte es nicht so kommen? | Should it not so have happened? |
| Wenn ich sterben mußte, so würde ich es nicht thun. | If I should die, I would not do it. |
| Ich wollte gerne gehen. | I would willingly (i. e. would like to) go. |
| Ich will zu Fuße gehen. | I will go on foot. |
| Ich wollte, daß wir gehen sollten. | I was for our going. |
| Sie sollen schreiben. | You should write; you are to write. |
| Was soll das heißen? | What does that mean? |
| Es soll sich zugetragen haben. | It is said to have happened. |
| Der König soll angekommen sein. | The king is said to have arrived. |
| Wenn er morgen sterben sollte. | If he should die to-morrow. |
| Wenn das so sein sollte. | If that should be so. |

§ 84. PASSIVE VERBS.

(1) The passive voice is formed by adding to the auxiliary *werden* (*to become*), through all its moods and tenses, the Perfect Participle of the main verb, thus:

| INDIC. ACTIVE. | INDIC. PASSIVE. |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> ich lobe, I praise, | ich werde gelobt, I am praised. |
| <i>Imp.</i> ich lobte, I praised, | ich wurde gelobt, I was praised. |
| <i>Perf.</i> ich habe gelobt, | ich bin gelobt worden, |
| I have praised, | I have been praised. |
| <i>Plup.</i> ich hatte gelobt, | ich war gelobt worden, |
| I had praised, | I had been praised. |
| 1. <i>Fut.</i> ich werde loben, | ich werde gelobt werden, |
| I shall praise, | I shall be praised. |
| 2. <i>Fut.</i> ich werde gelobt haben, | ich werde gelobt worden sein, |
| I shall have praised, | I shall have been praised, &c. |

(2) It will be noted, that wherever the perfect participle of the main verb (as *gelobt* above) is joined with the participle of the auxiliary, the latter is written *worden*, not *geworden*, whereby an offensive repetition (of the syllable *ge*) is avoided. Sometimes *worden* is altogether omitted in the past tenses, but this should be avoided.

(3) The German, by confining *werden* with the past participle to the expression of *passivity* and using *sein*, when the participle is to be taken as a mere *adjective*, has a manifest advantage over the English Passive. Thus, if we wish to say, in German, *he is feared*, it will be, *er wird gefürchtet*; if the intention, however, be merely to mark the state or character of the person as one who is feared, that is, whose character or conduct inspires fear generally, the German will be, *er ist gefürchtet*, he is (a) feared (man.) The form of expression in English, it will be observed, is the same for *both* ideas: "he is feared."

(4) The Germans, however, employ the passive form far less frequently than do the English. They prefer other methods: thus, *man sagt*, one says, i. e. *it is said*; *der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden* the key has been found.

§ 85. PARADIGM OF

Gelobt werden,

| | | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------|
| | | PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSE. | | | | | | | | | | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 ich werde | } gelobt, | } I am | ich werde | } I may | | | | | | | | | |
| | 2 du wirst | | | | | } praised. | du werdest | } thou mayst | | | | | | |
| | 3 er wird | | | | | | | | } he may | | | | | |
| | 1 wir werden | | | | | | | | | } we are | wir werden | } we may | | |
| | 2 ihr werdet | | | | | | | | | | | | } you are | ihr werdet | } you may |
| 3 sie werden | } they are | sie werden | } they may | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | | | | | | | | |
| PLUR. SING. | | | | 1 ich würde | } gelobt, | } I was | ich würde | } I might | | | | | | |
| | | | | 2 du würdest | | | | | } praised. | du würdest | } thou mightest | | | |
| | | | | 3 er würde | | | | | | | | } he might | | |
| | 1 wir würden | } we were | wir würden | } we might | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 2 ihr würdet | | | | | | | | | | | | } you were | ihr würdet | } you might |
| 3 sie würden | } they were | | | | sie würden | } they might | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | | | | | |
| PLUR. SING. | | | | | | | 1 ich bin | } gelobt worden, | } I have | ich sei | } I may have been | | | |
| | | 2 du bist | } been praised. | du seiest | | | } praised, &c. | | | | | | | |
| | | 3 er ist | | | | | | | | | | } er sei | | |
| | 1 wir sind | } we have | | | wir seien | } gelobt worden, | | | | | | | | |
| | 2 ihr seid | | | | | | | | | | | | } you have | ihr seiet |
| 3 sie sind | } they have | | | | | | | sie seien | | | | | | |
| | | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | | | | | | |
| PLUR. SING. | | | 1 ich war | } gelobt worden, | | | } I had | | ich wäre | } I might have been | | | | |
| | | 2 du wärest | } been praised. | | du wärest | } praised, &c. | | | | | | | | |
| | | 3 er war | | | | | | | | | } er wäre | | | |
| | 1 wir wären | } we had | | | | | | wir wären | | | | } gelobt worden, | | |
| | 2 ihr wäret | | | | | | | | | | | | } you had | ihr wäret |
| 3 sie wären | } they had | | | sie wären | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | | | | | | | | |
| PLUR. SING. | | | 1 ich werde | | } gelobt werden, | } I shall | ich werde | | (if) I shall be | | | | | |
| | | 2 du wirst | } praised. | | | | | du werdest | | } praised, &c. | | | | |
| | | 3 er wird | | | | | | | | | } er werde | | | |
| | 1 wir werden | } we shall | | wir werden | | | | | | | | } gelobt werden, | | |
| | 2 ihr werdet | | | | | | | | | | | | } you will | ihr werdet |
| 3 sie werden | } they will | | | | sie werden | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | | | | | | | |
| PLUR. SING. | | | 1 ich werde | | | } gelobt werden | } I shall | ich werde | (if) I shall have | | | | | |
| | | 2 du werdest | } been praised. | du werdest | | | | | | } been praised, | | | | |
| | | 3 er wird | | | | | | | | | } er werde | } &c. | | |
| | 1 wir werden | } we shall | | | wir werden | | | | | | | | } gelobt werden | |
| | 2 ihr werdet | | | | | | | | | | | | | } you will | ihr werdet |
| 3 sie werden | } they will | | | | | sie werden | | | | | | | | |

A PASSIVE VERB.

to be praised.

| CONDITIONAL. | IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTIC. |
|--|--|---|--------------------|
| | PRESENT TENSE. | PRESENT TENSE. | |
| | 1. <i>wanting</i> 2. werde <i>tu</i> 3. werde <i>er</i> 1. werden <i>wir</i> 2. werdet <i>ihr</i> 3. werden <i>sie</i> be thou praised, &c. | gelobt werden, to be praised, | |
| | | PERFECT TENSE. | PERFECT |
| | | gelobt worden sein, to have been praised. | gelobt, praised |
| | | FUTURE TENSE. | |
| FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden } gelobt werden, I should be praised, &c. | | werden gelobt wer- den, to be about to be praised. | |
| SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden } gelobt worden sein, I should have been p-ed, &c. | | | |

§ 86. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

(1) A verb is said to be *reflexive*, when it represents the subject as acting upon itself. We have several such in English: he *deports* himself well; he *bethought* himself; they *betook* themselves to the woods; where the subject and the object, in each case, being identical, the verb is made reflexive. It is manifest, that any active transitive verb may thus become a reflexive verb.

(2) Strictly speaking, however, those only are accounted reflexives, that cannot otherwise be used. The number of these, in German, is much larger than in English. Some of them require the reciprocal pronoun to be in the Dative, but most of them govern the Accusative: thus, (with the Dative,) *ich bilde mir nicht ein*, I do not imagine; (with the Accusative,) *ich schäme mich*, I am ashamed. Further examples are the following:

WITH THE DATIVE.

Sich anmaßen, to presume; usurp.

Sich ausbedingen, to condition.

Sich einbilden, to imagine.

Sich getrauen, to be confident.

Sich schmeicheln, to flatter one's self.

Sich vornehmen, to propose to one's self.

Sich vorstellen, to represent to one's self.

Sich widersprechen, to contradict.

WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

Sich aufschicken, to prepare.

Sich äußern, to intimate.

Sich bedanken, to be thankful for.

Sich bedenken, to pause to think.

Sich begeben, to repair to; to happen.

Sich behelfen, to put up with; to make do

Sich freuen, to rejoice.

Sich widersetzen, to resist.

(3) Since the action of these verbs is confined to the agent, they are rightly regarded as *intransitives*; for the verb and the pronoun under its government, are to be taken *together* as a single expression for intransitive action: thus, *ich freue mich*, I rejoice *myself*, that is, I *rejoice*, or *delight in*.

(4) In like manner, reflexives often become the equivalents of *passives*: as, *der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden*, the key has *found itself*, that is, the key is *found* or *has been found* &c.

(5) In some instances a verb is found to have, both in the simple and in the reflexive form, the same signification: as, *irren* and *sich irren*, to err; to be mistaken.

(6) It is worthy of remark, also, that some transitives, upon passing into the reflexive form, undergo some change of signification: thus, from *berufen*, to call, comes *sich berufen*, to *appeal to*. It is generally easy, however, in these cases, to account for such changes. The following are additional examples:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Bedenken</i> , to think upon; | <i>sich bedenken</i> , to pause to think. |
| <i>Befcheiden</i> , to assign; | <i>sich bescheiden</i> , to be contented with. |
| <i>Finden</i> , to find; | <i>sich finden</i> (in etwas), to accommo- date one's self to a thing. |
| <i>Fürchten</i> , to fear; | <i>sich fürchten</i> , to be afraid of. |
| <i>Hüten</i> , to guard; | <i>sich hüten</i> , to beware. |
| <i>Machen</i> , to make; | <i>sich machen</i> (an etwas), to set about a thing. |
| <i>Stellen</i> , to place; | <i>sich stellen</i> , to feign, pretend. |
| <i>Verantworten</i> , to answer for; | <i>sich verantworten</i> , to defend one's self. |
| <i>Vergehen</i> , to pass away; | <i>sich vergehen</i> , to commit a fault. |
| <i>Verlassen</i> , to leave; | <i>sich verlassen</i> , to rely upon. |

§ 87. PARADIGM OF A

Sich freuen,

| INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|----------------------|--|------------------------------------|------------------|
| PRESENT TENSE. | | PRESENT TENSF. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 ich freue mich, I rejoice. | ich freue mich, I may | } rejoice. |
| | 2 du freuest dich, thou rejoicest. | du freuest dich, thou mayst | |
| | 3 er freue sich, he rejoices. | er freue sich, he may | |
| PLUR. | 1 wir freuen uns, we rejoice. | wir freuen uns, we may | } rejoice. |
| | 2 ihr freuet euch, you rejoice. | ihr freuet euch, you may | |
| | 3 sie freuen sich, they rejoice. | sie freuen sich, they may | |
| IMPERFECT TENSE | | IMPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 ich freuete mich, I rejoiced. | ich freuete mich, I might | } rejoice. |
| | 2 du freuest dich, thou didst rejoice. | du freuest dich, thou mightst: | |
| | 3 er freuete sich, he rejoiced. | er freuete sich, he might | |
| PLUR. | 1 wir freueten uns, we rejoiced. | wir freueten uns, we might | } rejoice. |
| | 2 ihr freuetet euch, you rejoiced. | ihr freuetet euch, you might | |
| | 3 sie freueten sich, they rejoiced. | sie freueten sich, they might | |
| PERFECT TENSE. | | PERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 ich habe mich } I have | ich habe mich } I may have re- | } rejoiced, &c. |
| | 2 du hast dich } thou hast | du habest dich } rejoiced, &c. | |
| | 3 er hat sich } he has | er habe sich } gefreut, | |
| PLUR. | 1 wir haben uns } we have | wir haben uns } gefreut, | } rejoiced. |
| | 2 ihr habet euch } you have | ihr habet euch } gefreut, | |
| | 3 sie haben sich } they have | sie haben sich } gefreut, | |
| PLUPERFECT TENSE. | | PLUPERFECT TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 ich hatte mich } I had | ich hätte mich } I might have | } rejoiced &c. |
| | 2 du hättest dich } thou hadst | du hättest dich } rejoiced, &c. | |
| | 3 er hätte sich } he had | er hätte sich } gefreut, | |
| PLUR. | 1 wir hätten uns } we had | wir hätten uns } gefreut, | } rejoiced. |
| | 2 ihr hättet euch } you had | ihr hättet euch } gefreut, | |
| | 3 sie hätten sich } they had | sie hätten sich } gefreut, | |
| FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | | FIRST FUTURE TENSE. | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 ich werde mich } I shall | ich werde mich } (if) I shall re- | } rejoice, &c. |
| | 2 du wirst dich } thou wilt | du werdest dich } rejoice, &c. | |
| | 3 er wird sich } he will | er werde sich } freuen, | |
| PLUR. | 1 wir werden uns } we shall | wir werden uns } freuen, | } rejoice. |
| | 2 ihr werdet euch } you will | ihr werdet euch } freuen, | |
| | 3 sie werden sich } they will | sie werden sich } freuen, | |
| SECOND FUTURE TENSE. | | SECOND FUTURE TENSE | |
| PLUR. SING. | 1 ich werde mich } I shall | ich werde mich } (if) I shall have | } rejoiced, &c. |
| | 2 du wirst dich } thou wilt | du werdest dich } rejoiced, &c. | |
| | 3 er wird sich } he will | er werde sich } gefreut haben, | |
| PLUR. | 1 wir werden uns } we shall | wir werden uns } gefreut haben, | } have rejoiced. |
| | 2 ihr werdet euch } you will | ihr werdet euch } gefreut haben, | |
| | 3 sie werden sich } they will | sie werden sich } gefreut haben, | |

REFLEXIVE VERB.

to rejoice.

[illegible]

§ 88. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(1) The impersonal verb, properly so called, is one destitute of the *first* and *second* persons: being confined to the third person singular, and having for its grammatical subject the pronoun *es*, without definite reference to any antecedent, as,

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>es regnet</i> , it rains; | <i>es blüht</i> , it lightens; |
| <i>es schneit</i> , it snows; | <i>es friert</i> , it freezes; |
| <i>es donnert</i> , it thunders; | <i>es taut</i> , it thaws; |
| <i>es hagelt</i> , it hails; | <i>es tagt</i> , it dawns. |

(2) It must immediately appear, that a verb may be impersonal, and yet belong to any of the classes of verbs described in preceding sections. Thus some are *transitive*: some are *intransitive*; some are *passive*; some are *reflexive*; &c.

EXAMPLES.

Es ärgert mich, it vexes me, i. e. I am vexed;
es friert ihn, it chills him, i. e. he is chilled or frozen;
es hungert mich, it hungers me, i. e. I am hungry;
es regt, there is a hoar frost;
es heißt, it is said;
es wird viel davon geredet, it is much talked about;
es versteht sich, it understands itself, i. e. it is understood; &c.
es fragt sich, it asks itself, i. e. it is asked, it is the question;
es giebt Menschen, it gives or yields men, i. e. there are men.

§ 89. COMPOUND VERBS.

(1) Various derivative verbs in German are produced by the union of simple words with prefixes. * Most of these prefixes are *separable*, that is, may stand apart from the radicals; some, however, are found to be *inseparable*; some are either separable or inseparable, according to circumstances.

(2) The prefixes are themselves, also, either simple or compound; as, *herkommen*, to come *here* or *hither*; *herüberkommen*, to come

* Under the name of Prefixes are here comprehended all those invariable words, (as adverbs and prepositions,) which are combined with other words to vary or modify their signification. They are, also, often called *Particles*. The simple words with which they are united, are generally verbs; but often nouns and adjectives are, by prefixes, converted into verbs.

over here, or *hither*. In most instances, the prefixes may be translated severally as above; but often they are found to be merely intensive or euphonic. *

§ 90. SIMPLE PREFIXES SEPARABLE.

| | | |
|---------|--------------------------|--|
| Ab, | from, off, down; | Absetzen, to set or put down; to depose. |
| An, | to, at, in, on, towards; | Anfangen, to catch at, i. e. to begin. |
| Auf, | on, upon, up; | Aufgehen, to go up; to rise. |
| Aus, | out, out of, from; | Ausnehmen, to take out; to choose. |
| Bei, | by, near, with; | Beistehen, to stand by; to assist. |
| Da, | there, at; | Dableiben, to remain there, or at, to stay; to persist. |
| Dar, | there, at; | Darreichen, to reach there, i. e. to offer. |
| Ein, | in, into; | Einkaufen, to buy in; to purchase. |
| Empor, | up, upward, on high; | Emporheben, to lift up. |
| Fort, | onward, away, forward; | Fortfahren, to drive or bear on; to continue. |
| Gegen, | towards, against; | Gegenhalten, to hold against; to resist; to compare. |
| In, | in, within; | Inwohnen, to dwell in. |
| Heim, | home, at home; | Heimkehren, to turn homewards; to return. |
| Hier, | hither, here; | Hierbringen, to bring hither, or along. |
| Hin, | thither, there, away; | Hingehen, to go thither, or away. |
| Mit, | with; | Mitnehmen, to take with, or along. |
| Nach, | after; | Nachfolgen, to follow after; to succeed. |
| Nieder, | down, downwards, under; | Niederreißen, to pull down. |
| Ob, | on, over, on account of; | Obliegen, to lie on, i. e. to apply one's self to; to be incumbent on. |
| Vor, | for, before; | Vorgehen, to go before; to surpass. |
| Weg, | away, off; | Wegbleiben, to stay away. |
| Zu, | to, towards; | Zugeben, to give to; to grant. |

* This is likewise often the case in English: thus, *ex* (which literally signifies *out* or *out of*), has, in some words the signification *very*, *exceedingly* or the like; as, *exasperate*, to make *very* angry; so *a*, (literally, *to*, *at*;) in the word *ameliorate* is merely euphonic; the derivative form (*ameliorate*) meaning nothing more than the simple one, *meliorate*.

§ 91. COMPOUND PREFIXES SEPARABLE.

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------------|---|
| Anheim | (an + heim, to-home); | Anheimstellen, to put home to i. e. to refer to. |
| Dabei | (da + bei, there-by); | Dabeistehen, to stand close by. |
| Daher | (da + her, there-hither); | Daherschleichen, to sneak along |
| Dahin | (da + hin, there-thither); | Dahineilen, to hasten away. |
| Dagegen | (da + g. gen, there-against); | Dagegenfein, to be against. |
| Darunter | (da + unter, there-below); | Darunter schlagen, to beat down. |
| Daran | (dar + an, there-to); | Daransetzen, to put or lay there-to, i. e. to risk, to stake. |
| Darauf | (dar + auf, there-on); | Daraufgeben, to give there-on, i. e. to give an earnest; |
| Darin | (dar + ein, there-in); | Darinreden, to talk there-in, i. e. to interrupt. |
| Davon | (da + von, there-from); | Davonlaufen, to run off or away. |
| Davor | (da + vor, there-before); | Davorliegen, to lie before. |
| Dawider | (da + wider, there-against); | Dawiderhaben, to have (objections) against. |
| Dazu | (da + zu, there-to); | Dazuthun, to do (in addition) thereto; to add. |
| Dazwischen | (da + zwischen, there-between); | Dazwischenreden, to speak there in the midst. |
| Einher | (ein + her, into-hither); | Einherziehen, to draw along. |
| Entgegen | (ent + gegen, apart-towards); | Entgegengehen, to go towards; to go to meet. |
| Entzwei | (ent + zwei, apart-two); | Entzweibrechen, to break or burst asunder. |
| Herab | (her + ab, hither-down); | Herabsetzen, to put down; to lower. |
| Heran | (her + an, hither-to); | Heranführen, to bring on or along. |
| Herauf | (her + auf, hither-on); | Herauffahren, to drive or urge on. |
| Heraus | (her + aus, hither-out); | Herausfahren, to drive out. |
| Herbei | (her + bei, hither-along); | Herbeirufen, to call on or towards. |
| Herein | (her + ein, hither-into); | Hereinfahren, to drive in or into. |
| Hernieder | (her + nieder, hither-down) | Herniederblicken, to look under. |
| Herüber | (her + über, hither-over); | Herüberkommen, to come over. |
| Herum | (her + um, hither-around); | Herumgeben, to give or hand around. |
| Herunter | (her + unter, hither-under); | Herunterfahren, to drive down. |
| Hervor | (her + vor, hither-forward); | Hervortreten, to step forward. |
| Herzu | (her + zu, hither-to); | Herzutreten, to step towards. |
| Hinab | (hin + ab, thither-down); | Hinabtreten, to step down. |
| Hinan | (hin + an, thither-to); | Hinantreten, to step up to. |
| Hinauf | (hin + auf, hither-on or up); | Hinaufziehen, to pull up. |
| Hinaus | (hin + aus, thither-out); | Hinauswerfen, to throw out. |
| Hinein | (hin + ein, thither-into); | Hineingießen, to pour into. |
| Hintan | (hint(en) + an, behind-to); | Hintansetzen, to put behind; to undervalue. |

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------------------|---|
| Hinterher | (hinter + her, after-hither) ; | Hinterhersehen, to see afterwards. |
| Hinüber | (hin + über, thither-over) ; | Hinübertragen, to carry over. |
| Hinum | (hin + um, thither-around) ; | Hinumflattern, to flutter there about. |
| Hinunter | (hin + unter, thither-under) ; | Hinunterspringen, to leap down there. |
| Hinweg | (hin + weg, thither-away) ; | Hinwegnehmen, to take away |
| Hinzu | (hin + zu, thither-towards) ; | Hinzuheilen, to hasten away. |
| Ueberein | (über + ein, over-into) ; | Uebereinkommen, to come over into, i. e. to agree. |
| Umher | (um + her, around-hither) ; | Umherschauen, to gaze around. |
| Umhin | (um + hin, around-thither) ; | Umhinkönnen, to be able thereabout ; to forbear. |
| Voran | (vor + an, before-to) ; | Voranstellen, to place before. |
| Vorauf | (vor + auf, before-on or up) ; | Voraufsteigen, to mount on before ; to ascend. |
| Voraus | (vor + aus, before-out) ; | Voraussehen, to see or spy out before hand ; to anticipate. |
| Vorbei | (vor + bei, before-by) ; | Vorbeireiten, to ride along before, to ride past. |
| Vorher | (vor + her, before-hither) ; | Vorhersehen, to foresee. |
| Vorüber | (vor + über, before-over) ; | Vorüberfahren, to drive along past in a coach. |
| Vorweg | (vor + weg, before-away) ; | Vorwegnehmen, to take away before ; to anticipate. |
| Zuvor | (zu + vor, before-to) ; | Zuvorthun, to do before ; to excel. |
| Zurück | (zu + rück, back to) ; | Zurückkehren, to return. |
| Zusammen | (zu + sammen, to-geth-er) | Zusammensetzen, to put together. |

§ 93 OBSERVATIONS ON THE PARADIGM.

(1) An inspection of the Paradigm above will show, that the separation of the prefix from the radical part of the verb, takes place in the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive (when preceded by *zu*.) and the Perfect Participle. In the Indicative and Subjunctive, however, the separation is *not* made, when, in dependent sentences, the verb is placed at the end of a clause or period: thus, als die Sonne diesen Morgen aufging, so verschwand der Nebel, when the sun rose (aufging) this morning, the fog disappeared.

(2) In regard to the *position* of the particle when separated, it must be noted that, in the Indicative, Subjunctive and Imperative, it stands *after* the radical; often, also, after the several words dependent upon it: thus, ich fange das Buch an, (where an belonging to fange, comes after the object,) I begin the book.

(3) In the Infinitive and the Perfect Participle, on the contrary, the particle comes *before* the radical: being separated from it, in the *Infinitive*, by *zu*, (when that preposition is employed,) and, in the *Participle*, by the augment *ge*, which is peculiar to that part of the verb: thus, anfangen, (an+zu+fangen) to begin; to commence; vorgeht, (vor+ge+ht) placed before one; represented.

(4) It remains to be added, that particles, when separated from the radicals, receive the full or principal accent; and, that the radicals (if verbs) have the same form of conjugation, old or new, regular or irregular, as when employed without prefixes.

§ 94. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

The Prefixes of this class, as the name implies, are always found in close union with their radicals. They allow not even the augment syllable *ge*, in the Perfect Participle, to intervene; but reject it altogether: * as, bedeckt (not begedeckt) covered, from bedecken, to cover. Neither is *zu* (when used) allowed to come between the prefix and the Infinitive; but stands before the two combined into one word: as, zu empfangen, (not empfungen,) to receive: except in case of compound prefixes, wherein the first component is a separable and the second an inseparable particle; *zu* being then inserted between the two particles; as, anzuerkennen, (from anerkennen). The inseparable prefixes are always unaccented.

* To this, however, must be excepted the case of the Prefix *miß*; which, in a few instances, allows the augment *ge* to be *prefixed*: thus, (from mißdeuten, to misinterpret.) we have, in the Perfect Participle, gemißdeutet.

§ 95. SIMPLE PREFIXES INSEPARABLE.

| | | |
|-------|--|--|
| After | afte behind; | Aftertreten, to talk behind (one's back) to slander. |
| Be, | near by, over, to make; | Befommen, to come by, i. e. to get, to obtain. |
| Emp, | in, within; | Empfinden, to find or feel within, to perceive. |
| Ent, | apart away, to deprive of; | Entgehen, to go away or off; to escape. |
| Er, | forth, for, on behalf of; | Erlären, to make clear for (one); to explain. |
| Ge, | (mainly, <i>intensive or euphonic</i>); | Gedenken (same as denken), to think of. |
| Miß, | wrong, erroneously; | Mißbeuten, to misinterpret. |
| Ver, | away, a loss; | Verschlafen, to sleep away, i. e. lose by sleeping. |
| Wider | against; | Widerstehen, to stand against; to resist. |
| Zer, | apart, asunder; | Zerschneiden, to cut apart, or in pieces. |

§ 96. COMPOUND PREFIXES INSEPARABLE.

| | | |
|--------|------------------------------|--|
| Aube | (an + be, to — near); | Aubetreffen, to hit or touch near to; to concern. |
| Aner | (an + er, to — for); | Anerkennen, to acknowledge; to own. |
| Aufer | (auf + er, up — for); | Auferbauen, to build up for; to erect. |
| Auser | (aus + er, out — for); | Auserwählen, to choose out for; to elect. |
| Anver | (an + ver, to — away); | Anvertrauen, to give away in trust; to confide to. |
| Beauf | (be + auf, near — on or up); | Beauftragen, to bring (duty) upon, i. e. to commission. |
| Mißver | (miß + ver, wrong — away); | Mißverstehen, to understand wrong, i. e. to mistake. |
| Vorbe | (vor + be, before — near); | Vorbehalten, to hold or keep ahead i. e. to put off; to reserve. |

§ 97. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *Be* has in German the same power which it has in English. It is, therefore, in most cases, better *transferred* than *translated*. Its uses will be easily learned from examples. Thus, from

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Klagen, to moan. | Beflagen, to bemoan. |
| Streuen, to strow. | Bestreuen, to bestrow. |
| Folgen, to follow. | Befolgen, to follow after, i. e. to obey. |
| Arbeiten, to labor. | Bearbeiten, to labor upon; elaborate |
| Lachen, to laugh. | Belachen, to laugh at. |
| Flügel, a wing. | Beflügel, to furnish with wings. |
| Glück, happiness. | Beglücken, to make happy. |
| Frei, free. | Befreien, to set free. |

In some instances, it's merely *euphonic*.

(2) *Ent* and *ent*. *Ent* is, probably, only another form of *ent*: occurring, however, only in three verbs; (*empfinden*, to feel; *empfangen*, to receive; *empfehlen*, to recommend;) and bearing a sense but remotely related to its original. The prime and predominant power of *ent* is that of indicating *separation, departure, privation*.

In some instances it has the kindred sense of *approach* or *transition* from one point or condition towards another. Examples.

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Gehen</i> , to go. | <i>Entgehen</i> , to go away, to get off. |
| <i>Ziehen</i> , to draw. | <i>Entziehen</i> , to withdraw. |
| <i>Binden</i> , to bind. | <i>Entbinden</i> , to unbind. |
| <i>Haupt</i> , the head. | <i>Enthaupten</i> , to deprive of head, to behead. |
| <i>Kraft</i> , power. | <i>Entkräften</i> , to deprive of power weaken. |
| <i>Blöde</i> , dim-eyed, dull, bashful. | <i>Entblöden</i> , to divest of shame, be bold. |
| <i>Brennen</i> , to burn, | <i>Entbrennen</i> , to take fire, to kindle. |
| <i>Sprechen</i> , to speak. | <i>Entsprechen</i> , to answer, or correspond to. |

Ent is sometimes, also, merely *intensive* or euphonic: as, *entleeren* (from *leer*, *empty*), to empty out.

(3) *Er* and *ver*. *Er*, as a general thing, conveys the idea of *getting* or *gaining* for some one, by means of that which is expressed by the word connected with it; as, *erbiten*, to get, or try to get, by begging. It finds its exact opposite in *ver*: which marks what is *against* or *away* from some one's interest or benefit; as, *verbitten*, to beg off, to decline. The force and use of these particles are best illustrated by examples.

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Baden</i> , to bathe. | <i>Erbaden</i> , to get or gain by bathing |
| <i>Finden</i> , to find. | <i>Erfinden</i> , to find out for one's self, invent. |
| <i>Stehen</i> , to stand. | <i>Erstehen</i> , to arise, originate. |
| <i>Bauen</i> , to build. | <i>Erbauen</i> , to erect, to produce. |
| <i>Sagen</i> , to say or speak. | <i>Versagen</i> , to speak against, to deny. |
| <i>Mauern</i> , to wall, or make a wall. | <i>Vermauern</i> , to wall against, stop by wall. |
| <i>Spielen</i> , to play. | <i>Verspielen</i> , to play away, to lose by gambling. |
| <i>Führen</i> , to carry, or lead. | <i>Verführen</i> , to lead away, to seduce. |
| <i>Salzen</i> , to salt. | <i>Versalzen</i> , to oversalt, spoil in salting. |

(4) *Er* and *ver* are, also, both employed in co-verting nouns and adjectives into verbs expressive of *transition* from one state or condition into another: thus,

Erfalten, (falt, cold) to take cold. *Berebeln*, (edel, noble) to ennoble
Erfühnen, (fühn, bold) to become *Bergöttern*, (Gott, God) to deify.
 bold, dare.

Erfahmen, (lahm, lame) to become *Veralteln*, (alt, old) to grow old or
 lame. obsolete.

Erfklären, (klar, clear) to make *Bereinen*, (ein, one) to make one,
 plain. unite.

In some instances, moreover, *er* and *ver* are only *euphonic* or *intensive*.

§ 98. PREFIXES SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

(1) The Prefixes of this class, when separable, are always under the full accent; when inseparable, the accent falls upon the radical.

(2) Their effect, *when separable*, is, in union with radicals to produce certain *intransitive* compounds*, in which each of the parts (prefix and radical) has its own peculiar and natural signification.

(3) Their effect, *when inseparable*, is, in connection with the radicals, to form certain *transitive* compounds; which, for the most part, are used in a figurative or metaphorical sense.

(4) We subjoin a list of the prefixes of this class: illustrating each by a couple of examples; the first being one in which the prefix is separable; the second one in which it is inseparable.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Durch, through; | { Durch'bringen, to press or force through; |
| | { Durchbrin'gen, to penetrate. |
| Hinter, behind; | { Hin'tergehen, to go behind; |
| | { Hinterge'hen, to deceive. |
| Ueber, over; | { Ue'bersetzen, to set or put over; |
| | { Ueberse'ten, to translate. |
| Um, around; | { Um'gehen, to go around; |
| | { Umge'h'en, to evade. |
| Unter, under; | { Un'terschieben, to shove or push under; |
| | { Unterschie'b'en, to defer; also, to substitute. |
| Wieder, again; back; | { Wie'derholen, to fetch or bring back; |
| | { Wiederho'len, to repeat. |

* There are, however, some compounds of *durch* and *um*, in which, though these particles are separable, the verbs are, nevertheless, transitive. Still, it will be found, that in such cases the signification of the compound is figurative; as, *umbringen*, to bring about (*one's death*;) i. e. to *kill*.

§ 99. VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(1) A variety of compounds is produced by the union of verbs with nouns and adjectives. These follow the same general laws which govern those produced by means of prefixes. Some of them, accordingly, are *separable*; as,

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------|------|--------|-----|-----------|
| Geßtschlagen, to miscarry; | from | geßl | and | schlagen. |
| Freisprechen, to acquit; | " | frei | " | sprechen. |
| Gleichkommen, to equal; | " | gleich | " | kommen. |
| Losreißen, to tear away; | " | los | " | reißen. |
| Stattfinden, to take place; | " | statt | " | finden. |

(2) Some are *inseparable*; as,

| | | | | |
|----------------------------|------|-------|-----|------------|
| Frechlocken, to exult; | from | frech | and | locken. |
| Frühstückcn, to breakfast; | " | früh | " | stücken. |
| Fuchsschwänzen, to fawn; | " | fuchs | " | schwänzen. |
| Handhaben, to handle; | " | hand | " | haben. |
| Liebäugeln, to ogle; | " | lieb | " | äugeln. |
| Liebkosen, to caress; | " | lieb | " | kosen. |
| Muthmaßen, to suspect; | " | muth | " | maßen. |
| Vollziehen, to perform; | " | voll | " | ziehen. |
| Willfahren, to gratify; | " | will | " | fahren. |
| Weissagen, to foretell; | " | weis | " | sagen. |

(3) These verbs take the augment syllable *ge* in the perfect participle: except *vollziehen*, which has *vollzogen*. In some cases, however, verbs compounded with *voll*, also, take the augment; as, *vollgeoffen*, from *vollgießen*, to pour full.

§ 100. THE ADVERBS.

(1) -Adverbs in German, as in other languages, serve to modify the signification of verbs, participles, adjectives and, often, also that of one another: denoting, for the most part, certain limitations of time, place, degree and manner. Hence are they usually classified according to their *meaning*.

(2) They are indeclinable; and formed, either by derivation or composition, from almost every other part of speech: of some, however, the origin is wholly unknown.

Arranged according to derivation, adverbs are divisible into the following classes:

§ 101. ADVERBS FORMED FROM NOUNS.

Adverbs are formed from nouns by affixing the letter *s*. This termination *s* is nothing more than the sign of the genitive singular;

which case, not only of nouns, but also of adjectives, participles, &c. is often made to perform the office of an adverb. * Examples :

| | | |
|------------------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| Morgens, in the morning ; | from | der Morgen, morning. |
| Abends, in the evening ; | " | der Abend, evening. |
| Tage, in the day ; | " | der Tag, day. |
| Theils, in part, or partly ; | " | der Theil, part. |
| Flugs, swiftly ; | " | der Flug, flight. |
| Durchgehends, generally ; | " | durchgehend, passing through. |
| Zusehend's, visibly ; | " | zusehend, looking at. |

§ 102. ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES.

(1) Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the addition of the suffixes *lich*, *haft* and *ig* ; which, except the last, are also regular *adjective* terminations. These endings are chiefly expressive of manner ; and may be translated sometimes by a corresponding suffix (as the English *ly* or *ishly*), and sometimes by some equivalent phrase. Examples :

| | | |
|-------------------------------|------|----------------------|
| Wahrlich, truly ; verily ; | from | wahr, true. |
| Bösehaft, maliciously ; | " | böse, evil ; wicked. |
| Weislich, wisely ; | " | weise, wise. |
| Freilich, sure ; to be sure ; | " | frei, free ; sure. |
| Blindlings, blindly ; | " | blind, blind. |

(2) The letter *s*, also, as above stated, added to adjectives, gives rise to a class of adverbs : * thus,

| | | |
|---------------------------|------|-----------------------|
| Rechts, on the right ; | from | recht, right. |
| Links, on the left ; | " | link, left. |
| Anders, otherwise ; | " | ander, other. |
| Bereits, already ; | " | bereit, ready. |
| Besonders, particularly ; | " | besonder, particular. |
| Stets, continually ; | " | stet, continual. |

(3) Here note, also, that *almost all German adjectives, in the absolute form, that is, in the simple form without the terminations of*

* The letter *s* is, also, sometimes affixed to adverbs ending in *mal* ; as, *normal's* formerly ; *damals*, at the time ; *vielmals*, many times. For numeral adverbs ending in *mal*, *lei*, &c. See the Section on Numerals.

declension, are employed as adverbs : thus, *er rennt schnell*, he runs rapidly ; *er handelt ehrlich*, he acts honestly.

§ 103. ADVERBS FORMED FROM PRONOUNS.

(1) These are, chiefly, *da*, *there* ; from *der*, *die*, *das*, *this* or *that* ; *wo*, *where* ; from *wer*, *was*, *who*, *what* ; *het*, *hüher*, and *hin*, *thither* ; from some corresponding demonstrative pronoun no longer found.

(2) The pronominal adverbs in combination with other words, give rise to a number of compounds. Thus *da* and *wo*, united with prepositions, serve often instead of the dative and accusative (*neuter*) of the pronouns *der*, *wer* and *welcher*, respectively. It will be noticed, that when the other word begins with a vowel or with the letter *n*, *da* and *wo* are written *dar* and *wor* ; that is, that *r* is inserted for the sake of euphony. The following are compounds of *da* and *wo* :

Dabei, thereby,
i. e. by this or that.

Dafür, therefor,
i. e. for this or that.

Damit, therewith,
i. e. with this or that.

Darin, therein,
i. e. in this or that.

Darunter, thereunder or among,
i. e. under this or that.

Darum, thereabout or therefor,
i. e. for this or that ; therefor.

Daran, thereon,
i. e. on this or that.

Darauf, thereupon,
i. e. upon this or that.

Daraus, therefrom,
i. e. from this or that.

Davon, thereof,
i. e. of this or that.

Dazu, thereto,
i. e. to this or that.

Dadurch, there-through or thereby
i. e. through or by this or that

Wobei, whereby,
i. e. by which.

Wofür, wherefor,
i. e. for which.

Womit, wherewith,
i. e. with which.

Worin, wherein,
i. e. in which.

Worunter, whereunder, among,
i. e. under this or that.

Worum, whereabout,
i. e. about or for which ;
wherefor ; why.

Woran, whereto,
i. e. to which.

Worauf, whereupon,
i. e. upon which.

Woraus, wherefrom,
i. e. from which.

Wovon, whereof,
i. e. of which.

Wozu, whereto,
i. e. to which.

Wodurch, whereby,
i. e. by or through which

(3) In like manner *her* and *hin* appear, also, combined with other words. Between these two particles a distinction exists, wherever they are used, whether alone or in composition with other words, which should be well understood and always remembered. They are, in signification, exact *opposites*: *her* indicating motion or direction *towards* the speaker; *hin* implying motion or direction *away from* the speaker. The following are examples:

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Herab</i> , down hither (i. e. <i>where the speaker is</i>). | <i>Hinab</i> , down thither (i. e. <i>away from the speaker</i>). |
| <i>Herauf</i> , up hither. | <i>Hinauf</i> , up thither. |
| <i>Heraus</i> , out hither. | <i>Hinaus</i> , out thither. |
| <i>Herein</i> , in hither; <i>into this place</i> . | <i>Hinein</i> , into that place. |
| <i>Hierher</i> , or <i>hiesher</i> , hither here; this way. | <i>Hierhin</i> , thither; this way forward. |
| <i>Herüber</i> , over hither. | <i>Hinüber</i> , over thither. |
| <i>Herunter</i> , under hither. | <i>Hinunter</i> , under there. |
| <i>Daher</i> , from there hither, i. e. <i>thence</i> . | <i>Dahin</i> , from thither (to) there, i. e. <i>thither</i> . |
| <i>Woher</i> , from which place hither, i. e. <i>whence</i> . | <i>Whihin</i> , from which place thither, i. e. <i>whither</i> . |

(4) We have no words in English, corresponding exactly in use and force with *her* and *hin*; and therefore, though everywhere in German their force may be *felt*, it cannot always be expressed by single words, in translation. Hence are they often treated as expletives.

§ 104. ADVERBS FORMED FROM VERBS.

(1) Adverbs are formed from verbs by suffixing to the radical part the termination *lich*. All adverbs so formed, however, are equally employed as adjectives: thus,

- Glaublich* (from *glaub*+*en*, to believe), credibly.
- Sterblich* (from *sterb*+*en*, to die), mortally.
- Kláglich* (from *klag*+*en*, to lament), lamentably.
- Merklich* (from *merk*+*en*, to note; perceive), perceptibly.

§ 105. ADVERBS FORMED BY COMPOSITION.

(1) Besides the classes given above, a numerous list of adverbs in German is produced by the union of various parts of speech. Thus, the word *Beise* (*mode, manner*), combined with nouns, forms a class of adverbs employed chiefly in specifying things indi-

vidually or separately: thus, *schriftweise*, step by step; *theilweise*, part by part; *tropfenweise*, drop by drop; *wogenweise*, wave by wave; like waves. *Weise* is also added to adjectives; as, *diebischerweise*, thievishly; *glücklicherweise*, fortunately.

(2) Sometimes an adverb and a preposition are united; examples of which may be found above under the head of adverbs formed from pronouns.

(3) Sometimes adverbs are formed by the union or the repetition of prepositions: as, *durchaus*, throughout; thoroughly; *durch und durch*, through and through.

(4) Sometimes a noun and a pronoun joined together, serve as an adverb; as, *meinerseits*, on my side; *dießseits*, on this side; *allerdings*, by all means.

(5) Sometimes one adverb is formed from another by the addition of a suffix; as, *rücklings*, backwards: sometimes by the union of another adverb; as, *nimmermehr*, nevermore.

(6) Sometimes the several words composing a phrase, are, by being brought into union, made to perform the office of an adverb: thus, *fürwahr* (for *für wahr*), verily; *sonst* (for the obsolete *so ne ist*, if it is not), otherwise; else.

§ 106. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

(1) Many adverbs, chiefly, however, those expressive of manner are susceptible of the degrees of comparison. The forms for these are the same in adverbs as in adjectives.

(2) It must be observed, however, that, when a *comparison*, strictly speaking, is intended, the form of the superlative produced by prefixing *am* (See Obs. § 38.), should always be employed; as, *er schreibt am schönsten*, he writes the most beautifully (*of all*).

(3) If, on the other hand, we purpose, not to compare individuals one with another, but merely to denote extreme excellence or eminence, there are three ways in which it may properly be done: *first*, by using the simple or absolute form of the superlative; as, *er grüßt freundlichst*, he greets or salutes in a manner *very* friendly, *very* cordially; *secondly*, by employing *auf* (*auf+das*) with the accusative, or *zum* (*zu+dem*) with the dative, of the superlative; as, *auf freundlichste*, in a manner *very* friendly; *zum schönsten*, in a manner *very* beautiful; *lastly*, by adding to the simple form of the superlative, the termination *ens*; *bestens*, the best or in the best manner; *höchstens*, at the highest or at the most.

§ 107. THE PREPOSITIONS.

(1) The prepositions in German, that is, the words employed merely to denote the *relations* of things, are commonly classified according to the cases with which they are construed. Some of them are construed with the genitive only; some with the dative only; some with the accusative only; and some either with the dative or accusative, according to circumstances.

(2) They may also, on a different principle, be divided into two general classes: the Primitive and the Derivative. The primitive prepositions always govern either the dative or the accusative: the derivative prepositions are found, for the most part, in connection with the genitive only.

§ 108. TABLE OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

(1) Prepositions construed with (2) Prepositions construed with

| THE GENITIVE. | | THE DATIVE. | |
|------------------|------------------|-------------|----------|
| Anstatt, or | Oberhalb, | Aus, | Nebst, |
| statt, | Troß, | Außer, | |
| Außerhalb, | Um — willen, | Bei, | Ob, |
| Diesseit, or | Unfern, | Binnen, | |
| diesseits, | Ungeachtet, | Entgegen, | Sammt, |
| halb, halben, or | Unterhalb, | Gegenüber, | |
| halber, | Unweit, | Gemäß, | Seit, |
| Innerhalb, | Bermitteltst, o: | | |
| Jenseit, or | mitteltst, | Mit, | Von, |
| jenseits, | Bermöge, | | |
| Kraft, | Während, | Nach, | Zu, |
| Längs, | Wegen, | | |
| Laut, | Zufolge. | Nächst, | Zwischen |

(3) Prepositions construed with (4) Prepositions construed with

| THE ACCUSATIVE. | | THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE. | |
|-----------------|---------|---------------------------|-----------|
| Durch, | Dhne, | An, | Ueber, |
| Für, | Sonder, | Auf, | Unter, |
| Gegen, or | Um, | Hinte, | Vor, |
| gen, | Wider. | In, | Zwischen. |
| | | Neben, | |

§ 109 PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE GENITIVE.

We now give again the prepositions governing the several cases respectively, with their proper definitions: subjoining, also, some few observations on such of them as seem to require further explanation. And first, we mention those construed with the genitive.

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| Anstatt, or statt, | instead. | Um — willen, | for the sake of. |
| Außerhalb, | without; out- | Ungeachtet, | notwithstanding. |
| | side. | Unterhalb, | below; on the |
| Diesseits, or dies- | on this side. | | lower side. |
| seits, | | Unfern, | near; not far |
| Halben, or halb- | on account of. | | from. |
| ber, | | Unweit, | near; not far |
| Innerhalb, | within; inside. | | from. |
| Jenseit, or jens- | on that side; | Vermittelt, or | by means of. |
| seits, | beyond. | mittelt, | |
| Kraft, | by virtue of. | Vermöge, | by dint of. |
| Längs, (also | along. | Während, | during. |
| gov. Dat.) | | | |
| Laut, | according to. | Wegen, | on account of. |
| Oberrhalb, | above. | | |
| Trotz, (also | in spite of. | Zufolge, (also | in consequence |
| gov. Dat.) | | gov. Dat.) | of. |

§ 110. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *Anstatt* is compounded of an (*in*) and *Statt* (*place*;) and these components may sometimes be separated: thus, an *des Bruders Statt* *in* the brother's *stead*. In this case the part, *Statt*, takes its proper character, which is that of a noun.

(2) *Halben*, like *wegen* and *um — willen*, expresses *motive*. Strictly speaking, however, *halb en* seems to point to a motive that is *direct*, *immediate* and *special*; *wegen* indicates an object less *definite* and more *distant*; while *um — willen* looks to the *will*, *wish* or *welfare* of that which is expressed by the genitive. These distinctions, however, are not always regarded even by writers of reputation.

(3) *Halben* or *halber* is always placed *after* the noun which it governs: the form. *halb en* being preferred, when the noun has an article or pronoun before it; and *halber*, when it has not: thus, *des Geldes halben*, for the sake of money; *Vergnügens halber*, for the sake of pleasure. *Halben* is often united with the genitive of the personal pronouns; in which case the final letter (*r*) is omitted and its place

applied by *t*: thus, *meinetthalben*, (instead of *meinerthalben*,) for *my* sake; *deinetthalben*, for *thy* sake; *seinetthalben*, for *his* sake, &c. So, too, it occurs in the compounds *deßhalb*, on account of that; *weßhalb*, on account of which: wherein, as in *außerhalb*, *innerhalb*, *oberhalb*, *unterhalb*, the form *halb* is shortened into *halb*. In the last four, *halb* has the sense *part* or *side*; as, *außerhalb*, *outside*, &c.

(4) *Wegen* may either come *before* or *after* its noun: as, *wegen der großen Gefahr*, on account of the great danger; *seiner Gesundheit wegen*, on account of his health.

(5) *Um* — *willen* is always separated by the genitive which it governs: thus, *um Gottes willen*, for God's sake.

(6) *Ungeachtet* may either *precede* or *succeed* its noun: as, *ungeachtet aller Hindernisse*, notwithstanding all hindrances; *seines Fleißes ungeachtet*, notwithstanding his industry.

(7) *Vermöge*, *by dint* or *means of*, indicates physical ability: as, *vermöge des Fleißes*, by means of industry. It thus differs from *kraft*, which points rather to the exercise of moral power: as, *kraft meines Amtes*, by virtue of my office.

(8) *Zufolge*, when it comes *after* the word which it governs, takes the latter in the *Dative*: as, *dem Befehle zufolge*, in consequence of (or pursuant to) the order.

(9) *Längs* and *trotz* may, also, govern the *Dative*.

§ 111. PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE DATIVE.

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Aus</i> , | out; out of. | <i>Nach</i> , | after; to; according to. |
| <i>Außer</i> , | without; outside of. | <i>Nächst</i> , | next; next to. |
| <i>Bei</i> , | by; near; with. | <i>Nebst</i> , | together with. |
| <i>Binnen</i> , | within. | <i>Ob</i> , | over; at. |
| <i>Gegen</i> , | towards; opposite to. | <i>Sammt</i> , | together with. |
| <i>Gegenüber</i> , | over against. | <i>Seit</i> , | since. |
| <i>Gemäß</i> , | conformably with. | <i>Von</i> , | from; of. |
| <i>Mit</i> , | with. | <i>Zu</i> , | to, at. |
| | | <i>Zurwider</i> , | against; contrary. |

§. 112. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *Aus* indicates the *place*, the *source* or the *material* whence any thing is produced; as, *aus dem Hause*, out of the house; *aus Liebe*, out of love; *aus Nichts hat Gott die Welt gemacht* out of nothing has God made the world.

(2) *Außer* differs from *aus*, in that it denotes *situation* rather than *transition*: thus, *aus dem Hause* marks *motion* from or out of the house, while *außer dem Hause* signifies *position* in respect to the house; that is, outside of the house; abroad: hence comes, also, the signification, *besides*; *exclusive of*; as, *Niemand außer mir war zugegen*, no one besides, or except me was present.

(3) *Bei* shows the relation of *proximity* or *identity* in respect to persons, places, times, &c.: as, *er wohnt bei seinem Bruder* he resides *with* his brother; *bei dem Hause*, *by* or *near* the house; *bei der Schöpfung*, *at* the creation; *bei meiner Ankunft*, *at* or *upon* my arrival; *bei dem Plato*, *in* Plato, that is, in the works of Plato. *Bei* is also used in making oath or protest; as, *bei Gott*; *bei meiner Ehre*; *by* God; *by*, or *upon* my honor: a use easily derived from the primary signification of the word. It should be added that the German *bei* (unlike the English *by*) is not properly employed to denote the cause, means or instrument of an action: this is done by the words *durch* *von*, or *mit*: *ich fahre mit der Eisenbahn*.

(4) *Binne* is used in denoting a limitation of *time*; as, *binne acht Tagen*, within eight days.

(5) *Gegen* always comes *after* its noun; and denotes the relation of parties moving *towards* one another so as to meet: hence it gets the significations *opposite to*, *over against*: thus, *der Knabe läuft seinem Vater entgegen*, the boy runs *towards*, that is, *to meet* his father; *dem Winde entgegen*, *against* the wind.

(6) *Gegenüber* marks an opposite *position* of things; and like *entgegen*, comes after its noun; as, *dem Hause gegenüber*, *opposite to*, or *fronting* the house.

(7) *Mit* signifies sometimes the relation of *union*; sometimes that of *instrumentality*; as, *er arbeitet mit seinem Vater*, he works with his father; *mit einem Messer schneiden*, to cut *with* a knife: sometimes, also, it indicates the *manner* of an action; as, *mit Gewalt*; *mit Eile*.

(8) *Nach*, in all its uses, has its nearest equivalent in the English word *after*; as, *zehn Minuten nach vier*, ten minutes *after* four; *nach englischer Mode*, *after* the English fashion; *der Nase nach*, *after* (that is, *following* after) your nose; *dem Strome nach*, *after* (that is, *in the direction of*) the stream; *der Beschreibung nach*, *after* (that is, *according to*) the description; *wir gehen nach der Stadt*, we are going *after* (that is, *in the direction of*, *towards*, or *to*) the city; *das Schiff ist nach Amerika bestimmt*, the ship is bound *after* (that is, *for*) America, &c.

(9) When direction towards a *person*, instead of a place, is indi-

ated, *zu* is employed; as, *ich werde zu meinem Vater gehen*, I shall go to my father. Sometimes *nach* is used in connection with *zu*; as, *er lief nach der Stadt zu*, he ran (literally, *after to*) towards the city. When it denotes direction *with*, as in the phrase, *dem Strome nach*, following, or going *with* the stream, it is put *after* the noun which it governs: so, also, when it has the kindred sense, *according to*; as, *meiner Meinung nach*, according to my opinion. If, however, in the latter case, a genitive depends on the noun under the government of the preposition, *nach* precedes; as, *nach der Beschreibung des Schiller*, according to Schiller's description.

(10) *Nebst* and *sammt* have the same *general* signification, *together with*; but, strictly speaking, differ in this, that *sammt* not only indicates *conjoint*, but, also, *simultaneous* action: thus, *Aaron sammt seinen Söhnen sollen ihre Hände auf sein Haupt legen*, Aaron together with (i. e. *simultaneously with*) his sons shall lay their hands upon his head.

(11) *Ob* is seldom used except in poetry.

(12) *Von* marks the *source* or *origin* of a thing, and has the same latitude of signification as its English equivalent *from*: thus, *der Wind wehet von Osten*, the wind blows from the East; *das Gedicht ist von ihm*, that poem is from (*by*) him. With *an* or *auf* following, it indicates the extent of a period of time: *von der ersten Kindheit an*, from earliest childhood on; *von seiner Jugend auf*, from his youth up.

(13) *Zu* primarily is a mere sign of *transition*; but is made to denote a variety of cognate relations, from a state of motion to a state of rest. Examples best illustrate its use: thus, *ich will zu meinem Vater gehen*, I will go to my father; *wir reisen zu Wasser und zu Lande*, we travel by land and by water; *zu Pferde*, on horseback; *zu Fuß*, on foot; *zu Hause*, at home; *zu jener Zeit*, at that time; *er hat mich zum (for zu dem) Narren gemacht*, he has made me (*to become*) a fool; *er thut es mir zu Liebe*, he does it to (*show*) love for me. It is sometimes used as an adverb; as, *geh zu*, go on; *zu viel*, too much; *mache die Thür zu*, shut the door to.

(14) *Gegenwärtig*, *against*, *contrary to*, comes *after* the word, which it governs.

§ 113. PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|--------|-----------------|
| Durch, | through. | Separ, | apart; without. |
| Für, | for; in place of. | Um, | about; around. |
| Gegen or gen, | towards. | Wider, | against |
| Ohne, | without. | | |

§ 114. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *Durch* has its exact equivalent in the English word *through*: as, *durch die Stadt gehen*, to go through the city; *durch Ihren Beistand*, through your aid; *das ganze Jahr durch* (where, as often in English, the preposition comes *after* the noun), *the whole year through*.

(2) *Gegen* (contract form, *gen*) indicates motion *towards*; and hence often has the signification *opposite to*; but whether it marks direction towards, in a manner friendly or otherwise, must be determined by the context. In this respect, it differs from *wider*, *against*, which denotes an opposition, doing or designing evil.

(3) *Ohne* and *sonder* are of the same import; but the latter is seldom used, and then only, when the substantive has no article before it.

(4) *Um*, like the English word *about*, indicates the going or being of one thing around another; and hence denotes also nearness, change of position, succession, &c.: thus, *um den Tisch sitzen*, to sit about the table; *wirf deinen Mantel um dich*, throw thy cloak about thee; *um zwei Uhr*, about (literally, *close about*, i. e. *exactly*) two o'clock; *einen Tag um den andern*, one day *about* another, that is, every other day; *es ist um ihn geschehen*, it is done *about* him, that is, it is all over with him; *um Geld spielen*, to play about (*for*) money; *um zehn Jahre jünger*, younger about (*by*) ten years, &c. Before an Infinitive preceded by *zu* (that is, before the *Supine*, as it is sometimes called), *um* denotes purpose; as, *um Ihnen zu zeigen*, *in order* to show you; *um zu schreiben*, *in order* to write, or for the *purpose* of writing.

§ 115. PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>An</i> , | on; at; near. | <i>Über</i> , | over; above. |
| <i>Auf</i> , | on; upon. | <i>Unter</i> , | under; among. |
| <i>Hinter</i> , | behind. | <i>Vor</i> , | before. |
| <i>In</i> , | in, or into. | <i>Zwischen</i> , | betwixt; between. |
| <i>Neben</i> , | beside. | | |

§ 116. OBSERVATIONS.

These prepositions govern either the accusative or the dative; but not without a difference of signification: for, when motion *towards*, that is, motion from one point to another, is indicated, the *accusative*

is required : when, however, motion or rest *in* any given place or condition is signified, the dative is used ; thus, der Knabe läuft in den Garten, the boy runs *into* (motion *towards*) the garden ; der Knabe läuft in dem Garten, the boy runs *in* (motion *within*) the garden. This is the *general* principle ; which will be found, with more or less distinctness, everywhere to prevail in the use of the prepositions of this class. We subjoin a list of examples.

| | | |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|
| Dat. | An einem Orte wohnen, | to dwell in or at a place. |
| Acc. | An einen Freund schreiben, | to write to a friend. |
| Dat. | Er arbeitet an einem Buche, | he is working on a book. |
| Acc. | An etwas denken, | to think on (i. e. <i>turn one's thoughts towards</i>) something. |
| Dat. | Er ist an der Auszehrung gestorben, | he died by consumption. |
| Acc. | Ich stelle den Tisch an die Wand, | I put the table against (<i>towards</i>) the wall. |
| Dat. | Schwach an Verstande, | weak in understanding. |
| Acc. | Bis an den Abend, | even to or until evening. |
| Dat. | Am Morgen und am Abend, | in the morning and in the evening. |
| Dat. | Auf dem Thurme, | on (i. e. <i>resting on</i>) the tower. |
| Acc. | Auf den Thurm, | upon (i. e. <i>climbing</i>) the tower. |
| Dat. | Auf dem Lande wohnen, | to live in the country. |
| Acc. | Auf das Land reisen, | to travel into the country. |
| Dat. | Auf der Post, | at the post-office. |
| Dat. | Auf der Schule, | at school. |
| Acc. | Auf eine Sache denken, | to think (<i>turn thoughts</i>) on a thing. |
| Acc. | So viel auf den Mann, | so much for a, or per man. |
| Acc. | Bis auf vier Thaler, | even to four dollars. |
| Acc. | Auf deutsche Art, | in (i. e. <i>following after</i>) the German way |
| Acc. | Auf Befehl, | pursuant to an order. |
| Acc. | Auf Montag, | next Monday. |
| Dat. | Er steht hinter mir, | he stands behind me. |
| Acc. | Er trat hinter mich, | he stepped behind me. |
| Dat. | Ich wohne in der Stadt, | I live in the city. |
| Acc. | Ich gehe in die Stadt, | I am going into the city. |
| Dat. | Er stand neben mir, | he stood near to me. |
| Acc. | Er stellte sich neben mich, | he placed himself near me. |
| Dat. | Ueber der Arbeit, | over (i. e. <i>while at</i>) the work |
| Acc. | Ueber meine Kräfte. | beyond my strength. |

(3) *Note*, further, that the German differs from the English in *omitting* the definite article, —

(a) before certain law appellatives, as: *Beflagter*, (*the*) defendant; *Kläger*, (*the*) plaintiff; *Appellant*, (*the*) appellant; *Supplicant*, (*the*) petitioner:

(b) before certain common expressions such as, in *bester Ordnung*, in (*the*) best order; *Ueberbringer dieses*, (*the*) bearer of this; and certain adjectives and participles treated as nouns; as, *ersterer*, (*the*) former; *letzterer*, (*the*) latter; *befagter*, (*the*) before-said (person):

(c) before certain proper names of places: as, *Ostindien*, (*the*) East Indies; *Westindien*, (*the*) West Indies; and before the names of the Cardinal points: as, *Osten*, (*the*) East; *Westen*, (*the*) West; *Süden*, (*the*) South; *Norden*, (*the*) North:

(d) before a past participle joined with a noun, which, in English, *precedes* the participle: as, *das verlorene Paradies*, (*literally*, the lost Paradise) *Paradise Lost*.

(3) *Note*, again, that the Germans in using certain collective terms preceded by adjectives, employ the *indefinite* article where the English would use the definite: as, *ein hochweiser Rath*, the (lit. *a*) most learned Senate; *eine löbliche Universität*, the (*a*) honorable University.

(4) In German, also, the indefinite article stands *before* (not *after*, as in English,) the words, *such*, *half*: thus, *ein solcher Mann*, (not *solcher ein Mann*), *such a man*; *ein halbes Jahr* (not *halbes ein Jahr*), *half a year*. In questions, direct or indirect, like the following: *Einen wie langen Spazierritt hat er gemacht*, how long a ride has he taken; it must be noticed that the article stands *before* *wie*: thus, *einen wie langen* (*a* how long) and not, as in English, *how long a*.

(5) The German differs again from the English in not using an article at all in the phrases answering to the English; *a few*; *a thousand*; *a hundred*.

§ 121. THE NOUN.

RULE.

A noun or pronoun which is the *subject* of a sentence must be in the nominative case: as,

Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt, man devises, God disposes.
Die Berge donnern, the mountains thunder.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The subject or nominative in German, is seldom omitted, *ex*

cept in the case of the pronouns agreeing with verbs in the second person (singular and plural) of the Imperative : as,

Lesen (du), read! Gehet und saget (Ihr) ihm, go and tell him.
See, however, § 136. 2.

§ 122. RULE.

A noun or pronoun which is the *predicate* of a sentence, must be in the nominative case : as,

Er war ein großer König, he was a great king.

Dieser Knabe ist Kaufmann geworden, this boy is become a merchant.

Alexander hieß der Große, Alexander was called the Great.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) This rule applies, where the subject and the predicate are connected, as above, by such verbs as *sein, to be*; *werden, to become*; *heißen, to be called*; *bleiben, to remain*, &c.

(2) So, also, the rule becomes applicable when any of those verbs which in the *active* govern *two accusatives* (§ 132. 2.), are employed *passively* : as, Cicero wurde der Vater des Vaterlandes genannt, Cicero was called the father of his country; Er ist Alexander getauft worden, he has been christened Alexander. From this remark, however, must be excepted the verb *heißen* : since it has no passive.

§ 123. RULE.

A noun used to limit * the application of another noun signifying a different thing, is put in the genitive ; as,

Der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun.

Der Sohn meines Freundes, the son of my friend.

Die Erziehung der Kinder, the education of the children.

Die Wahl eines Freundes, the choice of a friend.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) If, however, the *limiting* noun (unless restricted itself by an adjective or some other qualifying word) signify *measure, number, weight or quantity*, it is then put in the same case with that which it limits ; as, zwei Glas Wein (not Weines), two glasses (of) wine ; sechs Pfund Thee (not Thees), six pounds (of) tea : but (with

* *How* the limitation is made, is easily seen : thus, der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun. Here we speak not of *any* course indefinitely, but of the *sun's* course definitely : the word der Sonne, is the genitive, limiting der Lauf, which is the governing word.

a restrictive term), sechs Pfund dieses Thees; zwei Glas dieses Weins.

(2) It should be observed that the two nouns under this Rule must be of *different* significations; for two nouns standing for the *same* thing, would be in the same case, forming an instance of *apposition*. See § 133. (1).

(3) The noun in the genitive, that is, the *limiting* noun, is commonly said to be *governed* by the other one. This genitive is either subjective or objective; *subjective*, when it denotes that which *does* something or *has* something: *objective*, when it denotes that which *suffers* something, or which is the object of what is expressed by the *governing* word. To illustrate this, we have only to take the examples given above: der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun; die Erziehung der Kinder, the education of the children; where, in the first example, the sun is represented as *performing* or *having* a course, and is consequently *subjective*; and, in the second example, the children are represented as being the *objects* of education, and the word is consequently *objective*. This *objective* genitive, it should be added, occurs only after verbal nouns, and chiefly those ending in the suffixes *er*, which marks the *doer*, and *ung*, which marks the *doing* of an action.

(4) It seems hardly necessary to observe that under this rule come all words which perform the *office* of nouns; as, pronouns, adjectives used substantively, &c.; thus, die Gnade der Großen, the favor of the great.

(5) We say often in English, He is a friend *to*, or an enemy *to*, or a nephew *to* any one; where, were these phrases put into German, we might expect the *dative* to be used. But, in such cases, the German always employs the Genitive: thus, er ist ein Feind seines Vaterlandes, he is an enemy *of* his native country.

(6) We say in English, the month *of* August, the city *of* London, and the like: where the common and the proper name of the same thing are connected by the preposition *of*. The Germans put the two nouns in *apposition*. See § 133. (2).

(7) So, too, in English we say, the fifth *of* August; but, in German, the numeral is put in direct agreement with the name of the month: as, der fünfte August, the fifth (*of*) August, or August fifth.

(8) In place of the genitive, the preposition *von*, followed by the dative, is, in the following instances, generally used:

a. When succeeded by nouns signifying quality. rank, measure *weicht ab*, distance and the like; as, ein Mann von hohem Stande,

a man of high standing; ein Schiff von zwei hundert Tonnen, a ship of two hundred tons; ein Gewicht von fünf Pfund, a weight of five pounds; ein Mann von achtzig Jahren, a man of eighty years; eine Reise von drei Meilen, a journey of three miles; ein Engländer von Geburt, an Englishman by birth, &c.

b. When followed by nouns denoting the material or substance of which any thing is made: as, ein Becher von Silber, a cup of silver, i. e. a silver cup; eine Uhr von Golde, a gold watch, &c.

c. When followed by nouns whose cases are not indicated by the terminations of declension nor by the presence of the article: as, der Schein von Redlichkeit, the appearance of honesty; ein Vater von sechs Kindern, a father of six children; die Königin von England, the queen of England; die Grenzen von Frankreich, the boundaries of France; der Bischof von Konstanz, the bishop of Constance

d. When followed by a word indicating the *whole*, of which the word preceding expresses but a *part*: as, einer von meinen Bekannten, one of my acquaintances; welcher von beiden? which of the two?

§ 124. RULE.

A noun limiting the application of an adjective, where in English the relation would be expressed by such words as *of* or *from*, is put in the genitive: as, die meisten Verluste sind eines Ersatzes fähig, most losses are capable of reparation; die Erde ist voll der Güte des Herrn, the earth is full of the goodness of the Lord.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The adjectives comprehended under this rule are such as follow

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Bedürftig, in want; needing. | Leer, void. |
| Benötigt, needing; wanting. | Los, free; rid. |
| Bewußt, conscious. | Mächtig, having; in possession. |
| Eingedenk, mindful. | Müde, tired; weary. |
| Fähig, capable; susceptible. | Satt, satiated; weary. |
| Frech, glad. | Schuldig, guilty; indebted. |
| Gewahr, aware. | Theilhaft, partaking. |
| Gewärtig, waiting; in expectation. | Ueberdrüssig, tired; weary. |
| Gewiß, sure; certain. | Verdächtig, suspicious. |
| Gewöhnt, used to; in the habit. | Verlustig, having lost; deprived of. |
| Wundig, having a knowledge; skilled. | Voll, full. |
| Lebig, empty; void. | Worth, worth; worthy. |
| | Würdig, worthy. |
| | Quitt, rid; free from. |

(2) After *gesehen*, *gesehen*, *ist*, *müde*, *satt*, *voll* and *wert*, the *accusative* is often used: as, er ward seinen Bruder *gesehen*, he was aware of (the presence of) his brother, i. e. he observed his brother.

§ 125 RULE.

A noun limiting the application of any of the verbs following, is put in the genitive:

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Achten, to mind, or regard. | Harren, to wait. |
| Bedürfen, to want. | Lachen, to laugh. |
| Begehren, to desire. | Pflegen, to foster. |
| Brauchen, to use. | Schonen, to spare. |
| Entbehren, to need. | Spotten, to mock. |
| Entzathen, to do without. | Verfehlen, to miss, or fail. |
| Ermangeln, to want, or be without. | Vergeffen, to forget. |
| Erwähnen, to mention. | Wahren, to guard. |
| Gedenken, to think, or ponder. | Wahrnehmen, to observe. |
| Genießen, to enjoy. | Walten, to manage. |
| Gewahren, to observe. | Warten, to attend to, or mind. |

OBSERVATIONS.

Bedürfen, begehren, brauchen, entbehren, erwähnen, genießen, pflegen, schonen, verfehlen, vergeffen, wahrnehmen, wahren and warten, take more frequently, in common conversation, the *accusative*. Achten, harren and warten are more commonly construed with *auf*, and lachen, spotten and walten with *über*, before an *accusative*.

§ 126. RULE.

The following *reflexive* verbs, take in addition to the pronoun peculiar to them, a word of limitation in the genitive:

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sich anmaßen, to claim. | Sich entblößen, to dare, or be bold |
| „ annehmen, to engage in. | |
| „ bedienen, to use. | „ entbrechen, to forbear. |
| „ befeßigen, to attend to. | „ enthalten, to refrain. |
| „ befeßigen, to apply to. | „ entschlagen, to get rid |
| „ begeben, to yield up. | „ entsinnen, to recollect. |
| „ bemächtigen, to acquire. | „ erbarmen, to pity. |
| „ bemeistern, to seize. | „ erschrecken, to presume. |
| „ bescheiden, to acquiesce in. | „ erinnern, to remember. |
| „ besinnen, to ponder. | „ erkönnen, to venture |
| „ entäußern, to abstain. | „ erwehren, to resist. |

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sich freuen, to rejoice. | Sich unterwinden, to undertake. |
| " getrüsten, to hope for. | " vermaßen, to presume. |
| " rühmen, to boast. | " versehen, to be aware. |
| " schämen, to be ashamed. | " wehren, to resist. |
| " überheben, to be haughty. | " weigern, to refuse. |
| " unterfangen, to undertake. | " wundern, to wonder. |

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The genitive is in like manner put after the following *impersonals*:

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Es gelüftet mich, | I desire, or am pleased with. |
| Es jammert mich, | I pity, or compassionate. |
| Es reuet mich, | I repent, or regret. |
| Es lohnt sich, | It is worth while. |

§ 127. RULE.

The verbs following require after them a genitive denoting a *thing* and an Accusative signifying a *person*.

| | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Anklagen, to accuse. | Entwöhnen, to wean. |
| Belehren, to inform. | Lossprechen, to acquit. |
| Berauben, to rob. | Mahnen, to remind. |
| Beschuldigen, to accuse. | Ueberführen, to convict. |
| Entbinden, to liberate. | Ueberheben, to exempt. |
| Entblößen, to strip. | Ueberzeugen, to convince. |
| Entheben, to exempt. | Versichern, to assure. |
| Entladen, to disburden. | Vertrösten, to amuse, or put off |
| Entkleiden, to undress. | with hope. |
| Entlassen, to free from. | Würdigen, to deem worthy. |
| Entleiden, to free from. | Zelhen, to accuse; to charge. |
| Entsetzen, to displace. | |

Examples.

Er hat mich meines Geldes beraubt, he has robbed me of my money.
 Der Bischof hat den Prediger seines Amtes entsetzt, the bishop has
 removed the preacher from his office.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The verbs above, when in the *passive* voice, take for their *nominative* the word denoting the person: the genitive of the *thing* remaining the same: as, er ist eines Verbrechens angeklagt worden, he has been accused of a crime.

§ 128. RULE.

Nouns denoting the *time, place, manner, intent or cause of an action*, are often put absolutely in the genitive and treated as adverbs *as*,

Des Morgens gehe ich aus, in the morning I go out.

Man sucht ihn aller Orten, they seek him everywhere.

Ich bin Willens hinzugehen, I am willing to go there.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) This adverbial use of the genitive is quite common in German. See § 101. In order, however, to express the particular *point*, or the *duration* of time, the accusative is generally employed, or a preposition with its proper case; *as*, Ich werde nächsten Montag aus der Stadt gehen, I shall go out of town next monday.

§ 129. RULE.

A noun or pronoun used to represent the object, in *reference to* which an action is done or directed, is put in the dative: *as*,

Ich danke dir, I thank (or am thankful *to*) you.

Er gefällt vielen Leuten, he pleases many people.

Er ist dem Tode entgangen, he has escaped from death.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The dative is the case employed to denote the person or the thing, *in relation to* which the subject of the verb is represented as acting. Compared with the accusative, it is the case of the *remote* object: the accusative being the case of the *immediate* object. Thus, in the example, ich schrieb meinem Vater einen Brief, I wrote (to) my father a letter, the immediate object is *a letter*; while *father*, the person *to* whom I wrote, is the remote object. The number of verbs thus taking the accusative with the dative, is quite large.

(2) On the principle explained in the preceding observation, may be resolved such cases as the following: es thut mir leid, it causes me sorrow, or I am sorry; es wird mir im Herzen weh thun, it will cause pain to me in the heart, (it will pain me to the heart,) &c.

(3) A right regard to the observation made above, namely, that the dative merely marks that person or thing, in *reference to* which an action is performed, will serve, also, to explain all such examples as these: Ihnen bedeutet dieses Opfer nichts, to you (i. e. so far as you

are concerned) this sacrifice means nothing; die Thränen, die Eurem Streit geflossen, the tears which have flowed in relation to (i. e. *from*) your dispute; mir tödtete ein Schuß das Pferd, a shot killed a horse for me, i. e. killed my horse; falle mir nicht, Kleiner, fall not for me, little one. In such instances as the last two, the dative is often omitted in translating.

(4) The Rule comprehends all such verbs as the following: antworten, to answer; danken, to thank; dienen, to serve; drohen, to threaten; fehlen, to fall short; fluchen, to curse; folgen, to follow; fröhnen, to do homage; gebühren, to be due; gefallen, to please; gehören, to pertain to; gehorchen, to obey; genügen, to satisfy; gereichen, to be adequate; gleichen, to resemble; helfen, to help, &c.

(5) This Rule, also, comprehends all reflexive verbs that govern the dative: as, ich maße mir keinen Titel an, welchen ich nicht habe, I claim to myself no title, which I have not; as, also, all impersonals requiring the dative: as, es beliebt mir, it pleases me, or I am pleased; es mangelt mir, it is wanting to me, or I am wanting, &c.

(6) The dative is, also, often used after passive verbs: as, ihm wurde widerstanden, it was resisted to them, i. e. they were resisted; von Geistern wird der Weg dazu beschützt, the way thereto is guarded by angels; ihm wird gelohnt, (*literally*) it is rewarded to him, i. e. he is rewarded.

§ 130. RULE.

Many compound verbs, particularly those compounded with *er, ent, an, ab, auf, bei, nach, vor, zu* and *wider*, require after them the dative; as,

Ich habe ihm Geld angeboten, I have offered him money.

§ 131. RULE.

An adjective used to limit the application of a noun, where in English the relation would be expressed by such words as *to* or *for*, governs the dative: as,

Sei deinem Herrn getreu, be faithful to your master.

Das Wetter ist uns nicht günstig, the weather is not favorable to us

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Under this Rule are embraced (among others) the following adjectives: ähnlich, like; angemessen, appropriate; angenehm, agreeable; anständig, offensive; bekannt, known; beschieden, destined; eigen, peculiar; fremd, foreign; gemäß, according to; gemein, common;

gewäſſen, competent; gnädig, gracious; heilſam, healthful; lieb agreeable; nahe, near; überlegen, superior; willkommen, welcome; widerig, adverse; dienſtbar, serviceable; gehorſam, obedient; nützlich, useful.

§ 132. RULE.

A noun or pronoun which is the *immediate* object of an *active* transitive verb, is put in the accusative:

Wir lieben unfere Freunde, we love our friends.

Der Hund bewacht das Haus, the dog guards the house.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The accusative, as before said, being the case of the *direct* or *immediate* object (§ 129. 1.) is used with all verbs, whatever their classification in other respects, that have a *transitive* signification. Accordingly, under this rule come all those impersonal and reflexive verbs that take after them the accusative; all those verbs having a *causative* signification, as, ſällen, to fell, i. e. to *cause* to fall; as also nearly all verbs compounded with the prefix *be*. *

(2) Lehren, to teach; nennen, to name; heißen, to call; ſchelten, to reproach (with vile names); taufen, to baptize (christen); take after them *two* accusatives: as, er lehrt mich die deutſche Sprache, he teaches me the German language; er nennt ihn ſeinen Retter, he calls him his deliverer. See Lesson LIII.

(3) The accusative is used with such terms as wiegen, to weigh; koſten, to cost; geſſen, to pass for; werth, worth; ſchwer, heavy; reich, rich; lang, long; weit, wide; to mark definitely the *measure* or *distance* † indicated by these words; as, dieſer Stocſt iſt einen Fuß lang, this stick is a foot long; er iſt vier Monate alt, he is four months old.

(4) As words expressing time indefinitely are put in the genitive (§ 128. 1.), so those denoting a particular point, or duration of time, are put in the accusative; as, ich wartete den zweiten Tag, I waited two days.

(5) A substantive construed with a participle, is sometimes put *absolutely* in the accusative; as, dieſen Umſtand ausgenommen, finde ich alles recht, this circumstance excepted, I find all right.

* The exceptions are begegnen, beſagen, beſtehen, beruhen, beharren and bewachen.

† In the earlier German, these words of measure or distance were put in the genitive: as, einer Spanne weit, a span wide.

§ 133. RULE.

A noun or pronoun used merely to explain or specify that which is signified by a preceding noun or pronoun, must be in the same case: as,

Cicero, ein großer Redner, Cicero, a great orator.

Ihm, meinem Wohltäter, to him, my benefactor.

Der Rath meines Bruders, des Rechtsgelehrten, the advice of my brother, the lawyer.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The explanatory noun is said to be in *apposition* with that which it explains. the latter being called the *principal* term. Between these two, that is, between the principal and the explanatory term, there often intervenes some connective particle. Thus, er hat sich als Gesetzgeber verdient gemacht, he, as a lawgiver, has rendered himself meritorious; mein Nachbar, nämlich der Bauer, my neighbor, *namely*, the farmer. This latter mode of specifying (that is, with the word *nämlich*), is far more common in German than in English.

(2) The proper names of months, countries, towns, and the like appellatives are put in apposition with their common names; where, in English, the two words stand connected, for the most part, by the preposition *of*; as, der Monat August, the month (*of*) August; die Stadt London, the city (*of*) London; die Universität Oxford, the university (*of*) Oxford.

§ 134. THE PRONOUNS.

RULE.

A pronoun must agree with the noun or pronoun which it represents, in person, number and gender: as,

Der Mann, welcher weise ist, the man who is wise.

Die Frau, welche fleißig ist, the woman who is diligent.

Das Kind, welches klein ist, the child that is small.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The neuter pronoun, *es*, is used in a general and indefinite way to represent words of all gender and numbers: as, *es* ist der Mann, *it* is the man; *es* ist die Frau, *it* is the woman; *es* ist das Kind, *it* is the child; *es* sind die Männer, they are the men, &c. In like manner, also, often are used, the pronouns *da* *s*, (*that*); *die* *s*, (*this*) *was* *s*, (*what*); as also the neuter adjective *alle* *s*, (*all*); as, das sind meine Richter, these are my judges.

(2) When the antecedent is a personal appellation formed by one of the diminutive (*neuter*) terminations, *den* and *lein*, the pronoun instead of being in the neuter, takes generally the gender *natural* to the person represented: as, *wo ist ihr Söhnchen?* *Sit er* (not *es*) *im Garten?* Where is your little son? Is *he* in the garden? The same remark applies to *Weib* (*woman*) and *Frauenzimmer* (*lady*). When, however, a child or servant is referred to, the neuter is often employed.

(3) A collective noun may in German, as in English, be represented by a pronoun in the *plural* number: as, *die Geistlichkeit war für ihre Rechte sehr besorgt*, the clergy were very anxious about their rights.

(4) The relative in German can never, as in English, be suppressed;* thus, in English, we say, the letter (*which*) you wrote; but in German, it must be, *der Brief, welchen du schreibest*.

(5) The neuter pronoun *es*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often merely expletive, and answers to the English word "there" in the like situation: as, *es war niemand hier*, there was no one here; *es kommen Leute*, there are people coming.

(6) The English forms, *he is a friend of mine*; *it is a stable of ours*, &c., can not be literally rendered into German; for there we must say, *er ist mein Freund*, he is my friend; or, *er ist einer meiner Freunde*, he is one of my friends, &c. See L. 28. 3.

(7) The definite article in German is often used, where in English a possessive pronoun is required: as, *er winkte ihm mit der Hand*, he beckoned to him with his (*the*) hand.

(8) The datives of the personal pronouns are often in familiar style employed in a manner merely expletive: as, *ich liebe mir den Rheinwein*, I like Rhenish wine *for me*, i. e. I prefer Rhenish wine See § 129. 3.

§ 135. THE ADJECTIVES.

RULE.

Adjectives, when they *precede* their nouns (expressed or understood), agree with them in gender, number and case; as, *Diese schöne Dame*, this handsome lady.

Ein gütiger und gerechter Vater, a good and just father.

Der zwölften dieses Monats, the twelfth (*day*) of this month, &c.

Sier ist ein Mißverständnis, — *ein handgreiflicher*, here is a misunderstanding, — a palpable (*one*).

* The antecedent is sometimes omitted, and sometimes follows the relative; as, *Die so denken, irren sich*, (*those*) that think thus, do not know him

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) This Rule of course has reference to those adjectives which are used *attributively*; for predicative adjectives it will be remembered, are not declined. For the several circumstances under which adjectives are varied in declension, consult § 27. § 28., &c.

(2) This Rule applies equally to adjectives of all degrees of comparison; as, *bessere Bücher*, better books; *der beste Wein*, the best wine; *des besten Weines*, of the best wine, &c. So, too, it applies equally to all classes of adjectives; as, adjective pronouns, numerals and participles.

(3) The word "*one*," which, in English, so often supplies the place of a preceding noun after an adjective, cannot be translated *literally* into German: its office being rendered needless in the latter tongue by the terminations of declension. See last example under the Rule.

(4) So, also, the English "*one's*" is the proper equivalent of the German *sein*, in such cases as the following: *gibt es etwas Edleres, als seinen Feinden zu vergeben?* is any thing more noble than to forgive one's enemies?

(5) When the same adjective is made to refer to several singular nouns differing in gender, it must be repeated with each and varied in form accordingly; as, *ein gelehrter Sohn und eine gelehrte Tochter*, a learned son and a learned daughter. The adjectives are, also, often repeated, though the nouns be all of the same gender.

§ 136. THE VERBS.

RULE.

A verb agrees with its subject or nominative in number and person; as,

Jeder Augenblick ist kostbar, every moment is precious.

Die Bäume blühen im Frühling, the trees bloom in spring.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) When the subject is the pronoun *es*, *das* or *die*, used indefinitely (See § 134. 1.), the *predicate*, if a noun, determines the number and person of the verb; as, *es sind die Früchte Ihres Thuns*, these are the fruits of your actions.

(2) In the *second* person (singular and plural) of the Imperative mood, the pronoun which forms the subject is commonly omitted; as, *gehet hin und saget Johann wieder, was Ihr sehet und höret*, go and tell John what ye see and hear.

(3) When the verb has two or more singular subjects connected

by *und*, it is generally put in the plural; as, *Haß und Eifersucht sind heftige Leidenschaften*, hatred and jealousy are violent passions.

(4) When the subject is a collective noun, that is, one conveying the idea of many individuals taken together as unity, the verb must (generally) be in the singular; as, *das englische Volk hat große Freiheit*, the English people have (*has*) great liberty. In a few cases only, as, *ein Paar*, a pair; *eine Menge*, a number; *ein Duzend*, a dozen, the verb stands in the plural.

(5) When a verb has several subjects, and they are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *du, dein Bruder und ich wollen spazieren gehen*, thou, thy brother and I will go take a walk; *du und dein Bruder vermöget viel*, you and your brother avail much.

§ 137. USE OF THE TENSES.

RULE.

The *Present tense* properly expresses what exists or is taking place at the time being; as, *die wahre Tapferkeit beschützt den Schwachen*, true valor protects the weak.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The Present in German, as in other languages, is often, in lively narrative, employed in place of the *Imperfect*; as,

Die Sonne geht (for ging) unter, da steht (for stand) er am Thor, &c., the sun goes down, while he stands at the door, &c.

(2) The Present is not unfrequently used for the *Future*, when the true time is sufficiently clear from the context; or when, for the sake of emphasis, a future event is regarded and treated as already certain; as,

Ich reise morgen ab, I start (i. e. *will* start) to-morrow.

Wer weiß, wer morgen über uns befiehlt, who knows who commands (i. e. *will* command) us to-morrow?

Sald sehen Sie mich wieder, soon you (*will*) see me again.

Dies Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser Nacht, this castle scale we (i. e. *will* we scale) this very night.

(3) It should be noted that the Present is, moreover, the proper tense for the expression of *general* or *universal* truths or propositions; as, *die Vögel fliegen in der Luft*, birds fly in the air.

(4) In English we have several forms of the Present tense; as, *I praise, I do praise* or *I am praising*. In German there is but one form (*ich lobe*) for the expression of these several shades of meaning.

(5) The Present in connection with the adverb *ſchon* (*already*) often supplies the place of a Perfect; as, wir wohnen ſchon ſieben Jahre hier, *already dwell we here (i. e. have we dwelt) seven years.*

(6) In English, we say often, "I *do* walk, I *did* walk," and the like: where the verb *do* (Present and Imperfect) is employed as an auxiliary. This cannot properly be done with the corresponding verb (*thun*, *to do*) in German.

§ 138. RULE.

The *Imperfect tense* is used to express what *existed*, or *was taking place* at some past time indicated by the context: as, ich ſchrieb an Sie, als ich Ihren Brief erhielt, I *was* writing to you, when I received your letter.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The Imperfect is the *historical tense* of the Germans. Its proper office is to mark what is incomplete, or going on, while something else is going on. It is the tense adopted by the narrator, who speaks as an *eye-witness*; though it *may* be used by such as have not been eye-witnesses of the events narrated: provided the statement be introduced or accompanied by such expressions as, *he said* (*sagte er*), *it is said*, or *they say* (*sagt man*). When the speaker has not been an eye-witness, the Perfect should be used.

(2) From the use of the Imperfect in expressing the *continuance* of a thing i. e. what was *going on* at a given time, comes the kindred power which it has, of expressing *repeated* or *customary action*: as, er pflegte zu sagen, he *used to say*, i. e. *was in the habit of saying*.

(3) The Imperfect in German, like the Present, has but one form; which, according to circumstances, is to be rendered by any one of the *three* English forms of that tense. Ich lobte, therefore, is either *I praised*, *did praise*, or *was praising*.

§ 139. RULE.

The *Perfect tense* is that which represents the being, action or passion, as past and complete at the time being: as, die Schiffe sind angekommen, the ships *have arrived*; er ist vorige Woche gestorben, he *died last week*.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The German Perfect, as a general thing, corresponds closely to our *Imperfect*, when used as an *aorist*; that is, when used to express an event simply and absolutely, and without regard to other events or circumstances. Hence often it happens, that where in Eng-

lish we use the Imperfect, the Germans employ their Perfect: thus *ich habe deinen Bruder gestern gesehen, aber nicht gesprochen, I saw your brother yesterday, but did not speak to him.*

(2) The auxiliary participle (*worden*) in the perfect passive, is sometimes omitted. (See § 84. 2.)

(3) We may remark here also, that, though in English we have a double form for the Perfect, (thus, *I have written and I have been writing*) the Germans have but the one. By which of the English forms, therefore, the German Perfect is, in any given case, to be rendered, must be determined by the context.

§ 140. RULE.

The *Pluperfect tense* is used to express what *had* taken place at some past time denoted by the context: as,

Nachdem die Sonne untergegangen war, ging er weg, after the sun had gone down, he went off.

Er hatte während unserer Unterredung geschlafen, he had slept during our conversation.

§ 141. RULE.

The *first Future tense* is employed merely to express what *shall* or *will* take place hereafter; while the *second Future* is used to denote what *shall have* occurred at some future period.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The Future tenses are used as in English, and also to indicate a probability, in which case they are translated by other tenses in connection with an appropriate adverb; as, *Es wird Ihr Bruder sein, it is probably your brother.*

(2) When a future action is represented, or is mentioned, as a thing *necessary* to be done, as in the English phrases, *I am to go, he is to have* and the like, the German employs a distinct verb expressive of obligation or necessity: as, *ich soll es haben, I am (shall be obliged) to have it. Er soll sprechen, &c.*

§ 142. RULE.

The *Indicative mood* is used in affirming or denying that which is conceived to be *certain* or *undoubted*; as,

Er wird morgen zurückkommen, he will return to-morrow.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Since the proper office of the Indicative is to express *reality*, it is employed in all absolute or independent sentences. Even in

conditional sentences, moreover, it is used, if the condition is assumed as a *fact*; as, *bist du reich, so gib viel*, art thou rich (i. e. *if thou art rich*), give much.

(2) Sometimes the Indicative is employed instead of the *Imperative*, where, that which is enjoined, is treated as something already in progress; as, *du trittst vor*, thou steppest forward, i. e. step (thou) forward. This is regarded as the strongest form of command.

§ 143. RULE.

The *Subjunctive mood* is used when that which is expressed by the verb, is conceived to be *uncertain*, though *possible*; as,

Ich habe gehört, daß er die gewünschte Stelle erhalten habe, I have heard, that he has obtained the desired situation.

Ich wünsche, daß er glücklich werde, I wish that he may become happy

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The *Subjunctive*, from its very nature, stands chiefly in dependent clauses; and, in these appears, under various circumstances. Thus, it is employed:

(2) When the design of the speaker is merely to *repeat* or *quote* a statement, without vouching for its accuracy; as, *er sagt, der Baum blühe*, he says, that the tree blossoms; *er meldete mir, daß er sich verheirathet habe*, he told me, that he had been married. When, on the contrary, the design of the speaker is to set forth the thing repeated or quoted, as something real and undoubted, the *Indicative* must be used; as, *er will es nicht glauben, daß sein Bruder gestorben ist*, he will not believe, that his brother is dead.

(3) In like manner, the *Subjunctive* is used in subordinate clauses, after such verbs as *hoffen*, to *hope*; *fürchten*, to *fear*; *wünschen*, to *wish*; *wollen*, to *desire*; *bitten*, to *ask*; *rathen*, to *advise*; *verbieten*, to *forbid*; *ermahnen*, to *exhort*; since the event, in such cases, may be supposed to be always more or less uncertain; as, *er fürchtet, daß er Strafe erhalte*, he is afraid, that he may be punished.

(4) So, also, the *Subjunctive* is employed in clauses which indicate an *end*, *object*, *wish* or *result*; and which are introduced by *daß*, *auf daß*, *damit*, or by a relative; as, *sprich laut, damit er dich verstehe*, speak loud, that he may understand you; *er sucht Arbeit, welche ihm Brod gebe*, he seeks work, which may give him bread.

(5) In cases such as those explained in the observations above, the student must note, that that tense of the *Subjunctive* is employed, which corresponds with the one used by the subject of the dependent clause, at the time *when* he said or did that which is affirmed of

him : as, er sagte, er habe diesmal keine Zeit, he said, that he *had* (literally *has*) no time at present ; er hatte mir gesagt, daß er es gethan habe, he had told me, that he *had* done it.

(6) The Subjunctive appears, also, in asking *indirect* questions ; as, ich fragte ihn, ob er mir das Geld geben könne, I asked him, whether he could give me the money. When the question is made *directly*, of course the Indicative is used.

(7) The Subjunctive is sometimes employed as a sort of softened Imperative, to express a *wish* or *permission* ; as, gebe es der Himmel, may heaven grant it ! dieser Baum trage nie wieder Frucht, let this (or *may* this) tree never again bear fruit ! er thue was er will, let him do what he will !

§ 144. RULE.

The *Conditional mood* is used, where a condition is *supposed*, which may or may not be conceived to be *possible* ; as,

Wäre ich reich, so würde ich ihm seine Bitte nicht abgeschlagen haben, were I rich, I would not have refused his request.

Wenn er noch lebte, so würde er 50 Jahre alt sein, if he yet lived, he would be fifty years old.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Besides the two tenses ranged in the paradigms (See p. 328 and following) under the head of the Conditional, it must be observed that the Imperfect and the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive are equally often employed in expressing conditional propositions. In point of time, indeed, there is no difference between the Imperfect of the Subjunctive and the *first* Conditional, and between the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive and the *second* Conditional. Ordinarily, where both forms are employed in the same sentence, the Subjunctive will be found in the clause expressing the condition, while the form peculiar to the Conditional appears in the other ; as, ich würde es thun, wenn es möglich wäre, I would do it, if it were possible ; wenn er hier wäre, würde er dich besucht haben, if he were here, he would have visited you.

(2) When the condition is assumed and treated as a *fact*, it is expressed, not by the Conditional, but by the Indicative ; as, bist du reich, so gib viel, art thou (i. e. *if* thou art) rich, then give much.

(3) Sometimes the verb expressing the condition is merely understood ; as, ich hätte die Sache anders gemacht, I should have done it otherwise (if it had been committed to me) ; in seiner Lage hätte ich

es nicht gethan, (if I had been) in his situation, I would not have done it.

(4) Sometimes, in the way of exclamation, the condition is expressed, while that which depends upon it is omitted: in which case the whole expression being of the nature of a *wish* or *petition*, is often introduced (in translation) by "O," "I wish that," and the like: as, hätte ich doch diesen Mann nie gesehen! as, O, that I had never seen this man! literally, had I never seen this man (how happy I should be)! wäre er doch am Leben! O, that he were yet alive!

(5) The Conditional is frequently employed in questions designed to elicit a negative answer; as, wäre es denn wahr? could it be true! (it could *not* be true;) du wärest so falsch gewesen? would you have been so faithless? (you would *not*.)

(6) Not unfrequently the Conditional of the auxiliaries mögen, dürfen, sollen, können and wollen, is employed to render an expression less positive, or to give it an air of diffidence; as, ich wollte, Sie begleiteten mich, I could wish (instead of, I wish) you would accompany me; ich möchte schwer zu überreden sein, I should be hard to be persuaded, or, it would be difficult to persuade me; dürfte ich Sie um das Messer bitten? might I (be permitted to) ask you for the knife?

§ 145. RULE.

The *Imperative mood* is used in expressing a command, entreaty or exhortation; as,

Bürdte Gott und ehre den König, fear God and honor the king.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The Imperative is sometimes employed to indicate a condition, on which something is declared to depend; as, sei stolz und du wirst wenig Achtung finden, be haughty (i. e. if you be haughty) and you will find little regard.

(2) In order to make a request in a manner modest and polite, instead of the Imperative, the Subjunctive of mögen and wollen is often employed; as, du wollest seiner nie vergessen, pray, never forget him; mögen Sie meiner gedenken, may you remember, or remember me, I pray. To express a decided command, however, the Indicative is frequently used. See § 142. 2.

(3) Sometimes, by a peculiar ellipsis, the past Participle is employed in place of the Imperative; as, nur nicht lang gefragt! do not ask long! where the full phrase would be, es werde nur nicht lang gefragt, let it not long be asked! An die Arbeit gegangen let them go to their work!

§ 146. RULE.

The *Infinitive mood* either with or without the particle *zu* (*to*) preceding, is used to represent the being, action or passion, in a manner unlimited: as,

Sterben ist Nichts, doch leben und nicht sehen, das ist ein Unglück,
to die is nothing, yet to live and not to see, that is a misfortune indeed.

Der Wunsch gelobt zu werden, the wish to be praised.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) The Infinitive *without zu*, (*to*) appears,

a. When, as a verbal substantive (§ 146. 3.), it is made either the subject or the object of a verb: as, *Leben ist seliger als Nehmen*, to give is more blessed than to receive; *das nennt er arbeiten*, that he calls working.

b. When it stands alone, as in a dictionary: as, *loben*, to praise · *lieben*, to love.

c. After the verbs

heißen, to bid: as, *ich hieß ihn gehen*, I bade him go.

helfen, to help: as, *er hilft mir schreiben*, he helps me to write.

lehren, * to teach: as, *er lehrt das Kind lesen*, he teaches the child to read.

lernen, * to learn: as, *wir lernen tanzen*, we learn to dance.

hören, to hear: as, *ich höre sie singen*, I hear them sing.

sehen, to see: as, *ich sehe ihn kommen*, I see him come.

fühlen, to feel: as, *ich fühle den Puls schlagen*, I feel his pulse beat.

finden, to find: as, *ich fand das Buch auf dem Tische liegen*, I found the book lying on the table.

d. After the auxiliaries of mood, *mögen*, *fönnen*, *lassen*, *dürfen*, *sollen*, *wellen* and *müssen*, and after *werden*, when employed as an auxiliary in forming the future tense.

e. After the verbs following, in certain phrases,

bleiben, to remain: as, *er bleibt sitzen*, he continues sitting.

fahren, to go in a carriage: as, *ich fahre spazieren*, I ride out for an airing.

* *Lehren* and *lernen* form exceptions to the observation in the text: admitting, as they do sometimes, the particle *zu* between them and an Infinitive succeeding. The student will note, also, that the Infinitive after all these verbs, as, in English, often best rendered by a participle: as, *er fühlte sein Blut gähren*, he felt his blood boiling.

| | | |
|----------|-----------------|---|
| gehen, | to go or walk : | as, er geht betteln, he goes begging. |
| haben, | to have : | as, er hat gut reden, he has easy talking, i. e. it is easy for him to talk. |
| legen, | to lay : | as, ich lege mich schlafen, I lay myself down to sleep. |
| machen,* | to make : | as, er machte mich lachen, he made me laugh. |
| nennen, | to name : | daß nenne ich spielen, that I call playing. |
| reiten, | to ride : | as, ich reite spazieren, I ride out for exer- cise. |
| thun,* | to do : | as, er thut nichts als schelten, he does nothing but scold. |

(2) The Infinitive *with zu* is employed :

a. After nouns and adjectives, which, in English, are followed either by the preposition *to* with the Infinitive or by *of* with a participle : as, ich war froh ihn zu sehen, I was glad to see him ; Sie haben Lust zu spielen, you have a desire to play ; ich bin müde es zu hören, I am tired of hearing it :

b. After verbs, to express the end or object of their action : as, ich komme mit Ihnen zu sprechen, I come to (i. e. in order to) speak with you : in which case also, the particle *um* often comes before *zu*, to render the expression more forcible : as, liebet die Tugend, um glücklich zu sein, love virtue, in order (um) to be happy.

c. After the verbs following and others of like import :

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Anfangen, to begin. | Zögern, to delay. |
| Aufhören, to cease. | Gewöhnen, to accustom. |
| Befehlen, to command. | Dienen, to serve. |
| Bitten, to beg. | Genügen, to suffice. |
| Erwarten, to expect. | Warnen, to warn. |
| Erhoffen, to hope. | Weigern, to refuse. |
| Fürchten, to fear. | Erkennen, † to acknowledge. |
| Drohen, to threaten. | Bekennen, † to confess. |
| Sich freuen, to rejoice. | Scheinen, to appear. |
| Sich schämen, to be ashamed. | Wünschen, to wish. |
| Sich rühmen, to boast. | Verlangen, to desire. |

* *Machen* however, cannot, as in English, be used to signify to *make* or *cause by force* : thus, to translate the English phrase, *make him go out*, the Germans say, laß (not mache) ihn hinausgehen. The Infinitive without *zu* comes after *thun*, only when *nichts als* precedes, in the example above.

† *Erkennen* and *bekennen* are construed mainly with the *preterite* of the Infinitive : as, er erkennt, sich gerirt zu haben, he acknowledges that he has been in error.

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Bereuen, to regret. | Erlauben, to permit. |
| Pflegen, to be wont. | Gestatten, to allow. |
| Fertfahren, to proceed. | Verdienen, to deserve. |
| Unterlassen, to neglect. | Wagen, to venture. |
| haben, to have. | Wissen, to know. |
| Sein, to be. | Nutzen, to be of use. |
| Helfen, to help. | Gemmen, to avail. |
| Vermeiden, to avoid. | |

d. After the prepositions *ohne* (*without*) and *statt* or *anstatt* (*instead of*): as, *ohne ein Wort zu sagen*, without saying a word; *anstatt zu schreiben*, instead of writing.

(3) The Infinitive in German, as intimated before, often performs the office of a verbal Substantive. It is then commonly preceded by the neuter of the article, and has all the various cases: as, *das Lügen schadet dem Lügner am meisten*, lying injures the liar most; *ich bin des Gehens müde*, I am weary of walking; *zum Reisen bist du nicht geschikt*, you are not fit for journeying.

(4) The Infinitive *active*, in German, after certain verbs, as, *sein*, *lassen*, *verbieten*, *befehlen*, &c. is not unfrequently employed *passively*: thus, *laß ihn rufen*, which (literally) means, let him *call*, may, also, signify, let him *be called*; *es ist keine Zeit zu verlieren*, there is no time to lose, or to be lost.

(5) The Germans often employ the Indicative or Subjunctive, preceded by *daß*, where, in English, the Infinitive, preceded by *to*, is used: as, *ich weiß, daß er der Mann ist*, I know him to be (literally, I know *that he is*) the man.

(6) The Infinitive, in English, preceded by the words *how*, *where*, *what*, *when*, and the like, after such verbs as, *tell*, *know*, *say* and *teach*, cannot be rendered literally into German: the Germans, in such cases, always using the Indicative or Subjunctive of such verbs as *sollen*, *müssen*, *können*: as, *ich weiß, wie ich es thun muß*, I know how to do it, or (literally) I know how I must do it; *lehren Sie mich, was ich sagen soll*, teach me what to say. For the use of the Infinitive of *mögen*, *wollen*, *sollen*, &c., in place of the past Participle See § 74. 3.

§ 147. THE PARTICIPLES.

(1) The Participles, in German, are varied by cases: following the same rules of inflection as the adjectives. Having the nature of adjectives, the Present in a *few*, and the Præterite in *many* instances, readily admit the degrees of comparison.

(2) The use of the Participle, as such, however, in German, is

far more restricted than in English. For, in English, it is commonly used to form a distinct clause of a sentence; and is thus made to indicate the *time*, *cause* or *means* of effecting that which is expressed in the main clause: thus, we say: Walking (that is, *by* or *when* walking) uprightly, we walk surely. This mode of expression can rarely, if ever, be adopted in German; into which language, if we desire to translate the above sentence, we must say: wenn wir aufrichtig wandeln, so wandeln wir sicher, that is, *when* we walk uprightly, we walk surely.

(3) So, too, we say in English: *Having given* him the money, he went away; but, since there is nothing in German to correspond to this English compound Participle, it would be a gross error to attempt to render the sentence literally. Resort must be had, as in the other case, to a different structure: thus, als er ihm das Geld gegeben hatte, ging er weg, that is, *after* or *when* he had given him the money, he went away. In this way must all similar cases be managed: we must employ a *verb* in each clause and connect the two together by means of suitable conjunctions; such as, weil, wenn, als, &c. and indem.

§ 148. RULE.

The *Present Participle*, like an attributive adjective, agrees with its noun in gender, number and case; and may, also, govern the same case as the verb whence it is derived: as,

Der lachende Frühlings, the smiling spring.

Kühlendes Getränk, cooling drink.

Die alles belebende Sonne, the all animating sun, i. e. the sun that animates all.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) This Participle is seldom, if ever, otherwise employed with a noun than in an *attributive* sense. Its *predicative* use is found almost altogether in those words, that have so far lost character as Participles, as to be commonly recognized only as adjectives: as,

Reizend, charming.

Drückend, oppressive.

Kränkend, mortifying.

Fließend, flowing.

Einnehmend, captivating.

Einreißend, overpowering.

Dringend, pressing.

Such a combination, therefore, as, *I am reading, we are walking* and the like, which is so common in English, is wholly inadmissible in German; save in the instance of those Participles that have lost,

as just said, their true participial character: as, die Noth ist dringend, the necessity is pressing.

(2) The Present Participle, in connection with the article, is often used substantively: the noun being understood; as, der Lesende, the reader, (literally) the (one) reading; die Sterbende, the dying (female).

(3) This Participle, however, cannot in German, as in English, be, by means of an article, turned into an abstract verbal noun. But in order properly to render such phrases as, *the reading, the writing*, into German, we must use the present of the Infinitive: thus, das Lesen, das Schreiben.

(4) The Present Participle, as stated in the RULE, may govern the case of its own verb; but it must be noted that the word so governed, always *precedes* the Participle: das uns verfolgende Geschick, the us pursuing fate, i. e. the fate that pursues us. In some instances, the words are actually united, forming compounds: as, ehrliebend, honor-loving, that is, ambitious; gesetzgebend, law-giving, &c.

(5) The Present Participle is sometimes used with the power of an A lverb; that is, to express some circumstance of *manner* or *condition*: thus, weinend sprach er zu mir, weeping (i. e. *weepingly*) he spoke to me; er setzte sich schweigend nieder, keeping silent (i. e. *silently*) he sat down.

§ 149. RULE.

The *Preterite Participle* is not only used in the formation of the compound tenses, but may, also, be construed with nouns, after the manner of Adjectives: as,

Ich habe heute das Buch gelesen, I have read the book to-day.

Ein geliebtes Kind, a beloved child.

Der Mann ist gelehrt, the man is learned.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) This Participle, in its character as an Adjective, is far more frequently employed in German than in English. Indeed, many *Preterites* in German, having lost all character as Participles, are now used exclusively as Adjectives.

(2) The *Preterite*, like the *Present Participle*, is sometimes used in an adverbial manner: thus, das Buch ist verloren gegangen, the book is lost (literally, *gone lost*).

(3) This is especially the case with certain Participles employed with the verb *kommen*; as, er kommt gefahren, he comes *driven*, i. e. driving in a carriage; er kommt geritten, he comes *ridden*, i. e. riding

on horseback; er kömmt geflogen, he comes flying; er kömmt gelaufen, he comes running, &c.

(4) Kindred to this, is its use, when connected with a verb, to express the *condition* or *state* of the subject: as, jetzt sterb' ich beruhigt, now I die content; in seine Tugend gefüllt, treibt er der Verleumdung, wrapped in his virtue, he defies calumny.

(5) The Preterite Participle usually in connection with the accusative, is in some phrases employed *absolutely*: as, die Augen gegen Himmel gerichtet, his eyes being directed towards heaven; den Gewinn abgerechnet, the profit being deducted; diesen Fall ausgenommen, this case being excepted.

(6) This Participle is sometimes elliptically used for the Imperative. (See § 145. 3.)

§ 150. RULE.

The *Future Participle* is used, when the subject is to be represented as a thing that *must* or *ought* to take place: as,

Eine zu lebende That, a deed to be (i. e. that *ought* to be) praised.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) What is called the Future Participle in German, is produced by placing *zu* before the present participle as above. It can be formed from transitive verbs only, and is always to be taken in a passive sense. It is chiefly to be found in the case of compound verbs: thus, hochzuachtender Herr, the-highly-to be-honored i. e. the honorable, Sir.

§ 151. THE ADVERBS.

RULE.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives and other adverbs: as,

Er schreibt selten, he writes seldom.

Er hat den Gegenstand vortreflich behandelt, he has treated the subject admirably.

Dieses Buch ist sehr gut, this book is very good.

Er arbeitet nicht gern, he works unwillingly.

OBSERVATIONS.

Almost all adjectives in the absolute form are, in German, employed as Adverbs. See § 102. 3. For remarks on the position of Adverbs in sentences, see the section on the arrangement of words § 158.

§ 152. THE PREPOSITIONS.

RULE.

The Prepositions *anstatt*, *außerhalb*, *bießelste*, &c. (See the List § 109.) are construed with the genitive.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) When the same Preposition governs several nouns in the same construction, it is put before the first only; as, *ich bin von meiner Heimath, meinem Vaterlande und meinen Freunden getrennt*, from my home, my country and my friends, am I separated.

(2) For the right use and position of some of the Prepositions, much attention is required. See the Observations on those construed with the genitive: § 110.

§ 153. RULE.

The Prepositions *auf*, *außer*, *bei*, &c. (See List § 111.) are construed with the dative. (See Obs. § 112.)

§ 154. RULE.

The Prepositions *durch*, *für*, *gegen*, &c. (See List § 113.) are construed with the accusative. (See Obs. § 114.)

§ 155. RULE.

The Prepositions *an*, *auf*, *hinter*, &c. (See List § 115.) govern the dative or accusative: the accusative, when motion or tendency *towards* is signified, but in the other situations the dative. (See Obs. § 116.)

§ 156. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE.

Conjunctions connect words and sentences in construction, and show their mutual relation and dependence; as,

Johann und Wilhelm gehen zur Schule, John and William are going to school.

Ich sah es; daher weiß ich es, I saw it; therefore I know it.

Er ist älter als ich, he is older than I.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Under the general name of Conjunctions in this Rule, must be included all words performing the *office* of Conjunctions, whether

properly such or not. Of these connective words three classes are to be distinguished: 1. those that do not affect the order of the words of a sentence in which they occur (§ 160. 3.); 2. those that always remove the copula to the end of the sentence (§ 160. 7.); 3. and finally, those that do or do not remove the copula to the end, according as they stand before or after the subject (§ 160. 8.).

(2) The true force and use of the Conjunctions is best learned from examples; of which see a large collection in Lesson 69. We subjoin, however, a few remarks in explanation of the following:

a. *Aber, allein, sondern.* *Aber* is less *adversative* than either of the others. It is often merely continuative. *Allein* always introduces what is contrary to what might be inferred from what precedes: as, *er ist sehr fleißig, allein er lernt sehr wenig*, he is very industrious, *but* he learns very little. *Sondern* serves to introduce what is contradictory. It is used only when a negative precedes; *nicht edel, sondern kleinmützig*, not noble, *but* pusillanimous; *es ist weder schwarz, noch braun, sondern grün*, it is neither black nor brown, *but* green.

b. *Daß*, also *auf daß*, introduces a clause expressing the end, object or result: as, *ich weiß, daß er kommt*, I know *that* he is coming. This form of expression is more common in German than in English. When *daß* is left out, the copula comes immediately after the subject. See Note, page 445.

c. *Doch* introduces something unexpected or not properly proceeding from the antecedent: as, *er ist sehr reich, und hat doch wenig gearbeitet*, he is very rich, *yet* has he worked little. It is sometimes elliptically employed to indicate *certainty, entreaty* and the like: as, *sagen Sie mir doch*, tell me, *pray*.

d. *Je*, like the definite article in English, is put before comparatives to denote proportion. It, then, has *desto* for its correlative: thus, *je fleißiger er ist, desto gelehrter wird er*, *the* more diligent he is, *the* more learned he becomes. *Desto* sometimes comes before *je*: as, *ein Kunstwerk ist desto schöner, je vollkommener es ist*, a work of art is *the* more beautiful, *the* more perfect it is. Sometimes *je* is employed before both comparatives: thus, *je mehr, je besser, the more, the better*. Sometimes *desto* stands before a comparative without *je* answering to it: as, *ich erwartete nicht meinen Freund zu finden, desto größer aber war meine Freude, als ich ihn sah*, I did not expect to find my friend, *but the* greater was my joy, when I saw him.

■ *Obgleich, ebden, obwohl*, indicate concession. The parts are often separated, especially by monosyllables: such as, *ich tu, er, es*.

wir, ihr, sie. Often two or three such little words come *between* : *as, ob er gleich alt ist, &c., although he is old, &c.* ; *ob ich mich gleich freue, &c., although I rejoice, &c.*

f. So, after such conjunctions : *as, weil, als, da, wenn, nachdem, ob, gleich, obgleich, obwohl, wenngleich and wiewohl,* introduces the subsequent clause. This is chiefly the case, when the antecedent clause is long, or consists of several members : *Ex. Weil dich Gott dies Alles gewahrt werden ließ, so ist Niemand so weis als du,* since God hath given thee to know all this, so (therefore) is no one so wise as thou. *So* commonly, however, denotes comparison : *as, der Knabe ist so gut, als das Mädchen,* the boy is *so* (as) good as the girl. So in the phrases, *sowohl als auch, or sowohl als, so* (as) well as : *sobald als, so* (as) soon as, &c. With *auch* (*so—auch*) following, it signifies *however* : *as, so groß die Schrecken des Krieges auch, &c., however great the terrors of war, &c.* ; *so reich er auch ist, &c., however rich he is, &c.*

g The following are the more common correlatives : *as,*

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------|---------------|-------------|
| Entweder, | either, | oder, | or. |
| Weder, | neither, | noch, | nor. |
| Wenn, | if, | so, | so, or then |
| Da, | when, | so, | then. |
| Je, | the, | je, | the. |
| Je, | the, | desto, | the. |
| Sobald, | as soon, | als, | as. |
| Sowohl, | as well, | als, | as. |
| Wie, | as, | so, | so. |
| So, | so, | so, | so. |
| Nicht, | not, | sondern, | but. |
| Nicht allein, | not only, | sondern, | but. |
| Nicht nur, | not only, | sondern auch, | but also. |

§ 157. THE INTERJECTIONS.

RULE.

Interjections have no dependent construction.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Interjections stand generally before the nominative or the vocative ; *as, O! theuerster Vater!* But sometimes the genitive, and sometimes the dative, is preceded by an Interjection : *as, O, der Freude!* O the joy ! *Weh mir!* Woe to me !

§ 158. COLLOCATION OF WORDS.

(1) In the arrangement of words in sentences, the German differs widely from the English. Many differences of collocation, accordingly, have already been noted and explained in various other parts of this work. But, as every word and member of a sentence in German, takes its position according to a definite law of arrangement, and cannot, without great offense against euphony, be thrown out of its proper place, we subjoin here some general instructions on this topic.

(2) The essential parts of every sentence, as already remarked (§ 119.), are the *Subject* and the *Predicate*. That which is used (properly some part of the verb of existence, *sein*) to couple the subject and the predicate, is called the *Copula*. Now, arranging these three parts in their natural order, the subject will come first, the copula next, the predicate last: thus,

| <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Copula.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Die Blume | ist | schön. |
| The flower | is | beautiful. |
| Das Pferd | war | stark. |
| The horse | was | strong. |

(3) When, as in the case of simple tenses, the copula and the predicate are both contained in a single word, that word holds the place of the copula; while the place of the predicate either remains vacant, or is occupied by the object of the verb. Examples:

| <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Copula.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Die Blume | blüht. | — |
| The flower | blooms. | — |
| Wir | lesen | das Buch. |
| We | read | the book. |
| Die Soldaten | fechten. | — |
| The soldiers | fight. | — |
| Ich | sehe | diesen Mann. |
| I | see | this man. |

(4) In the case of compound tenses, however, the auxiliary takes the place of the copula; which place is also held by the auxiliaries of mood (§ 74.): the place of the predicate being occupied by the infinitive or participle. If the verb be a compound separable (§ 90), the *particle* stands in the place of the predicate, while the *radical* forms the copula. Examples:

| <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Copula.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Ich | habe | gelesen. |
| I | have | read. |
| Mir | sind | gewesen. |
| Wir | have | been. |
| Er | kann | schreiben. |
| He | can | write. |
| Sie | wurden | gesehen. |
| They | were | seen. |
| Er | geht | aus. |
| He | goes | out. |

(5) When any of these verbs which assume the place of the copula, are employed in the compound form, the Participle or Infinitive belonging to them stands *after* the proper predicate. Examples:

| <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Copula.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| Er | ist | thöricht gewesen. |
| He | has | foolish been. |
| Er | wird | gelesen haben. |
| He | will | read have. |
| Sie | hätten | schreiben sollen. |
| Sie | sind | gehört worden. |
| Er | wird | gesehen worden sein. |
| Er | ist | ausgegangen. |

(6) The object of a sentence comes between the copula and the Predicate; and, if there be two objects, that of the person precedes that of the thing. Examples:

| <i>Subject.</i> | <i>Copula.</i> | <i>1st Object.</i> | <i>2d Object.</i> | <i>Predicate.</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Er | hat | einen Brief | — | geschrieben. |
| Er | schreibt | meinen Brief | — | ab. |
| Er | ist | seinem Freunde | — | gewogen. |
| Sie | sind | eines Verbrechens | — | beschuldigt worden. |
| Ich | habe | dem Knaben | ein Buch | gegeben. |
| Er | hat | den Sohn | einer Sünde | beschuldigt. |
| Ich | habe | meinen Freund | — | um Rath* gefragt. |

* Um Rath with fragen forms a phrase, (um Rath fragen, to ask for advice, which belongs to a class of phrases in German, in which a noun or adjective is made to play the same part in respect to a verb, that is sustained by a separable particle. This will account for the position of um Rath in the sentence: it being treated just like a separable prefix. Other phrases belonging to this class are:

(7) Should both objects, however, be persons, the accusative comes first: except the oblique cases of the personal pronouns (*ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie*), which always take the precedence. Examples:

| Subj. | Copula. | 1st Object. | 2d Object. | Predicate. |
|-------|---------|-------------|----------------|------------|
| Ich | habe | meinen Sohn | meinem Freunde | empfohlen. |
| Ich | habe | dir | meinen Sohn | empfohlen. |
| Er | wird | ihm | seine Tochter | geben. |

(8) When two *personal* pronouns form the objects of a sentence, the accusative comes before the dative and the genitive. Examples:

| Subj. | Copula. | 1st Object. | 2d Object. | Predicate. |
|-------|---------|-------------|------------|------------|
| Sie | haben | es | mir | gegeben. |
| Wir | nehmen | uns | seiner | an. |
| Er | hat | sich | mir | empfohlen. |

(9) Adverbs of degree and manner, or nouns governed by prepositions and serving in the place of adverbs, when they refer exclusively to the verb, stand immediately after the object. Examples

| Subj. | Copula. | Object. | Adverb. | Predicate. |
|-------|-----------|-------------------|---------------|-------------|
| Er | behandelt | seinen Gegenstand | vortrefflich. | — |
| Er | hat | seinen Gegenstand | vortrefflich | behandelt. |
| Er | hat | das Geld | mit Freuden | ausgegeben. |

(10) Adverbs of time, and phrases used instead of adverbs of time, commonly come before the object and before adverbs of place. Examples:

| Subj. | Copula. | Adverb. | Object. | Predicate. |
|-------|---------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Ich | habe | gestern | einen Brief | geschrieben. |
| Er | ist | vor drei Tagen in London | — | angekommen. |

(11) Adverbs of place, and nouns with prepositions, used as such, generally come immediately before the predicate. Examples:

| Subj. | Copula. | Object. | Adverb. | Predicate. |
|-------|---------|-------------|------------|------------|
| Ich | habe | einen Brief | aus Berlin | erhalten. |
| Ich | werde | meinen Sohn | nach Paris | schicken. |

Hülfe leisten, to render aid.
 In Hülfe kommen, to come to the aid.
 Zu Mittag essen, to dine.
 Sorge tragen, to take care
 In Grunde gehen, to perish.
 In Grunde richten, to ruin.
 Ins Werk setzen, to execute.
 Zu Stande bringen, to accomplish.
 Acht geben, to pay attention.

Uns Leben bringen, to deprive of life.
 Trotz bieten, to bid defiance.
 In Theil werden, to fall to one's part
 Rath geben, to give advice.
 Gehör geben, to grant a hearing.
 Gefahr laufen, to run a risk.
 Still stehen, to stand still.
 Fest halten, to hold fast.

(12) Nouns and pronouns with the prepositions appropriate to the verb employed in the sentence, generally come immediately before the predicate. Examples:

Ich habe niemals über den Gegenstand mit ihm gesprochen.
Ich werde niemals in meinem Leben zu ihm gehen.

When, however, the preposition with its noun is merely used to denote the cause or purpose, &c., of what is expressed by the verb, it stands before the object. Examples:

Wir tranken gestern aus Mangel an Bier Wasser.
Ich konnte ihm vor Freude keine Antwort geben.

§ 159. INVERSION.

(1) In all the cases preceding, the natural order of the leading parts has been preserved; that is, the subject first, the copula next, and the predicate last. But for the sake of giving special emphasis to particular words, this order is often inverted. Thus, the real, or logical subject is made emphatic by being put *after* the copula: the pronoun *es* taking its place as a grammatical subject: as, *es hebt die Freiheit ihre Fahne auf*, *liberty* uplifts her standard. When, again, either the copula or the predicate is to be rendered emphatic, they exchange places: thus, (*predicate emphatic*) *sterben müssen Alle, die* must all. The chief places in which the copula receives the stress, are,

- a. in direct questions; as, *schreibt der Mann?*
- b. in imperatives; as, *swärzen Sie mit ihm;*
- c. in the case of *mögen*, when used to express a wish; as, *möge es der Himmel geben!*
- d. in cases where surprise (generally with *doch*) is to be expressed; as, *ist doch die Stadt wie geföhrt!*

(2) When, on any one of those words which, in the natural order, come between the copula and the predicate, we wish to lay special emphasis, it must be put either before the other words standing between the copula and the predicate, or else before the subject. In this latter case, however, the subject and the copula exchange places: thus, *nur von Eblem kann Ebles stammen*; where the common order would be: *Ebles kann nur von Eblem stammen*. These inversions, however, chiefly occur when principal and sub-ordinate sentences are connected by conjunctions.

§ 160. SENTENCES : PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.

(1) A principal sentence is one that expresses by itself an independent proposition: thus, *It was reported; He deserves; John toils.*

(2) A subordinate sentence is one, that serves as the complement to a principal sentence; and without which it conveys no complete idea. Thus, in the expressions, *It was reported, that the town was taken; He deserves, that we should defend him; John toils, although he is rich:* the first, in each case, is the principal and the second the subordinate sentence.

(3) In the natural order, the principal precedes the subordinate sentence. But this order is often reversed; in which case the order of the subject and the copula in the principal sentence, is also reversed. Thus, in the natural order we say, *ich weiß, daß er es nicht thun kann, I know, that he can not do it.* Putting the subordinate sentence first, it will stand: *daß er es nicht thun kann, weiß ich, that he can not do it, know I.*

(4) When, however, the subordinate sentence comes in after the copula (i. e. before a *part* only) of the principal sentence, the natural order of the latter remains unchanged: as, *ich fand, als ich in London ankam, meinen Freund nicht.*

(5) In subordinate sentences, the common order of the leading parts, differs from that of principal sentences, in making the copula* come *last*, i. e. in making the copula and the predicate exchange places. Examples:

| | | <i>Copula.</i> |
|-------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| Er, | welcher mir den Brief | brachte. |
| He, | who to me the letter | brought. |
| Der, | dessen Herz rein | ist. |
| Ich weiß, | wo ich ihn gesehen | habe. |
| Er sagt, | daß er es nicht thun | kann. |
| Er ist arm, | weil er sehr träge | ist. |

(6) The subordinate sentence is usually connected with the principal one by means of some conjunctive word. The conjunctive word so employed, is either a relative pronoun, a relative adverb, or some conjunction proper, expressing cause, condition, purpose, limitation or the like. See the examples under the preceding paragraph.

(7) The conjunctions employed in connecting principal with subordinate sentences, are, *als, auf daß, bevor, bis, da, dafern, damit, daß, †*

* The copula is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Das Buch, das er mir gegeben;* the book that he (has) given me.

† *Daß* is sometimes omitted; in which case the copula stands, not at the end, but just as in a principal sentence: thus, *er sagt, er würde schreiben.*

vielleicht, etc, falls indem, je, je nachdem, nachdem, nun, ob, obgleich, obgleich, obwohl, seitdem, ungeachtet, während, weil, wenn, ‡ wenn nicht, wenn gleich, wenn schon, wenn auch, wie, wie auch, wiewohl, wo, wofern, obzwar. These all remove the copula to the *end* of the sentence.

(8) The following are the conjunctive adverbs, which are used to connect subordinate sentences with principal ones, after the manner of real conjunctions: außerdem, daher, dann, alsdann, darum, deswegen, deshalb, dennoch, dessenungeachtet, dergleichen, desto, einerseits, anderseits, endlich, ferner, folglich, gleichwohl, hernach, indessen, (indess), nachher, kaum, mithin, nichtsdestoweniger, nicht allein, nicht nur, nicht bloß, noch, nur, sonst, theils, ungleich, in so fern, in so weit (so weit), jedoch, übrigens, überbils, vielmehr, wohl, zudem, zwar. These all reverse the order of subject and copula, when they stand *before* the subject; when, however, they come after the copula, the natural order of the sentence obtains.

Je mehr man hat, desto mehr verlangt man. The more one has the more one desires.

Er ist krank, daher bleibt er zu Hause. He is sick, hence he stays at home.
Nachher ging er wieder weg. Afterward he went away again.

(9) Allein, denn, sondern, und and oder always stand at the head of a sentence without influencing the order of the other words. Aber and nämlich may, also, occupy the first place without changing the position of the other words.

(10) Where a mood-auxiliary, or any such verb as takes the infinitive without zu, occurs together with an other infinitive, the copula stands *before* the two infinitives: thus, wenn ich es hätte thun müssen &c., not wenn ich thun müssen hätte.

IDIOMATIC PHRASES.

There are in German, as in other languages, numerous idiomatic phrases. Many of these can not be rendered literally into English without a great sacrifice both of sense and sound. Still their meaning and application must be familiar to the student. We give below, therefore, a somewhat extended list; adding, to each, either some equivalent phrase in our own language, or, where it will bear it, a regular translation. In every case, however, it will be highly advantageous to the student to put the phrase first in a perfectly literal dress, and then deduce from it, if possible, the thought, which it is employed to convey.

‡ When wenn is left out the subject and copula stand as in a question: thus, wenn ich es geschrieben hätte, &c., or (without wenn) hätte ich es geschrieben, so würde ich es Ihnen gesagt haben.

| | |
|--|--|
| Achten Sie es nicht so gering. | Do not think so light of it. |
| An der Sache ist nichts auszusetzen. | No fault can be found with it. |
| Auf's Ungewisse. | Upon an uncertainty. |
| Bei stockfinsterner Nacht. | At the dead of the night. |
| Bei der Sache ist ein Aber. | There is a 'but' in the matter. |
| Darauf ist es eben angelegt. | This was the very aim. |
| Das Schiff lag vor Anker. | The vessel rode at anchor. |
| Das Buch läßt sich lesen. | The book is readable. |
| Das läßt sich sehen. | That looks well; that will do. |
| Das hat keine Art. | That is unbecoming; unseemly. |
| Das läßt sich nicht blasen. | That cannot be done in a trice. |
| Das habe ich mir bald gedacht. | I thought so soon enough. |
| Dem ist nicht zu helfen. | There is no remedy for it. |
| Den Kürzern ziehen. | To get the worse of it. |
| Der Name will mir nicht befallen. | The name does not occur to me. |
| Die Haare standen mir zu Berge. | My hair stood on end. |
| Die Fenster gehen in den Garten. | The windows look into the garden. |
| Die Waare findet keinen Abgang. | There is no demand for the article. |
| Die Waare findet starken Absatz. | The article finds a ready market. |
| Eile mit Weile. | Slow and sure (hasten slowly). |
| Ein Erz-Schurke. | An arrant knave. |
| Ein vornehmer Mann. | A man of rank; a leading man |
| Einem Pferde die Sporen geben. | To clap spurs to a horse. |
| Einem auf den Leib gehen. | To attack or assault one. |
| Einem an die Hand gehen. | To go to one's aid. |
| Einen herausfordern. | To challenge or call out one. |
| Einen ansahen. | To address one harshly. |
| Einen an seinem Geburtstage anbinden. | To make a present to one on his birth-day. |
| Einen aufziehen. | To quiz one. |
| Sie ist unter die Haube gekommen. | She has got married. |
| Er prahlt gern, or schneidet gern auf. | He is fond of talking big. |
| Er läßt es sich sehr angelegen sein. | He makes it his business. |
| Er sah mich starr an. | He stared me in the face. |
| Er stellt sich unwissend an. | He affects ignorance. |
| Er hat sich losgemacht. | He has got off. |
| Er hält übel Haus. | He is a poor manager. |
| Er mußte schwören. | He was put to his oath. |
| Er weiß weder aus noch ein. | He is sadly put to it. |
| Er riecht den Braten. | He smells the rat. |
| Er hat sich davon gemacht. | He has run away. |
| Er läßt viel darauf gehen. | He spends a great deal of money. |
| Er hat sich mit seinen Gläubigern ab- gefunden. | He has come to term with his creditors |

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Er hat es so in der Art. | It is his way. |
| Er hat endlich seine Waare an den Mann gebracht. | He has found a market at last. |
| Er macht es gar zu bunt. | He is too bad; he goes too far. |
| Er geht nur darauf aus. | He aims at nothing else. |
| Es wird nicht angehen. | It will not do. |
| Es sieht sehr darnach aus. | It looks very much like it. |
| Es geht mir nichts ab. | I want for nothing. |
| Es geht bunt zu. | These are strange goings on. |
| Es reißt in den Beutel. | It costs a great deal of money. |
| Blau läßt nicht schön auf Grün. | Blue does not look well on green. |
| Ich hatte viel auf meine Schwester. | I set a great store by my sister. |
| Ich kann ihn gut leiden. | I like him well. |
| Ich kann mich nicht darauf besinnen. | I cannot recollect it. |
| Ich frage nichts darnach. | I do not care for it. |
| Ich kann den Mann nicht ausstehen. | I cannot bear the man. |
| Ich thäte es selber nicht. | I would not do it myself. |
| Ich will es mit ihm nicht so genaunehmen. | I won't stand upon it with him. |
| Ich bin dahinter gekommen. | I have found it out. |
| Ich lasse es gehen wie es will. | I let things go as they will. |
| Was hat er vor? | What is he about? |
| Ihm fällt jede Kleinigkeit auf. | Every trifle catches his attention. |
| In Beschlag nehmen. | To seize (goods). |
| Jedermann mag ihn gut leiden. | He is liked by every one. |
| Rehren Sie sich nicht an ihn. | Never mind him. |
| Kein Blatt vor das Maul nehmen. | To speak fearlessly. |
| Kurz angebunden sein. | To be irritable. |
| Langen Sie zu, meine Herren. | Help yourselves, Gentlemen |
| Lassen Sie mich zufrieden. | Let me alone. |
| Mein Nachbar läßt mir sagen. | My neighbor sends me word. |
| Mir nichts, dir nichts. | Without any ado. |
| Setzen Sie Ihren Hut auf. | Put your hat on. |
| Sie hat ihn darum gebracht. | She made him lose it. |
| Sie ergriffen das Hasenpanier. | They took to their heels. |
| Sie geben mir immer die Schuld. | You always blame me. |
| Sie thun der Sache zu viel. | You are carrying the thing too far |
| Was geht das mich an? | What is that to me? |
| Was hilft mir's? | What am I the better for it? |
| Was fällt Ihnen ein? | What an idea! |
| Was wolte ich doch sagen? | What was I going to say? |
| Weit gefehlt. | You are quite out. |
| Wenn ich sie zu sehen bekomme. | If I get a sight of her. |
| Wenn's mir fehlt schlägt. | If I do not succeed. |
| Wenn ich anders recht daran bin. | If I am not mistaken |

EXERCISES IN COMPOSING GERMAN.

In the following list, together with the vocabularies, English as well as German, the pupil will find an ample stock of words for the construction of the proposed sentences (see p. 79) according to any one of the several Lessons. Thus, for instance, on the

MODEL ACCORDING TO LESSON X,

the sentence, *Ex. 16*, „Dieser Müller ist der Sohn jenes Bauers,“ may be changed as follows: Jener Bauer ist der Freund dieses Müllers; or, Jener Müller giebt dem Bauer das Korn; or, Dieser Bauer verkauft dem Müller das Korn; or, Der Müller verkauft diesem Bauer das Mehl; or, the sentence may be so varied as to embrace the instructions of several of the preceding Lessons, either with or without the introduction of words which have not already occurred in former Exercises.

MODEL EXERCISES ACCORDING TO LESSON XII,

Exercise 20. 1. Ihr Vater hat ein Glas und einen Hammer auf dem Tische; or, Mein Bruder hat ein Feuer in seinem Ofen; or, Unser Freund hat mein Glas und Ihren Stuhl; or, Mein Hund steht zwischen meinem Freunde und unserem Lehrer.

A similar course may be pursued with any other sentence in any given Exercise; a less or more advanced lesson being selected, as a model, according to the progress or capacity of the pupil.

EXERCISES ACCORDING TO LESSON XXXVI.

Exercise 68. 1. Was hat der Müller in den kleinen Säcken? 2. Er hat Mehl darin. 3. Wer hat die Gurken? 4. Die Köche haben sie. 5. Wer hat die silberne Lichtpuge gehabt? 6. Wo sind die Schaufeln und der Schaumlöffel? 7. Welche Gemälde haben die Maler gehabt?

I. PROFESSIONS AND TRADES. *Handwerke und Gewerbe.*

- Apotheke, *m.* -s, ° apothecary.
 Arzt, *m.* -en; *pl.* Ärzte, physician.
 Barbier, *m.* -s, *pl.* -en, barber.
 Baumeister, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, architect.
 Bildhauer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, sculptor.
 Bischof, *m.* -s, *pl.* Bischöfe, bishop.
 Böttcher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, cooper.
 Brauer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, brewer.
 Buchbinder, *m.* -s, bookbinder.
 Buchdrucker, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, printer.
 Capellan, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, chaplain.
 Chirurg, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, surgeon.
 Dachdecker, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, slater.
 Farber, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, dyer.
 Fischhändler, *m.* -s, *pl.* fishmonger.
 Fleischer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, butcher.
 Fuhrmann, *pl.* -leute, wagoner.
 Geistliche, *m.* -n, clergyman.
 Gerber, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, currier.
 Glaser, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, glazier.
 Goldschmied, *m.* -en, goldsmith.
 Handschuhmacher, *m.* -s, glover.
 Hirt, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, herdsman.
 Hufschmied, *m.* -en, farrier.
 Juwelier, *m.* -en, jeweler.
 Köhler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, collier.
 Küfer, *m.* -s, *pl.* (See Böttcher.)
 Künstler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, artist.
 Kupferstecher, *m.* -en, engraver.
 Kupferhammer, *m.* -s, brazier.
 Kupferstecher, *m.* -s, graver.
 Mäher, *m.* -s, *pl.* mower.
 Marktschreier, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, quack.
 Maurer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, mason.
 Messerschmied, *m.* -en, cutler.
 Messger, *m.* -s. (See Fleischer.)
 Musikanter, *m.* -en, musician.
 Nachtwächter, *m.* -s, watchman.
 Näherin, *pl.* -nen, seamstress.
 Naturforscher, *m.* -s, naturalist.
 Obsthändlerin, fruitwoman.
 Papst, *m.* -en, *pl.* Päpste, pope.
 Perrückenmacher, hair-dresser.
 Pfarrer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, vicar, parson.
 Pferdehändler, *m.* -, horsedealer.
 Philosophie, *m.* -en, philosopher.
 Prediger, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, preacher.
 Priester, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, priest.
 Redner, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, orator.
 Sattler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, saddler.
 Schauspieler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, actor.
 Schlosser, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, locksmith.
 Schmied, *m.* -en, *pl.* -, smith.
 Schneider, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, tailor.
 Schornsteinfeger, chimney-sweep.
 Schriftsteller, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, author.
 Schuhmacher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, cobbler.
 Schullehrer, *m.* -s, schoolteacher.
 Seiler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, rope-maker.
 Specereihändler, grocer.
 Stickerin, *pl.* -nen, embroiderer.
 Tagelöhner, *m.* -s, day-laborer.
 Tapezierer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, upholsterer.
 Tröbeler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, fripperer.
 Tuchhändler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, draper.
 Uhrmacher, *m.* -s, watchmaker.
 Wäscherin, *pl.* -nen, washer-woman.
 Weber, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, weaver.
 Wechsel, *m.* -s, money-exchanger.
 Wundarzt, *pl.* -ärzte, See Chirurg.
 Zahnarzt, *pl.* -ärzte, dentist.
 Zuckerbäcker, confectioner.

II. MAN. *Der Mensch.*

- Alter, *n.* -s, old age.
 Amme, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, nurse.
 Braut, *f.* -, *pl.* Bräute, bride.
 Bräutigam, *m.* -s, bridegroom.
 Ehefrau, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, wife.
 Ehemann, *pl.* -männer, husband.
 Enkel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, grand son.
 Enkelin, *pl.* -nen, grand daughter.
 Familie, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, family.
 Geburt, *f.* -, birth.
 Gemahl, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, } consort.
 Gemahlin, *f.* -, *pl.* -nen, }
 Großmutter, -mütter, grandmother.
 Großvater, -väter, grandfather.
 Jugend, *f.* -, youth.
 Jungfrau, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, virgin.
 Junge, *m.* -s, young man.
 Kindheit, *f.* -, childhood, infancy.
 Nachkommen, *pl.* descendants.
 Pathe, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, godfather.

* For declension and formation of plural, see p. 80; connected view of declensions, page 104.

Paise, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, godmother.
 Pate'gevater, *pl.* -väter, fosterfather.
 Schwager, brother-in-law.
 Schwö'gerin, sister-in-law.
 Schwie'germutter, mother-in-law.
 Schwie'gersohn, son-in-law.
 Schwie'gervater, father-in-law.
 Stiefmutter, stepmother.
 Stiefsohn, *m.* -es, stepson.

Stiefvater, *m.* -s, stepfather
 Ur'enkel, great-grand son.
 Ur'großvater, great-grand father.
 Verlo'bung, *pl.* -en, betrothment.
 Vor'fahren, *pl.* ancestors.
 Waise, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, orphan.
 Wittwe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, widow.
 Wittwer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, widower.
 Zwilling, *m.* -s, *pl.* -t, twin.

III. THE HUMAN BODY. Der menschliche Körper.

Ader, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, vein.
 Arm, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, arm.
 Aug'apfel, *pl.* -äpfel, eye-ball, pupil.
 Aug'enbraune, *pl.* -n, eye-brow.
 Aug'enlid, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, eye-lid.
 Aug'engewimpern, *pl.* eye-lashes.
 Backen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, cheek.
 Backenbart, *pl.* -bärte, whiskers.
 Bart, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* Bärte, beard.
 Bein, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, leg.
 Blut, *n.* -es, -s, blood.
 Brust, *f.* -, *pl.* Brüste, breast.
 Busen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, bosom.
 Daumen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, thumb.
 El'bogen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, elbow.
 Ferse, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, heel.
 Fleisch, *n.* -es, flesh.
 Galle, *f.* -, gall.
 Gaumen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, palate.
 Gehirn', *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, brain.
 Gelenk', *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, joint.
 Gerip'pe, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, skeleton.
 Gesicht', *n.* *pl.* -e, -er, sight.
 Gesicht'spunkt, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* -züge,
 lineament, feature.
 Glied, *n.* limb, member.
 Hals, *m.* -es, *pl.* Hälse, neck.
 Haut, *f.* -, *pl.* Häute, skin.
 Herz, *n.* -ens, *pl.* en, heart.
 Hülse, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, hip.
 Kehle, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, throat.

Knie, *n.* -s, *pl.* Kniee, knee.
 Knochen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, bone.
 Körper, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, body.
 Leber, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, liver.
 Lippe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, lip.
 Lunge, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, lungs.
 Magen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, stomach.
 Mark, *n.* -es, -s, marrow.
 Milz, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, spleen.
 Mund, *m.* *pl.* Münder, mouth.
 Muskel, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, muscle.
 Nacken, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, nape.
 Nagel, *m.* -s, *pl.* Nägel, nail.
 Nase, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, nose.
 Nerv, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, nerve.
 Nieren, *pl.* -, loins.
 Rippe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, rib.
 Rückgrat, *m.* & *n.* spine.
 Schädel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, skull.
 Schenkel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, thigh.
 Schlaf, *m.* *pl.* Schläfe, temple.
 Schlag'ader, *f.* -, *pl.* -n' artery.
 Schulter, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, shoulder.
 Seite, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, side.
 Stirn, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, forehead.
 Wade, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, calf.
 Wange, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, cheek.
 Zahnfleisch, *n.* -es, gum.
 Zehe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, toe.
 Zunge, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, tongue.

IV. MALADIES, REMEDIES. Krankheiten, Heilmittel.

Anfall, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* -fälle, fit.
 Balsam, *m.* -s, *pl.* -e, balm.
 Blattern, *pl.* the small-pox.
 Blindheit, *f.* -, blindness.
 Brantwein, *m.* brandy.
 Brech'mittel, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, vomitive.
 Fieber, *n.* -s, fever.
 Geschwulst', Geschwülste, swelling.
 Geschwür', *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, ulcer.

Gicht, *f.* -, gout.
 Heilung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, cure.
 Hei'serkeit, *f.* -, hoarseness.
 Husten, *m.* -s, cough.
 Jalappe, *f.* jalap.
 Kollik, *f.* -, colic.
 Krampf, *m.* Krämpfe, cramp.
 Krebs, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, cancer.
 Masern, *pl.* measles.

Mittel, *n.* -*s*, *pl.* -, remedy.
 Narbe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, scar.
 Nervenfieber, *n.* -*s*, nervous-fever.
 Ohnmacht, *f.* -, fainting.
 Pocken, *pl.* (See Blattern.)
 Quetschung, *pl.* -*en*, contusion.
 Receipt', *n.* *pl.* -*t*, prescription.
 Salbe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, salve.
 Scharlachfieber, scarlet-fever.
 Schielen, *n.* -*s*, squinting.
 Schnupfen, *m.* -*s*, cold.

Schwindel, *m.* -*s*, dizziness.
 Schwinducht, *f.* -, consumption.
 Stammeln, *n.* -*s*, stammering.
 Stummheit, *f.* -, dumbness.
 Sucht, die fallende, epilepsy.
 Taubheit, *f.* -, deafness.
 Uebelfetti, *f.* -, nausea.
 Un'päßlichkeit, indisposition.
 Verrenkung, *pl.* -*en*, dislocation.
 Wassersucht, *f.* -, dropsy.
 Wunde, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, wound.

V. ARTICLES OF DRESS, ETC. Kleidungsstücke, &c.

Ärmel, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, sleeve.
 Armband, *pl.* -*bänder*, bracelet.
 Atlas, *m.* -*ies*, *pl.* -*ies*, satin.
 Barchent, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*t*, dimity.
 Batist', *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, cambria.
 Baum'wolle, *f.* -, cotton.
 Bein'fleider, *pl.* pantaloons.
 Besatz', *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*sätze*, trimming.
 Beutel, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, purse, bag.
 Brille, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, spectacles.
 Brust'nadel, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, broach.
 Bürste, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, brush.
 Degen, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, sword.
 Diamant, *m.* diamond.
 El'fenbein, *n.* -*es*, -*s*, ivory.
 Fächer, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, fan.
 Flor, *m.* -*es*, -*s*, *pl.* Flört, crape.
 Frack, *m.* *pl.* Fräcke, dress-coat.
 Franse, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, fringe.
 Futter, *n.* -*s*, lining.
 Geschni'cke, *n.* -*s*, jewelry.
 Granat', *m.* -*en*, *pl.* -*en*, garnet.
 Gürtel, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, sash.
 Haarnadel, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, hair-pin.
 Halsband, *n.* *pl.* -*bänder*, neck-lace.
 Halstuch, *n.* *pl.* -*tücher*, neck-cloth.
 Haube, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, cap.
 Hemd, *n.* -*es*, -*s*, *pl.* -*en*, shirt.
 Hosen, *pl.* breeches.
 Hü'senträger, *n.* suspenders.
 Kamai'schen, *pl.* gaiters.
 Kamm, *m.* *pl.* Kamme, comb.
 Kappe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, cap.
 Kleid, *n.* -*es*, dress, gown.
 Kopfsch, *m.* -*es*, head-dress.
 Kragen, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, collar.
 Leinwand, *f.* -, linen.

Locke, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, curl.
 Musselin', *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, muslin.
 Mütze, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, (See Kappe.)
 Na'delfissen, *n.* -*s*, pin-cushion.
 Nähnadel, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, needle.
 O'berrock, *m.* *pl.* -*röcke*, frock-coat.
 Ohrring, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, ear-ring.
 Pelzwerk, *n.* -*es*, *s*, *pl.* -*t*, fur.
 Perle, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, pearl.
 Pomade, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, pomatum.
 Riech'fläschchen, *n.* smelling-bottle.
 Ring, *m.* -*es*, -*s*, *pl.* -*t*, ring.
 Sammet, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*t*, velvet.
 Schere, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, shears.
 Schlafrock, *m.* dressing-gown.
 Schleier, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, veil.
 Schloß, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* Schösser, clasp.
 Schnalle, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, buckle.
 Schnürbrust, *f.* -, *pl.* -*brüste*, stays.
 Schnür'nadel, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, bodkin.
 Schooß, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Schöße, lap.
 Schürze, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, apron.
 Seide, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, silk.
 Socke, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, sock.
 Son'nen'schirm, *m.* parasol.
 Spitzen, *pl.* laces.
 Sporen, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -, spur.
 Sted'nadel, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, pin.
 Stiefel'schnack, *m.* boot-jack.
 Strumpf, *m.* *pl.* Strümpfe, stockings.
 Taffet, *m.* -*es*, -*s*, *pl.* -*t*, taffeta.
 Tasche, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, pocket.
 Un'terhosen, *pl.* drawers.
 Weste, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, vest.
 Wische, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, blacking.
 Zahn'bürste, *f.* tooth-brush.
 Zahn'stocker, *n.* tooth-pick.

VI. TOWN AND HOUSE, ETC. Die Stadt und das Haus, &c.

- Balken, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, beam.
 Bank, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, bank.
 Baumgarten, *pl.* -gärten, orchard.
 Baumschule, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, nursery.
 Bibliothek, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, library.
 Börse, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, exchange.
 Brett, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -er, plank.
 Brücke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, bridge.
 Brunnen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, well.
 Capelle, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, chapel.
 Caserne, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, barrack.
 Dach, *n.* -s, *pl.* Dächer, roof.
 Dachrinne, *f.* gutter, spout.
 Decke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, ceiling.
 Dorf, *n.* *pl.* Dörfer, village.
 Erdgeschos, *n.* ground-floor.
 Fensterladen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -laden, window-shutters.
 Flecken, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, borough.
 Fußboden, *m.* -s, *pl.* -böden, floor.
 Gasse, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, lane.
 Gefängniß, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, prison.
 Gemüths'haus, *n.* *pl.* -häuser, green-house.
 Gewölbe, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, vault.
 Glocke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, bell.
 Glockenspiel, *n.* -es, chime.
 Gasse, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, kennel.
 Hauptstadt, *f.* -, *pl.* -städte, metropolis, chief town.
 Hecke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, hedge.
 Hof, *m.* *pl.* Höfe, court, yard.
 Hütte, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, cottage, hut.
 Kalk, *m.* -es, -s, lime.
 Kamin, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, chimney.
 Kammer, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, chamber.
 Keller, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, cellar.
 Kirchhof, *m.* -es, *pl.* -höfe, burying-place, church-yard.
 Kirchspiel, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, parish.
 Kirchturm, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* -türme, tower, belfry of a church.
 Kloster, *n.* -s, *pl.* Klöster, cloister.
 Küche, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, kitchen.
 Landhaus, *n.* country-house.
 Landstraße, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, highway.
 Mauer, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, wall.
 Meierhof, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* -höfe, farm.
 Möbeln, *pl.* furniture.
 Mörtel, *m.* -s, mortar.
 Münze, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, mint, coin.
 Ofen, *m.* -s, *pl.* Öfen, stove.
 Palast, *m.* -es, *pl.* Paläste, palace.
 Pflaster, *n.* -s, pavement.
 Post, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, post-office.
 Pumpe, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, pump.
 Rathhaus, *n.* -es, *pl.* häuser, town-house, council-house.
 Riegel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, bolt, door-bar.
 Saal, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* Säle, saloon.
 Sacristei, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, vestry.
 Schauspielhaus, *n.* theater.
 Schelle, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, bell (small).
 Scheune, *f.* -, granary, barn.
 Schlafzimmer, *n.* -s, bed-room.
 Schloß, *n.* -ses, castle, lock.
 Schiefer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, slate.
 Schornstein, *m.* (See Kamin).
 Speicher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, loft, garret.
 Spital, *n.* -es, *pl.* -äler, hospital.
 Stadthor, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, city-gate.
 Stadtviertel, *n.* quarter of (the) town.
 Stall, *m.* -es, *pl.* Ställe, stable.
 Stockwerk, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, story.
 Stube, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, chamber.
 Treidhaus, *n.* hot-house.
 Treppengeländer, *n.* stair-case-rail.
 Thurm, *m.* Thürme, tower, steeple.
 Umgebungen, *pl.* environs.
 Vorzimmer, *n.* ante-chamber.
 Vorstadt, *f.* -, *pl.* -städte, suburb.
 Wand, *f.* -, Wände, wall (of house).
 Weinberg, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, vine-yard.
 Wiese, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, meadow.
 Zeughaus, *n.* *pl.* -häuser, arsenal.
 Ziegel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, tile.
 Ziegelstein, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, brick.
 Zollhaus, *n.* custom-house.

VII. FURNITURE, ETC. Mobilien, &c.

- Becher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, tumbler, cup.
 Bett, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -en, bed.
 Bettdecke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, coverlet.
 Bettlade, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, bedstead.
 Bettuch, *n.* -es, *pl.* -tücher, sheet.
 Blasebalg, *m.* *pl.* -bälge, bellows.
 Bücherschrank, *n.* book-shelf.
 Bücherschrank, *m.* book-case.
 Bügelschrank, *n.* smoothing-iron.
 Casterel, *n.* -s, *pl.* -e, sauce pan.
 Deckel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, cover.
 Eimer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, bucket.

Faß, *n.* -*ſſes*, *pl.* Fäſſer, cask.
 Federbett, *n.* -*es*, feather-bed.
 Feuerſtahl, *m.* *pl.* -*ſtähle*, steel.
 Feuerſtein, *m.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* -*t*, flint.
 Feuerzange, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, tongs.
 Feuerzeug, *n.* -*es*, tinder-box.
 Fußſtuhl, *f.* -, *pl.* -*ſtühle*, foot-stool.
 Gedeck, *n.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* -*t*, cover.
 Gemälde, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -, picture.
 Handtuch, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -*tücher*, towel.
 Herd, *m.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* -*t*, hearth.
 Holzkohle, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, charcoal.
 Käſten, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -, box. (L. 24. 1.)
 Keſſel, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, kettle.
 Kerze, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, taper, candle.
 Kiſte, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, chest.
 Kommode, *f.* -, chest of drawers.
 Kopfküſſen, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -, pillow.
 Korb, *m.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* Körbe, basket.
 Kronleuchter, *m.* chandelier.
 Krug, *m.* -*es* *pl.* Krüge, pitcher.
 Kübel, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, pail, tub.
 Küchengeſchirr, *n.* kitchen utensil.
 Lampe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, lamp.
 Laterne, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, lantern.
 Licht, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, (See Kerze.)
 Lichtruße, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, snuffers.
 Mörſer, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, mortar.
 Pfanne, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, pan.
 Pfefferbüchſe, *f.* -, pepper-box.
 Pfropfen, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, cork.
 Pfropfenſchraube, *m.* cork-screw.

Pfühl, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Pfühle, bolster.
 Polſter, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -, bolster.
 Pult, *n.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* -*t*, desk.
 Rahmen, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, frame.
 Salzfaß, *n.* *pl.* -*fäſſer*, salt-cellar.
 Schachtel, *f.* -, (See Käftchen.)
 Schaufel, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, shovel.
 Schaumlöffel, *m.* -*es*, skimmer.
 Schirm, *m.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* -*t*, screen.
 Schrank, *m.* *pl.* Schränke, cupboard.
 Schublade, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, drawer.
 Schürſteine, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -, poker.
 Schweißbüchſe, *n.* match.
 Seife, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, soap.
 Senftopf, *m.* -*töpfe*, mustard-pot.
 Serviette, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, napkin.
 Sieb, *n.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* -*t*, sieve.
 Sopha, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -*3*, sofa.
 Steinſchale, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, coal.
 Suppenſchüssel, *f.* -, tureen.
 Teppich, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, carpet.
 Tiegel, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, skillet.
 Tischtuch, *n.* *pl.* -*tücher*, table-cloth.
 Topf, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Töpfe, pot.
 Trichter, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, funnel.
 Wandleuchter, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, sconce.
 Warmſtaße, *f.* -, warming-pan.
 Waſchbecken, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -, washbowl.
 Wiege, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, cradle.
 Zuckerdoſe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, sugar-box.
 Zunder, *m.* -*es*, tinder.

VIII. DISHES. Gerichte.

Conſect, *n.* comfit, sweet-meats.
 Ei, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, egg.
 Eiſerſuchen, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, omelet.
 Erfrischung, *f.* -, refreshment.
 Fleiſchbrühe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, broth.
 Gaſtmahl, *n.* -*es*, -*mähler*, banquet.
 Hammelfleiſch, *n.* -*es*, mutton.
 Hammelfeule, *f.* -, leg of mutton.
 Kalbfleiſch, *n.* -*es*, veal.
 Kalbscotelette, *f.* cutlet.

Kloß, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Klöße, dumpling.
 Nudel, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, vermicelli.
 Ochſenbraten, *m.* roast-beef.
 Ochſenfleiſch, *n.* -*es*, beef.
 Pfannkuchen, *m.* -*es*, pan-cake.
 Schinken, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -, ham.
 Schweinefleiſch, *n.* -*es*, pork.
 Suppe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, soup.
 Torte, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, tart.
 Würſt, *f.* -, *pl.* Würſte, sausage.

IX. GRAIN AND VEGETABLES. Getreide und Gemüſe.

Blumenkohl, *m.* -*es*, cauliflower.
 Bohne, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, bean.
 Erbſe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, pea.
 Gerſte, *f.* -, barley.
 Gurke, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, cucumber.
 Hafer, *m.* -*es*, oats.
 Hirſe, *m.* -*n*, millet.

Knoblauch, *m.* -*es*, -*3*, garlic.
 Kohl, *m.* -*es*, -*3*, cabbage.
 Korn, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* Körner, corn, grain.
 Kraut, *n.* -*es*, -*3*, *pl.* Kräuter, herb.
 Krefſe, *f.* -, cress.
 Linſe, *f.* -, *pl.* -*n*, lentil.
 Mais, *n.* -*es*, maize.

| | |
|--|---|
| Meerrettig, <i>m.</i> horse-rad'ish. | Salbei, <i>f.</i> -, sage. |
| Parst'ke, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, parsnip. | Sau'erampfer, <i>m.</i> -s, sorrel. |
| Peters'lic, <i>f.</i> -, parsley. | Schwamm, <i>m.</i> -es, (See Pilz). |
| Pflanz', <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, plant. | Sell'erie, <i>m.</i> -s, celery. |
| Pilz, <i>m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, mushroom. | Spargel, <i>m.</i> -s, asparagus. |
| Radic'schen, <i>n.</i> -s, turnip-radish. | Spinat', <i>m.</i> -es, -s, spinach. |
| Reiß, <i>m.</i> -es, rice. | Thym'an, <i>m.</i> -s, thyme. |
| Reutig, <i>m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, radish. | Trüffel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, truffle. |
| Roggen, <i>m.</i> -s, rye. | Weizen, <i>m.</i> -s, wheat. |
| Rübe, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, (brassica rapa); | Wurzel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, root. |
| gelbe Rübe, carrot, rethe Rübe, | Zwiebel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, onion. |
| beet; weiße Rübe, turnip. | |

X. FRUITS AND FRUIT-TREES. Obst und Obstbäume.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ä'nanas, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -se, pine-apple. | Mandel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, almond. |
| Ap'felbaum, <i>m.</i> apple-tree. | Maul'beere, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, mulberry. |
| Ap'fels'ne, <i>f.</i> sweet-orange. | Melo'ne, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, melon. |
| Apriko'se, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, apricot. | Mispel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, medlar. |
| Birnbaum, <i>m.</i> pear-tree. | Pf'r'siche, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, peach. |
| Brom'beere, <i>f.</i> black-berry. | Pflaumenbaum, <i>m.</i> plum-tree. |
| Citro'ne, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, lemon. | Pomeran'ze, <i>g.</i> -, <i>p.</i> -n, orange. |
| Dattel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, date. | Quitte, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, quince. |
| Erd'beere, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, strawberry. | Ros'i'ne, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, raisin. |
| Has'elnuß, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -nüsse, hazelnut. | Stachelbeere, <i>f.</i> -, goose-berry. |
| Heidelbeere, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -en, bilberry. | Strauch, <i>m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> Sträucher, bush. |
| Him'beere, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, raspberry. | Walnuß, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -nüsse, walnut. |
| Johann'isbeere, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, currant. | Weinstock, <i>m.</i> grape-vine. |
| Kastä'nie, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, chestnut. | Wein'traube, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, grape. |

XI. FOREST-TREES. Waldbäume.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ähorn, <i>m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, maple. | Pinde, <i>f.</i> linden tree, lime-tree. |
| Birke, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, birch. | Pappel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, poplar. |
| Buche, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, beech. | Rinde, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, bark. |
| Eiche, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, oak. | Stamm, <i>m.</i> trunk. |
| Esche, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, ash. | Tanne, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, fir. |
| Espe, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, aspen. | Ulme, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, elm. |
| Fichte, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, pine. | Weide, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, willow. |
| Lärche, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, larch. | Zweig, <i>m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, bough. |

XII. FLOWERS, ETC. Blumen, &c.

| | |
|--|--|
| Auri'kel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, auricula. | Nettel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, nettle. |
| Distel, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, thistle. | Rü'ter.porn, <i>m.</i> -es, -s, lark-spur. |
| Weißblatt, <i>n.</i> honey-suckle. | Rose, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, rose. |
| Jasmin', <i>m.</i> -es, -s, jessamine. | Schlüß'elblume, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, cowslip. |
| Leu'se, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, gillyflower. | Sonnenblume, <i>f.</i> -, sun-flower. |
| Lil'ie, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, lily. | Tulpe, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, tulip. |
| Maß'liebe, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, daisy. | Unkraut, <i>n.</i> -es, -s, weed. |
| Mohn'blume, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, poppy. | Veilchen, <i>n.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, violet. |
| Ner'ze, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, myrtle. | Ver'giß'mein'ig, <i>m.</i> -es, -s, forget |
| Nelke, <i>f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, pink. | me-not. |

XIII. BIRDS, ETC. *Vögel, &c.*

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Adler, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, eagle. | <i>Nachtigall, f.</i> -, nightingale. |
| <i>Amsel, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, blackbird. | <i>Paragei, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, parrot. |
| <i>Bachstelze, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, wagtail. | <i>Wau, m.</i> -en, <i>pl.</i> -en, peacock. |
| <i>Buchfink, m.</i> -en, <i>pl.</i> -en, chaffinch. | <i>Rabe, m.</i> -n, <i>pl.</i> n, raven. |
| <i>Distelfink, m.</i> goldfinch. | <i>Raubvogel, m.</i> bird of prey. |
| <i>Dohle, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, jackdaw. | <i>Rebhuhn, n.</i> partridge. |
| <i>Drossel, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, thrush. | <i>Reiher, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, heron. |
| <i>Ehre, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, magpie. | <i>Reithelchen, n.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, redbreast. |
| <i>Eute, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, duck. | <i>Schnabel, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> Schnäbel, bill. |
| <i>Eule, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, owl. | <i>Schwabe, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, swallow. |
| <i>Falke, m.</i> -n, <i>pl.</i> -n, falcon. | <i>Schwan, m.</i> swan. |
| <i>Fasan, m.</i> -en, <i>pl.</i> -en, pheasant. | <i>Sperling, m.</i> -s, sparrow. |
| <i>Flebermaus, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -mäuse, bat. | <i>Storch, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> Störche, stork. |
| <i>Flügel, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, wing. | <i>Strauß, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, ostrich. |
| <i>Gans, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> Gänse, goose. | <i>Taube, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, pigeon. |
| <i>Habicht, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, hawk. | <i>Truthahn, m.</i> -es, turkey. |
| <i>Hänfling, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, linnet. | <i>Turteltaube, f.</i> -, turtle-dove. |
| <i>Huhn, n.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> Hühner, hen. | <i>Wachtel, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, quail. |
| <i>Kanarienvogel, m.</i> canary-bird. | <i>Waldschneipe, f.</i> -, wood-cock. |
| <i>Krähc, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, crow. | <i>Wasserhuhn, n.</i> moor-hen. |
| <i>Kuckuck, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, chicken. | <i>Wasserhühner, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, snipe. |
| <i>Kuckuck, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, cuckoo. | <i>Baumfönig, -es, -s, pl.</i> -e, wren. |
| <i>Lerche, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, lark. | |

XIV. QUADRUPEDS. *Vierfüßige Thiere.*

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Affe, m.</i> -n, <i>pl.</i> -n, ape. | <i>Raninchen, n.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, rabbit. |
| <i>Bär, m.</i> -en, <i>pl.</i> -en, bear. | <i>Lamm, n.</i> lamb. |
| <i>Biber, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, beaver. | <i>Löwe, m.</i> -n, <i>pl.</i> -n, lion. |
| <i>Dachs, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, badger. | <i>Marber, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, pole-cat. |
| <i>Eichhörnchen, n.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, squirrel. | <i>Maulesel, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, mule. |
| <i>Frettchen, n.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, ferret. | <i>Maulwurf, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -würfe, mole. |
| <i>Fuchs, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> Füchse, fox. | <i>Reh, n.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, roe. |
| <i>Füllen, n.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, colt. | <i>Schwein, n.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, hog. |
| <i>Gemse, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, chamois. | <i>Tiger, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, tiger. |
| <i>Hase, m.</i> -n, <i>pl.</i> -n, hare. | <i>Wolf, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> Wölfe, wolf. |
| <i>Hirsch, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, deer. | <i>Ziege, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, goat. |
| <i>Igel, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, hedge-hog. | |

XV. FISHES, ETC. *Fische, &c.*

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Aal, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, eel. | <i>Karpfen, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -, carp. |
| <i>Auster, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, oyster. | <i>Krebs, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, craw-fish. |
| <i>Barsch, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, perch. | <i>Lachs, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, salmon. |
| <i>Büßling, m.</i> red-herring. | <i>Muschel, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, shell. |
| <i>Forelle, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, trout. | <i>Salmon, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, (See Lachs). |
| <i>Garnele, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, shrimp. | <i>Schellfisch, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, haddock. |
| <i>Hai, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, shark. | <i>Schildkröte, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, turtle. |
| <i>Haring, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, herring. | <i>Schleife, f.</i> -, <i>pl.</i> -n, tench. |
| <i>Hecht, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, pike. | <i>Stör, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, sturgeon. |
| <i>Hummer, m.</i> -s, <i>pl.</i> -n, lobster. | <i>Walffisch, m.</i> -es, -s, <i>pl.</i> -e, whale. |
| <i>Kabeljau, m.</i> -es, <i>pl.</i> -e, haddock. | |

READING LESSONS.

THE following selections are from various sources; all excellent, however, and embracing a great diversity of style and matter. The student, therefore, who has become familiar with the grammatical course laid down in the preceding part of this book, will enter upon these reading lessons with no little pleasure. With the aid of the vocabulary, which is sufficiently full, and the references to the grammar, which are quite numerous, he can, indeed, find no serious difficulty. Many more references might have been made; but he who duly consults those already given, will not, it is believed, be in want of further guidance in the use of his grammar.

I. Fabeln.

1. Der Firsch.

Der Firsch sah einst in einem klaren Bache sein Bild. Wahrlich, sagte er, ich übertreffe alle Thiere an Anstand und Pracht! Wie herrlich ragt^a das^b Geweih empor! — Doch meine Füße, wie mager und häßlich! Kaum hatte er das (L. 44. 1.) gesagt^c, so erblickte er^d einen Löwen, der^e auf ihn losging. Mit größter^f Schnelle trugen ihn seine verachteten Füße in den nächsten Wald; aber plötzlich hielten die Gesträuche seine breiten Hörner auf, und er konnte sich nicht loswinden. Der Löwe erreichte und tödtete ihn.

Schätze^g die Dinge nicht nach der äußern Gestalt, sondern nach dem innern Werthe; sonst wirst du oft dein Urtheil zu bereuen haben. Weisner.

2. Der Wanderer und das Irrlicht.

Ein Wanderer sah des Nachts^h auf seinem Wege unweit von sich ein Irrlicht, ging ihm gerade nach, kam vom rechten Pfade ab und versank dadurch in einen tiefen Sumpf. Ha, verwünschtes Trugbild! rief er aus, warum mußt du mich hierher führen? — Ich dich geführt? erwiderte das Irrlicht; um Verzeihung, ich verdiene diesen Vorwurf nicht. Du gingst mir jaⁱ freiwillig nach. Niemand als du selbst^k gab dir den Rath mir^l zu folgen.

Weisner.

^a L. 61. 4; ^b L. 42. k; ^c L. 36. 3; ^d L. 53. 5; ^e L. 39; ^f L. 32. 6; ^g L. 50. 6; ^h L. 61. 8; ⁱ L. 62. 20; ^j L. 34. 7; ^k L. 29. 8; ^l L. 64. 6.

3. Der wilde Apfelbaum.

In den hohlen Stamm eines wilden Apfelbaumes ließ sich ein Schwarm Bienen nieder. Sie füllten ihn mit den Schätzen ihres Königs, und der Baum ward so stolz darauf, daß er alle anderen Bäume gegen sich verachtete. Da rief ihm ein Rosenstock zu: Elender Stolz auf geliebene Süßigkeiten! Ist deine Frucht darum weniger herbe? In diese treibe den Honig herauf, wenn du es vermagst, und dann erst wird der Mensch dich segnen! Lessing.

4. Der Specht und die Taube.

Ein Specht und eine Taube hatten einen Pfau besucht. Wie gefiel dir unser Birch? fragte der Specht auf dem Rückwege. Ist er nicht ein wideriges Geschöpf? Sein Stolz, seine unförmlichen Füße, seine häßliche Stimme, sind sie nicht unerträglich? „Auf alles dieses,“ antwortete die gute Taube, „habe ich keine Zeit zu sehen; denn ich hatte genug an der Schönheit seines Kopfes, an den herrlichen Farben seiner Federn und an seinem majestätischen Schweife zu bewundern.“ Meißner.

5. Die Wespen im Honigtopfe.

Ein Schwarm Wespen war in einen Honigtopf gefroren und ließ es sich da wohl schmecken. Doch jetzt, als sie wieder fort wollten, konnten sie nicht; denn die zähe Süßigkeit hatte Flügel und Füße unbrauchbar gemacht. Kläglich jammerten sie nun über ihr nahe Ende. — Eine einzige Wespe hatte sich vorsichtig am Rande erhalten, zwar weniger genossen, aber sich auch nicht gefangen. „Ihr dauert mich, Schwestern, sprach sie, indem sie fort flog; aber ihr hättet auch die Schwierigkeit des Herauskommens bedenken sollen, ehe ihr euch so tief hinein wagtet.“

Der Weg zum sündhaften Vergnügen ist leicht. Doch desto schwerer fällt es, von ihm sich loszureißen. Daran denke man vorher, denn nachher ist es zu spät und fruchtlos. Meißner.

6. Die Taube und die Krähe.

Ein muthwilliger Knabe warf nach einer schneeweißen Taube mit nassen Erde, und das glänzende Gefieder derselben wurde schmutzig und schwarz. Nun bist du doch auch geworden wie unser einer! sagte eine alte Krähe höhnlachend; denn die Bösen haben es nicht gern, daß man besser sein will, als sie, und freuen sich über den Unfall der Guten.

Wie euer einer geworden? erwiderte die Taube. Keinesweges! Ich schäme nur so; ich werde aber nicht so bleiben!

Und sie blieb auch nicht so. Sie badete, sie reinigte sich, und war wieder so glänzend weiß, als zuvor; aber die Krähe blieb, wie sie war, und wüthete es auch geblieben sein, wenn sie auch ein Jahr lang gebadet und gepuht hätte.

Galte die Herzen nur rein; gegen die Verläumdung wird schon Rath, und die Unschuld geht am Ende dennoch gerechtfertigt und geläutert hervor. Lessing.

• L. 28. 5; • L. 42; • L. 59. 3; • L. 48. 2; q L. 45. 15; • L. 21. 8; • L. 29. 10; • L. 49. 4; • L. 55. 3; • L. 19; • L. 41. 6; • L. 26. 13; • L. 56. 1; • L. 28. 10.

7 Der Einsiedler und der Bär.

Ein Einsiedler hatte einen jungen Bären aufgezogen^a und durch Futter, Schläge und manche Mühe ihn so zahm wie einen Hund gemacht. Oft brachte nun der Bär seinem Erzieher ein ansehnliches Stück Wildpret^b heim, trug Holz und Wasser herbei, bewachte seine Hütte, kurz, er leistete ihm Dienste aller Art. Einst lag an einem Sommertage^c der Einsiedler im Grase dahingestreckt und schlief. Neben ihm saß sein Bär und wehrte die Fliegen ab, die schaarenweise^d den Greis umschwärzten. Vorzüglich quälte ihn eine; wohl g^ehumal^e hatte der Bär sie fortgejagt, und immer kam sie wieder. Jetzt, als sie sich abermals auf die Stirn des Schlafenden^f setzte, rief der Bär unwillig aus: Warte! warte! ich will dich wegbleiben lehren! — Bei diesen Worten ergriff er einen Stein, zielte richtig und zerschmetterte die Fliege, aber freilich auch mit ihr den Kopf des Alten.^g

Wähle dir keinen einfältigen, keinen allzu rohen Menschen zum^h Freunde! Selbstⁱ mit dem besten Willen kann er dir J oft mehr als dein ärgster Feind schaden. Lavater.

8. Die Nachtigall und der Gimpel.

Die Nachtigall ging einst auf Reisen und zur^k Gesellschaft nahm sie einen Gimpel mit.^l Sie flogen über Thal und Berg und kamen nach etlichen Tagen in einen schönen Wald, in welchem sie sich niederließen. Kaum hatten sie sich auf einen Busch gesetzt, so versammelte sich auch schon eine ganze Schaar von den Vögeln des Waldes, um^m die Fremdlinge zu sehen. Alle bewunderten den Gimpel und lobten seinen schwarzen Kopf, den grauen Rücken und das schöne Roth seiner Brust. Das muß ein sehr vornehmer Reisenderⁿ sein, sprach einer zu dem andern. Der andere Vogel ist sehr unbedeutend. Wahrscheinlich ist er der Diener. Man drängte sich immer neugieriger um den schön besiederten Gimpel her, und drängte die Nachtigall so allmählich in eine unbeobachtete Ecke.

Endlich ersuchten die Vögel den Gimpel, er möge doch auch einmal seine Stimme hören lassen.^o Denn man vermuthete, daß sein Gesang seinem Kleide gleich^p kommen müsse. Er ließ sich bereben^q und sang. Aber die Vögel, die ihn vorher bewundert hatten, lachten insgeheim und sagten sich^r halblaut in's Ohr: Welch^s elende Stimme! Wenn er nur lieber geschwiegen hätte.

Jetzt erhob die Nachtigall in ihrem verborgenen Winkel ihre Stimme. Was ist das? riefen die Vögel mit Bewunderung und Freude. Welch^t herrlicher Gesang! Wie? der unscheinbare Fremdling singt so schön? O, Freund, du übertriffst alle Sänger an Lieblichkeit und Stärke des Gesanges. Deine Stimme besüßet dein Aussehen.

Urtheile nicht nach dem Aeußern. In einem unscheinbaren Kleide ist oft das seltenste Talent verborgen. Grimm.

^a L. 51. 3; ^b L. 59. 3; ^c L. 24. 4; ^d L. 52. 5; ^e § 50; ^f L. 33; ^g L. 49; ^h L. 42. j; ⁱ L. 29. 5; ^j L. 64. b; ^k L. 49. 5; ^l L. 49. 6; ^m L. 63; ⁿ L. 40. 6; ^o L. 42. k; ^p L. 66. 7; ^q L. 13. 3.

II. Parabeln.

1. Der rothe Edelstein.

Ein rother Edelstein lag im Sande zwischen vielen anderen gemeinen Steinen. Ein Knabe sammelte von diesen zu seinem Spiel und brachte sie nach Hause * ungleich mit dem Edelstein, aber er kannte diesen nicht. Da sah der Vater des Knaben dem Spiele zu und bemerkte den rothen Edelstein, und sagte zu seinem Sohne: gib mir diesen Stein! — Solches ^b that der Knabe und lächelte, denn er dachte, was will der Vater mit dem Stein machen?

Dieser ^c aber nahm und schiff den Stein in regelmässige Flächen und Ecken, und herrlich strahlte nun der geschliffene Diamant.

Siehe, sagte darauf der Vater, hier ist der Stein, den du ^d mir gestift. Da erstaunte der Knabe über des Gesteines Glanz und herrliches Funkeln, und rief aus: Mein Vater, wie vermochtest du dieses?

Der Vater sprach: Ich erkannte des rothen Steines Tugend und verborgene Kräfte, so befreit' ich ihn von der verhüllenden Schlacke. —

Darnach als der Knabe ein Jüngling geworden war, gab ihm der Vater den veredelten Stein als Sinnbild ^e von des Lebens Werth und Würde.

Krummacher.

2. Der müßige Magnet.

Ein Knabe erhielt einen sehr guten Magnet zum Geschenk. Er wollte ihn ^f schonen und verbarg ihn, von allem Eisenwerke entfernt, sorgfältig in einem Schranke. Nach langer Zeit holte er ihn wieder einmal hervor, um Neugierigen seine Kraft zu zeigen. Er hielt ihn an Eisen; allein der Magnet zog nun gar nicht mehr, weil er ^g durch die lange träge Ruhe alle Kraft verloren hatte.

Löhr.

3. Böser Umgang.

Sophron, ein weiser Volkslehrer, erlaubte auch seinen erwachsenen Söhnen und Töchtern nicht, mit Menschen umzugehen, deren Wandel nicht ganz rein und sitstam war. Väterchen, ^h sagte eines Tages die sanfte Eulalia zu ihm, als er ihr untersagte, in Gesellschaft des Bruders die leichtsinnige Lucinda zu besuchen, Väterchen, du mußt uns wohl für sehr kindisch halten, weil du glaubst, dieser Weg könne uns gefährlich werden. Aber der Vater nahm stillschweigend eine schon erloschene Kohle vom Kamin und reichte sie der Tochter hin. Sie brennt nicht; Kind, sagte er, nimm sie nur. Das that Eulalia, und siehe, die zarte, weiße Hand wurde schmutzig und unversehens auch das weiße Gewand. Daß man doch gar nicht vorsichtig genug sein kann, sagte Eulalia verdrießlich, wenn man Kohlen berührt! Ja wohl, sprach der Vater. Du siehst mein Kind, daß die Kohle, wenn sie auch ⁱ nicht brennt, doch schwärzt. Also der Umgang mit Sittenlosen.

Rebau.

* L. 43. 2; ^b L. 41. 9; ^c L. 10. 2; ^d L. 27. 2; ^e L. 43. 6; ^f L. 23. 6; ^g L. 24. 2, ^h L. 61. 8; ⁱ L. 53. 3; j L. 33

4. Die drei Blicke.

Ein frommer Mann wurde^a einst gefragt, woher es komme, daß er, trotz^b aller Drangsale des^c Lebens, doch solchen Gleichmuth in sich bewahren könne. Der^d antwortete: Das kommt daher, daß^e ich meine Augen wohl in Acht nehme, denn alles Böse kommt durch die Sinne zum Herzen, aber auch das Gute. — Auf die weitere Frage, wie er das mache,^f sagte er: Jeden Morgen, ehe ich an die Geschäfte und unter die Menschen gehe, richte ich meine Augen bedächtig auf drei Dinge: Erstens^g hebe ich sie gen Himmel und erinnere mich,^h daß mein Hauptgeschäft und das Ziel meines Lebens und Strebens dort oben sei. Zweitensⁱ senk^j ich sie zur Erde und bedenke, wie wenig Raum ich bedarf, um^k einst mein Grab darin^l zu finden. Drittens endlich schau ich um mich und betrachte die Menge derer,^m denen es noch schlimmer ergeht,ⁿ als mir. Auf diese Weise getröste ich mich alles Leibes und lebe mit Welt und Menschen zufrieden in Gott. Auerbacher.

5. Die Kornähren.

Ein Landmann ging mit seinem kleinen Sohne auf^a den Acker hinaus, um zu sehen, ob das Korn bald reif sei. Sieh, Vater, sagte der unerfahrene Knabe, wie aufrecht einige Halme den Kopf^b tragen! Diese müssen wohl recht vornehm sein; die andern, die sich vor ihnen so tief bücken, sind gewiß viel schlechter. Der Vater pflückte ein Paar Ähren^c ab und sprach: Thörichtes Kind, da sieh einmal! Diese Ähre hier, die sich so stolz in die Höhe streckt, ist ganz taub und leer; diese aber, die sich so bescheiden neigte, ist voll^d der schönsten Körner.

Trägt^e einer gar zu hoch den Kopf,

So ist er wohl ein eiler Tropf.

Schmid.

6. Der erste Sabbath.

Der sechste Tag der Schöpfung neigte sich zu seinem Ende. Die Sonne hatte ihre Bahn vollendet. Das Dunkel des Abends begann sich über die jugendliche Erde zu verbreiten. Der erstgeborene Sohn der Schöpfung stand auf^a einem Hügel Ebens, neben ihm Eloah, sein Schützengel und Begleiter.

Es ward^b immer dunkler und dunkler rings um den Hügel; die Dämmerung wandelte sich^c in Nacht, und verhüllte wie ein duster Schleier die Höhen und Thäler. — Die Feder der Vögel und die frohen Laute der Thiere verstummten. Selbst^d die spielenden Lüftchen^e schienen einzuschlummern.

Was ist das? fragte der Mensch mit leiser Stimme seinen himmlischen Begleiter. Wird die junge Schöpfung aufhören und in ihr altes Nichts versinken?

Eloah lächelte und sprach: Es ist die Ruhe der Erde.

^a L. 58; ^b L. 60; ^c L. 42; ^d L. 44. 3; ^e L. 50. 6; ^f L. 55. 6; ^g § 51; ^h L. 29. 9; ⁱ L. 49. 5; ^j L. 28. 6; ^k L. 41. 3; ^l L. 47. 7; ^m § 116; ⁿ L. 26. 10; ^o L. 59. 6; ^p L. 61; ^q L. 53. 3. Obs.; ^r L. 46. 3. 4; ^s L. 28. 2; ^t L. 29. 5; ^u L. 24.

Nun erschienen die himmlischen Lichter: der Mond ging auf und das Heer der Sterne trat hervor in heiterem Glanze.

Der Mensch sah aufwärts^a gen Himmel mit süßem Erstaunen; der Engel des Herrn aber blickte mit Wohlgefallen auf^b den emporschauenden Sohn der Erde hernieder. Die Nacht ward stiller; die Nachtigallen schlugen stärker und tönenber.

Eloah berührte den Menschen mit seinem Stabe. Er lagerte sich an dem Hügel und schlummerte. Der erste Traum kam zu ihm hernieder. Jehovah bildete ihm die Gefährtin.^c

Als nun die Morgenbämmerung begann, berührte Eloah den Schlummernden.^d Er erwachte und fühlte sich durchströmt von Kraft und Leben. Aus der Dämmerung erhoben sich die Hügel und Thäler; das junge Licht kam hernieder und hüpfte auf den Wellen der Ströme Edens, die Sonne stieg empor und brachte den Tag. Der Mensch erblickte das neuerschaffene Weib, die Mutter der Lebendigen. — Staunen und Wonne erfüllten sein Herz.

Siehe! sprach Eloah — aus der Ruhe wird das Göttliche geboren. Darum sollst du diesen Tag der Ruhe^e und dem Göttlichen heiligen.

Krummacher.

7. Lob und Schlaf.

Brüderlich umschlungen durchwandelten der Engel des Schlummers und der Tobesengel^f die Erde. Es ward^g Abend. Sie lagerten sich^h auf einemⁱ Hügel nicht fern von den Wohnungen der j Menschen. Eine wehmüthige Stille waltete rings umher; auch das Abendglöckchen^k im fernen Dörflein verstummte.

Still und schweigend, wie es ihre Weise ist,^l saßen die beiden^m wohlthätigen Genien der Menschheit in traulicher Umarmung, und schon nahte die Nacht.

Da erhob sich der Engel des Schlummers von seinem bemooßten Lager, und streuete mit leiser Hand die unsichtbaren Schlummerkörnlein. Die Abendwinde trugen sie zu den stillen Wohnungen des müden Landmannes. Nun umfing der süße Schlaf die Bewohnerⁿ der ländlichen Hütten, vom Greise, der^o am Stabe geht, bis zu dem Säugling in der Wiege. Der Kranke vergaß seiner Schmerzen,^p der Trauernde seines Kummeres, die Armuth ihrer Sorgen. Aller^q Augen schlossen sich.

Jetzt, nach vollendetem Geschäft, legte sich der wohlthätige Engel des Schlummers wieder zu seinem ernsteren^r Bruder. „Wenn die Morgenröthe erwacht“, rief er mit fröhlicher Unschuld, „dann preisen“ mich die Menschen als ihren Freund und Wohlthäter! O, welche Freude, ungesehen und heimlich wohlthatun! Wie glücklich sind wir unsichtbaren Boten des guten Geistes. Wie schön unser stiller Beruf!“

So sprach der freundliche Engel des Schlummers. Ihn sah der Tobesengel mit stiller Wehmuth an, und eine Thräne, wie die Unterblichen sie^s weinen,

^a 52. 6; ^b § 116; ^c L. 23. 5; ^d L. 33; ^e L. 64; ^f L. 24. 4; ^g L. 46. 4; ^h L. 29. 9; ⁱ L. 20. 3; ^j § 120; ^k L. 24. 2; ^l L. 53; ^m L. 65. 2; ⁿ L. 39; ^o L. 62. 5; ^p L. 61. 9; ^q 32. 5; ^r L. 33. 1. c; ^s L. 41. 7.

trat in sein großes, dunkles Auge. „Ach,“ sprach er, „daß ich nicht, wie du, des fröhlichen Dankes mich freuen^a kann. Mich nennt die Erde ihren Feind und Freudensörner! —“ „O, mein Bruder,“ erwiderte der Engel des Schlafes, „wird nicht auch beim Erwachen^b der Gute in dir seinen Freund und Wohltäter erkennen und dankbar dich segnen? Sind wir nicht Brüder, und Boten Eines^c Vaters?“

So sprach er; da glänzte das Auge des Todesengels, und zärtlicher umfingen sich^d die brüderlichen Genien. Krummacher.

III. Anekdoten.

1. Einer oder der Andere.

Zur Zeit Heinrichs IV., Königs von Frankreich, ritt einmal ein Bäuerlein von seinem Dorfe nach Paris. Nicht mehr weit von der Stadt begegnete er einem stattlichen Reiter.^e Es war der König. Sein Gefolge war^f abköthlich in einiger Entfernung geblieben. „Woher des Wegs, mein Freund? Habt Ihr Geschäfte zu Paris?“

„Ja,“ antwortete der Bauer; „auch möchte ich gern einmal unsern guten König sehen, der sein Volk so zärtlich liebt.“

Der König lächelte und sagte: „Dazu kann Euch Rath werden.“

„Aber wenn ich nur wüßte, welcher es ist unter den vielen Höslingen, von denen er umgeben sein wird.“^g

„Das will ich euch sagen: Ihr dürft nur Achtung geben, welcher den^h Hut auf dem Kopfe behalten wird, wann alle Andern sich ehrerbietig werden entblößt haben.“

Also ritten sie mit einander in Paris hinein, und zwar das Bäuerlein auf der rechten Seite des Königs; denn was die liebe Einfalt, es seiⁱ mit Absicht oder durch Zufall, Ungeschicktes^j thun kann, das thut sie. Der Bauer gab dem König auf alle seine Fragen gesprächige Antwort. Er erzählte ihm Manches über den Feldbau, aus seiner Haushaltung und wie er zuweilen des Sonntags auch sein Huhn in dem Topfe habe, und merkte lange nichts. Als er aber sah, wie alle Fenster sich öffneten und alle Straßen sich mit Menschen anfüllten, wie Jedermann ehrerbietig^k auswich, da ging ihm ein Licht auf. „Mein Herr,“^l sagte er zu seinem unbekannten Begleiter, den er mit Aengstlichkeit und Verwunderung anschaute, „entweder seid Ihr der König oder ich bin's; denn wir beide haben allein noch den Hut auf dem Kopfe.“

Da lächelte der König und sagte: „Ich bin's,“^m Wann Ihr Euer Höslein in den Stall gestellt und Euer Geschäft besorgt habt, so kommt zu mir auf mein Schloß; ich will Euch dann mit einer Mittagssuppe aufwarten und Euch den Dauphin zeigen. Johann Paul Febel.

^a L. 62; ^b L. 49. 4; ^c L. 16. 4; ^d L. 29. 6; ^e L. 64. 6; ^f L. 48. 2; ^g L. 58. 2; ^h L. 42. k; ⁱ 55. 1. 3; ^j L. 14. 6; ^k L. 34. 7; ^l L. 70; ^m L. 28. 8.

2. Scherz und Ernst.

Während^a eines Gebirgsmarsches im^b siebenjährigen Kriege, ging^c Friedrich der Große einmal, ungeduldig über das langsame Vorrücken des Geschüzes, durch den Engweg zu Fuße bergan; mit ihm der Generalleutnant Graf Schmettau. Während dieses verdrüsslichen Ganges wandelte den König, um^d sich die Langeweile zu vertreiben, die Lust an, den Grafen, einen sehr religiösen Mann, ein wenig zu necken. Er erkundigte sich^e nach dessen^f Belichtvater in Berlin, ob sich derselbe noch wohl befinde und ließ einem Strom von Scherzreden und Spitzereien freien Lauf.

„Ew.^g Majestät sind viel witziger, als ich, und auch sehr viel gelehrter,“ erwiderte Schmettau, als er endlich einmal zu Worte kommen konnte. „Uebrigens,“ fügte er hinzu, „sind Sie auch mein König! Der geistige Kampf ist also zwischen Ihnen und mir in jeder Rücksicht ungleich. Dennoch können Sie mir meinen Glauben nicht nehmen. Und gelänge^h es auch; nun! so hätten Sie mir zwar unermesslich geschadet, aber zugleich doch auch sich selber nicht unbedeutend mit.“

Der König blieb stehenⁱ und machte Fronte gegen Schmettau, das Blitzen^j des^k Unwillens in den mächtigen Augen. — „Was soll das heißen Monsieur Schmettau? sagte er. „Ich sollte mir schaden, wenn ich ihm^l seinen Glauben nähme? Wie meint er^m das?“

Mit unerschütterlicher Ruhe entgegnete der General: „Ew. Majestät glauben jetzt einen guten Offizier an mir zu haben, und ich hoffe Sie irren nicht. Könnten Sie mir aber meinen Glauben nehmen, da hätten Sie ein erbärmliches Ding an mir — ein Rohr im Winde, woraufⁿ nicht der mindeste Verlaß wäre, weder bei Berathschlagungen, noch in der Schlacht.“

Der König schwieg und ging eine Zeitlang im stillen Nachdenken weiter. Dann sagte er mit freundlicher Stimme: „Sage er mir doch Schmettau, was ist eigentlich sein^o Glaube?“

„Ich glaube,“ sagte Schmettau freudig, „an göttliche Vorsehung, die jedes Haar auf meinem Haupte zählt; an die göttliche Erlösung von allen meinen Sünden, und an ein ewig seliges Leben nach dem^p Tode.“

„Das glaubt ihr^q wirklich?“ sagte der König, „das glaubt er so recht mit voller Zuversicht?“

„Ja, wahrhaftig, Ew. Majestät.“

Der König faßte bewegt Schmettau's Hand, drückte sie^r ihm^s stark und sagte: „Er ist ein glücklicher Mensch!“ Dann ging er nachdenkend weiter, und nie, seit jener Stunde, hat er Schmettau's religiöse Ansichten verspottet.

^a L. 60; ^b 20. 4; ^c L. 53. 5; ^d L. 49. 5; ^e L. 29. 9; ^f L. 44. 3; ^g L. 27. 3. note; ^h L. 55. 6; ⁱ L. 49; ^j L. 49. 4; ^k L. 42; ^l L. 64; ^m L. 27. 4; ⁿ L. 28. 6; ^o L. 27. 3. Obs.; ^p L. 28. 5; ^q L. 41. 4 &; ^r § 129. 3.

IV. Denksprüche und kurze Betrachtungen.

1. Die einzige Art, seine ^a Freiheit zu behaupten, besteht darin, nie etwas Anderes zu wollen, als man soll; dann darf man thun, was man will.

Mutschelle.

2. Ein gutes Gewissen ist besser als zwei Zeugen. Es verzehrt Deinen Kummer, wie die Sonne das Eis. Es ist ein Brunnen, wenn Dich ^b dürstet, ein Stad, wenn Du sinkst, ein Schirm, wenn Dich die Sonne sticht, ein Ruhestiften im Tode.

Sippel.

3. Kleine Freuden haben, wie Haubrod, immer ohne Efel; große ^c wie Zuckerbrod, zeitig mit Efel.

Nichter.

4. Der Trieb des Gewissens, und die innerliche Schamhaftigkeit vor dem Bösen sind die Schutzengel des Guten.^d Ohne Demuth ist der Mensch eine ewige Lüge.

Gellert.

5. Fürchte die Einsamkeit nicht. Sie ist harmlos wie der reine Mondschein, dessen ^e Silberstreifen im Palaste des Gottlosen höllische Gespenster, und in der Stätte des Frommen spielende Engel des Himmels abbilden.

Wagner.

6. Nimm mit Ehrfurcht die Bibel in die Hand, denn sie enthält Gottes Wort. Wisse, die ^f keinen Führer hatten auf dem gefährvollen Wege des Lebens, die keinen Trost hatten in bitterer Noth, und keinen Beistand in ihrer letzten Stunde, denen ^g war die Bibel Führer, Trost und Beistand. Siehe, die Bibel ist eine Mutter, welche alle gläubigen Kinder nährt und stillt, bis sie erreichen das reifere ^h Alter einer höheren ⁱ Welt.

Harms.

7. Ehe Du ein Geschäft unternimmst, verabsäume nie, ^k Deine ganze Seele zu Gott, dem Urquell alles Guten, inbrünstig ^l zu erheben, und ihn um Beistand und um Stärkung Deiner eignen schwachen Kräfte demüthig ^m anzusprechen.

Campe.

8. Wenn Du auf die Schaubühne ⁿ des geschäftigen Lebens trittst, so ^o wolle nicht glänzen, sondern nützen und glücklich sein.

Campe.

9. Die Kunst ist lang, das Leben kurz, das Urtheil schwierig, die Gelegenheit flüchtig.

Göthe.

10. Vieles ^p wünscht sich der Mensch, und doch bedarf er nur wenig; Denn die Tage sind kurz, und beschränkt der Sterblichen ^q Schicksal.

Göthe.

11. Eins recht wissen und ausüben gibt höhere Bildung als Halbheit im Hundertsältigen.

Göthe.

^a L. 19. 2; ^b L. 57. 2; ^c L. 10. 3; ^d L. 33; ^e L. 39. 3; ^f L. 40. 6; ^g L. 32. 5; ^h L. 53. 8; ⁱ L. 34. ; ^j § 116; ^k L. 53. 2; ^l L. 65; ^m L. 61. 9.

12. Der Furchtsame erschreckt vor der Gefahr, der Feige in ihr, ^a der Muthige nach ihr. Richter.
13. Wir haben Alle schon geweint: jeder Glückliche einmal vor Weh, jeder Unglückliche einmal vor Lust. Richter.
14. Ehrfurcht befehlt die Tugend auch ^b im Bettlerkleid. Schiller.
15. Wer ^c auf der Erde ohne Bestimmung lebt, gleicht einem Schiffe, ^d auf dem trocknen Lande; und wer nicht in das große Rad der Menschheit eingreift, der ^e gleicht den zinnernen Taschenuhren der Kinder, die wohl Zeiger und Zifferblätter, aber keine mechanischen Eingeweide haben. Lessing.
16. Zur Erwerbung eines Glückes gehört Fleiß und Geduld, und zur Erhaltung desselben ^e gehört Mäßigung und Vorsicht. Langsam und Schritt für Schritt steigt man eine Treppe hinauf; aber in einem Augenblicke fällt man hinab und bringt Wunden und Schmerz genug mit auf die Erde. Hebel.
17. So ^f gewiß der Schatten dem Lichte folgt, ^d so gewiß folgt die That dem Willen, wenn er ^e nur rein ist. Börne.
18. Wenn Du mit Deinen Gefälligkeiten wartest, bis Dich der Freund anspricht: so erniedrigst Du die Gefälligkeit zum Almosen und deinen Freund zum ^e Bettler. Kleist.
19. Im Unglücke erscheint die Tugend in ihrem hellsten Glanze. Man könnte sagen, daß sie Aehnliches mit den würzreichen Pflanzen habe, die man brüdt, um ^b ihr wohlriechenden Balsam abzugewinnen. Klopstock.
20. Aufmerksamkeit auf unsere einzelnen Handlungen schützt uns vor Ueber-eilung, vor Nachsicht gegen unsere Begierden, vor Gleichgültigkeit gegen unsere Fehler. Wieland.
21. Um Ruhe an einem fernen, freundlichen Gestade zu finden, muß der Schiffer erst einen Kampf mit den empörten Wogen bestehen. Bürgert.
22. Manche Pflanze kann nur auf einer andern bestehen und sich erhalten. So mancher Mensch. Allein erhält er sich nicht, durch andere nur besteht er. Bürgert.
23. Viele Kenntnisse machen einen Theil der Beobachtbarkeit unnöthig. Reintke.
24. Das unfehlbarste Mittel sich Liebe zu erwerben, ist Gefälligkeit. Wieland.
25. Die Religion ist das letzte Ziel, wohin alle unsere Gedanken und Handlungen gehen müssen. Wer dies noch nicht gelernt hat, der weiß nichts, der kennt weder sich selbst, noch Gott, und ist keiner ⁱ eigentlichen Glückseligkeit fähig. Klopstock.

^a L. 28. 5; ^b L. 69. 5; ^c L. 40; ^d L. 64. 1.; ^e 41. 4; ^f L. 69. 3; ^g L. 42. 4; ^h L. 49. 5; ⁱ L. 61; ^j L. 29. 4.

26. Vor allen Dingen wache über Dich, daß Du nie die innere Zuversicht zu Dir selber, ^a das Vertrauen auf Gott und gute Menschen verlierst! Sobald ^b Dein Gefährte oder Gehülfe auf Deiner Stirn Muth und Verzweiflung lieft — so ist Alles aus. Sehr oft aber ist man im Unglück ungerecht gegen die Menschen. Jede kleine böse Laune, jede kleine Miene von Kälte deutet man auf sich; man meint, jeder sehe ^c es uns an, daß wir leiden, und weiche ^d von der Bitte zurück, die wir ihm thun könnten. Knigge.

V. Gedichte.

1. Märlieb.

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| Wie herrlich leuchtet | Und tausend Stimmen |
| Nir die Natur! | Aus dem Gesträuch. |
| Wie glänzt die Sonne! | |
| Wie lacht die Flur! | Und Freud' und Wonne |
| | Aus jeder Brust. |
| Es bringen die Blüthen | O Erb' und Sonne, |
| Aus jedem Zweig, | O Glück und Lust. |

Götze.

2. Die Theilung der Erde.

Nehmt hin die Welt! rief Zeus von seinen Höhen
Den Menschen zu, nehmt, sie ^d soll euer sein.
Euch schenk' ich sie zum ^e Erb' und ew'gen Lehen;
Doch theilt euch brüderlich darein. ^f

Da eilt, was Hände hat, sich einzurichten,
Es ^g regte sich geschäftig Jung und Alt.
Der Ackermann griff nach des Feldes Früchten
Der Junker hirschte durch den Wald.

Der Kaufmann nimmt was seine Speicher fassen, ^h
Der Abt wählt sich den edeln Firnewein.
Der König sperrt die Brücken und die Straßen,
Und spricht: der Behente ⁱ ist mein.

Ganz spät, nachdem die Theilung längst geschehen, ^j
Nahet der Poet, er kam aus weiter Fern'.
Ach! da war überall nichts mehr zu sehen, ^k
Und alles hatte seinen Herrn!

^a L. 20. 3; ^b L. 69. 3. note; ^c L. 55. 6.; ^d L. 28. 5; ^e 42. j.; ^f L. 28. 6; ^g L. 28. 9; ^h L. 38. c.; ⁱ § 45. 2; ^j L. 40. 8; ^k L. 49. 6.

Beh' mir! so soll denn ich allein von Allen
Vergessen sein, ich dein getreu'ster Sohn?
So ließ er laut der Klage Ruf^a erschallen,
Und warf sich hin vor Jovis Thron.

Wenn du im Land der Träume dich verweilst,^b
Versetzt der Gott, so hab're nicht mit mir.
Wo warst du denn, als man die Welt getheilet?^c
Ich war, sprach der Poet bei dir.

Mein Auge hing an deinem Angesichte,
An deines Himmels Harmonie mein Ohr;
Verzeih' dem Geiste,^e der von deinem Lichte
Berauscht, das Irdische^d verlor!^e

Was thun?^f spricht Zeus — die Welt ist weggegeben,
Der Herbst, die Jagd, der Markt ist nicht mehr^f mein.
Willst du in meinem Himmel mit mir leben,
So oft^g du kommst, er^h soll dir offen sein.

Schiller

3. Hoffnung.

Esⁱ reden und träumen die Menschen viel
Von bessern künftigen Tagen;
Nach einem glücklichen, goldenen Ziel
Sieht man^k sie rennen und jagen.
Die Welt wird alt und wird wieder jung,
Doch der Mensch hofft immer Verbesserung.

Die Hoffnung führt^l ihn in's^m Leben ein,^l
Sie umflattert den fröhlichen Knaben.
Den Jüngling locktⁿ ihr Zauberschein,ⁿ
Sie wird^o mit dem Greis nicht begraben;
Denn beschließt er im Grabe den mühen Lauf,
Noch am Grabe pflanzt er — die Hoffnung auf.

Es ist kein leerer, schmeichelnder Wahn,
Erzeugt im Gehirn des Thoren.
Im Herzen kündet es laut sich an:
Zu was^p Besserem sind wir geboren.
Und was^q die innere Stimme spricht,
Das^q täuscht die hoffende Seele nicht.

Schiller.

^a L. 61. 9; ^b L. 40. 8; ^c L. 64. d.; ^d L. 33. 2; ^e L. 38. 2; ^f L. 34. 10; ^g L. 69. 3; ^h L. 28. 5; ⁱ L. 28. 9; ^j L. 42; ^k L. 19; ^l L. 61. 4; ^m L. 20. 4; ⁿ L. 53. 5; ^o L. 58; ^p L. 18; ^q L. 40. 1. 3; ^r 49. 6.

4. Das Amen der Steine.

Von Alter blind, fuhr Beda dennoch fort
 Zu predigen die neue frohe Botschaft.
 Von Stadt zu Stadt, von Dorf zu Dorf wälzte
 An seines Führers Hand der fromme Greis
 Und predigte das Wort mit Jünglingsfeuer.^a

Einst leitete ihn sein Knabe in ein Thal,^b
 Das übersät war mit gewaltigen Steinen.
 Leichtsinzig mehr, als boshast, sprach der Knabe:
 „Ehrtwürdiger Vater, viele Menschen sind
 Versammelt hier und warten auf die Predigt.“

Der blinde Greis erhob sich^c also bald,
 Wählt einen Text, erklärt ihn, wandt ihn an,
 Ermahnende, warnte, strafte, tröstete
 So herzlich, daß die Thränen milbiglich^d
 Ihm niederflossen in den grauen Bart.
 Als er beschließen drauf das Vaterunser,
 Wie sich's geziemt,^e gebetet und gesprochen:
 „Dein ist das Reich und Dein die Kraft und Dein
 Die Herrlichkeit bis in die Ewigkeiten,“ —
 Da riefen rings im Thal viel tausend Stimmen:
 Amen, ehrwürdiger Vater, Amen, Amen!

Der Knab' erschrak; reumüthig kniet er nieder
 Und beichtete dem Heiligen die Sünde.
 „Sohn,“ sprach der Greis, „hast Du denn nicht gelesen:
 Wenn Menschen schwelgen, werden Steine schrei'n? —
 Nicht spotte künftig, Sohn, mit Gottes Wort!
 Lebendig ist es, kräftig, schneidet scharf,
 Wie ein zweischneidig Schwert. Und sollte gleich
 Das Menschenherz sich ihm zum Troß versteinern,
 So wird im Stein ein Menschenherz sich regen.“

Rosengarten.

6. Die Worte des Glaubens.

Drei Worte nenn' ich euch, inhaltschwer,^a
 Sie gehen von Munde zu Munde,
 Doch stammen sie nicht von außen her;
 Das Herz nur giebt davon Kunde.
 Dem Menschen ist aller Werth geraubt,^b
 Wenn er nicht mehr^c an die drei Worte glaubt.

^a L. 24. 4; ^b L. 20. 3; ^c L. 29. 9; ^d § 129; ^e L. 57. 6; ^f L. 40
 8; ^g L. 24. 7; ^h L. 64. 1; ⁱ L. 34. 10.

Der Mensch ist frei geschaffen, ist frei,
 Und würd' ^a er in Ketten geboren.
 Laßt euch nicht irren des Böbels Geschrei,
 Nicht den Mißbrauch rasender ^b Thoren!
 Vor dem Slaven, wenn er die Kette bricht,
 Vor dem freien Menschen erzittert nicht!

Und die Tugend, sie ^c ist kein leerer Schall,
 Der Mensch kann sie ^d üben im Leben;
 Und sollt er auch ^e straucheln überall,
 Er kann nach der göttlichen streben,
 Und was kein Verstand der Verständigen ^f sieht,
 Das übet ^g in Einfalt ein kindlich Gemüth.^h

Und ein Gott ist, ein heiliger Wille lebt,
 Wie auch der menschliche wankt; ^b
 Hoch über der Zeit und dem Raume weht
 Lebendig der höchste Gedanke,
 Und ob Alles in ewigem Wechsel kreist,
 Es ⁱ beharret im Wechsel ein ruhiger Geist.

Die drei Worte bewahret I euch, inhaltschwer,
 Sie pflanzt I von Munde zu Munde,
 Und stammen sie gleich nicht von außen her,
 Euer Inn' res giebt davon Kunde.
 Dem Menschen ist nimmer sein Werth geraubt,
 So ^k lang er noch an die drei Worte glaubt.

Schiller.

7. Gefunden.

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ich ging im Walde | Soll' ich zum Besten |
| So für mich hin, | Gebrochen sein? |
| Und nichts zu suchen, | |
| Das war mein Sinn. | Ich grub's mit allen |
| | Den Würzlein aus, |
| Im Schatten sah' ich | Bum Garten trug ich's |
| Ein Blümchen stehn, | Am hübschen Haus. |
| Wie Sterne leuchtend, | |
| Wie Auglein schön. | Und pflanzt es wieder |
| | Am stillen Ort; |
| Ich wollt' es brechen, | Nun zweigt es immer |
| Da sagt es fein: | Und blüht so fort. |

Göthe.

^a L. 56. 2; ^b L. 32. 9; ^c L. 28. 12; ^d L. 28. 5; ^e L. 69. 5; ^f L. 83; ^g L. 53. 5; ^h L. 55. a; ⁱ L. 28. 9; ^j L. 50. 5; ^k L. 69. 3. note.

VOCABULARY

FOR THE EXERCISES AND READING LESSONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

| | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>adj.</i> | adjective. | <i>pl.</i> | plural. |
| <i>adv.</i> | adverb. | <i>prep.</i> | preposition. |
| <i>art.</i> | article. | <i>prn.</i> | pronoun. |
| <i>a. or conj.</i> | conjunction. | <i>v. a.</i> | active verb. |
| <i>comp.</i> | comparative. | <i>v. a. & n.</i> | active and neuter verb. |
| <i>f.</i> | feminine gender. | <i>v. aux.</i> | auxiliary verb. |
| <i>imp.</i> | imperfect tense. | <i>v. imp.</i> | impersonal verb. |
| <i>int.</i> | interjection. | <i>v. ir.</i> | irregular verb. |
| <i>m.</i> | masculine gender. | <i>v. n.</i> | neuter verb. |
| <i>n.</i> | neuter gender. | <i>v. r.</i> | reflexive verb. |
| <i>p.</i> | participle. | | |

A

- Aal, m. -es, pl. -e, eel.*
Abbilden, v. a. to portray, represent.
Abend, m. -s, pl. -e, evening, eve, west; -glöckchen, n. -s, pl. -, vesper-bell, evening-bell; -roth, n., -röthe, f. evening-red, evening-sky; -wind, m. -es, -s, pl. -e, evening-wind, zephyr.
Aber, conj. but, however.
Abermal or abermals, adv. again, once more, anew.
Abfahren, see fahren, p. 348, v. n. ir. to set off, set out, depart.
Abgewinnen, v. a. ir., to win from, gain.
Abkommen, v. n. ir., to come off, de-viate, lose.
Abmatten, v. a. to harass, weary.
Abplücken, v. a. to pluck off, gather.
Abreisen, to depart, set out.
Abfagen, to countermand, refuse, decline, renounce.
Abfchrei'ben, see fchreiben, p. 354; v. a. ir., to copy, transcribe.
Abficht, f. -, pl. -en, view, inten-tion.
Abfchüßlich, adj. designed, purposely (see L. 34. 7).
Abfteigen, see fteigen, p. 356; v. ir. n., to descend, dismount, put up.
Abt, m. -es, pl. Aebte, abbot.
Abwehren, v. a. to keep off, ward off.
Ach! int. ah! Oh! oh! alas!
Achfe, f. -, pl. -n, axle, axis.
Acht, eight.
Acht, f. -, care, attention, outlawry; in Acht nehmen, to take care.
Achtel, n. -s, pl. -, eighth.
Achten, v. a. to regard, attend to, value, deem, esteem, take for.
Achtung, f. -, esteem, respect, esti-mation, regard, attention.
Achtzehn, eighteen.
Acker, m. -s, pl. Acker, field, acre.
Ackermann, m. -es, pl. -leute, hus-bandman, tiller.
Ader, m. -s, pl. -, eagle.
Adolph, m. Adolphus.
Adelt, adj. genuine, authentic.
Aehnlich, adj. like, similar.

Achre, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, ear (of grain).
Ängstlichkeit, *f.* -, anxiety, uneasiness.

Äbern, *adj.* silly, foolish.

Albert, *m.* Albert.

Allein, *adv.* alone, only; *c.* but.

Alle, all (L. 65. 11), every.

Allest, best of all, very best.

Allei, *adj.* various, of all sorts.

Älmäßig, by degrees, gradually.

Alles, *adv.* too, too much, over.

Almosen, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, alms charity.

Als, *conj.* than, but, when, as, like, except, besides, namely, also even, just as.

Also, *adv.* thus, so; *c.* therefore.

Alsbald, immediately, directly.

Alt, *adj.* old, ancient, aged.

Alter, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, age, old age.

Anvil, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, anvil.

Amen, *int.* amen.

America, -s, America.

Amerikaner, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, American.

Amt, *n.* -s, *pl.* Ämter, charge, office, employment, business.

An, *prep.* in, at, on, by, to, unto, with, up, about, against.

Andere (der, die, das Andere), *adj.* second, other. (L. 65.)

Ander, *adv.* otherwise, differently.

Andershalb, *adj.* one and a half.

Anekdote, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, anecdote.

Anfangen, see *fangen*, p. 348; *v. ir.* *a.* & *n.*, to begin, act, open, do. (L. 51. 4.)

Anflehen, *v. a.* to implore, entreat.

Anfüllen, *v. a.* to fill up.

Angehören, *v. n.* to belong.

Angel, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, fishing-hook, angle.

Angenehm, *adj.* agreeable, pleasant.

Angeſicht, *n.* -s, -s, *pl.* -er, face, countenance.

Anſtaltend, *adj.* constant.

Anſangen, see *ſangen*, p. 350; *v. ir.* *n.*, to be attached to, adhere to.

Anker, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, anchor.

Anklagen, *v. a.* to accuse.

Ankommen, see *kommen*, p. 350; *v. ir.* *n.*, to arrive; - auf, to depend upon.

Anſünden, *anſündigen*, *v. a.* to proclaim, announce, declare, publish.

Ankunft, *f.* -, arrival.

Anlangen, *v. n.* to arrive, come at.

Anſchauen, *v. a.* to look at, regard.

Anſchuldigen, *v. a.* to charge with, accuse of.

Anſehen, see *ſehen*, p. 354; *v. ir.* *a.*, to look at, behold, view.

Anſehnlich, *adj.* considerable, important, of consequence. (L. 34. 7.)

Anſicht, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, sight, view, opinion, prospect.

Anſprechen, *v. a.* *ir.*, to accost, address, speak to, beg, ask.

Anſpruch, *m.* -s, *pl.* -ſprüche, claim, demand; in - nehmen, to call for, claim, request.

Anſtalt, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, preparation, institution; **Anſtalt** or **Anſtalt** machen, to make preparations, prepare.

Anſtand, *m.* -s, gracefulness, station, stand, behavior.

Anſtatt, *prep.* instead of, in lieu.

Anſtrengend, *adj.* toilsome.

Antwort, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, answer.

Antworten, *v. a.* to answer.

Anvertrauen, *v. a.* to intrust to, confide to.

Anwandeln, *v. n.* to come upon. *Es wandelte ihn die Luſt an*, the desire came upon him ("he took a fancy," "he took it into his head.")

Anwenden, *v. a.* to apply, employ, make use of, apply to.

Anweſent, *adj.* & *p.* present, those present.

Anziehen, see *ziehen*, p. 358; *v. ir.* *a.* to draw, put on, attract, interest.

Apfel, *m.* -s, *pl.* Äpfel, apple.

Apfelbaum, *m.* -s, -s, *pl.* -bäume, apple-tree.

Apriſoſe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n apricot.

Apriſoſenbaum, *m.* -s, -s, *pl.* -bäume, apricot-tree.

April, *m.* -s, April.

Arbeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, work, labor.

Arbeiten, *v. n.*, to work, labor.

Arbeiter, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, workman, laborer.

Arg, *adj.* bad, wicked.

Arm, *adj.* poor, indigent.

Arm, *m.* -s, *pl.* -e, arm.

Armee, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, army.

Armel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, sleeve.

Armuth, *f.* -, poverty.

Art, f. —, *pl.* —*en* species, kind, nature, quality, propriety, way.

Artig, adj. polite agreeable.

Art, n. —*es*, *pl.* *Ärte*, physician, doctor.

Asch, f. ashes.

Atlaß, m. —*ſſes*, *pl.* *ſſe*, satin.

Atmosphäre, f. —, atmosphere.

Auch, conj. also, too, even.

Auf, prep. on, upon, in, at, to up; —*einmal*, at once, all at once; —*daß*, in order that.

Aufenthalt, m. —*es*, stay, sojourn, delay.

Auffordern, v. a. to summon, challenge, ask, invite.

Aufgabe, f. —, *pl.* —*n*, exercise.

Aufgehen, see *gehen*, p. 348. *v. ir. n.* to rise, open, see *ſicht*.

Aufhalten, v. a. ir. to stop, hinder, detain.

Auſſören, v. n. to cease, end.

Aufmerſam, adj. attentive.

Aufmerſamkeit, f. —, *pl.* —*en*, attention.

Aufpflanzen, v. a. to plant, mount, set up.

Aufrecht, adv. upright, erect.

Auſſchneiden, see *ſchneiden*, p. 354; *v. ir. a.* to cut up, cut open.

Aufſpeichern, v. a. to store up.

Auſſicheln, see *ſicheln*, p. 356; *v. ir. n.* to arise, get up, stand open.

Auſſteigen, see *ſteigen*, p. 356; *v. ir. n.* to mount, ascend, rise.

Aufwärts, adv. upward, upwards.

Aufwarten, v. n. to wait on, attend, serve.

Auſſiehen, v. a. ir. to bring up, educate draw up.

Auge, n. —*s*, *pl.* —*n*, eye, bud; —*n* *blid*, *n.* twinkling, moment; —*n* *blidlich*, instantaneous, instantly.

Auglein, n. —*s*, *pl.* —, eye (L. 24. 2).

Aus, prep. out, out of, from, of, by, on, upon, in; *adv.* over, out, at an end, finished.

Ausſtehen, v. a. & r. to stretch, extend, expand.

Ausdreißen, see *breißen*, p. 346; *v.* to thrash out.

Ausfinden, see *finden*, p. 248; *v. ir. a.* to find out.

Ausführen, v. a. to accomplish.

Ausgehen, see *gehen*, p. 348; *v. ir. a.* to give out, spend.

Ausgehen, see *gehen*, p. 348; *v. ir. n.* to go out, go abroad, proceed.

Ausgraben, v. a. ir. to dig out, excavate.

Aushalten, v. ir. n. to hold out, sustain.

Ausrufen, v. n. ir. to call out, cry out, exclaim.

Ausſehen, n. —*s*, face, appearance.

Augen, adv. out, on the outside, without, abroad.

Außere (der, die, das), adj. outward, exterior, outside.

Außerhalb, prep. & adv. abroad, without, out of, outside, beyond.

Auſſprechen, see *ſprechen*, p. 356; *v. a. & n. ir.* to pronounce, utter, express.

Auſtra'lien, n. —*s*, Australia.

Ausüben, v. a. to exercise, practice, execute, perpetrate.

Auswandern, v. n. to emigrate.

Ausweichen, v. a. ir. to give way, turn aside, evade, avoid.

Art, f. —, *pl.* *Ärte*, ax, hatchet.

B

Bach, m. —*es*, *pl.* *Bäche*, brook.

Baden, v. ir. v. to bake, dry, p. 346.

Bäcker, m. —*s*, *pl.* —, baker.

Baden, v. a. to bathe.

Bahn, f. —, *pl.* —*en*, way, road, career, course.

Bair, m. —*n*, *pl.* —*n*, Bavarian.

Baiern, n. —*s*, Bavaria.

Bald, adv. soon, early, nearly.

Ball, m. —*es*, *pl.* *Bälle*, ball.

Balsam, m. —*s*, *pl.* —*e*, balm, balsam.

Band, n. —*es*, *pl.* *Bänder*, ribbon, string; *m. pl.* *Bände*, volume.

Bändigen, v. a. to tame, break.

Banf, f. —, *pl.* *Bänſe*, bench, seat.

Banner, m. —*s*, *pl.* —, banner.

Bär, m. —*en*, *pl.* —*en*, bear.

Barſe, f. —, *pl.* —*n*, bark, barge.

Bart, m. —*es*, —*s*, *pl.* *Bärte*, beard.

Bauen, v. a. to build, raise; *fig. auf* einen —, to rely upon one.

Bauer, m. —*s*, *pl.* —*n*, peasant.

Bäuerlein, n. —*s*, *pl.* —, peasant. I. 24. 1.

Baum, m. —*es*, *pl.* *Bäume*, tree.

- Baumeister, *m* -s, *pl.* -, architect.
 Baumwolle, *f.* -, cotton.
 Becken, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, basin.
 Bedacht'sam, *a* *ij.* considerate.
 Bedacht'samkeit, *f.* -, circumspection, caution, prudence.
 Bedauern, *v. a.* to pity.
 Bedecken, *v. a.* to cover, shelter.
 Bedenken, *a. a. ir.*, to consider, reflect upon, mind.
 Bedient'e, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, servant.
 Bedürfen, see dürfen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. n.* to need, want.
 Bedürftig, *adj.* wanting, in want of.
 Befehl', *m.* -s, *pl.* -, command.
 Befehlen, *v. ir. a.*, to command, order, charge, desire. *p.* 346.
 Befiedert, plumaged.
 Befinden, see finden, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to find, think; *v. ir. r.*, to be; wie - sie sich, how do you do?
 Bestreuen, *v. ir. r.* to be studious of.
 Befreien, *v. a.* to free, deliver.
 Geben, see geben, *p.* 348; *v. ir. r.*, to betake.
 Begegnen, *v. n.* to meet.
 Begehren, see gehen, *p.* 348; *v. a. ir.*, to commit.
 Begehren, *v. a.* to desire, demand.
 Begierde, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, desire, lust.
 Beginnen, *v. a. & n. ir.*, to begin, do, undertake.
 Begleiten, *v. a.* to accompany.
 Begleiter, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, companion, attendant, follower, guide.
 Begraben, see graben, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.*, to bury.
 Begreifen, see greifen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.*, to feel, comprehend, understand.
 Behalten, see halten, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to keep, retain.
 Behandeln, *v. a.* to treat, manage.
 Beharren, *v. n.* to continue, persist, insist, persevere.
 Behaupten, *v. a.* to affirm, maintain, pretend.
 Bei, *prep.* at, near, beside, by, on, with, to, in, in the presence of.
 Beichten, *v. a. & n.* to confess.
 Beichtvater, *m.* -s, *pl.* -väter, confessor.
 Beide, *adj.* both, two; keiner von -, neither of the two
 Beifommen, see kommen, *p.* 350; *a. ir. n.*, to get at.
 Bein, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, leg, bone.
 Beispiel, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, example, instance, pattern; zum -, for example, for instance.
 Beißen, *p.* 346; *v. a.* to bite.
 Beistand, *m.* -s, -s, assistance.
 Beistehen, *v. n. ir.*, to assist.
 Beistimmen, *v. n.* to agree with, assent to.
 Beiwohnen, *v. n.* to be present at assist.
 Bekannt'e *m. & f.* -n, *pl.* -n, acquaintance.
 Beklagen, *v. r.* to complain.
 Belagerung, *f.* -, -en, siege.
 Beleidigen, *v. a.* to offend, insult.
 Bellen, *v. n.* to bark.
 Belohnen, *v. a.* to reward.
 Belohnung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, reward.
 Bemerken, *v. a.* to perceive, mark, observe, note.
 Bemoost', *adv.* mossy.
 Beneiden, *v. a.* to envy.
 Benötigt, *adj.* in need, in want.
 Berath'schlagung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, consultation, deliberation.
 Berauben, *v. a.* to rob, plunder.
 Berauscht', frenzied, intoxicated.
 Bereben, *v. a.* to persuade.
 Bereits, *adv.* already.
 Bereuen, *v. a.* to repent, regret.
 Berg, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, mountain.
 Bergan', bergauf', *adv.* uphill.
 Bergen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.*, to save, conceal.
 Berlin, *n.* -s, Berlin.
 Beruf, *m.* -s, -s, *pl.* -, vocation.
 Berühmt', *adj.* celebrated.
 Berühren, *v. a.* to touch, handle, mention, hint at.
 Beschämen, *v. a.* to shame, *fig.* to excel, be superior to.
 Bescheiden, *adj.* modest.
 Beschließen, to decree, determine, resolve, to finish.
 Beschränken, *v. a.* to confine, limit, bound, restrain.
 Beschriften, see schreiben, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.*, to describe.
 Beschuldigen, *v. a.* to accuse.
 Besen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, broom.
 Besiegen, *v. a.* to vanquish, conquer.

Beßig'en, see sitzen, p. 354; *v. ir. a.*, to possess.

Beforgen, *v. a.* to take care of, provide, apprehend, fear.

Bestän'dig, *adj.* constant, durable.

Bestätigen, *v. a.* to confirm.

Beste (der, die, das), *adj.* best.

Bestehen, see stehen, p. 356; *v. ir. a.* & *n.*, to suffer, be, endure, consist of, encounter; — auf, to insist upon.

Bestellen, *v. a.* to order, appoint.

Bestellung, *f. —, pl. en*, order, commission.

Bestimmung, *f. —, pl. —en*, determination, destination, destiny.

Bestrafen, *v. a.* to punish.

Besuchen, *r. a.* to visit, see, frequent, go to see.

Beeten, *v. a. & n.* to say a prayer, to pray.

Betrachten, *v. a.* to look upon, contemplate, consider.

Betrachtung, *f. —, pl. —en*, view, consideration.

Betragen, see tragen, p. 356; *v. ir. a.* to amount to; *v. ir. r.* to behave one's self.

Betragen, *n. —s*, conduct, behavior.

Betrübt, *adj.* afflicted, sad.

Betrügen, p. 346; to cheat, deceive.

Bett, *n. —s, pl. —en*, bed.

Betteln, *v. n.* to beg.

Bettler *m. —s, pl. —*, beggar.

Bettlerkleid, *n. —s, —s, pl. —er*, beggar's dress.

Bewachen, *v. a.* to watch, guard.

Bewaffnen, *v. a.* to arm.

Bewahren, *v. a.* to keep, take care of, preserve, guard.

Bewegen, *v. a.* to move, excite.

Bewegt, *adj.* moved, touched.

Bewohner, *m. —s, pl. —*, inhabitant.

Bewundern, *v. a.* to admire, wonder.

Bewunderung, *f. —*, admiration.

Bewußt, *adj.* known, conscious of, — sein, *n.* consciousness.

Bezüglich, *v. a.* to charge, accuse.

Bezüglich, see bezüglich.

Bibel, *f. —, pl. —n*, Bible.

Biene, *f. pl. —n*, bee.

Bier, *n. —s, —s, pl. —e*, beer.

Bild, *n. —s, —s, pl. —er*, image, idea, representation, portrait, picture.

Bilden, *v. a.* to form, cultivate, civilize, improve.

Bildung, *f. —, pl. —en*, culture, learning, accomplishment.

Binden, *f. pl. —n*, band; — wert, *n.* conjunction.

Binden, p. 346; *v. ir. a.* to bind, tie.

Birne, *f. —, pl. —n*, pear.

Birschen, *v. a.* to shoot, go a shooting, shoot with a rifle.

Bis, *adv. & conj.* till, until; bis an — auf, — zu, up, to, as far as

Bitte, *f. pl. —n*, request, entreaty, petition, suit.

Bitten, p. 346; *v. ir. a.* to beg, pray, request, entreat, invite.

Bitter, *adj.* bitter, sharp.

Blasen, p. 346 to blow.

Blatt, *n. —s, pl. Blätter*, leaf.

Blatter, *f. —, pl. —n* blister; bit —n, *pl.* the small-pox.

Blau, *adj.* blue.

Blei, *n. —s, —s*, lead.

Bleiben, p. 346; *v. ir. n.* to remain, continue, perish.

Bleich, *adj.* pale, faded.

Bleistift, *m. —s, pl. —e*, pencil.

Blid, *m. —s, pl. —e*, look, glance.

Bliden, *v. n.* to glance, look.

Blind, *adj.* blind.

Blitzen, *v. n.* to lighten, flash, gleam.

Blume, *f. —, pl. —n*, flower; —garten, *m.* flower-garden.

Blümchen, *n. —s, pl. —*, floweret.

Blütze, *f. —, pl. —n*, bloom, flower.

Blutig, *adj.* bloody.

Boden, *m. —s, pl. Böden*, ground, soil, bottom, loft, garret.

Bogen, *m. —s, pl. —*, bow.

Bohne, *f. —, pl. —n*, bean.

Böhrer, *m. —s, pl. —*, auger.

Böse, *adj. & adv.* bad, ill, wicked, hurtful, angry, sore.

Boshast, *adj.* malicious, wicked.

Bote, *m. —n, pl. —n*, messenger.

Botschaft, *f. —, pl. —en*, message.

Böttcher, *m. —s, pl. —*, cooper.

Brauchen, *v. a.* to want, need, use.

Brauer, *m. —s, pl. —*, brewer.

Braun, *adj.* brown.

Brausen, *v. n.* to rush, roar, buzz.

brechen, p. 346 *v. ir. a. & n.* to break.

Breit, *adj.* broad, large, wide.

Bremen, *n.* -s, Bremen.

Brennen, *p.* 346; *i. ir. a. & n.* to burn, scorch, parch, distil, cauterize, brand.

Brett, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, board.

Brief, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, letter; -papier, letter-paper.

Bringen, *p.* 346. *v. ir. a.* to bring carry, convey, bear; an sich -, to acquire, get possession.

Brod, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, bread, loaf.

Brücke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, bridge.

Bruder, *m.* -s, *pl.* Brüder, brother.

Brüderlich, *adj.* brotherly, fraternal; -umfhlungen, in fraternal embrace.

Brüllen, *v. n.* to roar, low.

Brunnen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, well, spring fountain.

Brust, *f.* -, *pl.* Brüste, breast.

Brustnadel, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, breast-pin.

Buch, *n.* -es, *pl.* Bücher, book, quire; -binder, *m.* bookbinder; -händler, *m.* bookseller, stationer.

Buche, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, beech.

Büden, *v. r.* to stoop, bow.

Bundesgenos, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, confederate, ally.

Bürger, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, citizen.

Bürste, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, brush.

Busch, *m.* -es, *pl.* Büsche, bush, thicket.

Butter, *f.* -, butter.

C

Charakter, *m.* -s, *pl.* -te're, character.

Christenheit, *f.* -, christendom.

Cousine, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, cousin.

D

Da, *adv. & conj.* there, present, then, at that time, when, as, while, because, since.

Dabei, *adv.* by that, thereby, therewith, thereat, near it, present.

Dach, *n.* -es, *pl.* Dächer, roof.

Dadurch, *adv.* by this, by that, through it, through that place.

Dafür, *adv.* for it, for that, instead of that.

Daher, *adv. & c.* thence, hence, out of that, therefore.

Dahin, *adv.* thither, there, away, down, gone, past; -streden, to stretch out, spread out.

Dame, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, lady.

Damit, *adv. & conj.* therewith, with it (this, that), by it, by that, in order.

Dämmerung, *f.* -, twilight, dusk.

Dampf, *m.* -es, *pl.* Dämpfe, steam, vapor, smoke, fume.

Däne, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, Dane.

Dank, *m.* -es, thanks, reward.

Dankbar, *adj.* thankful, grateful.

Danken, *v. a. & n.* to thank.

Dann, *adv.* the, thereupon.

Daran, *adv.* thereon, thereat, on it, at it, by it.

Darauf, *adv.* thereon, thereupon, on that, on it, upon it, at that, to that, it, after that; sich -schwingen, to leap upon, swing upon.

Daraus, *adv.* thereout, out of that, therefrom, thence, from this, of this.

Darin, *adv.* therein, into it; sich -theilen, to share therein.

Darin, *adv.* therein, in that, in this, in it, wherein.

Darnach, *adv.* after that, upon that, for that, for it.

Darum, *adv.* around that, for that, for it, therefor.

Das, *art.* the; *prn.* that, which.

Dass, *conj.* that; -nicht, lest; bis -, till.

Dauern, *v. n.* to last, continue; *v. a. & imp.* to grieve, cause to pity; ihr dauert mich, you grieve me, I pity you.

Dauphin, *m.* -s, dauphin, crown-prince, eldest son of the kings of France.

Davon, *adv.* thereof, therefrom, of that, of it, from it, whereof, by it, off, away; -jagen, to harken away.

Dafür, *adv.* thereto, to that, for it, for it, at that.

Deckel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, cover.

Decken, *v. a.* to cover, screen.

Dein, *prn. poss. thy.* L. 12. 2.

Demant, see Diamant.

Demoskries, *m.* Demosthenes.

Demuth, *f.* -, humility, meekness.

- Demüthig, *adj.* humble, meek.
 Denken, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a. & n.*, to think (of, upon, an, auf,); to mind, reflect upon.
 Denkspruch, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* -sprüche, sentence motto, maxim.
 Denn, *conj.* for, then, than; es sei - daß, unless, if, provided.
 Dennoch, *conj.* yet, however, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
 Der, *art.* the; *prn.* this, that, who.
 Dererst, *adv.* once, in the future.
 Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, *prn.* demonstr. he, that.
 Derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, *prn.* the same, he, she, it, that; eben-, the very same.
 Deshalb, *adv.* therefore, for this reason, on that account.
 Dessewillen, *prep. & prn.* therefore, on that account.
 Besser, *adv.* the; - besser, the better, so much the better.
 Deuten, *v. a.* to explain, interpret; -, *v. n.* to point.
 Deutlich, *adj.* clear, distinct.
 Deutsch, *adj.* German.
 Deutschland, *n.* -s, Germany.
 Diamant, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, diamond.
 Dick, *adj.* thick, big, large, stout.
 Dieb, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, thief.
 Diener, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, servant.
 Dienst, *m.* -es, *pl.* -, service, office, employment; -e nehmen, to enter service.
 Dienstmädchen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, servant-girl.
 Diesseits, *adv.* on this side.
 Dieser, Diese, Dieses, *prn.* demons. this (L. 10).
 Ding, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, thing, affair, matter.
 Doch, *conj.* yet, however, nevertheless but (L. 69. 11).
 Dolch, *m.* -es, *pl.* -, dagger.
 Dom, *m.* -es, *pl.* -, cathedral, dome.
 Donnern, *v. n.* to thunder.
 Doppelt, *adj.* double, twofold; *adv.* doubly, twice.
 Dorf, *n.* -es, *pl.* Dörfer, village.
 Dorn, *m.* -es, *pl.* -en, & Dörner, thorn.
 Dort, *adv.* yonder, there; - oben, there, above, up there.
 Drängen, *v. a.* to throng, press.
 Drangsal, *n.* -es, -s *pl.* -, calamity.
 Drauf, see Darauf.
 Drehen, *v. a. & r.* to turn, revolve.
 Drei, three; -mal, *adv.* three times.
 Dreißig, thirty.
 Dreschen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to thrash.
 Dreisher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, thrasher.
 Dresden, *n.* -s, Dresden.
 Dringen, *v. n.* *ir.* to press forth, crowd, urge, penetrate.
 Drittel, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, third.
 Drittens, thirdly.
 Drohen, *v. n.* to threaten.
 Druck, *m.* -es, *pl.* -, pressure.
 Drücken, *v. a.* to press, squeeze, oppress.
 Du, *prn.* thou.
 Dufstig, *adj.* vaporous, fragrant.
 Dumm, *adj.* dull, stupid.
 Dunkel, *adj.* dark, obscure.
 Dunkel, *n.* -s, darkness, obscurity.
 Dunkelheit, *f.* -, darkness.
 Dunst, *m.* -es, *pl.* Dünste, vapor, steam.
 Durch, *prep.* through, by means of.
 Durchströmen, *v. n.* to permeate.
 Durchwandeln, *v. n.* to wander, or pass through, or over, to traverse.
 Dürfen, to be allowed, be permitted, be able, need. (L. 45. 4. & p. 346.)
 Dursten, Dürsten, *v. n. & imp.* to thirst, be thirsty.



- Eben, *adj. & adv.* even, level, plain, even, just, exactly, precisely, als -, just as.
 Ecke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, corner, edge.
 Edel, *adj. & adv.* noble, precious, choice; -müthig, *adj.* noble, magnanimous.
 Edelstein, *m.* -es, *pl.* -, precious stone.
 Eden, *n.* -s, Eden, paradise.
 Ehe, *adv.* ere, before.
 Eher, *adv.* sooner, rather.
 Ehre, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, honor.
 Ehrerbietig, *adj.* reverent, respectful.
 Ehrfurcht, *f.* -, veneration, awe, reverence.
 Ehrlich, *adj.* honest, faithful.

Ehrrwürdig, *adj.* reverend, venerable.

Ei! *int.* eh! hey! ay!

Eiche, *f.* —, *pl.* —n. oak.

Eigen, *adj.* own, self, proper, peculiar, singular, strange, accurate; —heit, *f.* property, peculiarity; —nützig, *adj.* selfish; —süchtig, *adj.* capricious, willful, obstinate.

Eigentlich, proper, exact, real.

Eilen, *v. n.* to hasten, hurry, speed.

Ein, *art.* a, an; *adj.* one.

Einander, *adv.* one another, each other.

Einerlei, the same.

Einfalt, *f.* —, simplicity, silliness.

Einfaltig, *adj.* simple, silly.

Einführen, *v. a.* to introduce, import, conduct.

Eingeweide, *n.* —s, *pl.* —n, inwards, entrails, intestines.

Engweg, *m.* —s, *pl.* —e, defile, narrow pass.

Eingreifen, *v. n. ir.* to catch, lay hold of, exert influence, interfere.

Einiger, **Einige**, **Einiges**, *prn.* some, any.

Einmal, *adv.* once, one time.

Einrichten, *v. a. & r.* to set right, arrange, adjust; *sich einrichten*, to accommodate, establish one's self.

Eins, *adj.* one, one thing, one and the same.

Einsam, *adj.* solitary, lonely.

Einsamkeit, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, solitude, retiredness.

Einschlummern, *v. n.* to fall into a slumber, fall asleep.

Einsammeln, *v. a.* to gather in, collect.

Einsiedler, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, hermit.

Einst, *adv.* once, one day, one time.

Einstellen, *v. a.* to suspend, stop; *v. r.* to appear.

Einwohner, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, inhabitant.

Einseln, *adj.* single, isolated.

Einsig, *adj.* only, single, alone.

Eis, *n.* —s, ice, ice-cream; —bär, *m.* polar bear.

Eisen, *n.* —s, iron; —werk, *n.* —s, iron work.

Eisern, *adj.* iron.

Eitel, *adj.* idle, vain, frivolous.

Eitern, *v. n.* to fester.

Efel, *m.* —s, aversion, disgust.

Elend, *n.* —s, misery, distress.

Elend, *adj.* miserable, wretched.

Elephant, *m.* —en, *pl.* —en, elephant.

Ell, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, ell.

Eloah, *m.* Eloah.

Eltern, *pl.* parents.

Empfangen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to receive, take, accept.

Empfehlen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to recommend.

Empor, *adv.* on high, upward, up aloft.

Empören, *v. a.* to stir up, excite; —, *v. r.* to rebel, revolt.

Empörer, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, rebel.

Emporragen, *v. n.* to tower up.

Emporschauen, *v. n.* to look or gaze up.

Emporsteigen, *v. n. ir.* to rise, mount.

Ende, *n.* —s, *pl.* —n, end, aim.

Endlich, *adj.* finite, final; *adv.* at last, finally.

Eng or **Enge**, *adj.* narrow, tight.

Engel, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, angel.

England, *n.* —s, England.

Engländer, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, Englishman.

Englisch, *adj.* English.

Entblößen, *v. a.* to uncover, bare.

Entblößt, *adj.* destitute, deprived of, *p.* see entblößen.

Ente, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, duck.

Entfernung, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, distance, removal, departure.

Entfernt, *adj.* distant, remote.

Entgegen, *prep. & adv.* against, opposite.

Entgegengehen, *v. n. ir.* to go to meet.

Entgegnen, *v. n.* to answer, reply.

Enthalten, *v. a. ir.* to contain, comprehend; *v. r. ir.* to abstain from, avoid.

Entheben, see *heben*, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to exempt from.

Entleeren, *v. a.* to release.

Entinnen, see *innen*, *p.* 352; *v. t. n.* to run away, escape.

Entsagen, *v. n.* to renounce, resign.

Entschlafen, see *schlafen*, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to fall asleep, expire.

Entschlagen, see *schlagen*, *p.* 354; *v. ir. r.* to get rid of, divest.

Entschließen, see *schließen*, *p.* 354; *v.*

- ir. a.*, to unlock, disclose; *v. r.* to resolve, determine.
- Entstehen, see stehen, p. 356; *v. ir. n.*, to arise, originate.
- Entweder, *conj.* either.
- Entzweien, *v. a.* to disunite, set at variance; *v. r.* to quarrel.
- Er, *prn.* he, it. (L. 28. 5.)
- Erbarmen, *v. r.* to pity, have mercy.
- Erbarmlich, *adj.* piti-*ul*, miserable, wretched.
- Erbe, *u. -s*, inheritance, patrimony.
- Erben, *v. a.* to inherit. *v. n.* to devolve by inheritance.
- Erbitten, *v. a. ir.*, to get, or try to get by entreaty.
- Erbitterung, *f. -*, *pl. -en*, animosity.
- Erblicken, *v. a.* to descry, see, view.
- Erbse, *f. -*, *pl. -en*, pea.
- Erde, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, earth, ground.
- Ereignen, *v. r.* to happen, chance.
- Erfinden, see finden, p. 348; *v. ir. a.*, to invent.
- Erfüllen, *v. a.* to fill, do, fulfill.
- Ergeben, see geben, p. 348; *v. ir. r.*, to surrender, submit, devoted, addicted, given.
- Ergen, *v. n. ir.*, to happen, befall; *r. imp.* to go, fare with.
- Ergreifen, see greifen, p. 350; *v. ir. a.*, to seize, catch.
- Erhalten, see halten, p. 350; *v. ir. a. & n.*, to keep, maintain, save, receive, get, gain.
- Erhaltung, *f. -*, preservation, maintenance, support.
- Erheben, *v. a. ir.*, to raise; *v. r. ir.*, to rise, arise.
- Erinnern, *v. a.* to remind, mention; *v. r.* to remember, recollect.
- Erfälten, *v. r.* to catch cold.
- Erfennen, see kennen, p. 350; *v. ir. a.*, to perceive, distinguish, recognize.
- Erklären, *v. a.* to explain, interpret, define, declare.
- Erklimern, *v. a.* to climb.
- Erforschen, *v. r.* to inquire, make inquiry.
- Erlauben, *v. a.* to permit, allow.
- Erliegen, see liegen, p. 350; *v. ir. n.*, to succumb, be subdued, sink under.
- Erlässhen, *v. n. ir.*, to go out, be extinguished, expire.
- Erlösung, *f. -*, *pl. -en*, redemption, deliverance, salvation.
- Ermorden, *v. a.* to murder.
- Ermahnen, *v. a.* to exhort, admonish, remind.
- Erniebrigen, *v. a.* to lower, abase. *v. r.* to humble one's self.
- Ernst, Ernsthaft, Ernstvoll, *adj.* earnest, serious, grave, stern.
- Ernte, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, harvest, crop.
- Eroberer, *m. -s*, *pl. -*, conqueror.
- Erreichen, *v. a.* to reach, attain.
- Erretten, *v. a.* to save, rescue.
- Errichten, *v. a.* to erect, build up.
- Ersatz, *m. -s*, compensation.
- Erschallen, *v. n. ir.* to sound, resound, spread.
- Erscheinen, p. 348; *v. ir. n.* to appear.
- Erschießen, see Schießen, p. 354; *v. ir. a.* to shoot.
- Erschrecken, *v. a.* to terrify, frighten; *v. r. ir.* to be terrified, be frightened.
- Ersetzen, *v. a.* to supply, replace.
- Erst, *adj. & adv.* first, prime, at first, before, only, not till.
- Erschauen, *v. n.* to be astonished, amazed.
- Erfstens, *adv.* first, in the first place.
- Ersuchen, *v. a.* to entreat, request.
- Ertrinken, see trinken, p. 356; *v. ir. n.* to be drowned, drown.
- Erwachen, *v. n.* to awake, appear.
- Erwachsen, *adj.* full grown, adult.
- Erwähnen, *v. a.* to mention.
- Erwarten, *v. a.* to expect, await.
- Erwecken, *v. a.* to awaken, rouse.
- Erweichen, *v. a.* to soften.
- Erweisen, see weisen, p. 358; *v. ir. a.* to show, do, render; *v. r.* to prove.
- Erwerben, *v. a. ir.* to acquire, earn, gain, obtain.
- Erwerbung, *f.* acquisition.
- Erwidern, *v. a.* to answer, reply.
- Ersählen, *v. n.* to tell, narrate, report.
- Erzeugen, *v. a.* to beget, produce, engender.
- Ersieher, *m. -s*, *pl. -*, instructor, master, governor.
- Ersittern, *v. n.* to tremble, shake.

Es, *prn* it, so.

Esel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, ass, donkey.

Essen, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* a. to eat.

Eßig, *m.* -s, vinegar.

Etliche, *adj.* some, any, several.

Enwad, *prn.* something, somewhat, some, any, a little.

Euch, you, to you.

Euer, euer, euer, *prn.* your.

Eulalia *f.* Eulalia.

Eule, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, owl.

Europa, *n.* -s, or end, Europe.

Europäer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, European.

Eu., your. L. 27. 3.

Ewig, *adj.* eternal, everlasting.

Ewigkeit, *f.* -, eternity.

F

Fabel, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, fable.

Fächer, *m.* -s *pl.* -, fan.

Fähig, *adj.* able, apt, fit, capable.

Fahren, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* a. to drive, carry, convey; *v. ir.* n. to move quickly, run, start, rush. to go in a carriage, to sail, navigate.

Fallen, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* n. to fall, decline, fail.

Falschheit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, falsehood.

Familie, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, family.

Fangen, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* a. to catch, take, seize.

Farbe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, color.

Farben, *v.* a. to color, dye.

Färber, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, dyer.

Faß, *n.* -s, *pl.* Fässer, cask, barrel.

Fast, *adv.* almost

Fassen, *v.* a. to seize, contain; *v. r.* fast to collect ones self, recover.

Faul, *adj.* putrid, lazy, idle.

Faulheit, *f.* -, laziness, idleness.

Februa r, *m.* -s, *pl.* -c, February.

Fechten, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* n. to fight, fence.

Feder, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, feather, pen.

Fegen, *v.* a. to sweep, cleanse.

Fehlen, *v.* n. to fail, miss, err, mistake, to be wanting, want, to be deficient; was fehlt Ihnen? what ails you!

Fehler, *m.* -s *pl.* -, fault, error.

Feig, *adj.* coward, faint-hearted.

Fein, *adj.* fine, delicate, pretty.

Feind, *adj.* hostile, inimical.

Feind, *m.* -es, *pl.* e, enemy.

Feindlich, *adj.* hostile, inimical.

Feindseligkeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, hostility.

Feld, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, field, plain; -blume, *f.* wild-flower; -frucht, produce of the fields; -herr, *m.* commander in-chief; -webel, *m.* sergeant.

Feldbau, *m.* -es, -s, agriculture.

Fels, *m.* -sens, *pl.* -sen, Felsen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, rock, cliff.

Fenster, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, window.

Fern, *adj.* far, remote, distant.

Ferne, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, farness, distance

Fertig, *adj.* ready, prepared, done.

Fessel, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, fetter, chain.

Fesseln, *v.* a. to fetter, shackle, chain, captivate.

Fest, *adj.* fast, fixed, steadfast.

Fett, *adj.* fat, greasy.

Feuer, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, fire.

Finden, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* a. to find, think; Statt -, to take place; *v. r.* *ir.* to be found, offer, comprehend.

Finger, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, finger; -hut, *m.* thimble.

Finnewein, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, wine of the last year, old wine, firm, from the root of vorn, fern.

Fisch, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, fish.

Fischen, *v.* a. to fish.

Fischer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, fisherman.

Flach, *adj.* flat, plain, level.

Flache, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, plain, flatness, tract, surface.

Flachs, *m.* -es, flax.

Flasche, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, flask, bottle.

Flechten, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* a. to braid.

Fleisch, *n.* -es, flesh, meat.

Fleischer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, butcher.

Fleiß, *m.* -es, diligence, industry.

Fleißig, *adj.* diligent, industrious.

Fliege, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, fly.

Fliegen, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* n. to fly; hoch -, to soar.

Fliehen, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* n. to flee, shun.

Fließen, *p.* 348; *v. ir.* n. to flow, run.

Flöte, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, flute.

Fluchen, to curse, imprecate.

Flüchtig, *adj.* flying, transient.

Flug, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* Flüge, flight.

Flügel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, wing.

Flur, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, field, plain, floor

Fluß, *m.* -s, *pl.* Flüsse, river, stream; -pferd, hippopotamus.

Fluth, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, flood, deluge, inundation, tide.

Folge, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, sequel, consequence.

Folgen, *v. n.* to follow, succeed, obey.

Folglich, *conj.* consequently.

Forelle, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, trout.

Fort, *adv.* forth, gone off, away.

Fortblühen, *v. n.* to continue blossoming.

Fortfahren, to continue, go on with, drive off, depart.

Fortfliegen, *v. n. ir.* to fly away.

Fortjagen, *v. a. & n.* to drive away, turn away.

Fortschleppen, *v. a.* to drag away.

Fortwollen, *v. n. ir.* to wish, or intend to go.

Frage, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, question.

Fragen, *v. a. & n.* to ask, question, interrogate.

Frankfurt, *n.* —s, Frankfort.

Frankreich, *n.* —s, France.

Franc, *m.* Francis.

Francose, *m.* —n, *pl.* —n, Frenchman.

Fransösisch, *adj.* French.

Frau, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, woman, wife, lady, madam, mistress.

Fräulein, *n.* —s, *pl.* —, young lady, miss.

Frech, *adj.* impudent, bold, saucy, audacious.

Frei, *adj.* free, exempt, disengaged, vacant, independent, open, public; —prechung, *f.* acquittal.

Freigebig, *adj.* liberal, generous.

Freiheit, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, liberty, freedom, privilege, license.

Freilich, *adv.* certainly, to be sure, indeed.

Freiwillig, *adj.* voluntary.

Fremde, *m. & f.* foreigner, stranger.

Fremdling, *m.* —s, *pl.* —e, stranger, foreigner.

Fressen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to eat, devour, corrode.

Freude, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, joy, pleasure.

Freudenstörer, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, disturber of joy, marfeast.

Freudig, *adj.* glad, joyful, cheerful.

Freuen, *v. r.* to rejoice; über etwas, auf etwas, to rejoice in, be glad; *v. imp.* to afford joy, pleasure; es freut mich, I am glad.

Freund, *m.* —es, *pl.* —e, friend.

Freundin, *f.* —, *pl.* —nen, female friend.

Freundlich, *adj.* friendly, kind.

Freundschaft, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, friendship.

Friede, *m.* —ns (Frieden, *m.* —s), peace.

Friedlich, *adj.* peaceful, peaceable.

Friedrich, *m.* Frederic.

Frieren, *v. n. & imp. ir.* to freeze, be chilled; es friert mich, I am cold.

Frech, *adj.* glad, joyful, joyous.

Fröhlich, *adj.* joyous, joyful, cheerful.

Fromm, *adj.* pious, gentle.

Fronte, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, front; —machen, to face.

Frucht, *f.* —, *pl.* Früchte, fruit.

Fruchtlos, *adj.* fruitless, useless.

Frühling, *m.* —s, *pl.* —e, spring.

Fügen, *v. a.* to join, unite; *v. r.* accommodate one's self to, submit.

Fühlen, *v. a. & n.* to feel, be sensible of, perceive.

Führen, *v. a.* to carry, convey, lead, guide, manage, wear.

Führer, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, guide, leader.

Füllen, *v. a.* to fill, fill up.

Fünf, see §. 45, (1).

Fünfte, *adj.* fifth.

Fünfehn, see § 45.

Funkeln, *v. n.* to sparkle, glitter.

Für, *prep.* for, instead of, by, after; — und —, forever and ever.

Fürchten, *v. a.* to fear, be afraid; *v. r.* to be in fear.

Furchtsam, *adj.* timid, timorous.

Fürst, *m.* —en, *pl.* —en, prince.

Fürwort, *n.* —es, *pl.* —wörter, pronoun.

Fuß, *m.* —es, *pl.* Füße, foot.

Futter, *n.* —s, *pl.* —, food, fodder, provender, case.

63

Gabel, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, fork.

Gang, *m.* —es, —s, *pl.* Gänge, going, walk, way, direction, course.

Gans, *f.* —, *pl.* Gänse, goose.

Ganz, *adj.* whole, all, entire, total, full, perfect, complete, quite, — recht, quite right.

Gar, *adj. & adv.* prepared, entirely, very, even.

Garn, *n.* —es, *pl.* —e, yarn.

- Garten, *m.* -s, *pl.* Gärten, garden;
 -blum, *f.* garden-flower.
 Gärtner, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, gardener.
 Gast, *m.* -es, *pl.* Gäste, guest; -freund,
m. guest, host; -haus, *n.* hotel.
 Gaul, *m.* -es, *pl.* Gäule, horse, nag.
 Gebäude, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, building.
 Geben, *p.* 348; to give.
 Gebiete, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to com-
 mand, order.
 Gebirge, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, chain of mount-
 ains, mountains.
 Gebirge'marsch, *m.* -es, *pl.* -märsche,
 mountain-march.
 Geboren, *adj.* born.
 Gebrauch, *m.* -es, *pl.* Gebräuche, use,
 custom, usage, practice.
 Gebred'en, see Brechen, *p.* 346; *v. ir.*
imp. to be wanting, be in want
 of, want.
 Gebüh'ren, *v. n.* to be due, belong
 to; *v. r. & imp.* to be fit, becom-
 ing.
 Gedächtniß, *n.* -ſſes, memory.
 Gedanke, *m.* -ns, *pl.* -n, thought,
 idea, notion, meaning, purpose.
 Gedenken, see denken, *p.* 346; *v. ir.*
n. to think of, remember, men-
 tion, intend.
 Gedicht, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, poem.
 Gedrängt, *p.* pressed, crowded.
 Geduld, *f.* -; patience, indulgence.
 Geduldig, *adj.* patient, forbearing.
 Gefahr, *f.* -; *pl.* -en, danger, peril.
 Gefährlich, *adj.* dangerous.
 Gefährte, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, companion,
 consort.
 Gefährtin, *f.* -, *pl.* -nen, new, com-
 panion, consort.
 Gefährvoll, *adj.* fraught with dan-
 ger, dangerous, perilous.
 Gesallen, see fallen, *p.* 348; to please;
 es gefällt mir, I like it.
 Gefälligkeits, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, complais-
 ance, kindness, favor, service.
 Gefangniß, *n.* -ſſes, *pl.* -ſſe, prison.
 Gefäß, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, vessel.
 Gefieder, *n.* -s, plumage, feathers.
 Gefolge, *n.* -s, train, retinue.
 Gegen, *prep.* toward, to, against,
 for, about, near, compared to;
 -theil, *n.* contrary.
 Gehen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to go, walk
 fare, be; wie geht es? how are you?
- es geht mir wohl, I am well, too
 Wind geht, the wind blows.
 Gehirn, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, brain.
 Gehorchen, *v. n.* to obey.
 Gehören, *v. n.* to belong.
 Gehorsam, *adj.* obedient, dutiful,
m. -s, obedience, duty.
 Gehülfe, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, assistant.
 Geige, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, violin.
 Geist, *m.* -es, *pl.* -er, ghost, spirit
 soul, genius.
 Geistig, *adj.* spirituous, spiritual,
 intellectual.
 Geiz, *m.* -es, avarice; -hals, *m.* -es,
 miser.
 Geizig, *adj.* avaricious, covetous.
 Gefroren, see frieden.
 Gelb, *adj.* yellow.
 Geld, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, money, coin.
 Gelegenheit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, occasion,
 opportunity.
 Gelehrt, *adj.* learned, skilled.
 Geliche, see lichen.
 Gelingen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to succeed,
 prosper, speed.
 Gelten, *p.* 348. *v. ir. n.* to be of value.
 Gemälde, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, picture, paint-
 ing.
 Gemein, *adj.* common, ordinary,
 vulgar.
 Gemsenjäger, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, chamois-
 hunter.
 Gemüth, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, mind, soul,
 heart, nature.
 Gen, *prep.* toward, to.
 General, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* Generale,
 general, commander.
 General'lieutenant, *m.* -s, *pl.* -s, lieu-
 tenant-general.
 Genuß, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to recover.
 Genießen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to enjoy,
 take, taste, eat, drink.
 Genius, *m.* -, *pl.* Genien, genius.
 Genuß, *adv.* sufficient, enough.
 Genügen, *v. n.* to suffice, satisfy.
 Gerade, *adj.* straight, right, plain,
 immediately, directly, just, ex-
 actly.
 Gerber, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, tanner.
 Gerecht, *adj.* just, righteous.
 Gerichten, *v. n.* to tend, redound.
 Gericht, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, judgment, tri-
 bunal.
 Gern, *adv.* willingly, gladly, cheer

- fully, with pleasure; -haben, to like, be fond of.
 Gerste, *f.* -, barley.
 Gesang, *m.* -es, *pl.* Gesänge, song.
 Geschäft, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, business, employment.
 Geschäftig, *adj.* busy, busied, bustling.
 Geschehen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to happen, take, place, chance, be done.
 Geschenk, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, present, gift.
 Geschichte, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, history, story.
 Geschickt, *adj.* fit, apt, skillful.
 Geschöpf, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, creature.
 Geschrei, *n.* -es, cry, clamor, scream, lamentations.
 Geschütz, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, artillery, cannon.
 Geschweigen, see schweigen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to pass over in silence.
 Geschwinb, *adj.* swift, fast, rapid, quick.
 Geschwür, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, sore, ulcer.
 Gesellschaft, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, company.
 Gesetz, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, law, decree.
 Gespenst, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, ghost, specter, spirit, phantom.
 Gesprächig, *adj.* affable, talkative.
 Gestalt, *n.* -es, *pl.* -en, shore, coast.
 Gestalt, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, figure, form.
 Gestein, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, stone, rock.
 Gestern, *adv.* yesterday.
 Gesträuch, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, bushes, briars, thicket.
 Gesund, *adj.* sound, healthy.
 Gesundheit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, health.
 Getreide, *n.* -s, corn, grain.
 Getreu, *adj.* faithful, loyal, true, honest, devoted.
 Getrost, *adj.* confident, courageous, with confidence.
 Getrösten, *v. r.* to console one's self, trust in, to be not afraid of.
 Gewahr, *adj.* perceiving; -werden, to see, perceive.
 Gewalt, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, power, force.
 Gewaltig, *adj.* powerful, mighty, very large, prodigious.
 Gewand, *n.* -es, *pl.* Gewänder, garment, drapery cloth, dress.
 Geweiß, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, horns, branches, antlers.
 Gewinnen, *p.* 350; to win, earn.
 Gewiß, *adj.* certain, sure, fixed.
 Gewissen, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, conscience.
 Gewöhnlich, usual, common.
 Gewohnt, used, accustomed.
 Gewölbe, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, & -er, vault, arch.
 Gewürz, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, spice, aromatic.
 Geziemen, *v. imp.* to become, be seem, be fit.
 Gießen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to pour, spill, cast.
 Giftig, *adj.* poisonous, venomous.
 Gimpel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, chaffinch, simpton.
 Glanz, *m.* -es, splendor, luster, brightness, glance.
 Glänzen, *v. n.* to glisten, glitter.
 Glas, *n.* -es, *pl.* Gläser, glass.
 Glaser, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, glazier.
 Gläsern, *adj.* glass, glassy.
 Glatt, *adj.* smooth, even, plain.
 Glaube, *m.* -as, faith, belief, credit.
 Glauben, *v. a.* to believe, think.
 Gläubig, *adj.* believing, faithful.
 Gläubige, *m. & f.* believer.
 Gleich, *adj.* like, alike, equal, level, plain, straight, just, immediately.
 Gleichkommen, to equal.
 Gleichen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to equal, equalize, level, resemble.
 Gleichgültigkeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, equalness, equivalence, indifference.
 Gleichmuth, *m.* -es, equanimity, calmness.
 Glück, *n.* -es, fortune, happiness, prosperous condition.
 Glücklich, *adj.* happy, fortunate, prosperous.
 Glückseligkeit, *f.* -, happiness, felicity.
 Gnädig, *adj.* gracious, merciful.
 Gold, *n.* -es, gold; -schmied, *m.* goldsmith.
 Golden, *adj.* gold, golden.
 Gott, *m.* -es, God.
 Göttlich, *adj.* divine, godly, godlike.
 Gottlos, *adj.* godless, impious, wicked.
 Grab, *n.* -es, *pl.* Gräber, grave, tomb, sepulchre.
 Graben, *m.* -s, *pl.* Gräben, ditch, trench, canal.
 Graben, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a. & n.* to dig, cut.
 Graf, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, earl, count.
 Gränze, see Grenze.
 Gras, *n.* -es, *p.* Gräser, grass.

Grau, *adj.* gray, grizzle.
Greifen, *v. a. & n. ir.* to gripe, grasp, seize, lay hold of.
Greis, *adj.* gray, hoary; — *m.* —*es*, *pl.* —*se*, an old man.
Grenz, *f.* —, *pl.* —*n*, limit, border.
Griechenland, *n.* —*s*, Greece.
Grob, *adj.* coarse, clumsy, gross, rude.
Groß, *adj.* great, large, vast, huge, high, tall, eminent, grand.
Grube, *f.* —, *pl.* —*n*, pit, cavity.
Grün, *adj.* green, verdant, fresh.
Grund, *m.* —*s*, *pl.* Gründe, ground, bottom, foundation, reason.
Günstig, *adj.* favorable, propitious.
Gustav, *m.* Gustavus.
Gut, *adj.* good, well, sufficiently, good-natured, kind, pleasant, convenient; —, *n.* —*s*, *pl.* Güter, good, possession, estate, commodity.
Güte, *f.* —, goodness, kindness.
Gütig, *adj.* kind, benevolent.



Ha, *int.* ha!
Haar, *n.* —*s*, *pl.* —*e*, hair, wool.
haben, *v. ir. aux.* to have, possess.
Habicht, *m.* —*s*, *pl.* —*e*, hawk.
Habsburg, *n.* Hapsburg.
Hader, *m.* —*s*, quarrel, brawl.
Hader, *v. n.* to quarrel, brawl.
Hafen, *m.* —*s*, *pl.* Häfen, harbor.
Hafer, *m.* —*s*, oats.
Hager, *adj.* haggard.
Halb, *adj.* half.
Halb, *halben*, *halber*, *prep.* by reason of, on account of.
Halbheit, *f.* —, *pl.* —*en*, mediocrity.
Halblaut, *adv.* in an under tone.
Halm, *m.* —*s*, *pl.* —*e*, stalk, halm.
halten, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to hold, keep, support, contain, stop, maintain, manage, value, deem, estimate, think, celebrate, treat.
Hammer, *m.* —*s*, *pl.* Hämmer, hammer.
Hämmern, *v. a.* to hammer.
Hand, *f.* —, *pl.* Hände, hand; —*schuß*, *m.* glove, gauntlet.
Handeln, *v. a.* to handle, treat; *v. n.* to act, trade, deal.
Hantlung, *f.* —, *pl.* —*en*, action, deed.
Hanf, *m.* —*s*, hemp.

Hangen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to hang, dangle.
Harmlos, *adj.* without grief, harmless.
Harmonie, *f.* —, *pl.* —*n*, harmony.
Hart, *adj.* hard, severe, rigorous.
Hase, *m.* —*n*, *pl.* —*n*, hare.
Hassen, *v. a.* to hate.
Häßlich, *adj.* ugly, wicked, dirty.
Hast, *f.* —, haste.
Haupt, *n.* —*s*, *pl.* Häupter, head.
Hauptgeschäft, *n.* —*s*, —*s*, *pl.* —*e*, main business.
Hauptmann, *m.* —*s*, *pl.* —*männer*, —*leute*, captain.
Hauptstadt, *f.* —, *pl.* —*städte*, capital, metropolis.
Haus, *n.* —*s*, *pl.* Häuser, house, household, family; —*frau*, *f.* housewife.
Hausbrot, *n.* —*s*, *pl.* —*e*, household bread, domestic-bread.
Haushaltung, *f.* —, *pl.* —*en*, house-keeping, household, family.
heben, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to lift, raise, elevate.
Heer, *n.* —*s*, *pl.* —*e*, army, host.
Heil, *adj.* healed, sound, unhurt; *n.* —*s*, welfare, health.
Heilig, *adj.* holy, sacred.
Heiligen, *v. a.* to hallow, consecrate.
Heimbringen, *v. a. ir.* to bring home.
Heimlich, *adj.* secret, private.
Heinrich, *m.* —*s*, Henry.
Heiß, *adj.* hot, ardent, torrid.
heißen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a. & n.* to call, bid, enjoin, to be called, be said, mean, signify, be considered; was soll das —? what does that mean? what do you mean by that? es heißt, it is said, they say; das heißt, that is to say, that is; wie heißen Sie? what is your name?
Heiter, *adj.* serene, clear, fair, bright, cheerful.
Helfen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to help, assist, save, avail.
Hell, *adj.* clear, bright, light.
Her, *adv.* hither, hitherward.
Herab, *adv.* down from, down, downward.
Heran, *adv.* on, near near to, up upward.

Heran'rücken, *v. n.* to advance, approach, march on.
 Herauf, *adv.* up, upward.
 Herauf'treiben, *v. a. ir.* to force or press up.
 Heraus'kommen, *v. n. ir.* to come out.
 Heraus'schreiten, *v. n. ir.* to step forth.
 Herb, *herbe*, *adj.* acerb, bitter, eager, harsh, sour.
 Hi-ber', *adv.* hither, near, on.
 Herbei'bringen, *v. a. ir.* to bring forward, produce.
 Herbei'führen, *v. a.* to lead near, bring on.
 Herbei'fragen, *v. a. ir.* to bring or fetch to or in.
 Herbst, *m.* -es, harvest, autumn.
 Herne'ber, *adv.* down, downward.
 Herne'berbliden, *v.* to look down.
 Herne'berkommen, *v. n. ir.* to come down.
 Herr, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, master, gentleman, lord, sir.
 Herrlich, *adj.* magnificent, glorious, splendid.
 Herrlichkeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, magnificence, glory, splendor.
 Herrschen, *v. n.* to rule, reign, govern, prevail.
 Herkommen, *v. n.* to descend, issue from, come from.
 Herüber, *adv.* over, across.
 Herunter, *adv.* down.
 Hervor'gehen, *v. n. ir.* to go forth, proceed, follow.
 Hervor'holen, *v. a.* to fetch out.
 Hervor'treten, *v. n. ir.* to step forth, appear.
 Herz, *n.* -ens, *pl.* -en, heart, courage.
 Herzlich, *adj.* hearty, cordial.
 Herzog, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, duke.
 Herzogsbut, *m.* -es, *pl.* -büte, ducal but.
 Heſſe, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, Hessian.
 Heu, *n.* -es, hay.
 Heuchelei, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, hypocrisy.
 Heulen, *v. n.* to howl.
 Heute, *adv.* to-day, this day; - zu Tage, to-w-a-days.
 Hier, *adv.* here, in this world; -her, hither, here.
 Hierher'kommen, *v. n. ir.* to come hither.

Himmel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, heaven, heavens, *pl.* sky, zone, climate.
 Himmlisch, *adj.* heavenly, celestial.
 Hin, *adv.* thither, away, gone, lost, on, along, down. (L. 52.)
 Hinab', *adv.* down, down there (see herunter, hinunter).
 Hinab'fallen, *v. n. ir., imp.* to fall down.
 Hinauf, *adv.* up, up there.
 Hinauf'steigen, *v. n. ir.* to step or climb up.
 Hinaus', *adv.* out, out there.
 Hinaus'gehen, *v. n. ir.* to go out.
 Hinein'reiten, *v. n. ir.* to ride into.
 Hinein'wagen, *v. r.* to venture in.
 Hinnehmen, *v. a. ir.* to take, receive.
 Hinreichen, *v. a.* to reach, hand; -, *v. n.* to suffice.
 Hinsicht, *f.* -, view, respect.
 Hinter, *prep. & adv.* behind, after, back, backwards.
 Hinüber, *adv.* over, across, beyond.
 Hinzufügen, *v. a.* to add to, join, adjoin.
 Hirt, *m.* -en, *pl.* -e, stag, hart.
 Hubel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, plane.
 Hoch, *adj.* high, lofty, sublime.
 Höchst, *adv.* most, extremely.
 Hoffen, *v. a. & n.* to hope, expect, trust.
 Hoffnung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, hope, expectation.
 Höfling, *m.* -s, *pl.* -e, courtier.
 Höhe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, height, highness, elevation; in - Höhe, up, upward.
 Hohl, *adj.* hollow, concave.
 Hohn'laden, *v. n.* to laugh in scorn, scoff.
 Höllich, *adj.* hellish, infernal.
 Holen, *v. a.* to fetch, go for; -lassen, to send for.
 Holz, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e & Hölzer, wood timber; -hauer, woodcutter.
 Hölzern, *adj.* wooden.
 Honig, *m.* -es, honey.
 Honigtopf, *m.* -es, *pl.* -, -töpfe, honey-jar.
 Hören, *v. a. & n.* hear, give ear.
 Horn, *n.* -es, *pl.* Hörner, horn.
 Hübsch, *adj.* pretty, fair.
 Huf, *m.* -es, *pl.* e, hoof.
 Hügel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, hillock, hill.
 Huſn, *n.* -es, *pl.* Hüſner, fr. wl.

Hülfe, *f.* —, aid, help, succor, assistance, relief.
 Hüllos, *adj.* helpless.
 Hund, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, dog.
 Hundchen, (*L.* 24. 1).
 Hundert, see § 45, (1).
 Hundertsältig, hundredfold, a hundred things.
 Hungern, *v. n* & *imp.* to hunger.
 Hüpfen, *v. n.* to leap, hop, skip.
 Hut, *m.* —s, *pl.* Hüte, hat, bonnet; —macher, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, hatter.
 Hütte, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, hut, cot, cottage.

J (Vokal).

Ja, *prn.* I.
 Ihr, *prn.* your, to her, her, its, you, their.
 Immer, *adv.* always, ever.
 In, *prep.* into, in, at, within, to, of.
 Inbrünstig, *adj.* ardent, fervent.
 Indem, *conj.* while, when, because, since.
 Inhaltsreicher, *adj.* significant, full of meaning.
 Inner, *adj.* inner, interior, intrinsic, fig. heart, soul.
 Innerhalb, *prep.* within.
 Innerlich, *adj.* inward, internal, intrinsic, hearty, mental.
 Insel, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, island, isle.
 Insegeheim, *adv.* privately, secretly.
 Interessant, *adj.* interesting.
 Interesse, *n.* —s, *pl.* —n, interest.
 Irdisch, *adj.* terrestrial, earthly; das Irdische, earthly portion, possession.
 Irren, *v. n.* to err, go astray; *v. r.* to mistake, commit an error.
 Irrlicht, *n.* —s, *pl.* —er, ignis fatuus, Will-o'-the-wisp, Jack-o'-lantern.
 Island, *n.* —s, Iceland.
 Italiener, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, Italian.
 Italienisch, *adj.* Italian.

J (Consonant).

Ja, *adv.* yes, why, indeed, on any account; du thust es ja freiwillig, why you did it voluntarily; ay yea; jawohl, certainly.
 Jacke, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, jacket.
 Jagd, *f.* —, chase, hunt.
 Jagdhund, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, hunting-dog, pointer, hound.

Jagen, *v. a. & n.* to chase, hunt; in die Flucht —, to put to flight.
 Jäger, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, hunter.
 Jahr, *n.* —s, *pl.* —, year; —zeit, *f.* season.
 Jammern, *v. a. & n.* to lament, mourn, pity, feel pity.
 Januar, *m.* —s, January.
 Je, *adv.* ever, always; —nachdem, according as.
 Jeder, *prn.* every, each.
 Jedermann, *prn.* everybody.
 Jedoch, *conj.* however.
 Jeho'vah, *m.* —s, Jehovah.
 Jemand, *prn.* somebody, any one.
 Jener, jene, jenes, *prn.* that, you, yonder, the former.
 Jenseits *adv.* on the other side.
 Jetzt, *adv.* now. at present.
 Jovis, (*gen.* of Jupiter), of Jupiter.
 Jugend, *f.* —, youth.
 Jugendlich, *adj.* juvenile, youthful.
 Jung, *adj.* young, new, recent.
 Jüngling, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, youth, lad.
 Jünglingsfeuer, *n.* —s, youthful ardor.
 Juni, *m.* June.
 Junfer, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, young nobleman, squire.
 Jupiter, *m.* —s, Jupiter.

K

Kaffee, *m.* —s, coffee.
 Käfig, *m.* —s, *pl.* —e, cage.
 Kahn, *m.* —s, *pl.* Kähne, boat.
 Kaiser, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, emperor.
 Kaiserin, *f.* —, *pl.* —nen, empress.
 Kalb, *n.* —s, *pl.* Kälber, calf.
 Kalk, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, lime.
 Kalt, *adj.* cold, chill, frigid.
 Kälte, *f.* —, cold, coldness.
 Kameel, —s, *pl.* —, camel.
 Kamerad, *m.* —en, *pl.* —en, comrade.
 Kamin, *n.* —s, *pl.* —e, chimney, fire place, fire-side.
 Kamm, *m.* —s, *pl.* Kämme, comb.
 Kampf, *m.* —s, *pl.* Kämpfe, combat.
 Kann, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, can, jug.
 Kandel, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, pulpit.
 Kapitän, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, captain.
 Karl, *m.* —s, Charles.
 Käse, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, cheese.
 Kaufen, *v. a.* to buy, purchase.
 Kaufmann, *m.* —s, *pl.* —leute, merchant.

- Raum**, *adv.* scarce, scarcely.
Rehren, *v. a.* to brush, sweep.
Reichen, *v. n.* to pant, gasp.
Rein (feiner, keine, feines), *adj. prn.* no, not any, no one, none.
Reineswegs, *adv.* in no wise, by no means, not at all.
Reiser, *m. -s, pl. -*, cellar.
Reisner, *m. -s, pl. -*, waiter.
Rennen, *p. 350*; *v. ir. a.* to know, be acquainted with.
Rekenntnis, *f. -*, *pl. -e*, knowledge, science, acquirement.
Reiser, *m. -s, pl. -*, prison, dungeon.
Reffel, *m. -s, pl. -*, kettle.
Kette, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, chain.
Reuchen, see **Reichen**.
Reule, *f. -*, *pl. -*, club.
Kind, *n. -es, pl. -er*, child, infant.
Kindisch, *adj.* childish, childlike.
Kirche, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, church.
Kirchbaum, *m. -es, pl. -bäume*, cherry-tree.
Kirsche, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, cherry.
Klagen, *v. n.* to complain, lament.
Klage, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, complaint, lamentation, plaint.
Klänglich, *adj.* lamentable, mournful, pitiful.
Klar, *adj.* clear, bright, fair, plain.
Kleid, *n. -es, pl. -er*, garment, dress, garb, gown.
Klein, *adj.* little, small, trifling.
Klempner, *m. -s, pl. -*, tinman.
Klettern, *v. n.* to climb, scramble.
Klug, *adj.* prudent, ingenious wise, judicious, skillful.
Knabe, *m. -n, pl. -n*, boy, lad.
Knecht, *m. -es, pl. -e*, servant, slave.
Knopf, *m. -es, pl. Knöpfe*, button.
Knospe, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, bud, eye.
Koch, *m. -es, pl. Köche*, cook.
Köchin (L. 23. 5.).
Koffer, *m. -s, pl. -*, coffer, trunk.
Kohle, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, coal.
Kommen, *p. 350*; *v. ir. n.* to come, arrive at, get to.
König, *m. -s, pl. -e*, king; -reich, *n.* kingdom.
Königin, *f. -*, *pl. -nen*, queen.
Können, *v. n.* to be able, be permitted, know. (L. 45. 5. & p. 350).
Kopf, *m. -es, pl. Köpfe*, head.
Rorb, *m. -es, pl. Körbe*, basket.
Rorn, *n. -es, pl. Körner*, grain, corn. -
-ähre, *f.* ear of corn.
Rörper, *m. -s, pl. -*, body.
Rosten, *v. n.* to cost.
Kraft, *f. -*, *pl. Kräfte*, strength, force, vigor, faculty, power.
Kraft, *prep.* by virtue of.
Kräftig, *adj.* strong, powerful.
Kragen, *m. -s, pl. Krägen*, collar.
Krabe, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, crow.
Kranich, *m. -es, pl. -e*, crane.
Krank, *adj.* sick, ill, diseased.
Kränken, *v. a. & r.* to grieve, vex.
Kreide, *f. -*, chalk.
Kreisen, *v. n.* to move in a circle, turn round, revolve, whirl.
Kreuz, *n. -es, pl. -e*, cross, crucifix; -zug, *m.* crusade.
Kriechen, *p. 350*; *v. ir. n.* to creep, crawl.
Krieg, *m. -es, pl. -e*, war.
Krieger, *m. -s, pl. -*, warrior.
Kriegsjug, *m. -es, Kriegsjüge*, campaign.
Krocodil, *m. & n. -es, pl. -e*, crocodile.
Krone, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, crown, coronet, head, top (of a tree).
Krug, *m. -s, pl. Krüge*, pitcher.
Küfer, *m. -s, pl. -*, cooper.
Kuh, *f. -*, *pl. Kühe*, cow.
Kühl, *adj.* cool, fresh, cold.
Kühn, *adj.* bold, hardy, dauntless.
Kummer, *m. -s*, sorrow, grief.
Kunde, *f. -*, *pl. -n*, knowledge, information, news, notice.
Künftig, *adj.* future, next, coming; *ins Künftige*, for the future.
Kunst, *f. -*, *pl. Künste*, art, skill.
Künstler, *m. -s, pl. -*, artist.
Kupfer, *n. -s*, copper.
Kupfern, *adj.* copper, of copper.
Kurz, *adj. & adv.* short, brief, shortly, in short.
Kutscher, *m. -s, pl. -*, coachman.



- Raben**, *v. a.* to refresh, recreate.
Lächeln, *v. n.* to smile.
Lachen, to laugh, smile.
Lächerlich, *adj.* ridiculous.
Lachs, *m. -es, pl. -e*, salmon.
Lager, *n. -s, pl. -*, & **Läger**, couch, bed, camp.

- Lagern, *v. a.* to lay down, store, encamp, lie down.
 Lahm, *adj.* lame, halt, halting.
 Lamm, *n.* -es, *pl.* Lämmer, lamb.
 Land, *n.* -es, *pl.* Länder, land, ground, soil, country; -lust, *f.* country-air; -mann, *m.* peasant; -straße, *f.* high-road, highway.
 Ländlich, *adj.* rural, country-like.
 Landschaft, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, landscape.
 Lang, *adj.* long, tall, during; -weilig, tedious, tiresome.
 Lange, *adv.* long, a long time.
 Langeweile, *f.* -, ennui, heaviness, tediousness.
 Langsam, *adv.* along.
 Langsam, *adj.* slow, dull, heavy.
 Langst, *adv.* long ago, long since.
 Lassen, to let, permit, allow, give, suffer, fit, become. (L. 43. 11. & p. 350.)
 Lasttier, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, beast of burden.
 Lasthaft, *adj.* vicious, wicked.
 Lastig, *adj.* burdensome, troublesome.
 Lauf, *m.* -es, *pl.* Läufe, run, course, currency, current.
 Laufen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to run.
 Laune, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, humor, temper, whim, freak.
 Laut, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, sound, tone.
 Laut, *adj. & adv.* loud, aloud.
 Läutern, *v. a.* to purify, refine, clear.
 Leben, *v. n.* to live; *n.* -s, life, vivacity.
 Leben, *n.* -s, life.
 Leben'big, *adj.* living, alive, quick.
 Leder, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, leather.
 Ledig, *adj.* empty, void, vacant, free.
 Leer, *adj.* empty, void, vain.
 Legen, *v. a.* to lay, put, place; *v. r.* to lie down.
 Lehen, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, tenure, possession.
 Lehren, *v. a.* to teach, instruct.
 Lehrer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, teacher, instructor, professor, master.
 Lehrerin (L. 23. 5).
 Lehrling, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, apprentice.
 Lehrreich, *adj.* instructive.
 Leib, *m.* -es, *pl.* -er, body.
 Leicht, *adj.* light, easy, fickle.
 Leichtsinzig, *adj.* light, light-minded.
 Leid, *adj.* sorrowful, troublesome; es ist mir -, es istut mir -, I am sorry for it.
 Leib, *n.* -es, hurt, pain, sorrow.
 Leiden, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a. & n.* to suffer, endure, bear, tolerate; *n.* -s, *pl.* -, suffering, misfortune.
 Leidenschaft, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, passion.
 Leihen, *p.* 350; *v. a.* to lend, borrow.
 Leipzig, *n.* -s, Leipzig.
 Leicht, *adj.* low, soft, light.
 Leisten, *v. a.* to do, render, perform, accomplish, execute.
 Leiten, *v. a.* to guide, lead.
 Lerche, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, lark.
 Lernen, *v. a. & n.* to learn; auswendig -, to learn by heart.
 Lesen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a. & n.* to read, gather.
 Letzt, *adj.* last, ultimate, final.
 Leu, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, lion.
 Leuchten, *v. n.* to shine, light, give light.
 Leuchter, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, candlestick.
 Leute, *pl.* people, persons.
 Licht, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e & -er, light, candle; es ging ihm ein - auf, he began to see, understand.
 Lieb, *adj.* dear, beloved, pleasing - es ist mir -, I am glad.
 Liebe, *f.* -, love, affection.
 Lieben, *v. a. & n.* to love.
 Lieber, *comp. of* lieb & gern, *adj.* dearer; *adv.* rather, sooner.
 Lieblichkeit, *f.* -, loveliness, amiableness, sweetness.
 Lied, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, song, hymn.
 Liegen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to lie.
 Linde, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, linden-tree.
 Link, *adj.* left, left-handed.
 Lob, *n.* -es, praise, commendation.
 Loben, *a. a.* to praise, commend.
 Loch, *n.* -es, *pl.* Löcher, hole.
 Locken, *v. a. & n.* to call, decoy, bait, allure, entice.
 Löffel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, spoon.
 Lohn, *m. & n.* -es, *pl.* Löhne, reward, wages, *pl.* hire, pay, salary.
 Los, *adj. & adv.* loose, free, rid.
 Löschpapier, *n.* blotting-paper.
 Losgehen, *v. n. ir.* to come off, begin, go off; auf Einen -, to attack one.
 Losreißen, *v. a. ir.* to tear off, break loose; *v. r. ir.* to disengage one's self by force.
 Loswinden, *v. a. & r. ir.* to untwist, tear away, disengage one's self.

Löwe, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, lion.
Lucinde, *f.* Lucinda.
Lust, *f.* -, *pl.* Lüfte, air, breeze.
Lüftchen, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, breeze.
Lüge, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, lie, falsehood.
Lügen, *p.* 359; *v. ir. a. & n.* to lie, tell a lie.
Lust, *f.* -, *pl.* Lüfte, pleasure, joy, enjoyment, delight, inclination, fancy, desire.

M

Machen, *v. a.* to make, fabricate, produce, represent.
Macht, *f.* -, *pl.* Mächte, might, force.
Mächtig, *adj.* mighty, powerful; einer Sprache - sein, to be master of a language.
Mädchen, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, maiden, girl.
Magdeburg, *n.* -s, Magdeburg.
Mager, *adj.* meager, lean.
Magnet, *m.* -s, *pl.* -t, load-stone, magnet.
Mahlen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a.* to grind.
Mährchen, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, tale, legend.
Mai, *m.* -es, *pl.* -t, & -en, May.
Maislied, *n.* -es, May song.
Mais, *m.* maize, Indian corn.
Majestät, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, majesty.
Majestätlich, *adj.* majestic.
Mal, *n.* -s, *pl.* -t, time. (§ 50.)
Maler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, painter.
Malta, *n.* -s, Malta.
Man, (*L.* 19).
Mancher, *manche*, *manches*, *prn.* many a, many a one, much.
Manche, *pl.* many, some, several; manches, many things.
Mandel, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, almond.
Mann, *m.* -es, *pl.* Männer, man, husband.
Manheim, *m.* Manheim.
Mantel, *m.* -s, *pl.* Mäntel, cloak.
Märchen, see Mährchen.
Märkt, *m.* -es, *pl.* Märkte, market, mart, market-place.
Marmor, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, marble.
Marschall, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* Marschälle, marshal.
März, *m.* -es, *pl.* -t, March.
Maser, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, speck, spot; bie -n, mensls

Mäßig, *adj.* moderate, temperate.
Mäßigung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, moderation, temperance.
Mast, *m.* -es, *pl.* -en, mast.
Matro'se, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, sailor.
Maultier, *n.* -s, *pl.* -t, mule.
Maurer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, mason.
Mechanisch, *adj.* mechanical.
Meer, *n.* -es, *pl.* -t, sea, ocean.
Meereswoge, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, wave, billow.
Mehl, *n.* -es, *pl.* t, flour, meal, dust.
Mehr, *adj.* more, longer.
Mehrere, *adj.* *pl.* several.
Meiden, *p.* 352; to avoid, shun.
Mein, *meine*, *mein*, *prn.* my, mine.
Meinen, *v. a. & n.* to think, suppose.
Meinung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, opinion, meaning, intention, mind.
Meißel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, chisel.
Meister, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, master.
Melden, *v. a.* to announce, notify.
Melone, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, melon.
Menge, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, multitude, great many, great deal, plenty.
Mensch, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, man, human being, person, mankind.
Menschenherz, *n.* -ens, *pl.* -en, human heart.
Menschheit, *f.* -, humanity, mankind.
Menschlich, *adj.* human, humane.
Merken, *v. a.* to mark, note, perceive, observe.
Messen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to measure, survey, compare.
Messer, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, knife; -schmied, *m.* cutler.
Messingen, *adj.* brass, brazen.
Miene, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, mien, air, look, countenance.
Milch, *f.* -, milk.
Mildtich, *adj.* mildly, charitably.
Mindest, *adj.* smallest, lowest.
Minister, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, minister.
Mißbrauch, *m.* -s, Mißbräuche, abuse, misuse.
Mißlich, *adj.* doubtful, precarious.
Mißlingen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. n.* to go amiss, fail.
Mißmuth, *m.* -es, ill-humor, melancholy, sadness.
Mißverstehen, see stehen, *p.* 356.; *v. ir. a.* to misunderstand.
Mit, *prep.* with, by, at, upon, under to.

- Mitnehmen**, *v. a. ir.* to take along with.
Mitschüler, *m. -s, pl. -en*, fellow-scholar.
Mitschülerin, *f.* (L. 23. 5.)
Mittagsuppe, *f. -n, pl. -en*, dinner.
Mittel, *n. -s, pl. -e*, middle, medium, mean, means, expedient, remedy.
Mitten, *adv.* in the midst, in the middle of, in the heart of, amidst.
Mögen, to have a mind, like, wish, be able. (L. 45. 7. & p. 352.)
Monat, *m. -en, pl. -e*, month, moon.
Mond, *m. -en, pl. -e & -en*, moon, month.
Mondschein, *m. -en, -s*, moon-light, moon-shine.
Monsieur (French), Sir, Mr.
Morgen, *m. -s, pl. -en*, morning, morn, Orient, East; *adv.* tomorrow.
Morgendämmerung, *f. -n*, day-break, morning-twilight.
Morgenlicht, *n. -en, pl. -er*, morning-light.
Morgenröthe, *f. -n*, aurora, morning-dawn, twilight.
Müde, *adj.* weary, tired, fatigued.
Mühe, *f. -n, pl. -n*, toil, pain, trouble.
Müller, *m. -s, pl. -n*, miller.
München, *n. -s*, Munich.
Mund, *m. -en, pl. Münde (Münder)*, mouth.
Murren, *v. n.* to grumble, growl.
Musik, *f. -n, pl. -en*, music.
Müßig, *adj.* idle, dormant.
Muskel, *m. -s, pl. -n, f. -n, pl. -n*, muscle.
Müssen, *v. n. ir.* must, to be obliged, be forced (L. 45. 8), p. 352.
Muth, *m. -en*, courage, spirit, mood.
Muthig, *adj.* courageous.
Muthwillig, *adj.* petulant, pert.
Mutter, *f. -n, pl. Mütter*, mother.
- N**
- Nach**, *prep.* after, behind, in, at, to, for, toward, upon, according to.
Nachbar, *m. -s, pl. -n*, neighbor.
Nachbarin (L. 23. 5.)
Nachdem, *conj.* after, when.
Nachdenken, see *denken*, p. 346; *v. ir. n.* to meditate, reflect.
Nachen, *m. -s, pl. -n*, boat, skiff.
Nachgehen, *v. n. ir.* to go after, follow.
Nachher, *adv.* afterward, after that, hereafter.
Nachlässig, *adj.* negligent, careless, slovenly, inattentive.
Nachricht, *f. -n, pl. -en*, account, advice, intelligence, news, tidings.
Nachsetzen, *v. n.* to set after, run after.
Nachsicht, *f. -n*, forbearance, indulgence.
Nächst, *prep.* next, next to.
Nacht, *f. -n, pl. Nächte*, night.
Nachtgall, *f. -n, pl. -en*, nightingale.
Nadel, *f. -n, pl. -n*, needle.
Nagel, *m. -s, pl. Nägel*, nail, pin, peg.
Nähe, *adj.* near, nigh.
Nähen, *v. n. & r.* to approach, draw near.
Nähen, *v. a. & n.* to sew, stitch.
Nähren, *v. a. & n.* to foster, feed, nourish.
Name, *m. -n, pl. -n*, name; title, renown, reputation.
Naß, *adj.* wet, moist.
Natur, *f. -n, pl. -en*, nature.
Nebel, *m. -s, pl. -n*, mist, fog.
Neben, *prep.* by, near, beside, besides, by the side of, next to, close to, with.
Nenzen, *v. a.* to banter, tease, provoke, irritate, vex.
Neffe, *m. -n, pl. -n*, nephew.
Nehmen, p. 352; *v. ir. a.* to take, receive; *sich in Acht -n.* to beware.
Neid, *m. -en*, envy, jealousy.
Neidisch, *adj.* envious, grudging.
Neigen, *v. a.* to bend, incline; *v. r.* to approach, bow, turn.
Neigung, *f. -n, pl. -en*, inclination, proneness, disposition.
Nein, *adv.* no.
Nelke, *f. -n, pl. -n*, pink.
Nennen, p. 352; *v. ir. a. & r.* to name, denominate, call.
Nervenfieber, *n. -s, pl. -n*, nervous fever.
Nest, *n. -s, pl. -en*, nest.
Neu, *adj.* new, fresh, recent, modern, aufs Neue, von Neuem, anew afresh, again.
Neuerkassen, *adj.* new-created.
Neugierig, *adj.* curious, inquisitive.
Neulich, *adj.* late, recent.
Neunzig, § 45. (1).

Nicht, *adv.* not.

Nichts, *prn.* nothing, naught.

Nie, *adv.* never at no time.

Niederfließen, *v. n. ir.* to flow down, or under.

Niederknien, *v. n.* to kneel down.

Niederlassen, *v. a. ir.* to let down; *v. r. ir.* to settle, sit down, alight.

Niemals, *adv.* never, at no time.

Niemand, *prn.* nobody, no one.

Noch, *adv.* yet, still, more; *conj.* nor.

Norden, *m. -s,* north.

Norweger, *m. -s,* Norwegian.

Noth, *adj.* needful, necessary; *es* thut —, it is necessary; *f. -r, pl.*

Nöthen, need, distress, calamity.

Nun, *adv.* now, at present, well, well then,

Nur, *adv.* only, just, but, ever.

Nutzen, nützen, *v. a. & n.* to use, make use of, be of use, be useful.

Nützlich, *adj.* useful, profitable.

Ö

Ob, *conj.* whether, if though; als —, as if; *prep.* over, on account of.

Oben, above, on high.

Oberon, *m.* Oberon.

Oberhalb, *prep.* above.

Oberst, *m. -en, pl. -en,* colonel.

Obgleich, *conj.* though, although, notwithstanding.

Oblate, *f. -r, pl. -n,* wafer.

Obst, *n. -s,* fruit, fruits; -garten, *m.* orchard.

Ochs, *m. -sen* (or Ochse -n), *pl. -n,* ox.

Oder, *conj.* or, or else, either, or.

Ofen, *m. -s, pl. -en,* stove.

Offen, *adj.* open.

Offizier, *m. -s, pl. -e,* officer.

Offnen, *v. a.* to open.

Oft, *adv.* oft, often, frequently.

Oheim, *m. -s, pl. -e,* uncle.

Ohne, without, destitute of.

Ohr, *n. -s, pl. -en,* ear.

Öl, *n. -s, p. -e,* oil.

Onkel, *m. -s, pl. -e,* uncle.

Ordnentlich, *adj.* orderly, regular.

Ort, *m. -s, pl. -e, & -er,* place.

Ost, *m.* East.

Osten, *m. -s,* East.

Oesterreich, *n. -s,* Austria.

Oesterreicher, *m. -s, pl. -r,* Austrian.

P

Paar, *n. -s, pl. -e,* pair, couple, a few.

Palast, *m. -s, pl. -äste,* palace.

Papier, *n. -s, pl. -e,* paper.

Parabel, *f. -r, pl. -n,* parable.

Paris, *n.* Paris.

Passen, *v. a. & n.* to fit, suit.

Patriotisch, *adj.* patriotic.

Pavia, *n.* Pavia.

Perle, *f. -r, pl. -n,* pearl.

Pest, *f. -r, pl. -en,* pestilence, plague.

Peischaft, *n. -s, pl. -e,* seal.

Path, *m. -s, -s, pl. -e,* path.

Pau, *m. -s & -en, pl. -e & -en,* peacock.

Peffer, *m. -s,* pepper.

Pfeifen, *p. 352; v. ir. a. & n.* to pipe, whistle.

Pfeil, *m. -s, pl. -e,* arrow.

Pferd, *n. -s, pl. -e,* horse.

Pflaume, *f. -r, pl. -n,* peach.

Pflanze, *f. -r, pl. -n,* plant, vegetable,

Pflanzen, *v. a.* to plant, set, transplant.

Plume, *f. -r, pl. -n,* plum.

Pflegen, *v. a.* to take care of, nurse, attend to; *v. n.* to be accustomed, indulge.

Pflicht, *f. -r, pl. -en,* duty, obligation.

Pflücken, *v. a.* to pluck.

Pfund, *n. -s, pl. -e,* pound.

Pilsen, *n. -s,* Pilsen.

Pinfel, *m. -s, pl. -e,* paint-brush, pencil.

Plan, *m. -s, pl. -e & Pläne,* plan, design.

Plötzlich, *adj.* sudden, instantaneous, on a sudden, at once.

Pöbel, *m. -s,* mob, populace.

Poet, *m. -en, pl. -en,* poet.

Pole, *m. -n, pl. -n,* Pole.

Poliren, *v. a.* to polish.

Porzellan, *n. -s,* porcelain, china.

Pracht, *f. -r,* pomp, state, splendor.

Prächtigt, *adj.* magnificent, splendid.

Praktisch, *adj.* practical.

Prebigen, *v. a. & n.* to preach.

Prebigen, *f. -r, pl. -en,* sermon.

Preis, *p. 352; v. ir. a.* to praise, commend, call.

Preuße, *m. -n, pl. -n,* Prussian.

Preußen, *n.* -s, Prussia.
 Preme'ieus, *m.* Prouethcus.
 Pult, *n.* -es, *pl.* -t, desk.
 Pulver, *n.* -t, *pl.* -, powder.
 Putzen, *v.* *a.* & *r.* to dress, attire, trim, clean.

Q

Quälen, *v.* *a.* to pain, torment, plague.

R

Rabe, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, raven.
 Rache, *f.* -, vengeance, revenge.
 Rächen, *v.* *a.* to revenge, avenge;
n. *r.* to revenge one's self, take vengeance.
 Rad, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* Räder, wheel.
 Rand, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* Ränder, edge, brim, brink, margin.
 Rang, *m.* -es, *pl.* Ränge, rank, order, rate, dignity, quality, row.
 Rasen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, turf, sod, clod.
 Rasen, *v.* *n.* to rave, rage, bluster.
 Rath, *m.* es, counsel, advise, means, expedient; dagegen wird schon Rath, for that there is redress (a remedy); dazu kann ihm Rath werden, in this he can be helped, this he can do.
 Raub, *m.* -es, robbery; -vogel, *m.* bird of prey.
 Rauben, *v.* *a.* to rob, spoil, steal.
 Räuber, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, robber.
 Rauchen, *v.* *a.* & *n.* to smoke.
 Raum, *m.* -es, *pl.* Räume, room, space.
 Recht, *adj.* right, just, true, real, legitimate, rightly, well, very.
 Recht, *n.* -es, *pl.* -t, right, claim, title, privilege, immunity, law, justice.
 Rechtfertigen, *v.* *a.* to justify, vindicate, exculpate.
 Rede, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, speech, harangue, oration, discourse.
 Reden, *v.* *a.* & *n.* to speak, talk, discourse.
 Redner, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, orator.
 Regel, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, rule, principle.
 Regelmäßig, *adj.* regular.
 Regen, *v.* *a.* & *r.* to stir, move, rouse, be active.

Regen, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, rain, shower, -schirm, *m.* umbrella.
 Regieren, *v.* *a.* & *n.* to reign, rule, govern.
 Regierung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, reign, government.
 Regiment', *n.* -s, *pl.* -er, regiment.
 Reich, *adj.* rich, wealthy, opulent; *n.* -es, *pl.* -t, empire, realm, kingdom.
 Reif, *adj.* ripe, mature.
 Reifen, *v.* *n.* to grow ripe, ripen.
 Reihe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, row, rank, file, range, order, series, turn.
 Rein, *adj.* clean, pure, clear, innocent.
 Reinigen, *v.* *a.* to purify, cleanse.
 Reise, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, journey, voyage.
 Reisen, *v.* *n.* to travel, journey.
 Reisend, *adj.* traveling; der Reisende, the traveler.
 Reis, *m.* -es, rice.
 Reiten, *p.* 352; *v.* *ir.* *a.* & *n.* to ride, go on horseback.
 Reiter, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, horseman.
 Religion', *f.* -, *pl.* -en, religion.
 Religiös', *adj.* religious.
 Rennen, *v.* *n.* *ir.* to run, race.
 Republik', *f.* -, *pl.* -en, republic.
 Reumüthig, *adj.* repentant.
 Revolution', *f.* -, *pl.* -en, revolution.
 Rhein, *m.* -es, Rhine.
 Richten, *v.* *a.* & *r.* to direct, raise, arrange, adapt, judge, execute, criticize; zu Grunde -, to ruin, destroy.
 Richter, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, judge.
 Richtig, *adj.* right, exact, just, true.
 Riese, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, giant; -engebirge, *n.* Giant Mountains.
 Ring, *m.* -es, *pl.* -t, ring.
 Rings, *adv.* around.
 Rod, *m.* -es, *pl.* Rödt, coat.
 Roggen, *m.* -s, rye.
 Roh, *adj.* raw, crude, rough, rude.
 Rohr, *n.* -es, *pl.* -t, reed, cane.
 Rom, *n.* -s, Rome.
 Rose, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, rose.
 Rosenstock, -es, *pl.* -stöcke, rose-bush.
 Ross, *n.* -steds, *pl.* -se, horse, steed.
 Rößlein, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, horse. (L 21)
 Rostig, *adj.* rusty.
 Roth, *adj.* red.
 Rubin', *m.* -s *pl.* -t, ruby.

Rud, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, stroke, pull, fit, jolt, jerk.

Rücken, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, back, ridge.

Rückſicht, *f.* -*er*, *pl.* -*en*, view, respect, consideration, regard.

Rückreſ, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*t*, return.

Ruf, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, call, cry, clamor, sound, voice.

Rufen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to call, cry.

Ruhe, *f.* -*n*, rest, repose. quiet, tranquillity, peace, sleep.

Ruheliffen, *n.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, pillow.

Ruhen, *v. n.* to rest, repose.

Ruhig, quiet, peaceable.

Rufm, *n.* -*s*, glory, renown, fame.

Rühmen, *v. a.* to praise, glorify, extol; *v. r.* to glory in, boast of.

Ruffe, *m.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, Russian.

Rußland, *n.* -*s*, Russia.

S

Sabbath, *m.* -*es*, -*s*, *pl.* -*t*, sabbath.

Sache, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, thing, matter, affair, concern, business.

Sachsen, *n.* -*s*, Saxony.

Sack, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Säck, bag, sack.

Sagen, *v. a. & n.* to say, tell, speak.

Salz, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, salt.

Sammeln, *v. a.* to collect, gather; *v. r.* to assemble, collect one's self.

Sand, *m.* -*es*, sand.

Sanft, *adj.* gentle, soft, mild.

Sänger, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, singer, songster.

Sardinien, *n.* -*s*, Sardinia.

Sattel, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* Sättel, saddle.

Sattler, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, saddler.

Satz, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Sätze, leap, jump, sediment, position, thesis, point, sentence, period, stake.

Saufen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to drink (of beasts).

Säufer, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, drunkard.

Säugling (Säuglein), *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, suckling, babe.

Schar, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*en*, troop, band, horde, multitude.

Schaarenweise, *adv.* (L. 52. 5), in bands, by swarms.

Schaden, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* Schäden, loss.

Schaden, *v. n.* to hurt, injure, damage, prejudice.

Schaf, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, sheep.

Schaffen, *p.* 352; to create, procure, carry, convey.

Schall, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Schälle, sound.

Schämen, *v. r.* to be ashamed.

Schamhaftigkeit, *f.* bashfulness, modesty, a shrinking from.

Schande, *f.* -*n*, shame, disgrace.

Scharf, *adj.* sharp, acute, severe.

Scharlachfieber, *n.* scarlet-fever.

Schatten, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, shadow, shade, phantom.

Schatz, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Schätze, treasure.

Schätzen, *v. a.* to prize, value, estimate, esteem.

Schaubühne, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, stage, theater.

Schaun, *v. a.* to look, see, view.

Schaufel, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, shovel.

Schäumen, *v. a.* to skim; *v. n.* to foam, froth.

Schauspieler, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, actor.

Schienen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. n.* to shine, appear, seem.

Schelten, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a. & n.* to scold, chide.

Schenken, *v. a.* to give, present.

Scheren, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to shave, shear.

Scherz, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, jest, joke.

Scherzrede, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, pleasantry.

Schicken, *v. a. & n.* to send, dispatch.

Schicksal, *n.* -*s*, *pl.* -*t*, fate, destiny, change.

Schießen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a. & n.* to shoot, discharge, dart, rush.

Schiff, *n.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, ship, vessel, nave (of a church).

Schiffer, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, mariner.

Schildwache, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, sentinel.

Schinden, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to flay.

Schirm, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* -*t*, screen, shelter, shield, protection.

Schlacht, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*en*, battle.

Schlaſten, *v. a.* to slaughter, kill.

Schlaſſe, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, dross, refuse.

Schlaf, *m.* -*es*, sleep, rest.

Schlafen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to sleep, rest.

Schlag, *m.* -*es*, *pl.* Schläge, blow, stroke, kind, sort, stamp, apoplexy.

Schlagen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to beat, strike, slay, coin, warble.

Schlange, *f.* -*n*, *pl.* -*n*, serpent, snake.

Schlecht, *adj.* bad, base, mean.

Schleichen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to sneak, slink, move slowly.

Schleier, *m.* -*s*, *pl.* -*n*, veil.

- Schleifen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to grind, polish, furbish.
 Schließen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a. & n.* to shut, lock, close, conclude.
 Schlimm, *adj.* ill, bad, evil, sad, arch, sore, unwell.
 Schloß, *n.* -jes, *pl.* Schlösser, lock, castle.
 Schlosser, or Schloffer, (*L.* 26.)
 Schlummer, *m.* -s, slumber, nap.
 Schlummerkörnlein, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, seeds of slumber. (*L.* 24.)
 Schlummern, *v. n.* to slumber.
 Schlüssel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, key.
 Schmecken, *v. a. & n.* to taste, relish; *sich es gut -lassen*, to eat or drink with good appetite; *i. e.* to relish greatly.
 Schmeichelfast, *adj.* flattering.
 Schmeicheln, *v. n.* to flatter, wheedle, caress.
 Schmeichler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, flatterer.
 Schmelzen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to melt, dissolve; *reg. a.* to melt.
 Schmerz, *m.* -es, *pl.* -en, pain, ache; *fig.* affliction, grief.
 Schmettau, *m.* Schmettau.
 Schmied, -es, *pl.* -e, smith.
 Schmieden, *v. a.* to forge, fether, chain.
 Schmücken, *v. a.* to adorn.
 Schmutzig, *adj.* foul, dirty.
 Schnee, *m.* -s, snow.
 Schneeweiß, *adj.* snow-white.
 Schneiden, *p.* 354; to cut.
 Schneider, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, tailor.
 Schnell, *adj.* quick, swift, sudden.
 Schnelle, *f.* -, rapidity, swiftmess.
 Schon, *adv.* already, even.
 Schön, *adj.* beautiful, fine, fair.
 Schonen, *v. a.* to spare, save.
 Schönheit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, beauty.
 Schöpfung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, creation.
 Schrank, *m.* -es, *pl.* Schränke, shrine, chest.
 Schreibpapier, *n.* writing-paper.
 Schreiben, *p.* 354; to write.
 Schreien, *p.* 354; to cry, scream.
 Schritt, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, step, stride, pace, stalk.
 Schuh, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, shoe.
 Schuhmacher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, shoemaker.
 Schuld, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, guilt, debt.
 Schuldig, *adj.* guilty, indebted.
 Schule, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, school.
 Schüler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, scholar.
 Schülerin (*L.* 23. 5).
 Schützen, *v. a.* to shelter, defend.
 Schutengel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, guardian angel.
 Schwaben, *n.* Suabia.
 Schwach, *adj.* weak, feeble, imbecile, faint.
 Schwager, *m.* -s, *pl.* Schwäger, brother-in-law.
 Schwägerin, *f.* -, *pl.* -nen, sister-in-law.
 Schwalbe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, swallow.
 Schwamm, *m.* -es, *pl.* Schwämme, sponge.
 Schwan, *m.* -es, *pl.* Schwäne, swan.
 Schwanfen, *v. n.* to stagger, fluctuate, waver, hesitate.
 Schwarm, *m.* -es, *pl.* Schwärme, swarm, crowd, throng, cluster.
 Schwarz, *adj.* black, dark.
 Schwärzen, *v. a.* to blacken, black.
 Schweben, *v. v.* to wave, to hang, to be suspended.
 Schwede, *m.* -n, Swede.
 Schweden, *n.* Sweden.
 Schwedisch, Swedish.
 Schweiß, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, tail, train.
 Schweigen, *v. n.* to be silent, keep silent, stop.
 Schwellen, *v. a.* to swell, makeswell, raise; *v. n.* *p.* 354; to swell, rise, heave.
 Schwer, *adj.* heavy, difficult, hard; *es fällt* -, it is difficult.
 Schwermuth, *f.* melancholy, sadness.
 Schwert, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, sword.
 Schwester, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, sister.
 Schwierig, *adj.* hard, difficult.
 Schwierigkeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, hardness, difficulty.
 Schwimmvogel, *m.* web-footed-bird.
 Schwimmen, *p.* 354; to swim.
 Schwören, *p.* 354; to take an oath, swear, vow.
 Sklave, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, slave.
 Sech, six.
 Sechund, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, seal.
 Seele, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, soul.
 Segeln, *v. a. & n.* to sail.
 Segnen, *v. a.* to bless.
 Sehen, *p.* 354; to see, look, view, behold.

Sehr, *adv.* very, much, greatly, extremely, very much.

Seide, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, silk.

Seil, *n.* —s, *pl.* —e, rope.

Seiler, *n.* —s, *pl.* —, ropemaker.

Sein (seiner), *prn.* his, one's, its, of his, of it.

Sein, *v. n.* & *aux. ir.* to be, exist; es sei, be it (L. 69. 10).

Seit, *adv.* & *prep.* since.

Seitdem, *adv.* since.

Seite, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, side, page.

Selbst, *prep.* & *adv.* self, even; — or selber, (L. 29. 3.)

Selig, *adj.* blessed, blissful, happy.

Selten, *adj.* rare, scarce, seldom.

Senf, *m.* —s, mustard.

Senken, *v. a.* to sink, lower, let down, lay.

Setzen, *v. a.* to set, put, place; *v. n.* to leap, pass over; *v. r.* to sit down, perch.

Seufzen, *v. n.* to sigh, groan.

Sich, *prn.* one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Sie, *prn.* she, it, they, you.

Sieben, seven.

Siebenjährig, *adj.* (of) seven years', seven years old.

Sieg, *m.* —s, *pl.* —t, victory.

Siegel, *n.* —, *pl.* —, seal; —lack, *m.* sealing-wax.

Siegen, *v. n.* to conquer.

Silber, *n.* —s, silver.

Silbern, *adj.* silver.

Silberstreifen, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, silver-ray.

Singen, *p.* 354; to sing, chant.

Sinken, *p.* 354; to sink; —lassen, to let fall; den Muth —lassen, to be disheartened.

Sinn, *m.* —s, *pl.* —t, sense, mind, intention, meaning, acception.

Sinnbild, *n.* —s, *pl.* —tr, emblem, symbol, allegory.

Sitte, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, custom, manner;

Sitten, *pl.* manners, morals.

Sittenlos, *adj.* immoral.

Sittsam, *adj.* modest, decent, proper, discreet.

Sitzen, *p.* 354; to sit, to be imprisoned, sit.

Smaragd, *m.* —s, *pl.* —en, emerald.

So, *adv.* & *conj.* so, thus, in such a manner, such, so as, as, if, when.

Sobald, *adv.* as soon as.

Sofa, *n.* & *m.* —s, *pl.* —s, sofa.

Sogleich, *adv.* instantly, immediately.

Sohn, *m.* —s, *pl.* Söhne, son.

Soldat, *prn.* such.

Soldat, *n.* —en, *pl.* —en, soldier.

Söldner, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, mercenary.

Sollen (L. 45. 9).

Sommer, *m.* —s, *pl.* —r, summer.

Sommertag, *m.* —s, *pl.* —t, summer day.

Sonder, *prep.* without.

Sondern (L. 21. 4).

Sonne, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, sun; —nschein, *m.* sunshine; —nschirm, *m.* parasol.

Sonntag, *m.* —s, *pl.* —t, Sunday.

Sonst, *adv.* else, otherwise, in other respects, besides, moreover, at other times, formerly (L. 69. 28).

Sopha, see Sofa.

Sophron, *m.* Sophron

Sorge, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, care, concern, sorrow; —tragen, to take care.

Sorgfältig, *adj.* solicitous, careful

Spalten, *v. a.* & *n.* to split

Spanien, *n.* Spain.

Spanisch, *adj.* spanish.

Spät, *adj.* late.

Spaten, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, spade.

Spazieren, *v. n.* to walk; —gehen, to take a walk. (L. 49).

Specht, *m.* —s, *pl.* —t, wood-pecker.

Speer, *m.* —s, *pl.* —t, spear, lance.

Speicher, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, granary, warehouse, store-house.

Speise, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, food, dish, meal.

Sperling, *m.* —s, *pl.* —t, sparrow.

Sperren, *v. a.* to shut, close, bar, stop, block up.

Sphäre, *f.* —, *pl.* —n, sphere.

Spiegel, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, looking-glass.

Spiel, *n.* —s, *pl.* —t, play, game, sport, diversion.

Spielen, *v. a.* & *n.* to play, act.

Spieler, *m.* —s, *pl.* —, player, performer.

Spinnen, *p.* 354; to spin.

Spitz, *spizig*, *adj.* pointed.

Spizig, *adj.* pointed, sharp.

Spotten, *v. a.* to mock, deride, scoff, banter, ridicule.

Spöttel, *f.* —, *pl.* —en, gibe, mockery, derision.

Tugendhaft, *adj.* virtuous.
 Türke, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, Turk.
 Türfei', *f* Turkey.
 Tyrann, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, tyrant.

U

Uebel, *adj. & adv.* evil, ill, bad, badly wrong, sick, sickly; -wollen, to bear a grudge.
 Ueben, *v. a.* to exercise, practise, execute, do.
 Ueber, *prep. & adv.* over, above, beyond, besides, on, upon, at, during, past, across, concerning.
 Ueberall', *adv.* everywhere.
 Ueberbi's, *adv.* besides, moreover.
 Ueberbrüßig, *adj.* tired, wearied, satiated, disgusted.
 Ueberei'lung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, precipitancy.
 Ueberführen, *v. a.* to lead over, transport; überführen, *v. a.* to convict, convince.
 Uebergaben, *v. a. ir.* to surrender, deliver; *v. r.* to surrender, retch, vomit.
 Ueberlegen, *adj.* superior.
 Uebermorgen, *adv.* day after to-morrow.
 Uebernach'ten, *v. n.* to pass, or spend the night.
 Uebernehmen, see nehmen, p. 352; to receive, accept, undertake.
 Ueberro'd, *m.* -es, *pl.* -rö'de, overcoat.
 Uebersä'en, *v. a.* to sow over, strew over, cover with.
 Ueber'schuß, *m.* -es, *pl.* -schüße, overshoe.
 Ueberset'en, *v. a.* to translate.
 Uebertreffen, *v. r. ir.* to surpass, excel, exceed.
 Ueberzeug'en, *v. a.* to convince.
 Ueberzie'gen, *v. a. ir.* to cover, fig. to invade.
 Übung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, exercise, exercising, practising, practice.
 Ufer, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, shore, coast, bank.
 Uhr, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, clock, watch; wie viel - ist es, what time is it? (L. 65. 7.)
 Uhrmacher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, watchmaker.
 Um, *prep., adv. & conj.* about, round, near, at, for, by, past, over, as for; - zu, in order to. (L. 49. 5.)

Um - wissen (L. 60. 5).
 Umarm'ung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, embrace.
 Umfar'gen, *v. a. ir.* to embrace, encircle, surround.
 Umflar'tern, *v. a.* to flutter or hover about, flow round.
 Umgang, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* -gänge, intercourse, commerce, conversation, company.
 Umge'ben, *v. a. ir.* surround, environ, inclose.
 Umgeh'en, *v. n. ir.* to go about, revolve; mit Jemandem -, to have intercourse with, associate with.
 Umher', *adv.* around, about, round about.
 Umhin', *adv.* about; ich kann nicht -, I can not forbear, I can not help. (L. 45.)
 Umfich'lin'gen, *v. a. ir.* to embrace closely, enclose, surround.
 Umfich'lin'gen, *p.* embraced.
 Umfich'wär'men, *v. a.* to swarm around, buzz around.
 Umsonst', *adv.* gratis, without pay, for nothing, in vain, vainly, to no purpose, without cause.
 Umstand, *m.* -es, *pl.* -stände, circumstance, condition.
 Unangenehm, *adj.* unpleasant, disagreeable.
 Unan'dig, *adj.* indomitable, unmanageable, intractable.
 Unbedeutend, *adj.* inconsiderable, insignificant, unimportant.
 Unbekannt, *adj.* unknown, unacquainted with.
 Unbeobachtet, *adj.* unobserved.
 Unbrauchbar, *adj.* unserviceable, useless.
 Und, *conj.* and.
 Unge'denkt, *adj.* unmindful.
 Unerfahren, *adj.* inexperienced.
 Unermeßlich, *adj.* immeasurable, immense, vast.
 Uner'schütterlich, *adj.* immovable.
 Unerträglich, unerträglich, *adj.* intolerable, insufferable, insupportable.
 Unfall, *m.* -es, *pl.* Unfälle, mischance, misfortune, disaster.
 Unfehlbar, *adj.* infallible, certain.
 Unfern, *prep.* near, not far from.
 Unförmlich, *adj.* deformed, disproportionate.

Weggehen, *v. n. ir.* to go away.

Weglaufen, *v. n. ir.* to run away.

Wegnehmen, *v. n* to take away.

Weh, *adj. & conj.* sore, painful; — thun, to ache, pain, hurt; es thut ihm weh, it hurts him; weh mir! wo is me!

Wehmuth, *f. —*, sadness, wofulness, sorrowfulness.

Wehmüthig, *adj.* sad, sorrowful, woful, mournful, melancholy.

Weib, *n. —s, pl. —er*, wife, woman.

Weich, *adj.* soft, tender, weak.

Weil, *adv. & conj.* while, during, as, as long as, when, because, since.

Wein, *m. —s, pl. —e*, wine, vine.

Weinen, *v. n.* to weep, cry.

Weise, *adj.* wise, sage.

Weise, *f. — pl. —n*, mode, manner, way, fashion, method, melody, tune.

Weisheit, *f. —*, wisdom, prudence.

Weiß, *adj.* white, clean.

Weit, *adj. & adv.* distant, remote, far, far off, afar, wide, large; aus weiter Fern', from afar.

Weiter, farther, else; — gehen, to go on.

Weizen, *m. —s*, wheat.

Welcher, *pron.* who, that, which, what, some. (L. 39.)

Welfen, *v. n.* to wither, fade, dry.

Welle, *f. — pl. —en*, wave, billow.

Welt, *f. — pl. —en*, world.

Weltberühmt, *adj.* far-famed.

Weltmeer, *n.* ocean.

Wenig, *adj. & adv.* little, few, some; ein —, a little.

Wenn, *adv. & conj.* if, in which case, when, whenever.

Wer, *pron.* who, he who, whoever.

Werden, *v. n. ir.* (L. 46), to become, grow, turn, be, prove, happen.

Werfen, *p. 358*; to throw, cast.

Werth, *adj.* worth, dear.

Werth, *m. —s*, worth, value, price.

Wesen, *n. —s, pl. —*, being.

Weser, *f. Weser.*

Weepe, *f. — pl. —n*, wasp.

Wetter, *n. —s, pl. —*, weather, storm.

Wider, *prep.* against, contrary to, in opposition to.

Widersprech'n, *v. n. ir.* to contradict.

Widersteh'n, *v. a. n. ir.* to resist, withstand.

Widerstreben, *v. n.* to strive against, struggle against.

Widrig, *adj.* contrary, adverse, repugnant, loathsome.

Wie, *adv. & conj.* how, as, when, like.

Wieder, *adv.* again, anew; — kommen, to come again, return.

Widerschein, *m.* reflection.

Widersehen, *v. a. ir.* to see again.

Wiege, *f. —, pl. —n*, cradle.

Wien, *n.* Vienna.

Wiese, *f. —, pl. —n*, meadow.

Wiewiel'ste (§ 45. 5).

Wild, *adj.* wild, savage, fierce.

Wildpret, *n. —s*, game, venison.

Wille, *m. —s*, will, mind, purpose.

Willkom'men, *adj.* welcome.

Wind, *m. —s, pl. —e*, wind, air.

Wind'en, *p. 358*; to wind, wring, twist; *v. r. ir.* to wind, writhe.

Winkel, *m. —s, pl. —*, corner, nook.

Wirklich, *adj.* actual, real, true.

Wirth, *m. —s, pl. —e*, host, landlord, innkeeper, master of the house.

Wissen, *p. 358*; to know, have knowledge of.

Witzig, *adj.* witty, ingenious.

Wo, *adv.* where, if.

Woge, *f. —, pl. —n*, billow, wave.

Woher, *adv.* whence, from what place.

Wohin', *adv.* whither, which way.

Wohl, *adv.* well, indeed, probably;

Wohlgefallen, *n. —s*, pleasure, delight.

Wohlschwend, *adj.* fragrant.

Wohlthäter, *m. —s, pl. —*, benefactor.

Wohlthätig, *adj.* beneficent, charitable.

Wohlthun, *v. n. ir.* to do well, do good, benefit.

Wohnen, *v. n.* to odge, dwell, abide, reside.

Wohnung, *f. —, pl. —en*, dwelling.

Wolf, *m. —s, pl. Wölfe*, wolf.

Wolke, *f. —, pl. —n*, cloud.

Wolle, *f. —*, wool.

Wollen (L. 45. 10).

Wonne, *f. —, pl. —n*, delight, pleasure, bliss.

Worin', *adv.* wherein, wherinto, in which, in what.

Wort, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e (Wörter), word;
zu -e kommen to have an oppor-
tunity to speak.

Wörterbuch, *n.* -es, *pl.* -bücher, dic-
tionary, lexicon, vocabulary.

Wovon, *adv.* whereof, of which, of
what, of whom.

Wundarzt, *m.* surgeon.

Wunde, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, wound, hurt.

Wunsch, *m.* -es, *pl.* Wünsche, wish,
desire.

Wünschen, *v. a.* to wish, desire.

Würde, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, dignity, honor.

Würdig, *adj.* worthy, deserving.

Würdigen, *v. a.* to deign, vouchsafe,
value, estimate.

Wurm, *m.* -es, *pl.* Würmer, worm.

Würze, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, seasoning, spice.

Wurzel, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, root. (L. 24. 2.)

Würzreich, *adj.* aromatic, spiced.

Wütten, *v. n.* to rage, chafe, foam,
rave.

B

Bähe, *adj.* tough, tenacious, sticky.

Zählen, *v. a.* to number, tell, count.

Bähe, *adj.* tame, domestic.

Bahn, *m.* -es, *pl.* Bahne, tooth.

Bange, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, tongue.

Bart, *adj.* tender, soft, delicate.

Bärlich, see *part*.

Bauberstein, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, magic-
light, fascinating appearance.

Beute, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, tithe, tenth.

Beimahl, ten times.

Zeichnen, *v. a.* to draw, delineate.

Zeigen, *v. a.* to show, point out.

Zeiger, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, pointer, hand.

Zeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, time, period.

Zeitig, *adj.* early, seasonable.

Zeitung, a little while, short time.

Zeitung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, news, tidings,
pl.; newspaper, gazette.

Bruch, *v. a. & n. ir.* to break
to pieces, fracture; sich den Kopf
-, to rack one's brains.

Bruch, *v. a.* to crash, crush,
shatter, dash to pieces.

Bruch, *v. a.* to destroy, demolish.

Bruch, *v. a. ir.* to crush by tread-
ing on, tread down.

Zeuge, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, witness.

Zeus, *m.* Jupiter.

Ziehen, *v. a. & n. ir.* to draw, pull,
cultivate, to go, march, migrate.

Ziel, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, term, limit, aim,
butt, scope, goal.

Zielen, *v. n.* to aim, take aim.

Zierrätel, *n.* -es, *pl.* -blätter, dial,
dial-plate.

Zimmer, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, room, apart-
ment; -mann, *m.* carpenter.

Zinn, *n.* tin, pewter.

Zinnern, *adj.* tin pewter, made of
pewter or tin.

Zittern, *v. n.* to tremble, quake.

Zöller, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, toll-gatherer.

Zu, *prep. & adv.* at, by, to, for, in,
on.

Zucker, *m.* -s, sugar

Zuckerbrod, *n.* -es, -s, *pl.* -e, sugar
bread, sweet biscuit.

Zufall, *m.* -es, *pl.* Zufälle, chance,
accident, adventure; durch -, by
chance.

Zufolge, *prep.* according to.

Zufrieden, *adj.* content, contented,
satisfied.

Zugehören, *v. n.* to appertain, be-
long to.

Zugleich, *adv.* at the same time, at
once, together.

Zugthier, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e, draught
animal.

Zufommen, *v. n. ir.* to come to, ap-
proach; *v. imp.* to belong to, be-
come.

Zuletzt, *adv.* at last, lastly, after all,
finally.

Zumachen, *v. a.* to shut, close.

Zürnen, *v. n.* to be angry.

Zurück, *adv.* back, backward.

Zurückkehren, *v. n.* to return.

Zurückweichen, *v. n. ir.* to recede,
retire, withdraw.

Zurufen, *v. a. & n. ir.* to give a call,
call to.

Zusammenziehen, *v. a. ir.* to draw
together, contract.

Zusehen, *v. n. ir.* to look at, behold,
conspire at.

Zutragen, *v. a. ir.* to carry to, to
bring; *v. r. ir.* to happen, chance,
come to pass.

Zuverlässig, *adj.* positive, reliable.

Zuversicht, *f.* -, confidence, trust,
assurance.

- Zuvor**, *adv.* before, first, heretofore. formerly.
Zuvor'kommen, *v. n. ir.* to anticipate. prevent, obviate.
Zumeilen, *adv.* sometimes, at times, occasionally.
Zwider, *prep. & adv.* contrary to, against, offensive.
Zwanzig, twenty.
Zwanzigste, twentieth.
Zwar, *conj.* certainly, it is true, to be sure, indeed.
Zwei, two —mal, *adv.* twice.
- Zweifeln**, *v. n.* to doubt.
Zweig, *m.* —es, *pl.* —e, branch, bough, twig.
Zweigen, *v. a.* to graft, branch.
Zweihänebig, *adj.* two-edged.
Zweite, second.
Zweitens, *adv.* secondly.
Zweifach, two-fold.
Zwingen, *p.* 358; to constrain, force compel.
Zwischen, *prep.* between, among.
Zwölf, twelve; —mal, twelve times.

VOCABULARY

FOR TRANSLATING ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

A

| | |
|--|---|
| Able , fähig, geschickt, see können (L. 45). | Already , bereits, schon. |
| Above , oben, über. | Also , auch, gleichfalls. |
| Accompany , begleiten. | Although , obgleich. |
| Accomplish , ausführen, ausrichten. | Always , immer, stets. |
| According , nach, gemäß, zufolge, -as, je nachdem. | American , amerikanisch, Amerikaner. |
| Account , die Rechnung; on - of, wegen, auf Abschlag. | Among , unter, zwischen. |
| Accuse , anklagen, beschuldigen. | Anchor , der Anker. |
| Acquaintance , die Bekanntschaft, der Bekannte. | And , und. |
| Acquainted , bekannt, vertraut, kundig. | Angle , die Angel. |
| Across , kreuzweise, über, querüber. | Animal , das Thier. |
| Act , handeln, sich betheiligen. | Another , ein anderer, noch einer. |
| Action , die Handlung. | Answer , die Antwort, antworten. |
| Actor , der Schauspieler. | Anticipate , zuvorkommen. |
| Adage , das Sprichwort. | Anvil , der Amboss. |
| Adapt , sich schicken. | Any , -body, Jemand; -thing, etwas. |
| Adhere , anhängen. | Any one , Jemand, irgend Jemand. |
| Adherent , anhängend, Anhänger. | Appear , erscheinen, scheinen. |
| Advice , der Rath, die Nachricht. | Apple , der Apfel. |
| Affair , das Geschäft, die Sache. | Apprentice , der Lehrling. |
| Afraid , furchtsam, bange, to be -, fürchten. | Apricot , die Aprikose. |
| After , nach, nachdem; -noon, der Nachmittag. | Architect , der Baumeister. |
| Again , wieder, noch einmal. | Arm , der Arm. |
| Against , wider, gegen. | Army , die Armee, das Heer. |
| Agreeable , angenehm. | Around , herum, um, umher. |
| Ail , schmerzen; what ails you? was fehlt Ihnen? | Arrest , verhaften. |
| Aim , das Ziel, der Zweck, die Absicht; zielen. | Arrival , die Ankunft. |
| Air , die Luft. | Arrive , ankommen. |
| All , alles, ganz, überhaupt. | Arrow , der Pfeil. |
| Ally , der Bundesgenoss. | Art , die Kunst. |
| Almond , die Mandel. | Artist , der Künstler. |
| Almost , fast, beinahe. | As , als, da, weil, wie, so. |
| Alone , allein. | Ashamed (to be), sich schämen. |
| Along , längs, entlang. | Ask , fragen, bitten. |
| | Asleep , eingeschlafen. |
| | Assent , beistimmen. |
| | Assist , beistehen, helfen. |
| | Assistance , der Beistand, die Hilfe. |
| | Assistant , der Gehülfe. |
| | At , zu, an, bei, in, auf über vor, aus, mit, gegen. |
| | Attentive , aufmerksam. |
| | Auger , der Bohrer. |

August, der August.
 Aunt, die Muhme, Tante.
 Austrian, der Oesterreicher.
 Avail, helfen, nützen, sich bedienen.
 Avoid, meiden, vermeiden.
 Away, weg, fort.
 Ax, die Axt, das Beil.
 Axis, die Achse.

B

Bad, schlecht, böse, schädlich.
 Bag, der Sack.
 Baker, der Bäcker.
 Ball, der Ball, das Tanzfest.
 Bark, die Barke; bellen.
 Barley, die Gerste.
 Barrel, das Faß, die Tonne.
 Basin, das Becken.
 Basket, der Korb.
 Bavaria, Bayern.
 Bavarian, der Bayer, bairisch.
 Bean, die Bohne.
 Bear, der Bär; ertragen, gebären.
 Beast, das Thier; — of burden, Last-
 thier; — of prey, Raubthier.
 Beat, schlagen, klopfen.
 Beautiful, schön.
 Beauty, die Schönheit.
 Because, weil, deswegen.
 Become, werden, sich schicken, gezeimen.
 Bee, die Biene.
 Beech, die Buche.
 Beer, das Bier.
 Before, vor, bevor, ehe, vorn, vorher,
 bereits, früher.
 Beggar, der Bettler.
 Begin, beginnen, anfangen.
 Behave, sich betragen.
 Behavior, das Betragen.
 Behind, hinter, hinten, zurück.
 Believe, glauben.
 Belong, gehören, angehören.
 Below, unter, unterhalb.
 Bench, die Bank.
 Beneath, unter.
 Benefactor, der Wohlthäter.
 Berlin, Berlin.
 Beside, Besides, neben, außer, außer-
 dem; to be — one's self, außer sich
 sein.
 Between, zwischen, unter.

Beyond, über, jenseits, außer, hinaus.
 Bind, binden, (by oath) verpflichten.

Bird, der Vogel; — of prey, der
 Raubvogel.
 Bite, beißen.
 Black, schwarz, dunkel; —smith, der
 Grobschmied.
 Blame, tadeln; der Tadel.
 Bleat, blösen.
 Blessing, der Segen, die Wohlthat.
 Blind, blind.
 Blotting-paper, das Löschpapier.
 Blue, blau.
 Board, das Brett.
 Boast, großthun, prahlen, sich rühmen.
 Boat, der Kahn.
 Body, der Leib, Körper.
 Book, das Buch.
 Bookbinder, der Buchbinder.
 Bookseller, der Buchhändler.
 Boot, der Stiefel.
 Bow, der Bogen.
 Boy, der Knabe.
 Braid, flechten, weben.
 Brass, *adj.* messingten.
 Brave, tapfer, brav, edel.
 Bread, das Brod.
 Break, brechen, zerbrechen.
 Breastpin, die Brustnadel.
 Bremen, Bremen.
 Brewer, der Brauer.
 Bridge, die Brücke.
 Bring, bringen.
 Broom, der Besen.
 Brother, der Bruder; — in law, der
 Schwager.
 Brown, braun.
 Brush, die Bürste.
 Bud, die Knospe, das Auge.
 Build, bauen.
 Building, das Gebäude.
 Burdensome, lästig.
 Burn, brennen.
 Bury, begraben.
 Business, das Geschäft, die Sache.
 But, aber, sondern, außer, nur, als.
 Butcher, der Fleischer.
 Butter, die Butter.
 Button, der Knopf.
 Buy, kaufen.
 By, von, durch, zu, nach, mit, für,
 neben, bei, auf.

C

Cabinet-maker, der Tischler.
 Cage, der Käfig.

Calf, das Kalb,
 Call, rufen, nennen.
 Camel, das Kamel.
 Can, die Kanne; können, im Stande sein.
 Candle, das Licht, die Kerze; —stick, der Leuchter.
 Canoe, der Stod, das Rohr.
 Cap, die Kappe, Mütze.
 Capable, fähig, tüchtig.
 Captain, der Hauptmann, Kapitän.
 Care, die Sorge, Sorgfalt; to take —, Sorge tragen, pflegen.
 Carpenter, der Zimmermann.
 Carpet, der Teppich.
 Carriage, der Wagen.
 Cask, das Faß.
 Castle, das Schloß.
 Cat, die Katze.
 Catch, fangen, ergreifen.
 Cathedral, der Dom.
 Cattle, das Vieh.
 Cause, die Ursache, Sache; verursachen, bewirken.
 Celebrated, berühmte.
 Certain, gewiß, zuverlässig, gewißlich.
 Chain, die Kette; fesseln.
 Chair, der Stuhl, Sessel.
 Chalk, die Kreide.
 Charles, Karl.
 Cheat, betrügen.
 Cheese, der Käse.
 Cherry, die Kirsche.
 Child, das Kind.
 Chisel, der Meißel.
 Church, die Kirche.
 City, die Stadt.
 Clean, rein.
 Climb, klimmen, klettern, ersteigen.
 Cloak, der Mantel.
 Cloth, das Zeug, Tuch.
 Clothes, die Kleidung.
 Cloud, die Wolke.
 Coachman, der Kutscher.
 Coarse, grob.
 Coat, der Rock.
 Coffee, der Kaffee.
 Cold, kalt, frostig; die Kälte.
 Collar, er Kragen.
 Cologne, Köln.
 Color, Farbe; färben.
 Come, kommen. P. 350, gelangen.
 Comforter, der Tröster.
 Command, der Befehl; befehlen, ge-
 bieten.

Commi. begehren.
 Company, die Gesellschaft, der Besuch.
 Compel, nöthigen, zwingen.
 Complain, sich beklagen.
 Conceal, verbergen.
 Conduct, die Aufführung, das Be-
 tragen.
 Confide, vertrauen.
 Confirm, bestätigen.
 Conjunction, das Bindewort.
 Conquer, siegen.
 Conscious, bewußt.
 Consequent, folgend, folglich.
 Contented, zufrieden.
 Contradict, widersprechen.
 Convict, überführen.
 Convince, überzeugen.
 Cook, der Koch, die Köchin.
 Cooper, der Böttcher, Küfer.
 Copper, das Kupfer; adj. kupfern.
 Copy, abschreiben.
 Cost, kosten.
 Cotton, die Baumwolle.
 Country, das Land; —man, der Land-
 mann, Bauer.
 Courage, der Muth, die Tapferkeit.
 Cousin, der Vetter, die Cousine.
 Cover, der Deckel; decken, bedecken.
 Cow, die Kuh.
 Crane, der Kranich.
 Crawl, kriechen, schleichen.
 Creep, kriechen.
 Crime, das Verbrechen.
 Criminal, der Verbrecher.
 Crocodile, das Krokodill.
 Cup, die Tasse.
 Cut, der Schnitt; schneiden, hauen.
 Cutler, der Messerschmied.

D

Dagger, der Dolch.
 Dangerous, gefährlich.
 Daughter, die Tochter; — in-law, die Schwiegertochter.
 Day, der Tag; to-day, heute; — be-
 fore yesterday, vorgestern; —la-
 borer, der Tagelöhner.
 Dead, todt.
 Deaf, taub.
 Deal, der Theil; a great —, sehr viel.
 Dear, theuer, werth.
 Death, der Tod.
 Deceive, betrügen, hintergehen, täu-
 schen.

Deed, die That.
Deep, tief.
Defeat, überwinden, schlagen.
Defy, Troß bieten, troffen, verschmähen.
Deserve, verdienen.
Design, das Vorhaben.
Desk, das Pult.
Despair, verzweifeln.
Destiny, das Verhängniß, die Bestimmung.
Destitute, entblößt, hilflos.
Destroy, zerstören, zu Grunde richten.
Devoted, ergeben.
Dictionary, das Wörterbuch.
Die, der Stempel, die Würfel; sterben, umkommen.
Difference, der Unterschied.
Different, verschieden.
Difficult, schwer, schwierig.
Dig, graben.
Dignity, die Würde, der Rang, das Amt.
Diligence, der Fleiß.
Diligent, fleißig, emsig.
Discontented, unzufrieden.
Distinct, deutlich.
Disturber, der Störer.
Ditch, der Graben.
Do, thun, machen, verrichten, sich befinden.
Dog, der Hund.
Door, die Thüre, *or* Thür.
Doubt, zweifeln.
Down, unten, nieder, hinab, hinunter, herunter.
Draught-animal, das Zugthier.
Draw, ziehen, zeichnen.
Dresden, Dresden.
Dress, das Kleid.
Drink, der Tranf, das Getränk; saufen, trinken.
Drive, treiben.
Dry, trocken.
Duck, die Ente.
Due, gebührend, angemessen.
Dull, bumm.
During, während.
Duty, die Pflicht, Schuldigkeit.
Dyer, der Färber.

E

Eagle, der Adler.
Ear, das Ohr.
Earn, verdienen, gewinnen.

Earth, die Erde.
Easy, -ily, leicht, rußig, freil.
Eat, -essen, freffen.
Eel, der Aal.
Eight, acht.
Either, einer von beiten, entweder.
Elephant, der Eleppant.
Emerald, der Smaragd.
Emperor, der Kaiser.
End, das Ende.
Enemy, der Feind.
English, die Engländer; englisch.
Englishman, der Engländer.
Enjoy, sich erfreuen, genießen.
Enough, genug, hinlänglich.
Entire, ganz, vollständig.
Envious, neidiß.
Envy, beneiden.
Escape, entrinnen, entkommen.
Esteem, schätzen, achten.
Eternity, die Ewigkeit.
Europe, Europa.
Even, eben, gerade, sogar, selbst.
Evening, der Abend, die Abendzeit.
Ever, je, jemals, immer.
Every, -where, allenthalben, überall.
Exercise, die Uebung, die Aufgabe; üben.
Expect, erwarten.
Eye, das Auge, Oehr.

F

Fail, fehlen, unterlassen.
Faithful, treu, redlich.
Fall, der Fall; fallen; to - asleep, einschlafen, entschlafen.
Fan, der Fächer.
Far, entfernt, fern.
Fast, fest, geschwind, schnell.
Father, der Vater; - in law, der Schwiegervater; -land, das Vaterland.
Fault, der Fehler, die Schuld.
Favorable, günstig.
Fear, die Furcht; fürchten.
Feather, die Feder.
Fellow-scholar, der Mitschüler.
Few, wenig; a -, einige.
Field, das Feld.
Fifty, fünfzig.
Fifteen, fünfzehn.
Fight, sechten, streiten.
Final, -ly, endlich.

Find, finden, antreffen.
 Fine, fein, schön.
 Finger, der Finger.
 Fire, das Feuer.
 First, erste.
 Fish, der Fisch; fischen.
 Fisherman, der Fischer.
 Fit, passen.
 Flatter, schmeicheln, liebkosen.
 Flatterer, der Schmeichler.
 Flattering, schmeichelhaft, schmeichelnb.
 Flax, der Flachs.
 Flea, fliehen.
 Florin, der Gulden.
 Flour, das Mehl.
 Flow, fließen, strömen.
 Flower, die Blume, Blüthe.
 Flute, die Flöte.
 Fly, die Fliege; fliegen, fliehen.
 Foam, der Schaum; schäumen.
 Follow, folgen, nachfolgen.
 Fool, der Thor, Narr.
 Foolish, thöricht, narrisch.
 Foot, der Fuß; on —, zu Fuß.
 For, für, nach, mit, um . . . wissen,
 an, aus, während, auf, zu, denn.
 Forest, der Forst, Wald.
 Forget, vergessen. P. 356.
 Fork, die Gabel.
 Four, vier.
 Fowl, das Fuhn.
 France, Frankreich.
 Francis, Franz.
 Frankfort, Frankfurt.
 Free, befreien, frei.
 French, französisch, die Franzosen.
 Frenchman, der Franzose.
 Friend, der Freund, die Freundin.
 Friendly, freundlich.
 From, von, aus.
 Fruit, die Frucht, das Obst; —tree
 der Obstbaum.

G

Gain, gewinnen.
 Gallant, tapfer brav.
 Garden, der Garten.
 Gardener, der Gärtner.
 Gather, sammeln, lesen.
 General, allgemein; der Feldherr.
 General.
 Generally, gewöhnlich; im Allge-
 meinen.
 Generous, großmüthig, freigebig.

Gentleman, Herr, der gebildete, seine
 Mann.
 German, deutsch, der Deutsche.
 Germany, Deutschland.
 Get, erhalten, bekommen, kommen, ge-
 langen, gerathen, lassen; to —rid of,
 los werden; to —at, bekommen.
 Giant, der Riese; —Mountains, Riesen-
 gebirge.
 Girl, das Mädchen.
 Give, geben, schenken.
 Glad, froh, heiter, zufrieden; to be —,
 sich freuen.
 Glass, das Glas, der Spiegel.
 Glazier, der Glaser.
 Glove, der Handschuh.
 Go, gehen. P. 348.
 Gold, das Gold; golden; —smith, der
 Goldschmied.
 Gone, weg, fort.
 Good, gut.
 Goose, die Gans.
 Govern, regieren, lenken, beherrschen.
 Gracious, gnädig, gütig.
 Gradual, —ly, nach und nach, stufen-
 weise.
 Grain, das Korn, Getreide.
 Grass, das Gras.
 Grateful, dankbar.
 Grave, das Grab.
 Gray, grau.
 Great, groß.
 Greece, Griechenland.
 Green, grün, frisch, unreif.
 Grieve, tranken.
 Grind, mahlen.
 Grow, wachsen.
 Guide, der Führer.
 Guilty, schuldig.

H

Haggard, hager.
 Half, halb.
 Hamburg, Hamburg.
 Hammer, der Hammer; hämmern.
 Hand, die Hand.
 Handkerchief, das Taschentuch.
 Handle, der Stiel.
 Hang, hängen, behängen.
 Happen, sich ereignen, geschehen.
 Happy, glücklich.
 Harbor, der Hafen.
 Hard, hart, schwer.
 Hasten, eilen.

Hat, der Hut; —maker, der Hutmacher.
 Hate, haßten, verabscheuen.
 Hateful, verhaßt, gehässig.
 Hatter, der Hutmacher.
 Have, haben.
 Hay, das Heu.
 He, er, derjenige.
 Head, der Kopf.
 Health, die Gesundheit.
 Healthy, gesund.
 Hear, hören.
 Heaven, der Himmel.
 Heavy, schwer.
 Help, die Hilfe; helfen, *see können* (L. 45).
 Helpless, hilflos.
 Hemp, der Hanf.
 Here, hier hierher.
 Hers, der, die, das ihrige.
 Hessian, der Hesse.
 High, hoch.
 Him, ihm, dem, ihn, den.
 Himself, selbst, sich.
 His, sein, der seinige, *or* seine.
 Hit, schlagen, treffen.
 Hold, halten.
 Hole, das Loch, die Höhle.
 Home, nach Hause, *at* —, zu Hause.
 Honest, ehrlich, rechtschaffen.
 Honey, der Honig.
 Honor, die Ehre; ehren.
 Hope, die Hoffnung; hoffen.
 Horse, das Pferd, Roß; *on* —back, zu Pferde.
 Hostility, die Feindseligkeit.
 Hotel, der Gasthof, das Gasthaus.
 Hour, die Stunde.
 House, das Haus.
 How, wie, auf welche Art.
 Howl, heulen.
 Hundred, hundert.
 Hungarian, der Ungar; ungarisch.
 Hungry, hungarig; *he is* —, es hungert *ihn, or* ihn hungert.
 Hunter, der Jäger.
 Hurt, weh thun.
 Husbandman, der Landmann.
 Hypocrisy, die Heuchelei.

I

I, ich; I say! Hören Sie doch! hören Sie einmal.
 Idle, müßig, träge.
 Idleness, die Trägheit, Faulheit.
 If, wenn, falls.

Ill-natured, böse.
 Image, das Bild.
 Immediate, gleich, augenblicklich, so gleich.
 Immortal, unsterblich.
 Impolite, unhöflich.
 Improbable, unwahrscheinlich.
 In, in, bei, an, zu, auf, mit, unter, nach, über, herein, hinein.
 Indolent, lässig, träge.
 Industrious, fleißig.
 Inhabitant, der Einwohner.
 Injure, schaden, beleidigen, beeinträchtigen.
 Injurious, ungerecht, nachtheilig.
 Ink, die Tinte; —stand, das Tintenfaß.
 Innocence, die Unschuld.
 Innocent, unschuldig.
 Inquire, sich erkundigen, fragen.
 Insecure, unsicher.
 Insist, bestehen.
 Instead of, statt, anstatt.
 Instruct, unterrichten.
 Instructive, belehrend, lehrreich.
 Interesting, anziehend, interessant.
 Into, in.
 Iron, das Eisen; eisern.
 It, es.
 Italian, italienisch; der Italiener.

J

Jacket, die Jacke.
 Journey, die Reise.
 Joy, die Freude.
 June, der Juny *or* Juni.
 Just, gerecht, rechtschaffen, eben.

K

Kettle, der Kessel.
 Key, der Schlüssel.
 Kind, die Gattung, Art; *what kind* of (L. 13.), *adj.* gütig, freundlich.
 Kindness, die Güte.
 King, der König.
 Kingdom, das Königreich.
 Knife, das Messer.
 Know, wissen, kennen.

L

Labor, die Arbeit.
 Laborer, der Arbeiter, Tagelöhner.
 Lady, die Frau, Dame.
 Lamb, das Lamm.
 Lane, laßm.

Landscape, die Landschaft.
 Language, die Sprache.
 Large, groß, weit, breit.
 Last, last.
 Laugh, das Lachen, Gelächter; lachen.
 Law, das Gesetz.
 Lay, legen.
 Lazy, faul, träge.
 Lead, das Blei.
 Lead, führen.
 Leader, der Führer.
 Leaf, das Blatt.
 Learn, lernen, erfahren.
 Learned, gelehrt.
 Leather, das Leder; ledern.
 Leave, lassen, verlassen.
 Length, die Länge; at —, endlich.
 Less, kleiner, weniger.
 Let, lassen, vermieten.
 Letter, der Buchstabe, Brief; —paper, das Briefpapier.
 Liberty, die Freiheit; at —, see bürfen (L. 45).
 Lie, die Lüge; lügen.
 Lie, liegen.
 Life, das Leben.
 Light, das Licht; to come to —, and Tageslicht kommen.
 Lighten, leuchten, blitzen.
 Like, gleich, ähnlich; gefallen; the —, dergleichen; he would — to, er möchte gern.
 Lime, das Kalk.
 Little, klein, gering, wenig.
 Live, leben, wohnen.
 Lock, das Schloß; zuschließen, schließen; —smith, der Schlosser.
 Lofly, hoch, erhaben.
 Long, lang, lange.
 Look, das Ansehen haben; ausfehen; to — for, suchen.
 Lose, verlieren.
 Loud, —ly, laut.
 Love, die Liebe; lieben.
 Low, niedrig, brüllen.

M

Magdeburg, Magdeburg.
 Maize, der Mais.
 Make, machen, verrichten, lassen.
 Man, der Mensch, Mann.
 Mannheim, Mannheim.
 Many, viel; L. 65; — a, mancher.

Marble, der Marmor.
 March, der März.
 Mark, das Zeichen, Ziel.
 Mason, der Maurer.
 Mast, der Mast.
 Master, der Meister, Herr; — of a language, einer Sprache mächtig.
 Matter, die Sache; what is the —? was gibt es?
 May, der Mai.
 May, mögen, können, dürfen.
 Mayence, Mainz.
 Meadow, die Wiese.
 Mean, gemein, schlecht; das Mittel — by means of, vermittelst.
 Measles, die Masern.
 Measure, das Maß; messen.
 Meat, das Fleisch.
 Meet, to go to —, entgegen gehen, treffen, begegnen.
 Melon, die Melone.
 Melt, schmelzen.
 Memory, das Gedächtniß.
 Mention, erwähnen.
 Merchant, der Kaufmann.
 Messenger, der Bote.
 Migrate, ziehen.
 Milk, die Milch.
 Miller, der Müller.
 Mind, das Gemüth, der Sinn.
 Mindful, aufmerksam, eingedenk.
 Mine, mein, meinige. (L. 35).
 Miser, der Geizhals.
 Miserable, elend, erbärmlich.
 Misfortune, das Unglück.
 Miss, das Fräulein.
 Misunderstand, falsch verstehen, missverstehen.
 Modest, bescheiden.
 Money, das Geld, die Münze.
 Month, der Monat.
 Moon, der Mond.
 More, das Mehr; mehr.
 Morning, der Morgen.
 Mother, die Mutter.
 Mountain, der Berg.
 Much, viel, sehr.
 Mule, das Maulthier.
 Munich, München.
 Murder, ermorden.
 Music, die Musik.
 Must, müssen. (L. 45).
 Mustard, der Senf.
 My, mein, meine.

N

Nail, der Nagel.
 Name, der Name.
 Narrow, enge.
 Native-country, das Vaterland.
 Natural, natürlich.
 Nature, die Natur.
 Near, nahe, beinahe, fast, bei.
 Need, bedürfen, nöthig haben.
 Needle, die Nadel.
 Neighbor, der Nachbar, Nächste, die Nachbarin.
 Negligent, nachlässig.
 Neither, weder, auch nicht; — . . . nor, weder . . . noch.
 Nephew, der Nefte.
 Nest, das Nest.
 Never, nie, niemals.
 Nevertheless, nichtsdestoweniger, besonnengeachtet, dennoch.
 New, neu, frisch.
 News, die Neuigkeit, Nachricht.
 Newspaper, die Zeitung.
 Next, nächst, folgend.
 Night, die Nacht.
 No, rein, nicht, kein.
 Nobody, Niemand. (L. 18. 5).
 None, keiner, keine, keines.
 Nor, noch, auch nicht.
 North, Norden.
 Norwegian, der Norweger.
 Not, nicht.
 Nothing, nichts.
 Notwithstanding, ungeachtet, dennoch, doch.
 Now, nun, jetzt, soeben.

O

Oak, die Eiche.
 Oars, der Ruder.
 Obedience, der Gehorsam.
 Obedient, gehorsam.
 Obey, gehorchen.
 Oblige, verpflichten, verbinden, see müssen (L. 45).
 Obstinate, eigensinnig.
 Of, von, wegen, vermittelst — course, natürlich, es versteht sich.
 Offend, beleidigen.
 Office, das Amt.
 Officer, der Officier.
 Often, oft, öfter.
 Oil, das Del.

Old, alt.

On, an, auf, in, bei, zu, mit, unter, vor, über, von, weg, weiter, fort, gegen, zufolge.
 Only, einzig, allein, nur, erst.
 Opinion, die Meinung.
 Oppress, unterdrücken.
 Or, oder.
 Oration, die Rede.
 Orator, der Redner.
 Orchard, der Obstdgarten.
 Order, bestellen.
 Orphan, der, die Waise.
 Ostrich, der Strauß.
 Other, der, die, das andere; every — day, einen Tag um den andern; — wise, anders, sonst.
 Our, unser, der unsrige.
 Out, aus, draußen; — of, aus, außer.
 Outside, außerhalb.
 Over, über, auf, hinüber, herüber, vorüber, vorbei, allzu, zu sehr, weit, breit, überhin, durch, vor.
 Owe, schuldig sein, danken.
 Ox, der Ochse.

P

Pain, der Schmerz.
 Paint brush, der Pinsel.
 Painter, der Maler.
 Painting, das Gemälde.
 Pair, das Paar.
 Palace, der Palast.
 Pale, bleich.
 Paper, das Papier; papieren.
 Parasol, der Sonnenschirm.
 Parents, die Eltern.
 Paris, Paris.
 Part, der Theil.
 Passion, die Leidenschaft.
 Past, vergangen, vorbei.
 Patient, geduldig; der Kranke, Patient.
 Patriotic, patriotisch.
 Pea, die Erbse.
 Peace, der Friede.
 Peaceful, friedsam, friedlich.
 Peach, die Pfirsiche.
 Peacock, der Pfau.
 Pear, die Birne.
 Pearl, die Perle.
 Peasant, der Landmann, Bauer.
 Peculiarity, die Eigenheit.

Pen, die Feder, Schreibfeder; —knife, das Federmesser.

Pencil, der Pinsel, Bleistift.

People, das Volk, die Leute; bevöl-
kern.

Pepper, der Pfeffer.

Perfect, vollkommen.

Perhaps, vielleicht.

Perish, umkommen, zu Grunde gehen.

Pestilence, die Pest.

Physician, der Arzt.

Piece, das Stück.

Pigeon, die Taube.

Pink, die Rose.

Pit, die Grube.

Pitsher, der Krug.

Pity, das Mitleiden: it is a —, es ist
Schade; bemitleiden, bedauern.

Plan, der Plan, Entwurf.

Plane, der Hobel.

Plate, der Teller.

Play, spielen, scherzen.

Player, der Spieler.

Pleasant, —ly, angenehm.

Please, gefallen, ergötzen.

Pleasure, das Vergnügen.

Plum, die Pflaume.

Pole, der Pol.

Polite, fein, artig, höflich.

Poor, arm, dürrig, mager.

Porcelain, das Porzellan.

Post-mark, der Stempel.

Pound, das Pfund.

Pour, gießen, einschenken.

Poverty, die Armuth.

Powder, das Pulver.

Power, die Macht, Gewalt, Kraft.

Powerful, —ly, mächtig.

Practical, praktisch.

Practice, die Übung.

Praise, das Lob; loben, preisen.

Preposition, das Verhältniswort.

Pretty, hübsch, nett, zierlich.

Prince, der Prinz, Fürst.

Principle, der Grundsatz.

Prison, das Gefängniß.

Probable, wahrscheinlich.

Pronoun, das Fürwort.

Promise, das Versprechen; versprechen,
geloben.

Pronounce, aussprechen.

Proud, stolz, trotzig.

Prussia, Preußen.

Punish, bestrafen.

Pure, rein, lauter.

Purse, der Beutel.

Put, stellen, legen.

Q

Quarrel, zanken, streiten

Queen, die Königin.

R

Rage, wüthen.

Rain, der Regen; regnen.

Raise, heben, aufheben.

Rapid, schnell, geschwind.

Rather, lieber.

Raven, der Rabe.

Read, lesen.

Really, wirklich, in der That

Receive, empfangen, erhalten.

Recommend, empfehlen.

Recover, gesund werden, genesen

Red, roth.

Rejoice, sich freuen.

Relation, der, die Verwandte.

Reliable, zuverlässig.

Remain, bleiben.

Remember, sich erinnern.

Renowned, berühmt.

Resemble, gleichen, ähnlich sein.

Reside, wohnen.

Resistance, der Widerstand.

Respect, achten, schätzen, hochachten.

Result, die Folge, der Erfolg.

Return, zurückkehren, zurückgeben, zu-
rücksenden.

Reward, vergelten, belohnen.

Rice, der Reis.

Rich, reich.

Ride, reiten, fahren.

Ridicule, lächerlich machen, sich über
... aufhalten.

Ring, der Ring, Kreis, Klang

Ripe, reif, zeitig.

Ripen, reifen.

River, der Fluß, Strom.

Road, die Straße; der Weg.

Rob, rauben, berauben.

Robbery, der Raub.

Rock, der Fels, Felsen.

Roof, das Dach.

Room, der Raum, die Stube, das
Zimmer.

Rope, das Seil; —maker, der Seiler

Rose, die Rose.

Ruby, der Rubin.

Rule, die Regel, Herrschaft.
Run, laufen, rennen, rinne; - away,
durchgehen.
Russia, Rußland.
Russian, der Russe; russisch.
Ru-ty, reitig.
Rye, der Roggen, das Korn.

S

Sad, traurig, betrübt.
Saddle, der Sattel.
Saddler, der Sattler.
Sailor, der Matrose.
Sake. (L. 60.)
Salt, das Salz.
Same, derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe; the
very -, der nämliche.
Satin, der Atlas.
Satisfied, zufrieden.
Saxony, Sachsen.
Say, sagen.
Scarlet-fever, das Scharlachfieber.
Scholar, der Schüler, Gelehrte, die
Schülerin.
School, die Schule.
Scold, schelten.
Sea, die See, das Meer.
Seal, der Siegel.
Seal, das Petschaft, der Stempel.
Sealing-wax, das Siegelwax.
Season, die Jahreszeit, rechte Zeit.
Season of the year, die Jahreszeit.
See, sehen.
Seem, scheinen.
Seize, ergreifen.
Seldom, selten.
Self, selbst.
Selfish, eigennützig.
Sell, verkaufen.
Send, senden, schicken; to - for, holen
lassen.
Sense, der Sinn, Verstand.
September, September.
Sergeant, der Feldwebel.
Servant, der Diener; - girl, das
Dienstmädchen.
Several, verschiedene, mehrere.
Sew, nähen.
Shall, sollen, werden.
Sharp, -ly, scharf.
Sharpen, schärfen, schleifen, zuspitzen.
Sheep, das Schaf.
Shine, scheinen, leuchten.
Ship, das Schiff.

Shoe, der Schuh, das Hufeisen; -
maker, der Schuhmacher.
Shoot, schießen.
Shore, das Ufer.
Shriek, schreien.
Short, kurz.
Shovel, die Schaufel.
Show, zeigen.
Sick, krank, unwohl.
Side, die Seite; on this -, diesseits;
on the other -, jenseits.
Siege, die Belagerung.
Sight, das Gesicht; out of -, aus den
Augen.
Silk, die Seide; seiden.
Silly, einfältig, albern.
Silver, das Silber; silbern.
Similar, ähnlich.
Since, seitdem, vorher, weil, da.
Sing, singen.
Singer, der Sänger.
Sister, die Schwester; - in law, die
Schwägerin.
Sit, sitzen, passen.
Situation, die Stelle.
Six, sechs.
Sixteenth, sechzehnte.
Skillful, geschickt.
Slaughter, schlachten.
Sleep, der Schlaf; schlafen.
Sleeve, der Ärmel.
Slow, langsam.
Small, klein, gering; -pox, die Blattern.
Smile, lächeln.
Smith, der Schmied, Schmied, Schmied.
Smoke, der Rauch; rauchen.
Smooth, glatt.
Snow, der Schnee; schneien.
So, so.
Sojourn, der Aufenthalt.
Sofa, das Ruhebett, Sopha.
Soft, weich, sanft, leise.
Soldier, der Soldat.
Some, -body, jemand; -thing, etwas,
-times, zuweilen, manchmal; -
where, irgendwo.
Son, der Sohn.
Song, der Gesang, das Lied.
Soon, bald, früh.
Sorrow, der Kummer.
Sorry, traurig, betrübt; I am -, es
thut mir leid.
South, Süden.
Spade, der Spaten.

Spanish, spanisch.

Spare, schonen.

Sparrow, der Sperling.

Speak, sprechen, reden.

Spin, spinnen, drehen.

Spirit, der Geist, die Seele.

Spite, der Groll; in - of, trotz.

Split, spalten.

Sponge, der Schwamm.

Spoon, der Löffel.

Spring, der Sprung, die Quelle, der

Frühling; springen.

Stable, der Stall.

Stand, der Stand, die Stelle; stehen

Start, fahren, abreißen.

State, der Staat; -s-man, der Staats-

mann.

Stay, der Aufenthalt; bleiben.

Stead, die Stelle. (L. 60.)

Steal, stehlen.

Steel, der Stahl; stählen, stählen.

(L. 15. 5).

Steep, steil.

Still, still, ruhig, noch.

Sting, der Stachel; stechen.

Story, die Geschichte, das Märchen.

Stove, der Ofen.

Stranger, der Fremde, Unbekannte.

Stream, der Strom.

Street, die Straße.

Strength, die Stärke.

Strike, schlagen, stoßen, hauen.

Strong, stark, kräftig, verb.

Study, studiren, nachdenken.

Stupid, bumm, albern.

Subject, der Unterthan; unterthan.

Succeed, nachfolgen, gelingen.

Succumb, erliegen.

Suffer, leiden.

Sugar, der Zucker.

Summer, der Sommer.

Sun, die Sonne.

Superior, überlegen, vorzüglicher

Supply, ersetzen.

Sure, sicher, gewiß.

Surgeon, der Wundarzt.

Swallow die Schwalbe.

Swan, der Schwan.

Swede, der Schwede.

Sweep, fegen.

Swell, schwellen, aufschwellen.

Swim, schwimmen.

Sword, das Schwert.

T

Table, die Tafel, der Tisch.

Tailor, der Schneider.

Take, nehmen, machen; to - cold, sich

erfalten; to - off, abnehmen.

Tanner, der Gerber.

Tea, der Thee.

Teach, lehren, unterrichten.

Teacher, der Lehrer, die Lehrerin.

Tedious, langweilig.

Tell, zählen, erzählen.

Than, als, denn.

That, *pron.* jener, welcher, der.

That, *conj.* daß.

The, der, die, das, je ..., desto ..., um

so; - more, - better, je mehr, desto

besser.

Thee, dir, dich; of -, deiner.

Their, ihr, ihre.

Them, ihnen, sie.

Themselves, sie selbst, sich selbst.

There, da, dort, daselbst, dahin, es;

- fore, daher, darum, also,

They, sie.

Thief, der Dieb.

Thing, das Ding, die Sache.

Think, denken, meinen, glauben; to -

of, gedenken.

Third, dritte; das Drittel.

This, dieser.

Thirty, dreißig.

Thorn, der Dorn.

Though, ob schon, obgleich.

Thought, der Gedanke.

Thousand, tausend.

Thrash, dreschen.

Thrasher, der Drescher.

Threaten, drohen.

Three, drei.

Thresh, *see* Thrash.

Through, durch.

Throw, werfen.

Thunder, donnern, wettern.

Thus, so, also, auf diese Art.

Thyself, du selbst, selbst, dich, dir

Tiger, der Tiger.

Till, bis.

Time, die Zeit, das Mal.

Tin, das Zinn.

Tinman, der Klempner.

Tired, müde, überdrüssig.

To, zu, um, an, auf, mit, nach, für,

gegen, bis; - and fro, hin und her

Tobacco, der Tabak.
 To-day, heute.
 Toilsome, anstrengend.
 Toll-gatherer, der Zöllner.
 To-morrow, morgen.
 Too, zu, allzu, auch.
 Tooth, der Zahn.
 Toothache, das Zahnweh.
 Toward, gegen.
 Traitor, der Verräther.
 Translate, übersetzen.
 Trash, der Tand.
 Travel, reisen.
 Traveler, der Reisende.
 Treat, behandeln.
 Tree, der Baum, Stamm.
 Tremble, zittern.
 Trouble, die Unruhe, der Verdruss, Kummer.
 True, wahr, treu.
 Trunk, der Koffer, Stamm.
 Truth, die Wahrheit.
 Try, prüfen, versuchen.
 Turk, der Türke.
 Turkey, die Türkei.
 Turn, die Reihe; drehen, drehfeln.
 Twelve, zwölf.
 Twenty, zwanzig.
 Twice, zweimal.
 Two, zwei.
 Tyrant, der Tyrann, Wüthrich.

U

Ugly, häßlich.
 Umbrella, der Regenschirm.
 Unaccustomed, ungewohnt.
 Uncle, der Onkel, Onkel.
 Uncommon, ungemein.
 Under, unter unten, nieder, untergeordnet.
 Understand, verstehen, begreifen; see können. (L. 45).
 Unfavorable, ungünstig.
 Unfortunate, unglücklich.
 Unhappy, unglücklich.
 United, vereinigt.
 Unpleasant, unangenehm.
 Until, bis.
 Untrue, unwahr, untreu.
 Unwell, unwohl.
 Up, auf, aufwärts, hinauf, heraus, empor.
 Upon, auf, an, über, bei, aus, in, nach, zufolge.

Useful, nützlich.

V

Vain, eitel.
 Valiant, tapfer, brav.
 Value, der Werth.
 Veil, der Schleier.
 Venture, wagen.
 Very, sehr.
 Vessel, das Gefäß.
 Vest, die Weste.
 Vex, plagen, quälen, verbrießen.
 Vienna, Wien.
 Village, das Dorf.
 Vinegar, der Essig.
 Violin, die Geige.
 Virtue, die Tugend; by - of, kraft.
 Visit, der Besuch; besuchen.
 Voice, die Stimme.

W

Wafer, die Oblate.
 Wagon, der Wagen; -maker, der Wagner.
 Wait, warten.
 Waiter, der Kellner.
 Walk, der Gang, Weg, Spaziergang; gehen.
 Want, das Bedürfnis; to be in -, benötigt sein, nöthig haben; Mangel leiden an ...
 War, der Krieg.
 Warm, warm; -spring, Warmbrunnen.
 Wash, waschen; -stand, der Waschtisch.
 Wasp, die Wespe.
 Watch, die Uhr, Taschenuhr; -maker, der Uhrmacher.
 Watchful, wachsam.
 Water, das Wasser.
 Wave, die Welle, Woge.
 Way, der Weg.
 We, wir.
 Wealth, der Reichthum.
 Wear, tragen, anhaben.
 Weary, müde.
 Weather, das Wetter.
 Weave, weben.
 Weaver, der Weber.
 Weed, das Unkraut.
 Week, die Woche.
 Weep, weinen, beweinen.
 Well, wohl, gut.
 Whale, der Wal, Walfisch.

| | |
|--|--|
| What, was, welcher, welcher ein, was für un, wie viel. | Wooden, hölzern. |
| Wheat, der Weizen. | Wool, die Wolle. |
| When, wenn, wann, als, da. | Word, das Wort. |
| Where, wo, wohin. | Work, die Arbeit, das Werk; arbeiten. |
| Wherein, worin. | World, die Welt, Erde; —renowned, weltberühmt. |
| Whether, ob. | Worm, der Wurm. |
| Which, welcher, welche, welches. | Worst, schlechteste, ärgste. |
| While, indem, während. | Worth, der Werth; werth, würdig. |
| Whistle, die Pfeife, pfeifen. | Worthy, würdig. |
| White, weiß. | Wretched, elend. |
| Who, wer, welcher, der, die; —ever, wer auch immer. | Write, schreiben. |
| Whole, ganz. | Writing-book, das Schreibbuch; —desk, das Schreibpult; —paper das Schreibpapier. |
| Why, warum (L. 13. 6). | Wrong, unrecht, falsch. |
| Wild, wilb. | |
| Will, der Wille; wollen. (L. 45). | |
| Win, gewinnen. | |
| Window, das Fenster. | |
| Wine, der Wein. | |
| Wise, weise, verständig. | |
| Wish, der Wunsch; wünschen; see wollen, (L. 45). | |
| With, mit, nebst, sammt, bei, auf, für an, durch. | |
| Within, in, innerhalb. | |
| Without, außer, ohne. | |
| Wolf, der Wolf. | |
| Woman, das Weib, die Frau. | |
| Wood, das Holz; —cutter, der Holzhauer | |

Y

| |
|---------------------------|
| Yarn, das Garn. |
| Year, das Jahr. |
| Yellow, gelb. |
| Yes, Ja. |
| Yesterday, gestern. |
| Yet, doch, dennoch, noch. |
| Yonder, dort. |
| You, ihr, etc. (L. 27). |
| Young, jung, frisch. |
| Your, euer, dein, Ihr. |
| Youth, die Jugend. |

ERRATA.

Bed, das Bett.
 Citizen, der Bürger.
 Evil, das Uebel; *adj.* übel, böse.
 Pupil, der Zögling, Schüler.
 Renounce, entsagen.

Service, der Dienst.
 Spear, der Speer.
 Vain, eitel; in—, vergebens.
 Weak, schwach.

GENERAL INDEX.

- ä, e, u**, changed to the umlauts, *ä, ö, ü*, L. 2. II., in derivative forms § 11. 1.
Abbreviations, p. 261.
Äder, *allein*, *sondern*, distinguished, § 256. 2. a. L. 21. 4.
Abstract nouns, § 5. 2.
Accent, § 2. 10. L. 2. VI.
Ächten, L. 62. 6.
Accusative or dative after certain prepositions, § 116. Rule for the use of, § 132. Verbs requiring *two*, § 132. 2. Used to denote measure, distance or time, § 132. 3. Construed absolutely, § 132. 5.
Adjectives, formed by suffixes, § 25. § 26. Predicative and attributive, p. 44. (*Note*). Declension of, § 27. Old form of, § 28. § 29. L. 14. New form of, § 30. § 31. L. 15. Mixed form of, § 32. L. 16. Comparison of, § 35. L. 32. Used as nouns, § 34. 5. L. 33. 1. Comparatives and superlatives, § 37. Irregular and defective forms of, § 39. Compared by means of adverbs, § 41. Their agreement with nouns, § 135. L. 14. 4. Repetition of, for different genders, § 135. 5. Requiring the gen., L. 61. Requiring the dat., L. 63.
Adverbs, § 100. Formed from nouns, § 101. From adjectives, § 102. From pronouns, § 103. From verbs, § 104. By composition, § 105. Comparison of, § 106. Nouns used as, § 128. L. 61. 8. Syntax of, § 151.
Älter, prefixed to superlatives, § 38. 2. L. 32. 7. Applied to number and quantity, § 53. 3. Peculiar use of, § 134. 1.
Äls, L. 69. 3.
Älso, L. 69. 4.
Äm, with the positive of an adjective used for the superlative, § 38. 1. L. 32. 6. This form of superl. when used, § 42.
Än, § 116. L. 68. 1. 2.
Änder, L. 65. 1.
Ändert, *der*, instead of *der zweite*, § 45. 3.
Änderthalb, instead of *zweitehalb*, § 49. (*Note*).
Änstatt, § 110. 1. L. 60. 1. Before infinitive, L. 49. 5.
Apposition, rule for, § 133. § 123. 6. 7.
Attributive adjective, L. 14.
Articles, declension of, § 4. L. 8. 4, 12. 4. Contracted with prepositions, § 4. 2. L. 20. 4. Rule for the use of, § 120. L. 42. Def. art. in place of possess. pron., § 134. 7. With *solch*, § 120. 4. Before *halb* and *dreie*, § 120. 2. A. Omission of, L. 43.
Äuch, answering to *ever* and *even*, L. 69. 5.
Äuf, § 116. L. 68. 3.
Auxiliary verbs, divided into two classes, § 70. 1. Those of the first class, *haben*, *sein* and *werden*, when and how used, § 70. § 71. Those of the second class, when and how used, § 74. Infinitives of the second class in place of the participle, § 74. 3.
Balb, L. 69. 6.
Bar, suffix, § 25.
Be, prefix, § 97. 1.
Beifinden, L. 29. 10.
Behalten, L. 62.
Bei, its use, § 112. 3. L. 66. 2.
Beide, *beide*, L. 65. 2.
Beis, L. 69. 7.
Capitals, rules for, § 5. 2. (*Note*).
Cardinal numbers, § 44. Gender of, taken merely as figures, § 44. 7.
Cases, § 3. 4. 5. Of participles, § 147. 1. L. 8; 60; 61; 62; 63.

- U**ben, diminutives in, § 10. L. 24. 1.
 Represented by pronouns masc. or fem., § 134. 2. L. 28. 4.
Uben, Collective nouns, form of, § 11. 3.
 Pronouns, referring to them, § 134. 3.
Uben, Collocation of words, § 158. L. 53.
Uben, Comparison of adjectives, § 35.
 L. 32. Euphonic changes in forming, § 36. Comparatives and superlatives, declension of, § 37. L. 32. 5. Irregular forms of, § 39. L. 32. 4.
Uben, Comparison of adverbs, § 106.
Uben, Composing German, Exercises in, L. 25. Models for, p. 449.
Uben, Compound, formation of, § 2. 6. 7. Accent of, § 2. 10.
Uben, Compound verbs, § 89. Separable, § 90. L. 51. Paradigm of a compound separable, § 92. Compounds inseparable, § 95. L. 54.
Uben, Conditional mood, obs. on the several uses of, § 144. 1. 2. 3. &c. L. 56.
Uben, Conjugation of verbs, § 75. Regular, L. 37. Irregular, L. 47.
Uben, Conjunctions, § 117. Syntax of, § 156. Examples, illustrating the use of, L. 63.
Uben, Consonants, classification and pronunciation of, L. 11. IV. V.
Uben, Correlatives, § 156. 2. g.
Uben, Da, compounded with other words, § 103. L. 52. 2.
Uben, Dafür (nichts dafür können), L. 45. 6.
Uben, Das, peculiar use of, § 62. 1. § 134. 1.
Uben, Daß, its use, § 156. 2. b. L. 69. 9.
Uben, Dative, after certain prepositions, § 116. Peculiar uses of, § 129. 1. 2. 3. &c. § 134. 8. After verbs compounded with *er*, *ver*, &c., § 130. After adjectives, § 131.
Uben, Declension, of the article, § 4. Of nouns, § 12. Old form, § 13. New form, § 14. Of adjectives, § 27. Of comparatives and superlatives, § 37. Of adjective, article, noun, demonstr. and poss. pronouns, L. 30. 9.
Uben, Demonstrative pronouns, § 61. § 62. L. 10. 44.
Uben, Demn, L. 69. 10.
Uben, Der, (determinative) when absolute, its form in the gen. plural, § 63. 2. (relative) its use, § 65. 2.
Uben, Derjenige, L. 41.
Uben, Derivation and composition of words, § 2. Derivatives, secondary, § 2. 3. 4. 5.
Uben, Derro and *Stro*, p. 312. (*Note*).
Uben, Des (dessen), when used, § 62. 4.
Uben, Deshalb, bewegen, L. 53. 6.
Uben, Deito, L. 32. 10.
Uben, Determinative pronouns, § 63. L. 41.
Uben, Dieser and jener distinguished, § 62. 2.
Uben, Dieß, dieß, peculiar use of, § 62. 1. § 134. 1.
Uben, Dimidiative numerals, how formed, § 49.
Uben, Diminutives, § 10. L. 24. 1. 2. Gender of pronouns referring to, § 134. 2. L. 28. 4.
Uben, Distinctive numerals, how formed, § 51. 1. 2.
Uben, Diphthongs, sounds of, L. 2. III.
Uben, Distributive numerals, how formed, § 46.
Uben, Doch, § 156. 2. c. L. 69. 11.
Uben, Drei and drei, when declined, § 44. 4.
Uben, Dürfen, conjugation of, § 83. 2. Remarks on, § 83. 9.
Uben, Eben, before a demonstrative, § 62. 6.
Uben, Et, termination, § 10.
Uben, Eigen, L. 16. 3.
Uben, Ein, one, how declined, § 44. 2. 3.
Uben, Einander, its use, § 60. 3.
Uben, Einige, etliche, etwas, § 53.
Uben, Emp and ent, § 97. 2.
Uben, En, suffix, forming adjectives, § 25. L. 15. 5.
Uben, Entgegen, § 112. 5.
Uben, Er and er, § 97. 3. 4.
Uben, Erinnern, L. 62. 1.
Uben, Erst, L. 69. 14.
Uben, Es, peculiar use of, § 57. 8 § 134. 1. b.
Uben, Es sei denn, L. 69. 10.
Uben, Etwa, L. 69. 15.
Uben, Etwas, L. 65. 4.
Uben, Ew., L. 27. 3. (*Note*).
Uben, Etymology, § 1.
Uben, Euphonic letters, § 2. 8. § 11. 3

- Feſſen, L. 57. 5.
 Feminine nouns, indeclinable in the singular, § 12. 4. Exceptions to this, p. 277. (*Note*).
 Foreign nouns, § 16. Old declension of, § 17. New declension of, § 18. Partly of the old and partly of the new, § 19.
 Frau, Gräulein, L. 70.
 Für, L. 67. 2.
 Future tenses, observ. on the use of, § 141. 1. 2. L. 38. 4.
 Ganz and halb, before names of places, § 53. 2. Ganz und gar, L. 19. 3.
 Gar, L. 69. 16.
 Ge, prefix of nouns, § 2. 3. § 11. 3. Prefixed to the past participle, § 69. 4. Inserted between the prefix and the radical in compound verbs separable, § 93. 3. § 99. 3. Excluded from the perfect participle of compound verbs inseparable, § 94.
 Geben, L. 57. 4.
 Gegen, L. 67. 3.
 Gegenüber, L. 66. 5.
 Gender, the natural and grammatical, § 6. 1. 2. Rules of, § 7. Gender of compounds and foreign words, § 8.
 Genitive, limiting a noun, § 123. Limiting an adjective, § 124. With the verbs achten, &c., § 125. After reflexive verbs, § 126. After the impersonal es gelüſtet mich, &c., § 126. 1. After anſagen, beſchren, &c., § 127. Nouns in, used as adverbs, § 128. L. 61. 8. With prepositions, L. 60.
 Genug, L. 53. 7.
 Gern, L. 69. 17.
 Gleich, L. 69. 18.
 Haben, when and how used as auxiliary, § 70. 3. 4. § 71. 2. L. 48. Paradigm of, § 72. 1. § 73.
 Haſt, ſuffix, § 25.
 Halb, § 53. 2.
 Halben or halber, § 110. 3. L. 60. 4. Halben, wegen and um – willen with the genitive of personal pronouns, § 57. 1. L. 60. 6.
 Haus, nach or zu, L. 43. 2.
 Heißen, L. 49. 1. oba.
 Heiſt, ſuffix, § 10.
 Her and hin, § 103. 3. 4. L. 52.
 Herr, L. 70.
 Hin, L. 52.
 Ich, form of, in the comparative § 40. 1.
 Iſen laſſen, L. 49. 6.
 Hundert and tauſend as collectives, § 44. 6.
 Ichro and Dero, p. 312. (*Note*).
 Immer, L. 69. 19.
 Imperative mood, observations on the several uses of, § 145. 1. 2. L. 50. 5. Past participle, n place of, § 145. 3.
 Imperfect, observations on the use of, § 138. 1. 2. 3.
 Impersonal verbs, § 88. L. 57.
 In, L. 68. 4.
 In or inn, feminine terminations, § 10.
 Indefinite numerals, how formed, § 53.
 Indefinite pronouns, § 59.
 Indicative mood, for the imperative § 142. 2. L. 38.
 Infinitive mood, use of, in place of a past participle, § 74. 3. *Without* zu, § 146. 1. L. 49. *With* zu, § 146. 2. As a verbal substantive, § 146. 3. Active form used passively, § 146. 4. L. 49. 6. Position of, § 158. 5. Answering after bleiben, gehen &c., to our present participle, L. 49.
 Interjection, § 118. § 157.
 Interrogative conjugation, L. 6.
 Interrogative pronouns, § 66, 67. L. 13.
 Irgebt, L. 65. 6.
 Irregular verbs, commonly so called, list of, § 78. 1. Those properly so called, § 81, 82, 83.
 Ich, ſuffix, § 25.
 Iterative numerals how formed, § 50.
 Ja, L. 69. 20.
 Je, used in forming distributives, § 46. Before comparatives, § 156. 2. d. L. 32. 10.
 Jeder, § 53. Jedweder, § 53.
 Jeglicher, § 53. L. 42. 3.
 Jemandem (dative), remark on the use of, § 59. 3.

- Gender and dialect, distinguished,** § 62. 2.
Genet, peculiar use of, § 62. 1.
Gein, § 53. 3. L. 69. 22.
Geines von beiden, L. 65. 2.
Geit, suffix, § 10.
Können, conjugation of, § 83. 3. Remarks on, § 83. 10. L. 45. 5.
Raffen, remarks upon, p. 338. (Note). L. 45. 11.
Gein, diminutives in, § 10. L. 24. 1. Represented by a pronoun masculine or feminine, § 134. 2.
Letters of union, § 2 7. 8. 9. Of euphony between suffix and radical, § 11. 2.
Geich, § 25.
List, of (so called) irregular verbs, § 78. 1.
Man, its use, § 59. 2. L. 19.
Mancher, § 53.
Meher, its two form in plural, § 40. 2.
Meher, mehrere, § 53.
Mit, L. 66. 6.
Mixed conjugation, how produced, § 81.
Mixed declension of adjectives, § 32. L. 16. Rule for the use of, § 33.
Mögen, conjugation of, § 83. 4. Remarks on, § 83. 11. L. 45. 7.
Moods, § 68. 5. Indicative, § 142. Subjunctive, § 143. L. 56. Conditional, § 144. L. 56. Imperative, § 145. L. 50. 5. Infinitive, § 146.
Multiplicative numerals, how formed, § 47.
Müssen, conjugation of, § 83. 5. Remarks on, § 83. 12. L. 45. 8.
Nach, § 112. 8. L. 66. 8.
Nach, form of in superl., § 40. 1.
Negative conjugation, L. 21.
Nichts dafür können, L. 45. 6.
Nicht wahr? L. 21. 5.
Noch, L. 69. 23.
Niemandem, dative, remark on the use of, § 59. 3.
Nominative, the case of the subject, § 121. Seldom omitted, § 121. 1.
Nouns, common and proper, § 5. 1. Collective and abstract, § 5. 2. Gender of, § 6. Derivation of, § 9. Declension of, § 12. Old form of, § 13. L. 8. 4. New form of, § 14. L. 30. 2. Obs. on irregular, § 15. Foreign, § 16. Proper, declension of, § 20, 21, 22. Of measure, number &c. § 123.
Numbers, § 3. 3.
Numerals, § 43. Cardinals, § 44. Ordinals, § 45. Distributives, § 46. Multiplicatives, § 47. Variatives, § 48. Dimidiatives, § 49. Iteratives, § 50. Distinctives, § 51. 1. 2. Partitives, § 52. Inde-finites, § 53.
Run, L. 69. 24.
Rur, L. 69. 25.
Obgleich, obgleich, obwohl, § 156. 2. a. Ob, L. 66. 10.
Öhne, L. 67. 4. Followed by the infinitive, L. 49. 5.
Ordinal numbers, § 45. Rules for forming, § 45. 2. 4. Interrogative form, § 45. 5.
Paradigms of haben and sein, § 72. 1. 2. Of werden, § 72. 3. Of a verb of the Old form, § 78. Of irregular verbs, § 83. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. Of a passive verb, § 85. Of a reflexive verb, § 87. Of a compound verb, § 92.
Participles, their form and meaning, § 69. L. 37. 1. 2. Declined like adjectives, § 34. 4. L. 37. 4. Past participle for the imperative, § 145. 3. L. 50. 3. Place of the past part. of the mood auxiliaries, supplied by the infinitive, § 74. 3. Cases of, § 147. 1. Uses of part. in German restricted, § 147. 2. 3. Present part., its agreement with its noun, § 148. Usually attributive, § 148. 1. With the article often used substantively, § 148. 2. Not, as in English, an abstract verbal noun, § 148. 3. Its position, § 148. 4. Adverbial power of, § 148. 5. Preterite part., peculiar uses of, § 149. 2. Used absolutely, § 149. 3. Future part., § 150. L. 50. 4.
Particles, p. 388 (Note), L. 51. 54.
Partitive numerals, how formed, § 52.
Passive verb, mode of forming, § 84. 1. Paradigm of, § 85. L. 58.
Advantage over the English,

- § 84. 3. Other methods expressing passivity, § 84. 4.
- Perfect tense, *obs.* on the use of, § 139. 1. 2. 3. L. 38. 3.
- Personal pronouns, construed with *haben*, *wegen* and *um-willen*, § 57. 2. Third pers. of, representing things without life, § 57. 3. Third pers. plural used for the second in addressing persons, § 57. 6. L. 27. 5. used as reflexives, § 60. 4. L. 29. 1.
- Phrases, idiomatic, p. 446.
- Pluperfect tense, § 140.
- Plural, nouns having no, § 15. 2. Nouns, having two forms in the, § 15. 3.
- Possessive pronouns, forms of, § 58. 2. L. 12. 2. How declined, when conjunctive, § 58. 3. When absolute, § 58. 4. 5. 6. L. 35. Place of, supplied by the *def. art.* § 58. 8.
- Predicate, of a sentence, 119. § Nouns, when used as, § 122. List of adjectives, always used as, § 27. 2.
- Prefixes of verbs, simple separable, § 90. Compound separable, § 91. L. 51. When separated from the radical, § 93. Inseparable, § 94. 95. Compound prefixes inseparable, § 96. L. 54. Separable and inseparable, § 98. L. 54. 2.
- Prepositions, table of, § 103. Those construed with genitive, § 109. 110. L. 60. With dative, § 111. 112. L. 20. 1. With accusative, § 113. 114. L. 20. 2. With the *dat.*, or *acc.*, § 115. 116. L. 20. 3. Examples of the use of, L. 66. 67. 68. Syntax of, § 152. 153. 154. 155.
- Primitives, § 2. 2.
- Pronouns, table of, § 55. Personal, § 56. 57. L. 27; 28. Possessive, § 58. Indefinite, § 59. Reflexive and reciprocal, § 60. L. 29. Demonstrative, § 61. 62. L. 10; 44. Determinative, § 63. L. 41. Relative, § 64. 65. L. 39. Interrogative, § 66. 67. L. 13. Syntax of, § 134.
- Proper names, declension of, § 20. L. 30. 4. In the plural, § 21. Of countries &c., § 22. 23.
- Quantity, weight &c., words of, when qualified by numerals, rarely in the plural, p. 279. *Note.* L. 59.
- Recht*, with *haben*, L. 36. 2.
- Reciprocal pronouns, § 60. L. 29. 6.
- Reflexive pronouns, § 60. L. 29. Special form for, in the *dat.* and *acc.*, § 60. 4.
- Reflexive verbs, how produced, § 86. 1. L. 29. 9. Some with the *dat.* and some with the *acc.* of the *recip. pron.*, § 86. 2. Often equivalent to passives, § 86. 4. Paradigm of a reflexive, § 87.
- Reiße*, L. 46. 2.
- Relative pronouns, § 64. 65. L. 39. Can not (*welcher* excepted) be joined with a noun like an adjective, § 65. 1. Never omitted, § 134. 4.
- Repetition of the adjective, when referring to nouns of different genders, § 135. 5.
- Sal*, *schalt*, *sel*, terminations, § 10.
- Sam*, termination, § 25.
- Schon*, L. 69. 26.
- Schulb* *sein*, L. 46. 2.
- Schulbig* *sein*, L. 61. 5.
- Sein*, when and how used as an auxiliary, § 70. 5. § 71. 3. 4. L. 48. Paradigm of, § 72. 2. § 73.
- Sein*, (*possess.*), peculiar use of, § 135. 4.
- Seit*, L. 66. 11.
- Selbst* or *selber*, § 57. 4. L. 29.
- Sentence, essential parts of, 119. § 158. 2. Simple and compound, § 119. Principal and subordinate, § 160. L. 39.
- Singular, nouns having no, § 15.
- So*, § 156. 2 *f.* L. 69. 27.
- Sold*, when not declined, § 63. 4. (*Note*).
- Sollen*, conjugation of, § 83. 6.
- Remarks on, § 83. 13. L. 45. 9. As imperative, L. 50. 5. *obs.*
- Some*, L. 39. 4.
- Spazier* *gehen*, *fahren*, &c., L. 49. 2.
- Speech, parts of, § 3. 1. Those inflected, § 3. 2.

- Subject of a sentence, § 119.
 § 158. 2.
 Subjunctive mood, observations on the several uses of, § 143. 1. 2. 3., &c. L. 55.
 Suffixes, used in forming nouns, § 10. Used in forming adjectives, § 25.
 Synoptical view of *sein*, *haben*, *werden*, § 73.
 Syntax, § 119.
 Tausend and hundert, employed as collectives, § 44. 6.
 Tenses, § 68. 6. L. 37. Mode of conjugating, § 75. 4. L. 37. Terminations of, § 76. Present, syntax of, § 137. Imperfect, syntax of, § 138. Perfect, syntax of, § 139. Pluperfect, syntax of, § 140. Futures, syntax of, § 141.
 Thum, suffix, § 10.
 Thun, not used as an auxiliary, § 137. 6.
 Heber, L. 68. 5.
 Um, § 114. 4. L. 67. 5.
 Um—wollen, § 110. 2. 5. L. 60.
 Umhin (nicht—können), L. 45. 6.
 Umlaute, sounds of, L. 2. 2. Use of, p. 275. (Note).
 Ung, suffix, § 10.
 Unrecht haben, L. 36. 2.
 Unter, L. 68. 6.
 Unter vier Augen, L. 68. 6.
 Variative numerals, how formed, § 48.
 Verbs, classification of, according to form and meaning, § 68. 2. 3. Moods and tenses of, § 68. 5. 6. Auxiliary, § 70. Old and new conjugations of, § 75. Paradigm of one of the Old form, § 78. List of those of the Old form, § 78. 1. Paradigm of one of the New form, § 80. Those of the Mixed conjugation, § 81. 82. Paradigms of dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wissen and wollen, § 83. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. Passive, § 84. Paradigm of a passive, § 85. Reflexive, § 86. Paradigm of a reflexive, § 87. Impersonal, § 88. Compound, § 88. 89. Paradigm of a compound, § 92. Syntax of, § 136.
 Viel, when declined, § 53. 3. L. 65. 7. 8. 9.
 Vießricht, L. 69. 30.
 Von, § 112. 12. L. 66. 12. Before names, § 23. 3. With the dative instead of the genitive, § 123. 7.
 Vor, L. 68. 7.
 Vowels, classification and pronunciation of, L. 2. 1.
 Was, § 67. 3. § 134. 1. L. 13; 40.
 Was, for warum, § 67. 3.
 Was für ein, § 66. 4. 5. § 67. 1. 2. L. 13.
 Wegen, L. 60.
 Welcher (relative), genitive of, when used, § 65. 1.
 Wenig, when declined, § 53. 3. L. 65. 7. 8. 9.
 Wer and was (relatives), their use and position, § 65. 3. 4. 5. L. 40. As interrogatives, § 66. 3. L. 13.
 Werden, auxiliary of the first class, § 70. 2. Paradigm of, § 72. 3. § 73. L. 46.
 Werth sein, L. 61. 6.
 Wie, L. 69.
 Wie befinden Sie sich, L. 29. 10.
 Wie viel, § 45. 5.
 Wissen, conjugation of, § 83. 7. Placed before an infinitive, L. 49. 7.
 Wo, compounded with other words, § 103. L. 52.
 Wohl, L. 69. 34.
 Wollen, conjugation of, § 83. 8. Remarks on, § 83. 14. L. 45. 10.
 Worden, for geworden, § 84. 2.
 Zu, § 112. 9. 13. L. 66. 13. When between the parts of a compound verb, § 93.
 Zufolge, § 110. 8. L. 60.
 Zu Grunde gehen, richten, L. 43. 6.
 Zu Hause, L. 43. 2.
 Zwei and drei, when declined, § 44. 4.

FASQUELLE'S FRENCH SERIES.

By LOUIS FASQUELLE, LL.D.,

Professor of Modern Languages in the University of Michigan.

CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES.

1. The plan of this popular Series embraces a combination of the two rival systems; the *Oral*, adopted by OLLENDORFF, ROBERTSON, MANESCA, and others, with the old Classical, or *Grammatical System*. One of its principal features is a constant comparison of the construction of the French and English Languages.
2. Another important feature consists in the facility with which the instructor or student can elect in the course of study the practice and theory combined, or as much or as little of either as he deems proper.
3. The "Course" commences with a complete though short treatise on pronunciation, presenting the power of each letter as initial, medial, or final, and also its sound when final and carried to the next word, in reading or speaking.
4. The changes in the words are presented in the most simple manner, and copiously exemplified by conversational phrases.
5. The rules of composition, grammatical and idiomatical, are introduced gradually, so as not to offer too many difficulties at one time.
6. The verbs are grouped by tenses, and comparisons instituted, showing their resemblance or difference of termination in the different conjugations.
7. The second, or theoretical part, offers, in a condensed form, a solution of the principal difficulties of the language.
8. The Rules are deduced from the best authorities, and illustrated by short extracts from the best French writers.
9. A treatise on gender is given, containing rules for determining gender by the meaning of words, and also by the termination.
10. The Irregular, Defective, and Peculiar verbs are presented in an *Alphabetical Table*, producing a *Complete Dictionary* of these verbs.

FASQUELLE'S FRENCH SERIES.

I. FASQUELLE'S FRENCH COURSE:

OR, NEW METHOD OF LEARNING THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

Revised and enlarged.

Embracing both the Analytic and Synthetic modes of Instruction. By LOUIS FASQUELLE, LL.D., Professor of Modern Languages in the University of Michigan.

This work is on the plan of "Woodbury's Method with German." It pursues the same gradual course, and comprehends the same wide scope of instruction. It is the leading book in the best literary institutions in the United States, and has also been reprinted in England, where it has an extended sale.

II. A KEY TO THE EXERCISES IN FASQUELLE'S
FRENCH COURSE.

III. FASQUELLE'S COLLOQUIAL FRENCH READER.

360 Pages. Duodecimo.

Containing Interesting Narratives from the best French writers, for translation into English, accompanied by Conversational Exercises. With Grammatical References to Fasquelle's New French Method; explanation of the most difficult passages, and a copious Vocabulary.

IV. FASQUELLE'S TÉLÉMAQUE.

12mo.

Les Aventures de Télémaque. Par M. Fénelon. A New Edition, with notes. The Text carefully prepared from the most approved French Editions.

The splendid production of Fénelon is here presented in a beautiful mechanical form, with copious references to Fasquelle's Grammar, full notes explanatory of difficulties in the text, and a full vocabulary.

V. NAPOLEON. BY ALEXANDER DUMAS.

Arranged for the use of Colleges and Schools; with Conversational Exercises on the plan of Fasquelle's Colloquial French Reader, Explanatory Notes, and Idiomatical and Grammatical References to the "New French Method." By LOUIS FASQUELLE, LL.D.

FASQUELLE'S FRENCH SERIES.

VI. FASQUELLE'S CHEFS D'ŒUVRE DE RACINE.

283 Pages, 12-mo.

For Colleges and Schools. With Explanatory Notes and Grammatical References to the "New French Method."

This Edition contains five of Racine's best plays: *LES PLAIDEURS*, *ANDROMAQUE*, *IPHIGENIE*, *ESTHER*, and *ATHALIE*. The Notes will be found, in all the plays, sufficiently full, without being diffuse; in *Les Plaideurs*, the only comedy written by Racine, the explanations, however, are much fuller than the others.

VII. FASQUELLE'S INTRODUCTORY FRENCH COURSE.

19mo.

A new work, on the plan of the larger "Course," adapted to Beginners.

VIII. FASQUELLE'S MANUAL OF FRENCH CONVERSATION.

12mo.

A Complete Manual of Conversation, Idioms, etc., with references to Fasquelle's Course.

Testimonials of Teachers and Professors.

Fasquelle's French Series has been recommended by STATE SUPERINTENDENTS and BOARDS OF EDUCATION, by hundreds of distinguished PROFESSORS and TEACHERS, whose testimonials could fill a volume. The following are specimens:

JOSEPH WM. JENKS, Professor of Languages in the University of Urbana, O., says:—"I have taught many classes in the French language, and do not hesitate to say, that 'Fasquelle's French Course' is superior to any other French Grammar I have met with, for teaching French to those whose mother-tongue is English. It combines, in an admirable manner, the excellences of the old, or classic and the new, or Ollendorffian methods, avoiding the faults of both."

MESSRS. GUILLAUME H. TALBOT, T. A. PELLETTIER, E. H. VIAN, H. SEST, and N. B. DE MONTRARONT, well known to the community as among the most eminent teachers in BOSTON, unite in a testimonial in which they "heartily and unanimously testify, that the work is held in high esteem and approbation among us, and that we consider it the very best heretofore published on the subject of which it treats. For the true interest of all engaged in the study of the spoken French, we would advise its universal adoption."

FASQUELLE'S FRENCH SERIES.

Messieurs MASSET and VILLEPLAIT, Professors of the French Language in New York, write:—"We consider 'Fasquelle's French Course' a valuable and appropriate addition to the different grammars of the French Language. The arrangement adopted is systematic, and so simplified as greatly to facilitate the progress of the student."

Prof. ALPHONSE BRUNNER, of Cincinnati, says:—"Having been a teacher of my vernacular tongue—the French—for ten years, in my opinion, it is the best book yet prepared. I recommend it as superior to the old theoretical grammars."

Prof. J. B. TORRICELLI, of Dartmouth College, writes:—"I take pleasure in recommending to the teacher as well as to the private student, 'Fasquelle's New Method,' as the best yet published. Its adoption in our Colleges and Seminaries has given entire satisfaction. Mr. Fasquelle deserves the thanks of all lovers of the French language."

Rev. CHARLES COLLINS, D.D., President of Dickinson College, Pa.:—"We have introduced Fasquelle's French Series with very decided approbation."

Prof. EVERETT, of Bowdoin College, Me.:—"Fasquelle's French Course is decidedly the best grammar ever published."

EDWARD NORTH, A.M., Professor of Languages, Hamilton College, N. Y.:—"Fasquelle's French Course I continue to use, and to like. It is worthy of its immense popularity."

Rev. GEORGE B. JEWETT, late Professor of Modern Languages, Amherst College:—"I have examined Fasquelle's French Series with much pleasure and satisfaction. They form an admirable series."

Prof. CHARLES GOBELLE, Professor of Modern Languages, Newbury Female Collegiate Institute, Vt.:—"I have been using Fasquelle's French Course during the past two years in one of the best schools in New England. It is the very best book I know of for instruction in the French language."

Prof. T. PEYRE-FERRY, Teacher of French in the New Jersey Normal School, Trenton:—"Fasquelle's Course is the best work ever published of the kind. It enables the pupil to acquire a practical knowledge of the French language."

Rev. G. W. QUEREAU, A.M., Principal of Conference Seminary, Greenwich, R. I.:—"Fasquelle's Course is our standard text-book in French. We use it because we think it best. I speak with some confidence, and am satisfied that it is decidedly superior to any other book of the kind."

JAMES B. ANGELL, A.M., Professor of Modern Languages in Brown University, writes:—"I gladly testify to the excellence of Fasquelle's French Course, which I have used in my classes for three years."

P. N. LEGENDRE, Professor of French, New Haven, Ct., says:—"Never has a work come under my notice, that blends so happily and harmoniously the great rival elements of the language. My pupils study it with pleasure."

E. J. P. WOHRANGE, Professor of Modern Languages in the N. Y. Central College, writes:—"Fasquelle's Course is at the same time original and complete in itself, superseding all systems now in use."

The *N. Y. Daily Times* says:—"Prof. F. is somewhat of an enthusiast as to his method of teaching, and being blessed with as much sense as experience, makes a better arranged text-book, and grades the difficulties more happily than any other modern teacher."

The *Philadelphia Daily News* speaks of the "Napoleon," as "a very concise and interesting French history which, edited as it is by Prof. Fasquelle, can not fail to prove a very popular school-book. The narrative is in Dumas most brilliant and attractive style."

The *N. Y. Independent* says of the "Napoleon":—"It combines the advantages of a stirring biography to invite the student, a good French style and grammatical and critical exercises and annotations."



